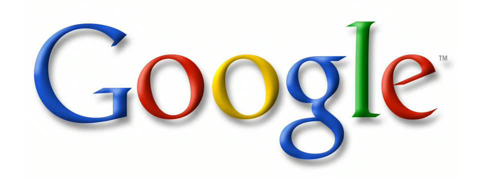
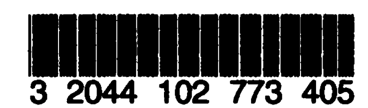




THE

# CONVERSATION

# METHOD

FOR

# SPEAKING, READING, AND WRITING

# FRENCH

*INTENDED FOR SELF-STUDY OR USE IN SCHOOLS*

WITH A

SYSTEM OF PRONUNCIATION BASED ON WEBSTERIAN EQUIVALENTS, AND ENTIRELY NEW DEVICES FOR OBTAINING A CORRECT PRONUNCIATION

BY

EDMOND GASTINEAU, A. M.

GRADUATE OF THE UNIVERSITÉ (PARIS), AND PRINCIPAL OF THE CONVERSATION SCHOOL, NEW YORK

THE GASTINEAU SELF-STUDY COMPANY

297 FIFTH AVENUE

NEW YORK


HARVARD
UNIVERSITY
LIBRARY

# HOW TO SPEAK A LANGUAGE.

---

"*I would fain,*" said John Locke, "*have one show me that tongue that any one can learn to speak, as he should, by the rules of grammar.*"

And, indeed, how many thousands, after months and, often, *years* of poring over some of the text-books in ordinary use, discover, on going abroad or meeting foreigners in society, that they neither can speak nor understand the first word of the language!

This is as unnecessary as it is astounding. We find that, in the last century, a Mezzofanti could speak 58 languages. Bayard Taylor was famous for the rapidity with which he mastered foreign tongues; and the great explorer, Henry Schliemann, learned to speak modern Greek in six weeks' time! It will not serve to answer that these were exceptionally gifted men, for we see not only children, but also adults of most ordinary capacity, when thrown among foreigners, acquire *in a few weeks* a practical ability to express themselves and to understand others.

Yet these same children and adults, when taught by the prevailing methods in the class-room, will spend years of irksome and arduous labor in the study of a language, only to find, in the vast majority of cases, that they are unable to say the simplest things or to understand the simplest questions in it.

### WHY IS THIS?

Simply because, contrary to the sage advice of Wolfgang Ratke and Erasmus, "the way of nature" is not followed, but the way of the methods instead. Now,

### WHAT IS THE WAY OF THE METHODS

in common use?

One and all, whether avowedly grammatical, or claiming, as some do, to be practical and conversational because *affecting* to discard grammar wholly or in part, these systems are really

what is *called* 'grammatical,' that is to say '*constructive.*' For all are based on the following principles: (1) The presentation of *words*, either in vocabularies, or *simple*, *i. e.*, formless and meaningless sentences. (2) The drilling of the pupil in *constructing* sentences with this material *from the single word up.*

Let us not forget, in the first place, that a large portion of language can not be *constructed*, being entirely different from synonymous forms in the language of the pupil. Such idioms as, "*Never mind!*" "*What is the matter?*" "*You don't mean it!*" etc., can not be constructed by foreigners learning English, but have to be taken up in their idiomatic compactness. This applies just as well, of course, to English-speaking pupils who are learning foreign tongues.

But, apart from this *most* important element of language, it is not against grammar and construction *per se* that a protest is entered. On the contrary, we *should* finally acquire the power to construct. But it is against grammar and construction being made the great and main dependence of the pupil in expressing himself, and the broad highway to the acquisition of language, that a protest is made. It is evident that, on such a plan, any attempt at expression involves *calculation* as to what place this or that word should occupy, or what inflection it should affect in this or that circumstance. For this, the learner depends upon a multiplicity of rules which he never half understood and never half remembers. Or, if he has used one of those methods which affect to discard grammar, he has to muster up the empyrical substitutes for rules which have been given him, but which he has never either clearly understood or mastered. Any one so taught, whenever attempting to utter a sentence, will ponder, wonder, stammer out something, take it back, try it again, and ultimately end in confusion and silence. Or, in the case of the few who, being either over gifted or persistent, learn to speak *in spite of the wrong method adopted*, they almost invariably express themselves in faulty, crippled, *un*-French, *un*-German little sentences. In a word, they do not really speak French, or German, or Spanish, etc., but *English*-French, *English*-German, or *English*-Spanish. And this is no more correctness and propriety of speech (*which these systems pretend to impart*) than is hobbling along on crutches the perfection and poetry of motion.

To this first and fatal defect, however, the methods in common use add other mistakes:

## (1) THE NATURE OF THEIR VOCABULARY.

Who does not know how the majority of these books fill their pages with the most formless, *useless*, and often inexpressibly absurd sentences? Think of poring over page after page of such phrases as (I quote *textually* throughout): "*I have a rose, She has a book, You have a stick, My brother has a pen, His sister has an apple,*" etc., etc., etc.; or of being dragged over such as these: "*Are you sniffling?* (*!*) *I am sniffling! Why are you sniffling? I am not sniffling now. You* **are** *sniffling!*" etc., etc.; or, of being entertained with such as the following, the source of which will be instantly recognized: "*Has the baker our bread? No, but he has our fine asses! Has he our nails and hammers? No, but he has our good loaves!*" and so on, for fifty closely printed pages of asses, bakers, loaves, nails, and hammers mixed in the most astonishing and bewildering manner! — Is that, I ask, really learning to speak a sensible, practical tongue? Certainly, all the methods do not sin as grievously as the ones quoted above, but all are tainted more or less with this defect, and give the pupil, in the main, a mass of useless and senseless matter to learn. As if every language did not contain more than twenty times enough *practical, sensible,* and *useful* material to teach any one all the combinations and evolutions of which it is capable!

## (2) THE EXTENT OF THEIR VOCABULARY.

What are we to think, then, in addition to the above, of an attempt to familiarize us with a stock of words of so vast and indigestible bulk that natives themselves would find it impossible to master it! Yet, several of these methods contain a vocabulary far greater than even a Victor Hugo or a Gœthe would, or could, have used for the walks and talks of ordinary life.

And this, although philologists have assigned very narrow limits indeed to the vocabulary of every-day life, some placing the number of words necessary for the expression of our general thoughts and wants at even less than 2,000, while Prendergast shrewdly observes that "*there are 200 or 300 common words in*

*every language some of which occur necessarily in every colloquial sentence; and the profusion of speech which we observe in children, springs from their power of wielding these 200 or 300 words, with a gradually increasing stock of nouns and verbs interspersed."*

No wonder then, in view of all these facts, that the methods above described fail ignominiously to teach us the art of speaking a foreign tongue, and, indeed, in most cases, even of reading or of writing it. But let us now inquire,—

## WHAT IS THE WAY OF NATURE?

Whether in the case of the child surrounded by those who constantly speak to or before it, or in that of the adult in a foreign land, the ear is incessantly struck with the sounds *not of single words, let us remember, but of complete sentences and perfect idiomatic forms.*

Some of these finally impress themselves on the memory, and, child or adult, according to our need or impulse, we attempt to use one or the other of them. At first, it is in a crippled sort of way, perhaps bringing out but a shred of the sentence. But, *let us not fail to observe,* even in the case of the child, *that the perfect and entire form or idiom is aimed at.* So, with greater perfection at each effort, we at last use the difficult idiom or phrase with ease and accuracy,—not *building* it, but *reproducing* it as a copy of the perfect whole *presented and aimed at from the first.*

In this manner, a *limited but sufficient* collection or stock of such sentences is gathered. These forms become habitual to us, and we make a constantly recurring use of them, modifying them, however, by the introduction of new words to express more and more diversified meanings. Thus do we insensibly yet quickly find ourselves masters of a spoken tongue. Then it is that grammar often is studied, with the purpose of making us *conscious* of what we know and more critical, but *never as a primary means by which we are expected to attempt to speak.*

This plan, with such modifications as the different circumstances of real life and study in the class-room necessitate, is the one followed by the "CONVERSATION METHOD." In this, it is partly following in the path traced out as early as the

seventeenth century by Comenius, a learned Moravian. His work entitled "*Janua Linguarum Reserata,*" or "*The Door of Languages Opened,*" marked the dawn of a revolution which, in our day, is slowly but surely overturning the present methods of language study.

Comenius himself was followed, but not until two centuries later, by Hamilton, Robertson, Toussaint-Langenscheidt, Prendergast, and others. All these systems copied nature in presenting us, *at the outset, not* single words or commonplace, formless and meaningless phrases, coupled with a confusing mass of incomprehensible rules (or substitutes), but *idiomatic and perfect forms of speech,* accompanied, generally on opposite column or page, with their meaning in the learner's vernacular. They all led the pupil, then, to repeatedly utter and handle these sentences until absolutely mastered, and, finally, to analyze, reconstruct, and recombine them.

But, although moving in the right direction, they necessarily had to feel their way, and, consequently, were imperfect; some, like Prendergast and Hamilton, entirely excluding grammar; others, like Robertson, introducing it to such an excessive degree as absolutely to prevent that constant repetition without which it is impossible by *any* system to learn to speak a language; others still, being replete with the grossest errors, and filling page after page with dry lists of synonymous terms that pall upon the mind and bewilder the memory.

The Conversation Method, while applying the same great and natural principles, avoids the mistakes committed by its direct predecessors. It supplies the pupil from the outset with sentences of daily necessity coupled with their translation and pronunciation, so that they may be easily memorized and mastered in their perfect and idiomatic completeness, and *turned to immediate conversational account.* These are now rehearsed in active colloquial exercise, and, when thoroughly familiar, analyzed, and the words of which they were made up inserted into other forms and idioms to express a still greater variety of meanings. Such is the true *basis* of practical and perfect language knowledge. It is in this way, says Prendergast, that "*for slovenly hesitation, fluency and readiness are substituted.*

*Instead of translating from the English, the beginner has to learn the genuine foreign forms of speech.*"

When a certain number of these idiomatic and necessary phrases have been mastered by the pupil, a vocabulary — *not* made up of *unrelated* and ill-assorted words, as is the case with so many methods, but classified, and all pertaining to the particular topic treated in the sentences — is furnished. These words are used to insert into the ready forms of speech already mastered, thus at a trifling cost of study and memory, broadening a hundred-fold the range of our expression.

At the same time, the words contained in the method have been limited to such a number as to render possible and bring about that *constant repetition of the same words and phrases, without which we cannot expect to learn to think in a language.*

Now,

## WHAT IS THINKING IN A LANGUAGE?

In reality, there is no such thing. What is meant is, that we become so familiar with the forms of language that we do *not have to think* in using them. This faculty is developed in our own or in any other language *only by the constant repetition of the same idioms and words.* Now, if a method deluges the pupil, as many do, with an avalanche of useless words, it is evident he can never repeat this mass frequently enough to familiarize himself with *any* portion of it. This mistake has been avoided in this book by the introduction mainly of words within the range of every-day conversation and necessities, although the other extreme has been shunned, and literary, artistic, and social topics have been freely introduced.

So far, therefore, "the way of nature" has been faithfully copied. But while, owing to the incessant reiteration of the same forms and the constant urging of daily wants in real life, the way of nature is all sufficient to *force* upon us a fluent and even elegant use of language, the limited hours of the classroom demand the introduction of some element to make plain the by-paths just traversed but still *brushy* and hampered; something to co-ordinate that practical but still partially chaotic knowledge, and clear for us the broad, general avenues of language; something, in fine, to take the place of the *ever*

*present* and despotic tutorship of nature; and that something is

## GRAMMAR.

Although John Locke would have had us study "without the drudgery of grammar," it is certainly indispensable to the *perfect* knowledge of a language acquired in the class-room. And grammar has become the bugbear that it is, simply because it has been made to play a part for which it never was fit. But *brought in at the proper time*, and, as Erasmus advised, *kept in proper limits*, why should grammar be other than a help, instead of a hindrance? For, *then*, it is simply the *explanation* of what may be puzzling us. Now, explanation, *if clear and to the point*, will not confuse but assist us. For it will give us the *rationale* of the construction and frame-work of forms already mastered, and teach us how, intelligently, to construct others upon these vivid models. In a word, it will fill the gaps of our practical knowledge and bind its segments firmly together. Thus to *complete* and cap the edifice, but not to be the *foundation* and main support of it, *that* is the office of grammar.

## HOW IT IS TAUGHT IN THIS BOOK.

In the first place, notes are given at the bottom of every French (or German) page. These are not expected to be specially memorized, but are rather meant as present answers to whatever queries may arise in the mind concerning the forms and phrases we master. In addition, all the necessary grammatical elements of the language are found together, properly classified, at the end of the book, while the learner is referred to them from time to time throughout the text. In this way, we are assured a thoroughness not attained by works which cut the grammar into shreds, and sow it piecemeal throughout their pages, so that seeing no end or connection about this straggling grammatical mass, the learner becomes inevitably and hopelessly bewildered.

But it will be found that, as a result of the mastery of idiomatic forms obtained through this method, *many* minor rules *will have taught themselves;* thus, isolating the main and more difficult rules, which are then easily mastered. Five of the

latter, which I consider most important and hence call the "Five Cardinal Rules," are inserted from place to place in the text so as to further isolate them for the pupil.

However, the book is so constructed as to allow those who, like John Locke and Herbert Spencer, are adverse to grammar, to study without it.

## CONVERSATION.

Another distinctive feature of this method remains to be explained. Any system of teaching languages not based upon the successive treatment of actual topics will be one-sided and incomplete. For if, as Prendergast says, "*disconnected words are not language*," then certainly, *disconnected sentences are not conversation.* For this reason, and in view of the manifold and patent advantages of such a plan, every portion of this work (whether sentences, conversations, exercises, or even readings) is cast in conversational form. And in order to create a series of topics at once practical and interesting, we are so to speak, transported to Paris (or Berlin, or Madrid), and then surrounded with the most natural circumstances pertaining to traveling or residing in the country of which we study the language. In this medium, we are made to speak, to read, and to write about things which we would really need to know and to say with foreigners.

The book is composed of five parts. At the beginning of each of these, a long idiomatic sentence is given, with its pronunciation and translation. This sentence is divided into its clauses, each one of which introduces a number of other sentences modified from or related to it. Then follows a vocabulary, a portion of which is absorbed in "Conversations" and "Exercises." (See DIRECTIONS, page xi.) Finally, a reading, and, generally, a letter close every section.

In short, nothing has been omitted to make the general plan of the method a complete and interesting as well as practical one. Neither is it a mere experiment, but the result of years of actual and successful experience in teaching thousands of pupils. It will be found to impart in a little time the power of readily and idiomatically speaking a language, as well as of reading and writing it.

EDMOND GASTINEAU.

# DIRECTIONS.

## I.—PREPARATION OF THE LESSONS.

Read the sentence found at the beginning of each part a number of times, by means of the figured pronunciation. This reading, if possible, *should be done aloud*, as first and properly recommended by Langenscheidt. When the sentence begins in this way to grow familiar, attempt to repeat it from the English side, without looking at the French. If any word escapes the memory, however, look at it at once, *yet do not finish the sentence from there*, but *return to the beginning of it*, and again, from the English side, attempt to repeat it from end to end *without looking at the French*. This will be found a much easier task than one would anticipate, and soon the learner will find himself able to repeat a long and idiomatic sentence with practical fluency.

This done, learn the shorter sentences following in the same manner. When one page has been gone over, return to the beginning of it and attempt to repeat all the sentences from the English side, without the help of the French.

**CONVERSATIONS, EXERCISES, READINGS, LETTERS.** — Directions will be found with each of these. But in the case of the Conversations, write them out in English, if necessary, and repeat the French aloud from this translation.

## II.—HINTS FOR RECITATIONS.

The 'sentences' may be recited in class, either by each pupil separately, or by a section of the class speaking together. The teacher may ask the English, the pupil or pupils repeating the French, without aid of the book or, if the class is apt and forward, the instructor may read one of the French questions, the pupils giving the answer from memory.

The LITERAL TRANSLATIONS accompanying each idiomatic phrase will allow the pupil, once he has mastered the sentence, to study the meaning of each word, while also giving him a clear conception of what the French really say.

**THE CONVERSATIONS AND EXERCISES.** — At first, the English of the conversations may be given, the pupil repeating the French from memory. But the class should be gradually led

to repeat these as real conversations, with such additions or alterations as may be brought in by the instructor.

With adults, I usually recommend *not* to have the exercises written out, but only recited orally.

THE LETTERS.—It has been my invariable experience that to memorize a few model letters and write them from memory, impresses the usual forms of letter-writing better than *months* of ordinary exercise writing. But in addition to this, it is well to lead pupils to write letters on topics suggested to them.

SELECTION OF THE MATTER.—It is a good plan to omit those portions of a book which appeal least directly to the particular pupil or class. Thus, with children, I would omit sections about *needle-work*, for instance. If ladies are studying, I would pass over business letters, etc. A good way is to draw a pencil-mark diagonally across the parts thus omitted. This does away with the feeling of incompleteness otherwise engendered.

CONVERSATION.— After recitation, whether of Sentences, Conversations, or Exercises, etc., pupils should be drilled, as far as time and size of class permit, in independent conversation over the topics just treated, care being taken to introduce words from the vocabularies. Questions should also be asked of them concerning the facts contained in the readings, and they should be led to answer in the foreign tongue.

## III.—FOR SELF-STUDY.

SENTENCES, ETC.—Follow directions under "PREPARATION, ETC." Do not stop short of uttering the phrases without *any* hesitation.

CONVERSATIONS.—To be written out into English and the French repeated *aloud* from that, without help of the book. But learners should gradually apply themselves to repeat these CONVERSATIONS from beginning to end, *without looking at book or paper.*

EXERCISES should be written out in French, and then repeated *aloud* from the English text *without looking at the paper.*

## IV.—TIME OF STUDY.

Prendergast was right in recommending, at least, short but frequent periods of study, instead of the ordinary two or three hours of consecutive drudgery. Study, then, from five to fifteen or, at most, thirty minutes, as often as practicable each day.

## PRONUNCIATION.

---

In the following table of signs and pronunciation, English values as taken from Webster are given for equivalent French sounds. This, if properly done, furnishes a perfectly clear and well-nigh absolute criterion for the learner. An extended experience in the use of the English tongue has, it is hoped, peculiarly fitted the compiler for the English part of the work; while his birth and liberal bringing up in the French capital are guarantees of a correct French pronunciation. A number of standard authorities, such as Littré, Larousse, Bescherelle, etc., have been carefully consulted. In a word, no effort has been spared to bring this plan of pronunciation to the highest possible degree of perfection.

**ACCENT.**—It is generally supposed that French accentuation is so slight as not to deserve any special attention. Hence, this point is either entirely overlooked by the methods or disposed of in a couple of lines. Thus, the pupil either remaining ignorant of this most important fact in pronunciation, or never having it vividly and constantly recalled to him, naturally accentuates his French as he does his vernacular.

To illustrate the effect, let us imagine some one asking for the Opera, in Paris. If he accentuates thus: L'Op′-éra or L'Opér′-a, 45 times out of 50 he will fail to be understood. But let him pronounce it L'Opéra′, and he becomes intelligible at once. Apply this to his ordinary utterance of the language, and the great importance of proper direction in this respect will appear.

For that reason, a system of accentuation has been devised in the pronunciation of this book, *constantly* reminding the pupil where the accent should fall. But let the learner remember:

(1) That this accentuation falls over the last syllable of the word (*or* clause), or (when the last syllable is *mute*) upon the one before the last. Ex.: Bateau (**bȧ-tō′**); Navire (**nȧ-vē′-r'**).

(2) That it is at most a slight emphasis upon the accented syllable, yet sufficient to impart *a special tone and character to word or phrase.* To it is due the well-known *rising* inflection at the end of word, clause, or sentence, in French.

## TABLE OF SIGNS.

NOTE.—The table is a key to the signs used throughout the book, so the pupil will do well to refer to it constantly, until mastered. A good plan is also to copy it off on a piece of stiff paper or card-board, so as to have it always before one for ready reference.

| SIGNS. | FRENCH VALUES REPRESENTED. |
|---|---|
| 1. **ȧ** = *a* in *ask*. | Usual sound of **a.** |
| 2. **ä** = *a* in *father*. | Occasional sound of **a** (see p. xv). |
| 3. **ā** = *a* in *late*.[1] | **é**; also **ai, ed, er, ez,** final. |
| 4. **ē** = *ee* in *meet*.[1] | Sound of **i.** |
| 5. **ĕ** = *e* in *met*. | **è, ais, aix**; also, **e** before all consonants except final **d, r,** and **z.**[2] |
| 6. **ê** = *e* in *there*. | **ê**; and **è** before a mute syllable. |
| 7. **ȯ** = *o* in *other*. | Usual sound of **o.** |
| 8. **ō** = *o* in *note*. | Occasional sound of **o.** |
| 9. **ōō** = *oo* in *cool*.[1] | Sound of **ou.** |
| 10. **ŭ** = *u* in *but*. | *Full* sound of unaccented **e** at *the end of a syllable.* Also **eu** *not final.* |
| 11. **û** = *u* in *urge*.[3] | Sound of **eu** final; **eû**; also **eus, eut, eux,** final. |
| 12. **ü** = *u* in *duenna*.[4] | Sound of **u.** |
| 13. **zh** = *zi* in *glazier*. | Sound of **g** before **e** or **i.** |
| 14. ***an*** = *an* in *want*. | **An, am, en, em** } *Not followed by a vowel or another **m** or **n**.* |
| 15. ***in*** = *an* in *rank*. | **In, im, ein, eim** } |
| 16. ***on*** = *on* in *wrong*. | **On, om** } |
| 17. ***un*** = *un* in *wrung*. | **Un, um, eun** } |

18. ***ŭ*** = *very* short sound of 'silent' **e.** (See Sign 10.) See p. xvi.
19. **'** = shortest sound of 'silent' **e**; a mere breathing. See p. xv.
20. **′** = accented syllables (see page xiii).
21. **ñ** = *ny* in *canyon*. Usual sound of **gn.** See p. xix.
22. ‿ in the pronunciation denotes that two vowels are to be pronounced together as a diphthong. Thus: **pitié = pē-tē‿ā′.** Pronounce **tē‿ā** quickly together.

---

[1] But pronounced more quickly, *though without losing the pure quality of the sound.* — [2] Exception: **Et** (*and*), pron. **ā.**

[3] See page xvii. — [4] No real equivalent in English. See page xvii.

## FRENCH PRONUNCIATION.

As occasion may point out, return and study one or the other of the rules given here in detail. These rules (some of which appear for the first time) must be considered as general; yet they offer few exceptions not actually noted.

### I.—VOWEL SOUNDS.

#### Sounds of A.

1. **Usual sound** = *a* in *ask* (middle sound of *a*). — Sign, **å.**
2. **Occasional sound** = *a* in *father.* — Sign, **ä.** This occurs:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Before final **s**[1] . . . | Pas, *not;* | pron. | **pä.** † |
| " final **se** . . . | Phrase, *sentence;* | " | **fräz'.** |
| " final **tion**[2] . . | Nation, *nation;* | " | **nä-sē-on'.** |
| " **rr** . . . . . . | Carré, *square;* | " | **kä-ra͝'.**[3] |
| " **ill**[4] . . . . . | Caille, *quail;* | " | **kä'-yŭ.** |
| With a circumflex (^) | âme, *soul;* | " | **ä'-m'.** |

NOTE. — The *grave* accent over **a** is merely a distinctive sign and has no effect on its value. Both **a** (*has*) and **à** (*to*) = **å.** The circumflex accent does not alter the sound of **a**, *if it is a tense sign.* Thus: **Nous parlâmes** (*we spoke*) = **nōō pår-lå'-m',** *not* **nōō pår-lä'-m'.**

#### Sounds of E.

1. Unaccented **e,** *at the end of a syllable* (as, **bul-le-tin; ga-re;** etc.) is *called* "silent," but, *when given in full,* has the sound of *u* in *but.* — Sign, **ŭ.**

NOTE. — Most of the time, however, "mute" **e**, especially in conversation, is partly or entirely silent. When ending one word and followed by another beginning with a vowel (*or* silent *h*), it entirely disappears.[5] Thus: **Votre ami** = **vô-trå-mē.** At the end of a word, but not followed by another word beginning with a vowel, the sound of **e** amounts only to a slight *breathing,* which, however, lengthens the preceding syllable and gives *full* articulation to the consonant just preceding the **e.** (This value of **e** is represented in this book by an apostrophe.) Thus (*when not followed by another word*), **dire** (*to say*) =

---

[1] But not if **s** is the plural sign. Both **pacha** and **pachas** = **på-shå'.**

[2] Or, **sion; occasion** = **ô-kä-zē-on'.** — [3] But: **car** (*one* **r**), **kår,** etc.

[4] *Usually.* — [5] In the middle of words (*if ending a syllable*), **e** generally disappears altogether. **Appeler,** *to call* = **å-plā'.**

† Also, *sometimes,* **ss.** Thus: **passe, classe** = **päs', kläs'.**

**dēr'**, not **dēr**; **affaires** (*business*) = **à-fair'**, not **à-fair**; **tante** (*aunt*) = **tan'-t'**, not **tant.** N. B. — *When this 'breathing' is somewhat more pronounced and nearer to the sound of a very short* **ŭ** (*or else after certain letters, like* **y**) *an italic ŭ is often used in this book to express its value.*

Note. — When one mute **e** follows another immediately, the *second* generally disappears. Thus: **Il me le donne** = **ĕl mŭl dòn'.**

**2. Other sounds of e: E,**

(1) With *acute* accent, or when before final **d, r,** and **z**[1] = **ā.**

Ex.: **Parlé, parler, parlez** = **pàr-lā'.** — **Pied** = **pē-ā'.**

(2) With the *grave* accent, or before any consonant except **d, r,** or **z**[2] = *e* in *met.* — Sign, **ĕ.** Ex.: **Très** (*very*) = **trĕh.**

*For obvious reasons, when ĕ is not followed by a consonant sound in this pronunciation, a letter* **h** *is usually placed after it, to indicate more clearly its broad value.*

Note. — When **nt** and **s** following unaccented **e** are *tense signs* (in verbs), **e** remains silent. Thus: **Tu parles** (*thou speakest*); **Ils parlent** (*they speak*) = **tü pàr'-l'**; **ēl pàr'-l'.**

Also, when **s** is the sign of the plural, **e** remains silent. **Balle** and **balles** (*balls*) are both = **bàl'**; **belle** and **belles** are both = **bĕl'.**

(3) With *circumflex* accent, **e** has the sound of *e* in *there.* — Sign, **ê.** — Ex.: **Même** (*same*, or *even*) = **mê'-m'.**

Note. — In **femme, solennel** and the adverbial termination **emment** (Ex.: **apparemment**), **e** is pronounced **à.** Thus: **fàm', sò-là-nĕl', à-pà-rà-man'.**

## Sounds of I.

1. **Usual sound** = *ea* in *peace* (but slightly shorter in *quantity*). — Sign, **ē.**

2. **Occasional sound,** — with circumflex, or before a mute vowel — same as above, but long as in English. — Sign, **ē.**[3]

## Sounds of O.

1. **Usual sound of o:** *o* in *other.* — Sign, **ò.**

Note. — Slightly *broader* than *o* in *other*, but *not* as broad as *o* in *not.*

---

[1] Exceptions: Words of one syllable in **er.** Ex.: **Mer (mĕr), fer (fĕr)**; and a few words of two syllables, as **amer** (*bitter*), etc. Also: Proper names and names of cities in **ez.** Ex.: **Suez (sü-ĕz').**

[2] The consonant must be in the *same* syllable. Otherwise **e** is 'mute.' Thus: **Edmond** = **ĕd-mon'**; but, **redire** = **rŭ-dēr'.**

[3] The difference is *practically* imperceptible. Hence the same sign.

2. **Occasional sounds** of **o:**

**1st occasional sound** = *o* in *note.* — Sign, **ō.**

| | |
|---|---|
| Before final **s** . . . . . . . | Gros, *thick;* pron. **grō.** |
| " " **t** . . . . . . . | Mot, *word;* " **mō.** |
| Before final **tion** . . . . . | Notion, pron.: **nō-sē-on′.** |
| Or, if entirely final . . . . | Do (musc. *C*), pron. **dŏ̄.** |
| Before final **se** . . . . . . . | Rose, " **rōz'.** |
| With a circumflex accent . . | Dôme, " **dōm'.** |

**2d occasional sound** = *o* in *or.* — No sign: **Or** (*gold*) = **or.**

## Sounds of U.

No equivalent in English. Contract *tightly* (but do not protrude) the lips, as if about to whistle; then, with the lips firmly held so, attempt to give the sound of *ee* in *meet*, but *quickly*, and you will give the French sound. — Sign, **ü.**

**û** is a trifle longer. Practically, difference not perceptible.

## II. — OTHER VOWEL SOUNDS.

1. **Ai (ay, ei, ey)** are sounded *a* in *fate* (Sign, **ā**) —:

(*a*) When final. Ex.: **J'ai** (*I have*) = **zhā.**

(*b*) When initial (*beginning a word*), if not immediately followed by a mute syllable, a syllable beginning with **s,** or a vowel. Ex.: **Aimable** = **ā-mȧ′-bl'.** (But: **Plaisir** = **plĕh-zēr′; aile** = **ĕl'; ayons** = **ĕh-yon′;** see **y.**)

2. **Ai (ay, ei,** and **ey)** = **ĕ** in **mĕt** (Sign, **ĕ**) —:

Before a final consonant: **Lait** = **lĕh; soleil** = **sȯ-lĕh′-yŭ.**
Before a mute syllable: **J'aime** (*I like*) = **zhĕm'.**

3. **Au** and **eau** = *o* in *note.* — Sign, **ō.**

4. **Eu** and **œu** = *u* in *but.* — Sign, **ŭ.** *But:*

5. **Eu** (or **œu**) *final,* or before final **s, x,** or **t,** has no perfect equivalent in English. The nearest is the *u* in *urge* — Sign, **û.**

To produce it, sound the *u* in *urge,* only *deeper,* that is to say, not as a *throat* sound, but as a profound *chest* tone. *The lips are also slightly contracted, and held much closer.*

Ex.: **Jeu** (*play*) = **zhû; Il pleut** (*it rains*) = **ēl plû′.**

6. **Oi** = *wa* in *waggon* (usual sound). — Sign, **ȯ-ȧ.**

**Oi** = *wa* in *war,* when followed by final **s** or **x.** — Sign, **ȯ-ä′.**

Ex.: **Loi** (*law*) = **lȯ-ȧ′.** But: **Mois** (*month*) = **mȯ-ä′.**

Exceptions: **Fois** (*time*) = **fŏ-ȧ,** and nouns in which the **s** is only the plural sign. Thus: **Les lois, lĕh lŏ-ȧ′.**

8. **Ou** = *oo* in *moon.* — Sign, **o͞o.**

N. B. — Except when having a circumflex accent, or before a mute syllable, the sound of **ou** in French is shorter than **o͞o,** in *quantity.* But **o͞o** has been chosen rather than **o͝o** for the sign, because it represents the pure, broad *quality* of the sound much more accurately.

9. **Y** not *preceded* by a vowel = **ē. Symétrie, sē-mā-trē'.**

**Y** between two vowels, = **i-i,** each combining with the vowel next to it. Ex.: **Moyen** (*means*) = **moi-ien (mŏ-ȧ-yin′).**

Note. — The **tréma** (*diæresis*) indicates the separating of two vowels. Thus: **Mais** (*but*) = **mĕh;** but, **maïs** (*corn*) = **mȧ-ēs′; baïonnette** = **bȧ-yŏ-nĕt',** etc. Except in proper names. Ex.: **Staël** = **Stȧl.**

**Uë,** however = **ü.** Ex.: **Aiguë** (*sharp*) = **ā-gü'.**

## III. — NASAL VOWEL-SOUNDS.

These sounds occur when a vowel or diphthong is followed by a *single* **n** (or **m**), itself *not* followed by a vowel or another **n** (or **m**). Thus, in **plan-te, hon-te, nom,** *an, on,* and *om* are nasal. But, in **pla-*ner*** (*to soar*), or **ca*nne*, po-lo-*nais*** (*Polish*), or **bo*nn*et, ho*mm*e** (*man*), the **n** or **m** being followed either by a vowel or another **n** or **m,** no nasal sound occurs.

The nasal sounds exist in English, although partly altered by the presence of another consonant (as in *want, song*). Thus:

1. **An, am, en,** and **em** = *an* in *want.* — Sign, **a*n*.**
2. **In, im, ain, aim,** and **ein (eim)** = *an* in *yank.*—Sign, **i*n*.**
3. **On** and **om** = *on* in *wont.* — Sign, **o*n*.**
4. **Un, um, eun** = *un* in *wrung.* — Sign, **u*n*.**

N. B. — Such combinations as **ian, ien, ion, iom, uin,** etc., being simply made up of the sound of **i** and **an,** etc., are not given separate signs, but will be represented as: **ya*n*** or **ē-a*n*′, yi*n*** or **ē-i*n*, yo*n*** or **ē-o*n*′, ü-i*n*′.** Notice that **en** = **a*n*,** but **ien** = **ē-i*n*′.**

As seen above, instead of the grossly misleading signs (such as **ang, ong,** etc.) given in the various methods, I use an italic ***n*,** thus denoting, by the curtailing of the letter, the curtailing or arrestation of the *n* sound which takes place.

To give the nasal sounds, pronounce **an (am, en,** or **em)** as you would *an* in *want,* only stop short of the t, and arrest the

sound of *n* half-way. Likewise, pronounce **in (im, ain, aim,** or **ein)** as you would *an* in *yank*, only stop short of the k, etc.

Again, pronounce **on** (or **om**) as you would *on* in *wont*, only stop short of the t, and arrest the sound of *n* half-way. Finally, pronounce **un,** etc., as *un* in *wrung*, only stop short of the g, etc.

NOTICE that the organs of speech, — mouth, teeth, and *lips*, — do *not* close at all upon the nasal sound. Thus, for **nom** (*name*), **faim** (*hunger*), do not say **nóm** nor **fám** (closing the teeth and lips partly and rounding the *n*), but **non,** and **fin.**

## IV. — CONSONANTS.

Nearly all consonants are sounded as in English. Only:

**C** before **e** or **i** = *s*. Ex.: **Ce** (*this*) = **sŭ. Ici** (*here*) = **ē-sē′.**

**C** before **a** or **o** or **u** = *k*. Ex.: **Canne** = **kȧn'. Col** = **kȯl.**

But with a cedilla (¸), **c** = **s** before **a, o, u,** also. **Ça** = **sȧ.**

**Ch** = **sh,** *except when followed by a consonant.* Ex.: **Chat** (*cat*) = **shȧ'**; but, **Chrétien, Christ** = **krā-tē-in′, krēst.**

**G** before **a, o,** and **u** = *g* in *go*. Ex.: **Garçon** = **gȧr-son′.**

**Gu** before **a, e,** or **i** = *g* in *go*. Ex.: **Guerre** (*war*) = **gair'.**

*Note that in the figured pronunciation,* ***g*** *always* = ***g*** *in* ***go.***

**G** before **e** and **i** = *zi* in *glazier*. Ex.: **Georges (zhor′-zh').**

**J** is always = *zi* in *glazier*. Ex.: **Jamais (zhȧ-mĕh′).**

**Gn** = *ny* in *canyon*. — Sign, **ñ.** Excep.: **Stagnation (stȧg-nä-sē-on′),** and a few other words rarely used.

**H** is *silent* when vowels can be elided before it, and consonants carried over to it. Ex.: **L'**honneur, instead of **le** honneur. **Mon honneur (mon nȯ-nŭr′,** not **mon ȯ-nŭr′).**

**H** is called *aspirate* when the above cannot take place. But no aspiration in the English sense is given to it. Ex.: **Le haut** (*the top*). Pron.: **lŭ ō′,** never **lŭ *hō′*.**

**Liquid L.** — **Il** and **Ill** (sometimes preceded by another vowel, as in: **ail, eille, ille,** etc.), are called 'liquid.'

"*Liquid* ***l*** *is pronounced in two ways: In the South, the* ***ll*** *of* ***billet*** *is pronounced as in the Italian* ***biglietto*** *; in Paris, they replace it by* ***y*** *or double* ***i*** *: bi-iet, or bi-yet.*" — LAROUSSE.

Really, both pronunciations are accepted. The **y** pronunciation of 'liquid' **l** is perhaps the most common in conversation; and its pronunciation as *li* in *brilliant*, that of dignified diction.

A **y** is used in this book as the sign of liquid **l.** Learners may choose between the two pronunciations above.—Thus:

**Ail = ȧ-yŭ.** Ex.: **Travail = trȧ-vȧ′-yŭ** (or, **trȧ-vȧ′-y'**).

**Aille = ä-yŭ** (generally). Ex.: **Caille** (*quail*) = **kä′-yŭ.**

**Eil** and **eille = ĕh′-yŭ.** Ex.: **Pareil** (*similar*), **bouteille** (*bottle*). Pron.: **pȧ-rĕh′-y'; bo͞o-tĕh′-yŭ.**

**Ouil = o͞o′-yŭ (brouillard, bro͞o-yȧr′).**

**Euil = ŭ′-yŭ (feuille = fŭ′-yŭ).**

**Il** and **Ill = ē-yŭ.** Ex.: **Péril, pā-rē′-y'. Fille** (*girl*), **fē′-yŭ.** Excep.: The following words: **Fil, mille, million, ville, tranquille** (*quiet*), and two or three others, are pronounced: **fēl, mēl', mē-lē-on′, vēl', tran-kēl'.** Also, **Achille** (*Achilles*), and **Lille** (*Lilles*) = **ȧ-shēl', lēl'.**

**Ill** *initial* is *not* liquid: **illustre (ēl-lüs′-tr',** not **ē-yüs′-tr').**

**Note** that the **i** preceding the **l** must be in the *same* syllable. Ex.: **Familier,** being divided **fa-mi-lier=fȧ-mē-lē-ā′** (no liquid sound).

**M** is silent in **condamné (kon-dä-nā′),** and **automne.**

**P** is silent in **baptiser** (*to baptize*), **compter** (*to count*), **corps** (*body*), **printemps** (*Spring*), **prompt, sculpteur, temps** (*time*), **sept** (*seven*). Pron.: **bȧ-tē-zā′, kon-tā′, kor.**

**Q** and **qu = k.** Ex.: **Cinq = sin-k. Quand** (*when*) = **kan.** Exceptions: **Aquatique, aquarelle** (*water color*), **équateur;** (pron.: **ȧ-ko͞o-ȧ-tēk',** etc.). Also words beginning with **quadr,** as **quadrupède,** etc., **ko͞o-ȧ-drü-pĕd',** etc.; also: **loquacité, équation,** and **quartz** (pron.: **lȯ-ko͞o-ȧ-sē-tā′,** etc.); **équestre** (*equestrian*), **équitation** (*horsemanship, riding*), **équilatéral = ā-kü-ĕs′-tr', ā-kü-ē-tä-sē-on′,** etc.

**R** is brought out more forcibly than in English.

**S** = *s* in *silk*, at the beginning of a word; also, in the middle of a word, if *not* between two vowels. Ex.: **Sœur** (*sister*), **Espoir** (*hope*). Pron.: **sŭr, ĕs-pȯ-ȧr′.**

**S** = *z*, when between two vowels. Ex.: **Risibilité, phrase** (*sentence*). Pron.: **rē-zē-bē-lē-tā′, fräz'.** (See **note,** p. xxi.)

**S** final, is pronounced in **atlas, fils** (*son*), **gratis, jadis** (*formerly*), **mars.** Pron.: **ȧ-tläs′, fēs, mȧrs.** Also in Greek and Latin names: **Pallas, Plutus;** Pron.: **Pȧl-läs′,** etc.

**T** = *t* in *total.* Ex.: **Tirer** (*to draw, to pull*) = **tē-rā′.**

**T** = *s* in *silk*, in the syllables **tial, tiel, tion.** Ex.: **Partial, additionnel, perfection.** Pron.: **pȧr-sē-ȧl′, ȧ-dē-sē-ȯ-**

**nĕl′, pĕr-fĕk-sē-on′.** Excep.: If preceded by **s, t** is sounded like *t*. Ex.: **Question, bastion,** etc. Pron.: **kĕs-tē-on′,** etc.

**T**=*t* in words ending in **tie, tié,** and **tier.** Thus: **Partie** (*part*), **pitié, entier** (*entire*). Pron.: **par-tē', pē-tē-ā′,** etc. But **t**=*s*, in **facétie, initiation, aristocratie,** etc. Pron.: **fa-sā-sē', ē-nē-sē-ä-sē-on′, a-rēs-to-kra-sē',** etc.

**Th** *always*=**t. Théâtre**=**tā-ä′-tr'.** *Never:* ***Thā-ä′-tr',*** *a frequent mistake.* The French *do not know* the sound of *th.*

**T** final, is sounded when preceded by **c** or **s.** Ex.: **Correct, exact, Christ, Est** (*East*), etc. Pron.: **kor-ĕkt′, eg-zakt′, krēst, ĕst.** Also, in **Chut!** (*Hush!*), **dot** (*dowry*), **fat** (*fop*). Pron.: **shüt, dot** (*except. to rule on p.* xvii), **fat.**

**W** is (usually) sounded like **v.** Ex.: **Wagon** (*car*), **va-gon′.**

**X,** initial, *if followed by a vowel=gz.* Ex.: **Xerxès, examen** (*examination*). Pron.: **Gzĕr-sĕs′, ĕg-za-min′.**

Otherwise, as in English: **prétexte, borax (prā-tĕks′-t', bor-aks′)** Excep.: **Bruxelles, Brü-sĕl';** also, in names or *plurals:* **Bordeaux, choux** (*cabbages*), **Bor-dō′, shōō.**

## V.—FINAL CONSONANTS AND "LIAISON."[1]

Consonants at the end of a word are generally not sounded in French, *unless the word is followed by another beginning with a vowel* (or silent *h*).[2] Ex.: **Pas, petit.** Pron.: **pä, pŭ-tē′.** But, **Pas à Paris, petit oiseau, petit homme**=**pä za Pa-rē′, pŭ-tē-to-a-zō′, pŭ-tē-tom'.**[3]

This 'liaison' is expressed in the French text of this book by the sign ‿. It is often omitted in conversation when it would produce a disagreeable impression, or when speaking rapidly.

NOTE.—Final **c** is carried over with the sound of **k;** final **d,** with that of **t;** final **f,** with that of **v;** final **s** or **x,** with that of **z.** Ex.: **Avec elle**=**a-vĕh-kĕl', Grand hôtel**=**gran-tō-tĕl′, neuf heures**=**nŭ-vŭr', Pas à Paris**=**pä-za Pa-rē′, Deux heures**=**dû-zŭr'.**

Final **c, f, l,** and **r, are generally sounded,** however, *even if not followed by a word beginning with a vowel.* Ex.: **Avec soif, bal, sœur.** Pron.: **a-vĕk′, so-af′, bal, sŭr.** But:

**C** final *is silent in* **échecs** (*chess*), **estomac, tabac, banc, blanc, franc, clerc, accroc, escroc, (ā-shĕh′, ĕs-to-ma′, a-krō′).**

---

1 **Lē-ĕh-zon′,** *joining.*— 2 For exceptions, see under each letter.

3 But before an *aspirate* h: **Trop haut, tro ō′,** not **tro-pō′.**

**F** final, is silent in **clef, cerf, chef-d'œuvre** (*masterpiece*); and the plurals: **nerfs, œufs, bœufs.** (**klā, sĕr, shĕh-dŭ′-vr', nĕr, û, bû**).

**L** final, is silent in **baril** (*barrel*), **fusil** (*gun*), **fils** (*son*), **gentil** (*nice*), **sourcil** (*eyebrow*), **persil** (*parsley*), **pouls** (*pulse*). Pron.: **bȧ-rē′, fü-zē′, fēs, pōō.**

NOTE.—**Rt** and **rd** final carry **r** over, *not* **t** or **d**. **Il part ȧ, ēl pȧr ȧ.**

## VI.—HOW TO DIVIDE FRENCH WORDS.

To divide French words into syllables, stop *before* a consonant when there is but one. Ex.: **Risibilité, parlement, inimitable.** Div.: *Ri-si-bi-li-té, par-le-ment, i-ni-mi-ta-ble.*

When there are *two* consonants, stop between the two. · Ex.: **Altitude, enveloppes.** Div.: *Al-ti-tu-de, en-ve-lop-pes.* **Except** when the second consonant is **h, l,** or **r,** when the two are considered as one consonant and the 1st rule holds. Ex.: **Riche, apathie, sabre.** Div.: *Ri-che, a-pa-thie, sa -bre.*

When there are three consonants, stop just *after* the first. Ex.: **Substitut, institution.** Div.: *sub-sti-tut, in-sti-tu-tion.*

N. B.—This fact is of great importance and aid in pronunciation. Among other things, it enables the pupil to know when an unaccented **e** is final, and, therefore, *mute;* and also when an **n** is nasal or not. Thus, in **Edmond,** divided *Ed-mond,* the **e** is not final, and hence not mute. But in **enveloppe,** divided *en-ve-lop-pe,* the **e** in *ve* and *pe* are both final, and hence silent. Likewise, in **inutile,** divided *i-nu-ti-le,* **n** not being in the *same* syllable as *i,* is not nasal, hence pronounced: **ē-nü-tēl',** instead of **in-nü-tēl'.** *The latter mistake is almost universal.*

### NAMES OF FRENCH LETTERS.

The French alphabet has 25 letters: **a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.** **W** is used, but as a foreign letter.

OLD NAMES: **ä,**[1] **bā, sā, dā, ā, ĕf, zhā, ȧsh, ē, zhē, kä, ĕl, ĕm, ĕn, ō, pā, kü, ĕr, ĕs, tā, ü, vā, ĕks, ē grĕk, zĕd. Dōō-blŭ-vā′.**

NEW NAMES: **ä,**[1] **bŭ, sŭ, dŭ, ŭ, fŭ, gŭ, ŭh, ē, zhŭ, kŭ, lŭ, mŭ, nŭ, ō, pŭ, kŭ, rŭ, sŭ, tŭ, ü, vŭ, ksŭ, ē grĕk, zŭ. Dōō-blŭ-vŭ′.**

**Note** the difference between the *name* and the ordinary *sound* of letters. The names of *a* and *o* are **ä** and **ō,** while their usual *sounds are* **ȧ** and **ȯ.** It is to be regretted that when changing the names of consonants, the Academy did not alter the names of vowels which needed it infinitely more. With the **a,** the habit of calling it **ä** so misleads foreign pupils, and causes them to give that sound to the letter so habitually, that I often recommend to call it **ȧ.**

# PART I.

## THE ARRIVAL.

## L'ARRIVÉE.

### SECTION I.

1. IN THE DEPOT.
2. TO HAVE BAGGAGE CARRIED.
3. IN THE WAITING-ROOM.
4. TRAVELING TO COUNTRIES AND CITIES.
5. TO TAKE A CAB.

## I.

### L'ARRIVÉE.[1]

**Que voulez-vous faire en‿arrivant?—D'abord, je veux faire visiter les bagages, et alors prendre‿un fiacre‿et aller tout droit déjeuner à l'hôtel.**

### PRONUNCIATION.[2]

**Kŭ vōō-lā′ vōō fair′ a*n*[3] nȧ-rē-va*n*′?—Dȧ-bor′, zhŭ vû fair vē-zē-tā′ lĕh bȧ-gȧzh′, ā ȧ-lor′ pra*n*-dru*n*[3] fē-ȧkr′ ā ȧ-lā′ tōō drȯ-ȧ′ dā-zhŭ-nā′ ȧ lō-tĕl′.**

---

[1] Lȧ-rē-vā′.

[2] For the value of signs used, see TABLE OF SIGNS.

[3] The italic *n* used in the pronunciation denotes the arresting midway of the *n* sound. *An* = an in the English word *want*, for instance; the organs of speech not closing upon the *nt*.—See PRONUNCIATION.

# I.

## THE ARRIVAL.

**What do you want to do when we get there?—In the first place, I want to have the baggage examined, and then take a cab and go at once to the hotel for breakfast.**

### LITERAL TRANSLATION.

**What will you to-make[1] on arriving?—First, I wish to-make to-visit the baggages, and then to-take a cab and go[2] all straight breakfast at the hotel.**

---

[1] The French have no separate word corresponding to *do.* **Faire** means either *to make* or *to do.*

[2] French verbs, as for instance **aller, déjeuner, faire,** are translated in English by *to* go, *to* breakfast, *to* make, or sometimes (when preceded by certain other verbs) simply by *go*, *breakfast*, *make*, etc.

FRENCH.

**1. Que voulez-vous faire?**

Que voulez-vous faire faire?[1]

Que voulez-vous faire faire en arrivant?

---

**2. Que voulez-vous faire porter?**

Voulez-vous faire porter[2] vos sacs de voyage?

A la salle d'attente.

Ne[3] voulez-vous pas faire porter vos sacs de voyage?

Ne voulez-vous pas faire porter vos sacs de voyage à la salle d'attente?

---

NOTES.

[1] **Faire** is used idiomatically before any verb, with the meaning of *causing* the thing expressed by that verb to be made or done. Ex.: **Faire faire** = to-make or cause (*somebody* who is understood) to make or do; hence, *anglice*, to have the thing in question made or done.—So, **faire porter** = to-make (*or* cause) somebody to carry; hence, *anglice*, to have the thing in question carried.

[2] Lit.: Wish you to make (somebody *understood*) carry your traveling-bags?

[3] **Ne** is not to be (usually) translated into English, although it must always precede the verb in French, when the sentence is *negative*. **Pas** = *not*. See page 6, note 1.

| PRONUNCIATION. | TRANSLATION. |
| --- | --- |
| **1. Kŭ vōō-lā′ vōō fair'?** | **What do you want to do?** |
| —— fair fair'? | What do you want to have done?[1] |
| —— a*n* nȧ-rē-va*n*′? | What do you want to have done when we are there?[2] |
| **2. —— fair portā′?** | **What do you want to have carried?[3]** |
| —— vō sȧk dŭ vȯ-ȧ-yȧzh'? | Do you want to have your traveling-bags[4] carried? |
| À lȧ sȧl dȧ-ta*n*′-t'.* | To the waiting-room?[5] |
| Nŭ vōō-lā′ vōō pä? . . . . vō sȧk dŭ vȯ-ȧ-yȧzh'. | Do you not want to have your traveling-bags carried? |
| Nŭ vōō-lā′ vōō pä. | Will you not have your traveling-bags carried to the waiting-room? |

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] What will you make (*or* cause) to-make?

[2] In (*or* on) arriving.

[3] What will you make (*or* cause *somebody*) to carry?

[4] Your sacs of travel.

[5] At (*or* in) the room of waiting. Rem. — **Salle** means a room for general use, such as a dining-room, ball-room, etc.

* Consonants followed by an apostrophe (*t'*, *m'*, etc.) and representing the final French syllables (*te*, *me*, etc.) indicate that these, although not pronounced as full syllables, are to be *articulated*, — the learner giving a slight *breathing quality* to the consonant (*t*, *m*, etc.) For further explanation, see Pronunciation.

**3. Non; je ne[1] veux pas.**

Non; je ne veux pas les faire porter.

Je peux.
Je peux très bien.
Je peux très bien les porter moi-même.[2]

---

**4. Pourquoi ne voulez-vous pas les faire porter?**

Parce que nous pouvons très bien les porter, nous-mêmes.

Jusqu'à la salle d'attente.

Parce que nous pouvons très bien les porter jusqu'à la salle d'attente.

---

**5. Facteur! voulez-vous bien me[3] dire?**

Voulez-vous bien me dire où est la salle d'attente?

---

NOTES.

[1] **Ne,** although etymologically the real negation, has become practically an adjunct, not to be (usually) translated into English. It is a sign or warning, so to speak, which must *precede* the verb every time some negation — whether *not*, *nobody*, *nowhere*, etc. — is going to be used *after* it. For further explanations, exceptions, etc., see page 494.

[2] The French express emphasis by the use of an additional word representing the subject much more frequently than the English. Thus, *I . . . myself.*

[3] Such words as **me, le, la, lui, nous, vous, les, leur,** meaning *me* (*to-me*), *him*, *her*, *to-him* (*to-her*), *us* (*to-us*), *you* (*to-you*), *them*, *to-them*, are placed before the verb in French.

| | |
|---|---|
| **3. Non; zhŭ nŭ vû pä′.** | **No; I don't want.[1]** |
| —— lĕh fair por-tā′. | No; I don't want to have them carried. |
| Zhŭ pû′. | I can. |
| Zhŭ pû trĕh bē-in′.* | I can very well. |
| —— lĕh por-tā′ mo-à′ mê′-m′.* | I can very well carry them (myself).[2] |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **4. Pōōr-kò-à′ . . . ?** | **Why will you not have them carried?** |
| Pȧr-skŭ nōō pōō-von′ trĕh bē-in′ . . . nōō mê′-m′.* | Because we can just as well carry them (ourselves).[3] |
| Zhüs-kȧ lȧ sȧl′. | As far as[4] the waiting-room. |
| —— lȧ sȧl dȧ-tan′-t′. | Because we can just as well carry them as far as the waiting-room. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **5. Fȧk-tŭr′! vōō-lā vōō bē-in′** mŭ dĕr′?** | **Porter! will you please tell me[5]?** |
| —— ōō ĕh . . . ? | Will you please tell me where the waiting-room is?[6] |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] I will (*or* wish) not.

[2] I can very well *them* carry myself (*me-even*).

[3] Because (*parce que*) we can very well *them* carry ourselves.

[4] Until *to* (*as far as*).

[5] Will you indeed to-me tell.

[6] Where is the room of waiting?

* See page 5, note 6.

** *In* is equal to *an* in *rank*, this having the short, sharp quality given in Webster as ăn. — The sign ‿ when used in the pronunciation, indicates that the two vowels thus united are to be pronounced together very rapidly, as *one* diphthongal syllable.

Oui,[1] Monsieur. Tout droit.
Oui, Monsieur. Tout droit devant vous.

---

**6. Où voulez-vous aller?**
Où Monsieur veut-il aller?

Où votre ami veut-il aller?

Je veux aller.
Il veut aller.
Nous voulons aller à la salle d'attente.

Tout droit devant vous, Monsieur.

---

**7. Où votre amie[2] veut-elle aller en arrivant?**

Elle veut aller tout droit à l'[3]hôtel.

À quel hôtel veut-elle aller?

À l'Hôtel de l'Opéra.

---

NOTES.

[1] The **w** used in the pronunciation should have the value of short **oo**; that is, not quite so broad a sound as it is usually given in English.

[2] **Ami,** male friend; **amie,** female friend.

[3] Abbreviation of **le** (or **la**), *the.* The French word for *the* has four forms:

**Le,** used before masculine nouns in the singular; Ex.: **le fiacre.**
**La,** " " feminine " " " " Ex.: **la salle.**
**L',** " " any noun (masculine or feminine), whenever it begins with a vowel or silent *h*; Ex.: **l'ami, l'hôtel.**
**Les,** used before all plural nouns; Ex.: **les bagages.**

N. B.—There is no *neuter* gender in French. Hence inanimate objects, like persons, can only be classified as masculine or feminine.

| | |
|---|---|
| Wē mós-yû' * | Yes, sir, straight ahead.[1] |
| Tōō dró-ả' d'-van' vōō'. | Yes, sir, straight before you. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **6. ŌŌ vōō-lā' vōō zả-lā'?** | **Where do you want to go?** |
| ŌŌ mós-yû' vû tēl ả-lā'.** | Where does the gentleman wish to go?[2] |
| ŌŌ vó-trả-mē' vû-tēl ả-lā'. | Where does your friend want to go?[3] |
| Zhŭ vû zả-lā'. | I want to go. |
| Ēl vû tả-lā'. | He wants to go. |
| Nōō vōō-lon zả-lā ả lả sảl dả-tan'-t'. | We want to go to the waiting-room. |
| | Straight[4] before you, sir. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **7. ŌŌ vó-trả-mē' vû tēl ả-lā' an nả-rē'-van'?** | **Where does your friend want to go when she arrives?[5]** |
| Ĕl vû tả-lā' tōō dró-ả' tả lō-tēl'. | She wants to go straight to the hotel. |
| Ả kĕl ō-tēl'? | To what hotel does she want to go? |
| Ả lō-tēl' dŭ ló-pā-rả'. | To the Hotel de l'Opera. |

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] All straight. — [2] Where *mister* wishes he to go?

[3] Where your friend wishes he to go?

[4] All straight before you, *mister*.

[5] Where your (lady) friend wishes she to go on arriving?

* Although the *word* is rightly divided thus, **mon-sieur,** the sign given (**mós-yû**) will be found to guide the pupil most accurately in giving the pronunciation, especially guarding him against the general tendency to pronounce **mó-shyû** as if the word were spelt **monshieur.**

** Let it be remembered that these *tonic* accents express only a slight emphasis on the final syllable (*or* penultimate; see PRONUNCIATION), and are intended especially to guard the pupil against accentuating any preceding syllable, as often done in English, and consequently slighting the last syllable of French words.

**8. Où veut-il aller en partant?**

Où votre[1] beau-père veut-il aller en partant de Paris?

Il veut aller tout droit à[2] Venise.

Pourquoi ne veut-il pas aller avec nous?

Pourquoi ne veut-il pas d'abord aller avec nous en Suisse?[3]

---

**9. Il voudrait bien.**

Il voudrait bien d'abord aller en Suisse avec nous.

Mais il a des[4] affaires.
Mais il a des affaires en Italie.
Mais il a des affaires à Venise, à Florence, et à Rome.

---

NOTES.

[1] **Votre** = *your*, before a noun in the singular. **Vos** = *your*, before a plural noun.

[2] **À,** with names of *cities*, means either *to*, *at*, or *in*.

[3] **En,** with names of *countries*, means either *to* or *in*.

[4] **Des,** contraction of **de les,** *of the;* sometimes, as in this case, meaning *some*.

**8. O͞O vû tēl à-lā′ *an* pàr-tan′?** | **Where does he want to go when he leaves (here)?**

O͞O vò′-tr′ bō-pair′ vû-tēl à-lā′ *an* pàr-tan d′ Pà-rē′? | Where does your father-in-law want to go when he leaves[1] Paris?

Ēl vû tà-lā to͞o drò-à à Vŭ-nēz′. | He wants to go straight to Venice.

Po͞or-kò-à′ n′ vû-tēl pä zà-lā à-vĕk no͞o′? | Why does he not want to go with us?[2]

—— dà-bor à-lā′ à-vĕk no͞o *an* Sü-ēs′. | Why does he not want to go first to Switzerland with us?

---

**9. Ēl vo͞o-drĕh′ bē-*in*′.** | **He would like it very much.**[3]

—— dà-bor à-lā. | He would very much like to go first to Switzerland with us.

Mĕh zēl à dĕh zà-fair′. | But he has business.[4]

—— *an* nē-tà-lē′. | But he has business in Italy.

—— à Vŭ-nēz′, à Flò-ran′-s′, ā à Ròm′. | But he has business in Venice, Florence, and Rome.[5]

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] Where your *beautiful-father* wishes he to go *on* departing from Paris?

[2] Why wishes he not to go —?

[3] He would (*or* would like) well.

[4] But he has some affairs.

[5] In Venice, in Florence, and in Rome.

*The following vocabulary to be learned by heart.*

## VOCABULARY

**Le chemin de fer** (lŭ sh'min d'fĕr), **The railway.**

| | |
|---|---|
| L'embarcadère (lan-bàr-kà-dair'), | The terminus. |
| La gare (là gär'), | The terminus, depot, or station. |
| Le chef de gare (shĕf dŭ—), | The station-master. |
| La station (stä-sē-on'), | The way station. |
| Le guichet (gē-shĕh'), | The ticket-office. |
| La salle des bagages, | The baggage-room. |
| Le bulletin de bagage (lŭ bül-tin'), | The baggage check.[1] |
| Le surpoids (sür-pò-ä'), | The overweight. |
| Le train direct (trin dē-rĕkt'), | The express-train. |
| Le train express (trin ĕx-prĕs'), | The express-train. |
| Le rapide (rà-pēd'), | The lightning express. |
| Le train omnibus (òm-nē-büs'), | The accommodation train. |
| Le wagon (và-gon'), | The railway-carriage. |
| Le wagon-lit (và-gon-lē'), | The sleeping-car. |

[1] In Europe, travelers are not given a check, as here, but a paper receipt or bulletin, stating nature and weight of baggage.

[2] **Au, Aux,** contractions of **à les,** to the.

[3] **En** is used before most names of countries. With a few countries (the names of which are *masculine* in French), **au** or **aux** is used. Thus: **Au Pérou, Aux Etats-Unis.**

*The following vocabulary to be learned by heart.*

## VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Les villes** (lĕh vēl'), | **The cities.** |
| À Berlin (à bĕr-lin'), | To, at, *or* in Berlin. |
| À Vienne (a vē-ēn'[4]), | " " " " Vienna. |
| À Paris (à pà-rē'), | " " " " Paris. |
| À Londres (à lon'-dr'), | " " " " London. |
| À Philadelphie (à fē-là-dĕl-fē'), | " " " " Philadelphia. |
| À la Nouvelle-Orléans (à là nōō-vĕl or-lā-an'), | " " " " New Orleans. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Les pays** (lĕh pĕh-ē'), | **The countries.** |
| En France (an fran'-s'), | In *or* to France. |
| En Angleterre (an nan-glŭ-tair'), | " " " England. |
| En Allemagne (an nàl-mà'-ñŭ[5]), | " " " Germany. |
| En Autriche (an nō-trēsh'), | " " " Austria. |
| En Amérique (an nà-mā-rēk'), | " " " America. |
| Au[2] Mexique (ō mĕk-sēk'), | " " " Mexico. |
| Aux[3] États-Unis (ō zā-tà-zü-nē'), | " " " United States. |

[4] The letter **n**, when not italicized, has the elasticity of the English **n**. The apostrophe indicates that it is to be pronounced with even more of a lingering or vanishing sound.

[5] The sign **ñ** is used to denote the sound *gn* in French, nearly resembling, though *closer*, than the sound of *ny* in the English word *canyon*. — The small *ŭ* represents the vanishing sound of the final unaccented **e** in French.

*The French conversations are intended for oral recitation in the class-room. (For Self-Study, see* ***Directions****, before* ***Part I.****)*

## CONVERSATIONS.

### 1.—*POUR PARTIR.**

Pardon,[1] Monsieur; voulez-vous m'indiquer[2] la gare de l'Est?[3]—Oui, Madame. C'est là,[4] tout droit devant vous.—Merci,[5] Monsieur.

Facteur, voulez-vous m'indiquer la salle des bagages?—La voilà,[6] Madame; à gauche.[7]—Que voulez-vous, Madame?—Je veux faire enregistrer[8] mes[9] bagages.

Combien de colis[10] avez-vous?—J'ai trois[11] colis.—

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

1 **Pår-do*n*′,** I beg your pardon.

2 **Mi*n*-dē-kā,** show me. Lit.: me indicate.

3 **Gär dŭ lĕst′,** Eastern railway station.

4 **Sĕh lå,** there it is. Lit.: it is there. (**La voilà** points out more minutely than **C'est là.**)

5 **Mĕr-sē′,** thank you. Lit.: thank.

6 **Lå vò-å-lå′,** there it is. Lit.: it there-is.

7 **Å gōsh',** on the left; at left.

8 **Fair å*n*-r'-zhēs-trā′,** have (anything) checked or booked.

9 **Mes** = *my*, before a plural noun. **Mon** = *my*, before a singular masculine noun.

10 **Ko*n*-bē-i*n*′ d' kò-lē′?** how much baggage? Lit.: how many packages?

11 **Zhā trò-å′,** I have three —.

* **Pōōr pår-tēr′,** to start.

Avez-vous votre billet?[1] — Non, pas encore.[2] — Alors,[3] vous ne pouvez[4] pas faire enregistrer votre bagage.

Où prend-on les billets pour Versailles?[5] — Pardon,[6] madame? — Veuillez[6] me dire où l'on[7] prend[8] les billets pour Versailles. — C'est là, Madame, à droite.[9] . . . . Est-ce ici[10] le guichet pour Versailles? — Oui, Madame. — Veuillez me donner[11] un billet. — Quelle classe?[12] — Une première,[13] s'il vous plaît.[14]

Voici[15] mon billet, facteur; et voilà mon bagage. . . . . Voici votre bulletin, Madame. — Combien ai-je[16] d'excédant?[16] — Vous avez quatre francs d'excédant.[17]

Qu'est-ce que c'est que ça?[18] — C'est le signal du départ.[19] Les voyageurs[20] pour Versailles en voiture! — Montez dans ce wagon-là,[21] madame.

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

1 **À-vā-vōō vò-tr' bē-yĕh'?** Have you your ticket?

2 **Pä-zan-kor',** not yet. — 3 **À-lor',** then. — 4 **Pōō-vā',** can.

5 **ŌŌ pran-ton' lĕh bē-yĕh pōōr Vĕr-sä'-yŭ** (lit.: *Where takes one the tickets for*)? Where are the tickets for V. taken? — 6 **Vŭ-yā',** please.

7 **L'on,** *one;* often used instead of **on** after a few words like **où, que,** etc. — 8 **Pran.** Lit.: *Where one takes, etc.* Where the T. for V. are taken.

9 **Mà-dàm', à drò-à'-t'** (lit.: *At* right), on the right. — 10 **Ĕs ē-sē'** (lit.: *Is this here*)? Is this? — 11 **Vŭ-yām dò-nā',** please give me.

12 **Kĕl kläs',** what class? — 13 **Ŭn prŭ-mē-air'.** Lit.: *A first* (class ticket), — 14 **Sēl vōō plĕh',** if you please. — 15 Here is.

16 **Kon-bē-in nāzh?** how much have I? **Ai-je (āzh')** have I? **Je** before a vowel becomes **J'.** — 17 **Kà-tr' fran dĕk-sā-dan',** four francs of surplus. Or, **de surpoids.** (*See Vocabulary.*)

18 **Kĕs kŭ sĕk sà'?** what is that? (*thoroughly idiomatic*).

19 **Sĕl sē-ñál dü dā-pár',** it is the starting-bell. Lit.: The signal of departure. — 20 **Vò-à-yà-zhŭr . . . . . an vò-à-tür'** (lit.: *Travelers . . . . . in carriage!*). All aboard! — 21 **Mon-tā dan s'và-gon là',** get in (lit.: *Go-up*) into that carriage (*there*).

### 2.—*À PROPOS DE VOYAGES.**

Vous voulez aller en Europe, n'est-ce pas?[1] — Oui, je veux y aller avec mon beau-frère,[2] ma mère et ma sœur.[3] — Quand[4] voulez-vous y[5] aller?[6] — Nous voulons y[7] aller par le bateau de samedi.[8] — Où voulez-vous aller tout d'abord.[9] — Nous voulons aller en Irlande,[10] en Angleterre, et de[11] là en France. Je veux aller, voir[12] notre homme d'affaires,[13] à Paris. — Allez-vous revenir[14] en Amérique, alors? — Non. Nous voulons aller en Allemagne, en Italie, en Grèce, en Égypte,[15] et de là peut-être[16] en Asie.[17] — Quel[18] beau voyage! — N'est-ce pas?

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

1 **Nĕs-pä'?** do you not? *don't you?* Lit.: *Is this not? Is n't it?* Often used to turn an affirmative proposition into a question.

2 **Beau-frère (bō-frair'),** brother-in-law. Lit.: *Beautiful-brother.*

3 **Ma**=*my,* before *singular* feminine nouns. **Mȧ mair ā mȧ sŭr',** my mother and (*my*) sister. — 4 ***Kan,*** when.

5 **Y** is often used instead of **là,** when the place has already been mentioned. — 6 **Zē ȧ-lā'—Y aller.** Lit.: (*there*) to-go.

7 **Vōō-lo*n*-zē,** we want (*there*), etc.

8 **Bȧ-tōd sȧm-dē',** Saturday boat. Lit.: *Boat of Saturday.*

9 **Tōō dȧ-bor',** first. Lit.: *All at first.*

10 **A*n* nēr-la*n*'-d'.** — 11 From. — 12 **Vȯ-ȧr,** to see.

13 **Nȯ-trȯm dȧ-fair',** our agent. Lit.: *Our man of business.*

14 **Ȧ-lā-vōō rŭv-nēr',** are you going to-return. Lit.: *Go you,* etc.

15 **A*n* nā-zhēp'-t',** to (or *in*) Egypt. — 16 **Pŭ-tĕh'-tr'.**

17 **A*n* nȧ-zē'.** — 18 **Quel**=*what,* before a masculine singular noun; **Quelle** before a feminine singular noun.

* **Ȧ prȯ-pōd vȯ-ȧ-yȧzh';** about (*of*) travels.

---

*The English exercises should be translated and written into French; but also treated conversationally in the class-room. (For Self-Study, see **Directions,** before **Part I.**)*

## EXERCISES.

### 1.—*ABOUT LUGGAGE.**

What do you want to do?[1]—Will you have your hand-baggage[2] carried?[3]—Yes, please[4] carry my baggage to the luggage-room.—I want to go there[5] to have[6] my heavy baggage[7] checked.

### 2.—*ABOUT A FRIEND'S ARRIVAL.*†

What[8] does he want to do when he gets[9] to Paris? —He wants to go straight to the bank.[10]—After that,[11] he wants to go to the hotel.—To-morrow,[12] he wants to take a stroll about the city.[13]

---

**Aids to Translation.**

1 Lit.: What want you to-make?—2 **Vos petits colis, p'tē kò-lē'?**

3 Lit.: Will you make to-carry your small baggage?

4 **Veuillez (vû-yā).**

5 **Y aller,** lit.: there go; **ē à-lā'.** *Note:* **Y** is used for *there* when the name of the place has already been mentioned.

6 Lit.: To make check my heavy baggage.—**Pour faire enregistrer,** to have checked.

7 **Mes gros colis, mĕh grō kò-lē',** large parcels.

8 **Que.**—9 **En arrivant à Paris.**

10 **À la banque, à là ban'-k'.**—11 **Après cela, à-prĕh-s'là'.**

12 **Demain, dŭ-min'.**—13 **Faire une promenade en ville,** *or* **dans la ville; fair ün pròm-nàd'-an vēl',** *or* **dan là vēl'.**

* **À propos de bagages.**—† **À propos de l'arrivée d'un ami.**

### 3.—*TO TAKE A CAB.**

Cabman![1] Take me[2] to the Orleans Railway station.[3]—All right.[4] Get into (the)† carriage,[5] madam. —I want to catch[6] the two o'clock train.[7]—I can get there.[8]—Very well, drive fast.[9]

### 4.—*IN‡ THE DEPOT.*

At what time,[10] does the Versailles train start?[11]— The Versailles train starts at two o'clock, madam.— Please tell me where the tickets are taken.[12]—The tickets are taken at the second wicket[13] to (the) right. —Thank (you).—A first (class ticket),[14] please.[15] How much is it?[16]—Two francs.—All aboard for Versailles!

---

**Aids to Translation.**

1 **Cocher, kò-shā'.**— 2 **Menez-moi, mŭ-nā-mò-à'.**
3 To the railway station of Orleans (**Orléans**).— 4 Very well.
5 **En voiture (*an* vò-à-tür').**— 6 To catch, **attraper.**
7 The train of two o'clock; **de deux heures, dŭ dû zŭr'.**
8 There arrive, **y arriver.** See page 16, note 5.
9 *Go* fast, **allez vite (vēt').**
10 **À quelle heure (à kĕl ŭr').** Time (*of day*)=**heure.** (**À**=to *or* at.)
11 Lit.: Starts the train for V., **part le (pàr lŭ),** etc.
12 Lit.: Where one takes the tickets. See p. 15, 4th line.
13 **Deuxième guichet (dû-zē-ĕm—).**
14 See page 15, 8th line; also note 13.— 15 If you please.
16 **Combien est-ce? ko*n*-bē-i*n* nĕs'?**
* **Pour prendre un fiacre, pōōr pra*n*-dru*n* fē-à'-kr'.** Lit.: For to-take a cab.—When *to* has the force of *in order to*, in English, it is rendered by **pour,** in French.
† Words in parentheses are not to be translated.— ‡ **À.** Lit.: *At.*

### 5.—*SAME SUBJECT.*

Do you speak French?[1]—I speak it a little.[2]—Well, will you come with me to the baggage-room? I want to have my baggage registered for Brussels.[3] I can read[4] French,[5] but I do not speak it.[6]

What do you wish, gentlemen?†—My friend wants to have his baggage checked for Brussels.[7]—Please give me your ticket.—Here.[8]—Here is your baggage-check, sir. You have (for) two francs (worth) of overweight. Where do you want to go?[9]—I want (to) go to the waiting-room. Will you please tell me where the waiting[10]-room is?—Straight before you, sir.—Many thanks.[11]

What do you want to do?[12]—I want to have my hand-baggage[13] carried[14] to to the waiting-room.

---

#### Aids to Translation.

1 **Parlez-vous français, pår-lā-vōō fran-sĕh'?** Lit.: *Speak you French?*— 2 **Je le parle un peu, zhŭl pår-lun pû'.** Lit.: I *it* speak a little. **Le, la, l', and les** are used both as the article *the*, and the pronouns *him* (*it*), *her* (*it*), *them*.

3 Lit.: I want to-make to-register my baggage for B.

4 **Lire, lēr'.**— 5 Lit.: *The* (**le**) French.

6 **Je ne le parle pas, zhŭn lŭ pår'-l' pä'.** Lit.: I it speak not.

7 Lit.: Wants to-make to-register his (**son**) baggage for B.

8 **Voici.** Lit.: *Here-is.*— 9 Where will (*or rather*, wish) you to-go?

10 Please to-me tell (See p. 15, 4th line) where is the waiting-room?

11 **Merci bien (mĕr-sē bē-in').** Lit.: Thanks *well.*

12 What want (*or* wish) you to-do?— 13 Small parcels. See p. 17, 2d line.

14 I want to-make to-carry my.— † **Mĕs-yû'.**

*In the class-room, the following foreign text should be read aloud by the pupils, and then translated without the aid of the literal translation on opposite page. For pronunciation, see page 22.*

---

## LECTURE.[1]

### UN ÉTRANGER À PARIS.

L'ÉTRANGER.* — Eh bien; par où commencerons-nous notre tournée?

LE COURRIER. — Commençons par l'Élysée, puisque nous l'avons en face?

L'E. — Cet hôtel[2] est magnifique. Qui donc y demeure?

LE C. — Il appartenait autrefois à la Marquise de Pompadour.

— En vérité!

— Oui; — Plus tard, Murat l'habita jusqu'à son départ pour Naples. Napoléon de même[7] à plusieurs reprises, notamment après Waterloo; il y signa sa deuxième abdication. Le duc de Berry y demeurait quand[3] il fut assassiné. Louis Napoléon, l'occupa pendant trois ans. Enfin le chef du pouvoir exécutif, le maréchal Mac-Mahon y séjourna jusqu'au mois de février 1879. A l'heure où nous sommes, l'Élysée est la résidence de son successeur, M. Grévy.

---

[1] At first, a literal translation of these reading exercises will be given on pages opposite.

[2] **Hôtel** = hotel *or* mansion.

[3] Final *d* is carried on with the sound of *t*. Final *s* with the sound of *z*.

* **Étranger** = stranger *or* foreigner.

*For self-study, or preparation for the class-room, use the literal translation below, until the French text on opposite page can be reaa currently without its aid.*

---

## READING.

### A FOREIGNER IN PARIS.

THE STRANGER. — Well, (*by*)[4] where shall-we-begin our rounds?

THE COURIER. — (Let us)[5] commence by the Élysée, since we it have in front (of us).

THE ST. — That mansion is magnificent. Who *then* there lives?

THE C. — It belonged formerly to the Marquise de Pompadour.

— In truth!

— Yes. — Later[6] Murat it inhabited until his departure for Naples. Napoleon also at several intervals, notably after Waterloo. · He in-it signed his second abdication. The duc de Berry in-it[8] lived when he was assassinated. Louis Napoleon occupied it during three years. Finally, the chief of-the executive (*power*), the Marshal MacMahon in-it sojourned until the month of February, 1879. At the hour where we are,[9] the Elysée is the residence of his successor, Mr. Grévy.

---

[4] Words in italics and bracketed denote words (*or* forms) not used in English.

[5] Words in brackets, but not italicized, denote words (*or* forms) not used in French.

[6] Word for word, *more late.* — [7] Word for word, *of same*

[8] Y = there *or* in it. — [9] At the present time,

### *PRONUNCIATION OF THE PRECEDING READING EXERCISE.*

NOTE. — *The pupil should try to read the preceding French exercise as much as possible without the aid of the pronunciation given below. For this purpose, a study should be made of the chapter on* ***Pronunciation,*** *just preceding this* ***Part First.*** *Further on no pronunciation will be given, so as to exercise the pupil in reading without aid.*

---

### Un nā-tran-zhā′ à Pȧ-rē′.

**Lā-tran-zhā′.** — Ā bē-in′ pȧr ōō kȯ-man-sron′ nōō-nȯ′-tr′ tōōr-nā′?

**Lŭ kōō-rē-ā′.** — Kȯ-man-son′ pȧr lā-lē-zā′, pü-ēs′-k′ nōō lȧ-von′ zan fȧs′.

Sĕh tō-tĕl ĕh mȧ-ñē-fēk′. Kē donk ē dŭ-mŭr′?

Ēl ȧ-pȧr-tŭ-nĕh tō-trŭ-fȯ-ȧ′ zȧlȧ mȧr-kēz′ dŭ Pon-pȧ-dōōr′.

An vā-rē-tā′!

Wē′; — plü tȧr′ Mü-rȧ lȧ-bē-tȧ′ zhüs-kȧ son dā-pȧr pōōr Nȧ′-pl′. Nȧ-pȯ-lā-on′ dŭ mêm ȧ plü-zē-ŭr′ rŭ-prēz′, nȯ-tȧ-man′ tȧ-prĕh Wȧ-tĕr-lō′; ēl ē sē-ñȧ sȧ dŭ-zē-ēm ȧb-dē-kȧ sē-on′. Lŭ dük dŭ Bĕh-rē ē dŭ-mŭ-rĕh kan tēl fü tȧ-sȧ-sē-nā′. Lōō-ē′ Nȧ-pȯ-lā-on′, lȯ-kü-pȧ pan-dan′ trȯ-ȧ zan′. An-fin′ lŭ shĕf dü pōō-vo-ȧr′ ĕk-zā-kŭ-tēf′, lŭ mȧ-rā-shȧl′ dŭ Mȧk-mȧ-on′, ē sā-zhōōr-nȧ zhüs-kō mȯ-ä′ d′ fā-vrē-yā′ mēl′ ü-ē′-san-sȯ-ȧ-san-t′-dēz-nŭf′. A lŭr ōō nōō sȯm′, lā-lē-zā′ ĕh lȧ rā-zē-dans′ dŭ son sük-sĕh-sŭr′, Mȯs-yû′ Grā-vē′.

# PART I.

# THE ARRIVAL.

# L'ARRIVÉE.

## SECTION II.

1. IN AND OUT OF THE CUSTOM-HOUSE.
2. TO HAVE ANYTHING MADE OR DONE.
3. ARTICLES OF DRESS.
4. TO MAKE PURCHASES.
5. TO HAVE A HOUSE FURNISHED.
   A BONNET TRIMMED.
   LINEN LAUNDRIED.
6. A STROLL IN PARIS.

## II.

### FRENCH.

**1. Je veux d'abord faire visiter les bagages.**

Pourquoi devez[1]-vous faire visiter vos bagages?

Parce qu'on[2] ne visite pas les bagages des voyageurs pour Paris à la douane de Dieppe.[3]

C'est bien commode.

En effet.

---

**Note.—Study the "Forms and Uses**

---

**2. Où devons-nous aller en arrivant?**

Nous devons aller à la salle d'attente.

---

NOTES.

[1] From **devoir,** to owe, to *have to.*

[2] The French often use the active voice with **on** (*one, people, they*), instead of the passive as in English. This is especially the case, when the thing referred to is *customary,* as here. See opposite page, note 3.

[3] **Dē-ĕh'-p'** (see pronunciation of the word on opposite page). As already stated, these isolated consonants (in the pronunciation), when apostrophized, indicate that the syllable is merely to be *articulated,* the consonant being given a slight *breathing* or *vanishing* quality.

# II.

| PRONUNCIATION. | TRANSLATION. |
|---|---|
| 1. **Zhŭ vû dȧ-bor′ fair vē-zē-tā′ lĕh bȧ-gȧzh′.** | **I want, first, to have the baggage examined.**[1] |
| —— dŭ-vā′ vōō fair vē-zē-tā vō bȧ-gȧzh′? | Why must[2] you have your luggage examined? |
| Pȧr-skon′ n′ vē-zēt′ pä . . . dĕh vȯ-ȧ-yȧ-zhŭr′ pōōr Pȧ-rē′ ȧ lȧ dwȧn′ dŭ Dē-ĕh′-p′. | Because the baggage of passengers for Paris is not examined in the Dieppe custom-house.[3] |
| Sĕh bē-in′ kȯ-mȯd′. | That 's very convenient[4] |
| An nĕh-fĕh′. | Yes, indeed.[5] |

of the Article," parag. 1, 2, and 3, pages 457-8.

| | |
|---|---|
| 2. **ŌŌ dŭ-von′ nōō zȧ-lā an nȧ-rē-van′?** | **Where are we[6] to go when we arrive?** |
| —— ȧ lȧ sȧl dȧ-tan′-t′ [5] | We are to go to the waiting-room. |

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 I will first make to-examine the baggages.

2 Why owe you to-have, etc.

3 Because one examines not the baggages of the travelers for Paris, at the custom-house of Dieppe.

4 Well convenient.

5 In fact, *or* effect.

6 Where owe (*i. e.* are) we to go?

Pourquoi faire?[1]
Pour attendre qu'on ouvre.[2]

Que voulez-vous dire?

---

**3. On vient.**[3]
On vient ouvrir aux[4] voyageurs.

On vient ouvrir la salle d'octroi aux voyageurs.[4]

Nous devons entrer dans la salle d'attente.

Et attendre qu'on ouvre la salle d'octroi aux voyageurs.

---

**4. On vient maintenant.**
On vient ouvrir maintenant.
Georges, voulez-vous aller retenir une voiture?

Pendant que je fais visiter les bagages?

Voulez-vous aller retenir une voiture pendant que nous faisons visiter les bagages?

---

NOTES.

[1] **Pourquoi,** *why,* is really compounded of two words, **pour,** *for,* and **quoi,** *what.* **Pourquoi faire,** *why,* or rather, *for what to do?*

[2] That one (may) open.

[3] Indicative present of **venir,** *to come=one comes, is coming,* or *does come.*

[4] Compound of **à** and **les.**—**à** (*to*) and **les** (*the*) are never used together, but always compounded into **aux** (*to-the*).

| | |
|---|---|
| Pōōr-kó-á′ fair′? | What for?[1] |
| Pōōr á-tan′-dr′ kon nōō′-vr′. | To wait until they open to us.[2] |
| Kŭ vōō-lā′ vōō dēr′? | What do you mean?[3] |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **3. On vē-in′.** | **They come.**[4] |
| On vē-in tōō-vrēr ō vó-á-yá-zhŭr′. | They come[5] and open to passengers. |
| —— lá sál dók-tró-á′. | They come and open the examining-room[6] to passengers. |
| | We are to go into[7] the waiting-room. |
| Ā á-tan′-dr′ kon vē-ĕn ōō-vrēr′. | And wait until they come[8] and open the examining-room to passengers. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **4. On vē-in′ mint-nan′.** | **They are coming now.** |
| —— tōō-vrēr′. | They are coming now to open. |
| Zhórzh′, vōō-lā′ vōō zá-lā′ r′-tŭ-nēr ŭn vó-á-tŭr′? | George, will you go and get[9] a carriage? |
| Pan-dan′ kŭzh fĕh vē-zē-tā′. | While[10] I have the baggage examined? |
| —— pan-dank′ nōō fŭ-zon′. | Will you go and get a carriage while we have the baggage examined? |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] Why to do? — [2] For to-wait that (*i. e.* until) one (may) open.
[3] What will you to-say? — [4] One comes.
[5] One comes to-open to-the travelers.
[6] The room of toll. — [7] To-enter in.
[8] And to-wait that-one open. — [9] Go to-retain.
[10] While *that* (**pendant que**) I make to-visit, etc.

## 5. Entrons[1] dans la salle d'octroi.

Avez-vous quelque chose à déclarer?

Je n'ai rien à déclarer.

Veuillez ouvrir vos colis.

Qu'y a-t-il[2] dans cette malle?
Il y a[2] de la dentelle.
Cela est soumis à l'octroi.

Vous devez payer onze francs.

---

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **6. J'ai.** | **zhā.** | **I have.** |
| Tu as. | tü à'. | Thou hast. |
| Il a. | ēl à'. | He has.[3] |
| Nous avons. | nōō zà-von'. | We have. |
| Vous avez. | vōō zà-vā'. | You have. |
| Ils ont. | ēl zon'. | They have.[3] |

---

## 7. Monsieur[5] veut-il[6] faire porter ses bagages à la voiture?

---

NOTES.

[1] Imperative of **entrer,** to go in. See opposite page, note 1.

[2] **Il y a,** word for word, = *it there has;* **y a-t-il?** word for word, = *there has it?* making no sense in English. These idiomatic expressions must be taken in their entire meaning respectively, *there is*, and *is there?*

[3] **Elle a,** she has; **elles ont,** they have, feminine.

[4] There being no neuter gender in French, **il** and **elle** also mean *it*.

[5] Avoid saying **mô-*sh*yû,** but pronounce distinctly **môs-yû',** not allowing the **s** to run into **yû** with any sound of **h** whatever.

[6] As seen here, the French instead of having the verb precede the noun to ask a question, have the noun first and use a pronoun after the verb. Thus, *Monsieur will he?* instead of *Will Monsieur?*

| | |
|---|---|
| **5. An-tron′ dan là sàl dòk-trò-à′.** | **Let us go[1] into the examination-room.** |
| A-vā′ vōō kĕl-kŭ shōz à dā-klà-rā′? | Have you anything[2] dutiable? |
| Zhŭ nā rĕ-in′ nà dā-kla-rā′. | I have nothing subject to duty. |
| Vŭ-yā zōō-vrēr vō kò-lē′. | Will you please open your baggage?[3] |
| Kē yă-tēl dan sĕt màl′?* | What have you[4] in this trunk? |
| Ēl ē yà d′ là dan-tēl′. | There is[5] some lace in it. |
| Sŭ-là ĕh sōō-mē zà lòk-trò-à′. | That is dutiable.[6] |
| —— pā-yā′ onz fran′. | You must pay eleven francs |

---

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **6. Ai-je?** | **ā-zh′.** | **Have I?** |
| As-tu? | à-tü′. | Hast thou? |
| A-t-il?† | à-tēl′. | Has he?‡ |
| Avons-nous? | à-von nōō′. | Have we? |
| Avez-vous? | à-vā vōō′. | Have you? |
| Ont-ils? | on-tēl′. | Have they? |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **7. Mòs-yû′ vû tēl fair por-tā sĕh bà-gàzh à là vò-à-tür′?** | **Will the gentleman have his baggage carried to the carriage?** |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] Enter (we). — [2] Something to declare.

[3] Your packages. — [4] What is there in that trunk?

[5] There (*il*) in-it *is* of the (*i.e. some*) lace. — [6] Subject*ed* to, etc.

* The apostrophe, when found after a whole word (like **màl′**), or an undivided syllable (like **yàzh′** in **vò-à-yàzh′**), shows that there are really two syllables represented. The *accented* syllable is the one which precedes the final consonant *l*, *zh*, etc.; but the *l*, *zh*, etc. (representing the final and so-called mute syllable) is to be fully articulated, and not arrested as quickly as in **ēl**, for instance. See PRONUNCIATION.

† The *t* is inserted to avoid the coming together of **a** and **i.**

‡ **A-t-elle?** has she? **ont-elles?** have they? feminine.

Attendez un[1] moment.
Georges, avez vous[3] retenu une[2] voiture?

Oui, Monsieur.
Très bien.—Facteur, voici mon bulletin de bagage.[4]
Veuillez[5] porter mes bagages à la voiture.

---

**Note.—Study the " Contractions of**

---

## 8. Enfin nous voilà en voiture.

Enfin, nous voilà en route pour l'hôtel.
Je brûle d'y[6] arriver.
Je veux me reposer ce matin.

Parce que, cet après-midi, je veux aller chez un tailleur.
Pourquoi faire?

---

## 9. Je veux faire faire une robe.

Comment! Déjà?

---

### NOTES.

1 Masculine form of **a.**

2 Feminine form of **a.**

3 The French have no word for *do* or *did*. *Did you* is (usually) rendered by *have you?* **avez-vous?**

4 They have no *adjective use* of nouns in French. Instead of saying *baggage-check*, they have to say *check of baggage.*

5 Imperative of **vouloir,** *to will.* Hence *Will*, or *Be willing to.*

6 *There* is usually rendered by **là.** But when the place has already been named, **y** is used instead.

| | |
|---|---|
| A-ta*n*-dā′ zu*n* mȯ-ma*n*′. | Wait a moment. |
| —— ȧ-vā vo͞o r'tŭ-nü ün* vȯ-ȧ-tür'? | George, did you engage a carriage? |
| Wē, mȯs-yȗ′. | Yes, sir. |
| Trĕh bē-i*n*′.— Fȧk-tŭr′ vȯ-ȧ-sē′ mo*n* bül-ti*n*′ . . . | Very well. — Porter, here is my baggage-check. |
| Vŭ-yā′ . . . | Please[1] carry my baggage to the carriage. |

**the Article," page 458, parag. 4 and 5.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **8. A*n*-fi*n*′ no͞o vȯ-ȧ-lȧ′ a*n* vȯ-ȧ-tür'.** | **At last we are[2] in the carriage!** |
| —— a*n* ro͞ot po͞or lō-tĕl′. | At last we are on our way[3] to the hotel! |
| Zhŭ brül′ dē ȧ-rē-vā′. | I am so anxious[4] to get there. |
| —— vȗ mŭ r'pō-zā′ s'mȧ-ti*n*′. | I want to rest[5] this morning. |
| —— sĕt ȧ-prĕh-mē-dē′ zhŭ vȗ zȧ-lā shā-zu*n* tä-yŭr′. | Because this afternoon I want to go to[6] a tailor's. |
| | What for?[7] |

| | |
|---|---|
| **9. Zhŭ vȗ fair fair ün rȯ′-b'.** | **I want to have a dress made.[8]** |
| Kȯ-ma*n*′. Dā-zhȧ′? | What[9]! already? |

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

[1] Will to-carry, etc. — [2] Finally, us there-is in carriage.
[3] Us there-is on way. — [4] Burn to there arrive.
[5] Myself repose. — [6] To-the-house-of (chez) a tailor.
[7] Why (*or* for what) to-do. — [8] I wish to-make to-make a dress.
[9] How!

* Let it be remembered that all consonants in the pronunciation (except **n**) are to be pronounced just as in English. The **n** in **ü*n*** has the hard nasal sound, but **n** in **ün** has all the elasticity of the English letter.

Mais oui. Je dois.
Je ne reste que huit jours[1] à Paris.

Je n'ai pas de temps à perdre.

---

**10. Chez quel tailleur allez-vous[2] la faire faire?**

Je vais la faire faire chez un tailleur du[3] Boulevard des[4] Italiens.

Votre sœur ne veut-elle pas[6] aussi faire faire une robe?

---

**11. Elle voudrait faire faire une robe de soie.[5]**

Chez quelle couturière voudrait-elle la faire faire?

Chez Monsieur Worth.
Mais Monsieur Worth n'est pas une couturière.

---

NOTES.

[1] The French say **huit jours** (*eight days*), or **une semaine,** for *a week.*

[2] The French have no such form as *I am going, are you going*, they can only say *I go, go you.*

[3] **Du,** compound of **de** (*of*) and **le** (*the*), which are never used together, but always compounded into **du** (*of the*).

[4] **Des,** compound of **de** (*of*) and **les** (*the*, plural), which are never used together, but always compounded into **des** (*of the*, plural).

[5] The French have no adjective use of nouns. Hence, they cannot say a *silk dress*, a *gold ring;* but are reduced to say a *dress of silk*, a *ring of gold.*

[6] The French have no auxiliary *do.* Hence they must employ the simple form of question instead. *Does not your sister want* is to be expressed by *your sister wants she not*, **votre sœur ne veut-elle pas.**

| | |
|---|---|
| Mĕh wē′. Zhŭ dọ-á′. | Why, yes.[1] I have to. |
| Zhŭn rĕs′-t′ kŭ ü-ē′ zhōōr′ á Pá-rē′. | I only stay[2] a week in Paris. |
| Zh′ nā pä d′tan* zá pĕr′-dr′. | I have no time[3] to lose. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **10. Shā kĕl tä-yŭr′ á-lā vōō là fair fair′?** | **At what tailor's are you going to have it made?[4]** |
| Zh′ vĕh′. . . shā-zun tä-yŭr′ du bōōl-vár′ dĕh zē-tá-lē-in′. | I am going to have it made[5] at a tailor's on the Boulevard des Italiens. |
| Vò′-tr′ sŭr nŭ vû tĕl pä zō-sē′ fair fair ün rò′-b′? | Does not your sister also[6] want to have a dress made? |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **11. Ĕl vōō-drĕh fair fair ün ròb dŭ sò-á′.** | **She would like[7] to have a silk dress made.** |
| Shā kĕl kōō-tür-yair vōō-drĕh-tĕl . . . | At what dressmaker's would she want to have it made? |
| | At Worth's. |
| —— nĕh pá zün kōō-tür-yair′. | But Worth is not a *couturière.* |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

[1] But, yes. I owe (to).

[2] I stay only [**que** (literally, *that*) after a verb = *only*] eight days.

[3] I have not of (*i. e. any*) time.

[4] At-the-house (*or* shop) of (*chez*) what tailor go-you it to have made?

[5] I go (the French cannot say, *I am going*) it to-make to-make.

[6] Your sister wishes she not also to-make (*i. e.* to-cause) to-make a dress? — [7] She would (*like*); conditional of **vouloir**, to will or wish.

* Often pronounced **tan á pĕr′-dr′,** the *s* not being carried over. The French often avoid, in ordinary conversation, the carrying over of the final *s*, *x*, or *z* of a word in the singular, as it gives too much the impression of the plural, of which these letters are the signs. In fact, they often avoid the carrying over of other consonants than these, wherever it might seem harsh or affected.

C'est vrai. Je n'y[1] pensais pas.

C'est[2] un tailleur.

Mais c'est toujours la même chose.

Mais c'est bonnet blanc et blanc bonnet.

---

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 12. | **Je suis.** | **zhŭ sü-ē'.** | **I am.** |
| | Tu es. | tü ĕh'. | Thou art. |
| | Il est.* | ēl ĕh'. | He is. |
| | Nous sommes. | nōō sȯ'-m'. | We are. |
| | Vous êtes. | vōō zê'-t'. | You are. |
| | Ils sont.† | ēl son'. | They are. |

---

[1] **Y** = *there*, *to-it*, *about*, *it*, etc.

[2] **C'est,** that (*or* it) is.

* **Elle est,** she is.

† **Elles sont,** they are; feminine.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Sĕh-vrĕh′. Zh'nē pan-sĕh′ pä′.** | Of course. I did n't think.[1] |
| | He is[2] a tailor. |
| **—— tōō-zhōōr lȧ mêm shōz'.** | But it 's all the same.[3] |
| **—— bȯ-nĕh blan ā blan bȯ-nĕh′.** | But it 's six of one and half a dozen of the other.[4] |

---

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Suis-je?** | **sü-ē zh'.** | **Am I?** |
| Es-tu? | ĕh tü′. | Art thou? |
| Est-il? | ĕh tēl′. | Is he? |
| Sommes-nous? | sȯm nōō′. | Are we? |
| Êtes-vous? | êt vōō′. | Are you? |
| Sont-ils? | son tēl′. | Are they? |

---

1 That is true. I about-it thought not.
2 That is a tailor.
3 But it is always (*still*) the same thing.
4 Cap white and white cap.

## VOCABULAIRE.

### I.—IDIOMATIC AND OTHER PHRASES WITH "FAIRE."

| | |
|---|---|
| Faire des[1] frais (fair dĕh-frĕh'), | To go into expense. |
| Faire des[2] achats (dĕh zȧ-zhȧ'), | To make purchases. |
| Faire des[2] emplettes (dĕh za*n*-plĕt'), | To make (small) purchases; *or* To do shopping. |
| Faire un bon marché[3] (u*n* bo*n* mȧr-shā'), | To make a good bargain. |
| Acheter (ȧsh-tā'), | To buy. |
| Acheter à bon marché, | To buy cheap. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Chez la modiste**[4] (mȯ-dēs'-t'), | **At the milliner's.** |
| Chez le chemisier[5] (shāl shŭ-mē-zē-ā'), | At the furnishing store. |
| Chez quel cordonnier (kĕl kor-dȯ-nē-ā')? | At what shoemaker's? |

[1] Lit.: To-make some expenses.
[2] Lit.: *some* purchases (and *strictly*, *of-the* purchases).
[3] Lit.: a good *market*.
[4] Lit.: At-the-store-of (**chez**) the *modiste*.
[5] Lit.: At-the-store-of the shirt-maker.

## VOCABULARY.

### II.—IDIOMATIC USE OF "FAIRE" WITH VERBS.

| | |
|---|---|
| Faire arranger (à-ran-zhā'), | To have (anything) repaired. |
| Faire raccommoder (rà-kò-mò-dā'), | To have—mended. |
| Faire nettoyer (nĕh-tò-à-yā'), | To have—cleaned. |
| Faire secouer (sŭ-kōō-ā'), | To have—shaken. |
| Faire arracher (à-rà-shā'), | To have—pulled out. |
| Faire venir (vŭ-nēr'), | To call,[1] *that is*, to have (any one) come. |
| Faire voir (vò-àr'), | To show. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Dans ce magasin** (dan smà-gà-zin'), | **In that store.** |
| Dans quel magasin (kĕl mà-gà-zin')? | In what store? |
| Au bas de la ville[2] (ō bä d' là vēl'), | Down town. |
| Au haut de la ville (ō ō d' là vēl'), | Up town. |

[1] As, *to call a physician;* lit.: *to cause* (a physician) to come. Remember, however, that in French the noun comes last. Thus, *To have a physician come*, would be **Faire venir un médecin,** to have (*or* cause) to come a physician.

[2] Lit.: at-the bottom of the town (*or* city). At the top, etc.

## III.—LES HABILLEMENTS.[1]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Un chapeau** (shȧ-pō′), | **A hat (or bonnet).** |
| Des[2] souliers (dĕh sōō-lē-ā′), m., | Shoes. |
| Des[2] bottines (bȯ-tēn'), f., | High shoes; ladies' boots. |
| Des[2] bas (bä), m., | Stockings. |
| Des[2] bretelles (brŭ-tĕl'), f., | Suspenders. |
| Un jupon (zhü-po*n*′), | A petticoat. |
| Une robe de chambre (rȯb dŭ sha*n*′-br'), | A morning-gown. |
| Un manteau (ma*n*-tō′), | A cloak. |
| Un col (kȯl), | A collar. |
| Des manchettes (ma*n*-shĕt'), f., | Cuffs. |
| Un[1] habit (u*n* nȧ-bē′), | A coat. |
| Un habit noir (nȯ-ȧr′), | A dress coat. |
| Une redingote (rŭ-di*n*-gȯt′), | A frock coat. |
| Un pardessus (pȧr-dŭ-sü′), | An overcoat. |
| Un surtout (sür-tōō′), | An overcoat. |
| Un pantalon (pa*n*-tȧ-lo*n*′), | Pantaloons. |
| Un gilet (zhē-lĕh′), | A waistcoat. |
| Un caleçon (kȧl-so*n*′), | A pair of drawers. |
| Une chemise (ün shŭ-mēz'), | A shirt. |
| Le linge (li*n*zh'), | The linen. |

---

[1] (The) Clothing (**Lĕh zȧ-bē-yŭ-man′**).

[2] Lit.: of-the (meaning *some*) shoes. *Some* or *any* is often omitted from before the noun in English, but must always be used in French. English, *Have you any shoes?* or simply, *Have you shoes?* French, always, *Have you some* (des) *shoes?*

*To be learned by heart and recited orally. (For Self-Study, see* ***Directions,*** *before* ***Part I.****)*

## CONVERSATIONS.

### 1.—*POUR FAIRE DES EMPLETTES.**

Voulez-vous entrer avec moi[1] dans ce magasin?—Que voulez-vous acheter?—Je voudrais[2] acheter une paire de bottines pour ma petite fille[3] et des pantoufles pour moi.—Eh bien,[4] si vous voulez faire un bon marché, allez plutôt[5] dans ce magasin, de l'autre côté de la rue.[6]—Ma mère y a fait[7] un bon marché, hier.[8]—Qu'a-t-elle[9] acheté?—Elle a acheté de la broderie[10] pour jupons tout à fait[11] bon marché.—Eh bien allons-y.[12]

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

1 **À-vĕk mò-à',** with me.
2 **Zhŭ vōō-drĕh',** I would like.
3 **Mà p'tēt fē'-yŭ,** my little girl; **ma** = *my*, before a feminine noun in the singular. **Pan-tōō'-fl',** slippers.
4 **Ā bē-in',** very well.
5 **Plü-tō',** rather.
6 **Dŭ lō'-tr' kō-tā' d' là rü',** on the other side of the street.
7 My mother there has made.
8 **Ē-yĕr',** yesterday.
9 **Kà-tĕl àsh-tā',** what has she bought?
10 **Brò-drē',** embroidery for.
11 **Tōō tà-fĕh',** altogether, *very*.— 12 **À-lon-zē',** let us go there (y).
* To make purchases. Lit.: *For* to-make (*some*) purchases.

### 2.—*POUR FAIRE GARNIR UNE MAISON.**

Votre mère ne veut‿elle pas faire garnir sa[1] maison à neuf?[2]—Je crois que oui.[3] Mais‿elle ne voudrait pas faire beaucoup[4] de frais.—Dites-lui[5] donc d'aller chez mon tapissier.[6] Il vend[6] très bon marché.—Où est son magasin?—Rue du Faubourg Saint‿Antoine, numéro 125.[7]

### 3.—*POUR FAIRE GARNIR UN CHAPEAU.*†

Chez quelle modiste allez-vous faire faire votre nouveau[8] chapeau?—Chez Madame Renard.—Comment voulez-vous le faire garnir?[9]—Je veux le[10] faire garnir de rubans‿et de dentelles.[11]—Combien vous fait‿elle payer[12] vos chapeaux?—

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

1 **Sa**=his (*or* her) before a fem. noun beginning with a consonant.
2 **À nŭf′,** have her house furnished *anew.*
3 **K'wē′** (lit.: I think *that* yes), I think so.
4 **Bō-kōō′,** much *or* many. Lit.: many *of* expenses.
5 **Dēt lü‿ē′ do*n*′,** tell her *then*; *i. e.* please tell her.
6 **Mo*n* tȧ-pē-sē‿ā′,** my upholsterer.—**Ēl va*n*′,** he sells.
7 **Rü dü Fō-bōōr′ si*n*-ta*n*-tȯ‿ȧn', nü-mā-rō′ sa*n*-vi*n*t-si*n*k′.** Faubourg (*Suburb*) St. Antoine Street, number 125.— 8 **Nōō-vō′,** new.
9 **Kȯ-ma*n*′,** etc., how do you want to have it trimmed?
10 **Le**=him [*or* it, when standing for a masculine noun, as in this case (**chapeau**)]. **La**=her (*or* it, feminine).
11 **Dŭ rü-ba*n* zād da*n*-tĕl',** with ribbons and laces.
12 **Ko*n*-bē‿i*n*′ vōō fĕh-tĕl pā-yā′ vō shȧ-pō′,** how much does she charge you for your hats? Lit.: you makes she pay your hats?
* To have a house furnished.—† To have a bonnet trimmed.

Ah! dame,[1] cela dépend.[2] Mais elle fait payer très cher.[3] — Pourquoi n'allez-vous pas plutôt[4] chez ma modiste?

### 4.—*POUR FAIRE ARRACHER UNE DENT.*

Où allez-vous donc comme ça?[5] — Je vais me faire arracher une dent.[6] Veuillez me dire où je peux trouver un bon dentiste. — Allez donc chez mon dentiste, Rue Vivienne, numéro 63.[7] — Voudriez-vous y aller avec moi? — Je veux bien.[8] — Eh bien, allons-y.

Sonnez![9] — On vient. — Le dentiste est-il chez lui?[10] — Non, messieurs. Il n'est pas chez lui. Mais il va rentrer dans un instant.[11] Donnez-vous la peine[12] d'entrer.

---

#### Pronunciation and Translations.

[1] **Ä dåm′,** Well, now. Only used as an exclamation.

[2] **S'lå dā-pan′,** that depends.

[3] She makes pay very dear. (*Anglice*, she charges very high.)

[4] **Plü-tō′,** rather. — [5] **Kóm sȧ′,** like that.

[6] **Ŭn dan′,** a tooth. I am going to have a tooth pulled. Lit.: I go to-myself to-make to pull a tooth.

[7] **Rü Vē-vē-ĕn', nü-mā-rō sȯ-å-sant-trȯ-ä′.**

[8] Lit.: I will *well.* **Bien** expresses willingness and consent. **Je veux** = I *will*, wish, want. **Je veux bien** = yes, I will, I am willing.

[9] **Sȯ-nā′,** ring. — [10] **Ĕh tēl shā lü-ē′?** is he at home?

[11] **Ēl vȧ ran-trā′, dan zun nin-stan′,** he will be-in-again, in an instant. Lit.: he goes to-come-in — .

[12] **Dȯ-nā vōō lȧ pĕn dan-trā′,** please come in. Lit.: give yourself the trouble to enter. **Entrer,** to come in; **rentrer,** to come in (again).

---

*To be translated and written into French, then recited in the class.*
*(For Self-Study, see* **Directions** *before* **Part I.**)

## EXERCISES.

### 1.—*TO MAKE PURCHASES.*

Are you not going[1] down town?—What for?—To[2] do some shopping?—No. I would like to buy some[3] clothing, but my husband[4] does not want to go into any expense, now.

### 2.—*SAME SUBJECT.*

Please tell me where I can buy a good overcoat, cheap.—Go to the[5] Belle Jardinière.†—They are[6] very cheap.—I bought[7] a frock coat, very cheap, in that store.—Will you go there with me?—Yes, I will.[8]

### 3.—*TO HAVE LINEN LAUNDRIED.**

I would like to have some linen laundried.[9]—Please tell me where I can find a good laundress.[10]—I can

---

**Aids to Translation.**

[1] **N'allez-vous pas?** — [2] **Pour, pōōr** (meaning *in order to*).
[3] **Des.** — [4] **Mon mari, mo*n* mâ-rē'.**
[5] **Allez à la.** — [6] **On** (one, people, they) **vend, o*n* va*n*'.**
[7] **J'ai acheté.** Lit.: I have bought. — [8] **Oui, je veux bien.**
[9] **Faire blanchir du linge, bla*n*-shēr dü li*n*zh'.**
[10] **Trouver une bonne blanchisseuse, trōō-vā' ün bòn bla*n*-shē-sûz'.**
* **Pour faire blanchir du linge.**
† The "Beautiful Gardener," name of a large clothing store in Paris.

recommend our laundress to you.[1] — Very well. Where does she live?[2] — She lives in Belleville, in Lilac street.[3] I have forgotten the number.[4] But she is coming[5] this morning. I can send her to your room.[6] — If you please.[7]

#### 4. — *SAME SUBJECT.*

Good morning, Madam.[8] — Good morning, ma'am.[8] — I am the laundress.[9] The porter told me you would like to have some washing done.[10] — Yes, I would like to have two dozen pieces[11] washed. — How much[12] do you charge[13] a dozen. — That depends.[14]

---

**Aids to Translation.**

1 **Vous recommander notre,** to you recommend our —.

2 **Où demeure-t-elle?** where lives-she?

3 **Rue des Lilas, rü dĕh lē-lä'.** No adjective use of nouns in French. Cannot say, Lilac Street. Must say, Street of-the Lilacs.

4 **J'ai oublié le numéro.**

5 **Elle vient, ce matin.**

6 **L'envoyer à votre chambre.** Lit.: her send, etc.

7 **S'il vous plaît, sēl vōō plĕh'.**

8 **Bonjour, Madame, bon-zhōōr', mà-dàm'.**

9 **Je suis la,** I am the.

10 **Le concierge m'a dit que** (to-me has told *that*), **lŭ kon-sē-airzh'.** — **Faire blanchir** (*or* **laver**) **du linge.**

11 **Deux douzaines de pièces, dû dōō-zĕn dŭ pē-ĕs'.**

12 **Combien, kon-bē-in'.**

13 **Faites-vous payer la douzaine** (lit.: *the* dozen), **fêt vōō pā-yā'.** Lit.: make you pay.

14 **Cela dépend, s'-là dā-pan'.**

---

*To be read by means of the literal translation opposite, then without it, in preparation for reading aloud and translating in class. Pronunciation on page 46.*

## LECTURE.

### JARDIN DU PALAIS-ROYAL.

— Eh bien, nous voici devant[1] le Palais-Royal.

— Quel est donc ce théâtre, à côté?

— C'est le Théâtre-Français, le théâtre classique de la France. — Mais entrons au Palais-Royal. Tenez,[2] nous voici dans la galerie d'Orléans.[3] C'est la plus belle des quatre qui entourent le jardin.

— Quelle est donc cette musique?

En été, il y a musique militaire, l'après-midi, dans le jardin du Palais-Royal.

— Voyez ces dames, assises ça et là. Elles sont en toilette, mais elles travaillent!

— Oui. Elles font quelque ouvrage de broderie ou de fine couture et écoutent la musique, pendant que leurs enfants jouent au cerceau, à la corde, aux billes, à la balle — que sais-je?

— Regardez cet enfant! Il court trop près du bassin. Il va tomber dans l'eau!

— Pas de danger. Tenez![2] le voilà déjà près des statues.

— Et ces beaux magasins de bijouterie, sous les arcades, ces gens qui passent, tout ce va et vient! Quel spectacle animé!

---

[1] **Devant** = *before*, in point of *place*. **Avant,** in point of *time*. Ex.: *He arrived before the palace before me* = **Il est arrivé *devant* le palais *avant* moi.** — [2] Lit.: Hold! — [3] The Palace has four arcades forming a vast parallelogram and surrounding the garden.

*For Self-Study, should be read by means of the literal translation, then without it, and when thoroughly understood, read aloud in French.*

## READING.[1]

### GARDEN OF THE PALAIS-ROYAL.

—Well, we here-are before the Palais-Royal.

—What is (*then*) that theater, by (the) side (of it)?

—That is the Théâtre-Français, the classical theater of France.—But (let us) go-in[2] to-the Palais-Royal. See, we here-are in the gallery of Orleans. It is the most beautiful of the four which surround the garden.

—What is (*then*) that music?

—In (the) summer, there is military music, (in) the afternoon, in the garden of-the Palais-Royal.

—See those ladies, seated here and there. They are in toilet, but they are-working!

—Yes. They do some work of embroidery or fine sewing and listen (to) the music, while (*that*) their children play (*to-the*) hoop, (*to-the*) rope, (*to-the*) marbles, (*to-the*) ball—what (do) I know?[3]

—Look (at) that child. He is-running too near *of-*the basin. He is-going to-fall in the water!

—No danger. See! he there-is already near of-the statues.

—And those beautiful stores of jewelry under the arcades, those people who pass, all that going and coming![4] What (an) animated spectacle!

---

[1] As already stated, a literal translation of the readings will be given through part of this work, to assist the pupil in obtaining a closer conception of the peculiar French forms.—[2] Lit.: Go-*we*-in.

[3] *Angl.:* I don't know what all.—[4] Strictly: *that 'comes' and 'goes'*.

### *PRONUNCIATION OF READING ON PAGE 44.*

## Zhȧr-di*n* dü Pȧ-lĕh-rȯ-ȧ-yȧl′.

Ā bē-i*n*′, nōō vȯ-ȧ-sēd-va*n* l'Pȧ-lĕh-rȯ-ȧ-yȧl′.

Kĕl ĕh do*n* sŭ tā-ä′-tr', ȧ kō-tā′?

Sĕl tā-ä′-tr' Fra*n*-sĕh′, lŭ tā-ä′-tr' klȧ-sēk dŭ lȧ Fra*n*′-s'. —Mĕh za*n*-tro*n* zō Pȧ-lĕh-rȯ-ȧ-yȧl′. Tŭ-nā′, nōō vȯ-ȧ-sē da*n* lȧ gȧl-rē dor-lā-a*n*′. Sĕh lȧ plü bĕl dĕh kȧ′-tr' kē a*n*-tōōr lŭ zhȧr-di*n*′.

Kĕl ĕh do*n* sĕt mü-zēk'?

A*n* nā-tā′, ĕl ē yȧ mü-zēk mē-lē-tair', lȧ-prĕh mē-dē′, da*n* l'zhȧr-di*n* dü Pȧ-lĕh-rȯ-ȧ-yȧl′.

Vȯ-ȧ-yā sĕh dȧm zȧ-sēz, sȧ ā lȧ′. Ĕl so*n*-ta*n* tȯ-ȧ-lĕt', mĕh zĕl trȧ-vȧ′-yŭ!

Wē. Ĕl fo*n* kĕl-kōō-vrȧzh dŭ brȯ-drē ōō dŭ fēn kōō-tür ā ā-kōōt lȧ mü-zēk', pa*n*-da*n*-k lŭr za*n*-fa*n* zhōō'-tō sĕr-sō, ȧ lȧ kor′-d', ō bē′-yŭ, ȧ lȧ bȧl'—kŭ sĕh′-zh'.

Rŭ-gȧr-dā sĕh-ta*n*-fa*n*′! Ēl kōōr trȯ prĕh dü bȧ-si*n*′. Ēl vȧ to*n*-bā da*n* lō′.

Päd da*n*-zhā′. Tŭ-nā′. Lŭ vȯ-ȧ-lȧ dā-zhȧ prĕh dĕh stȧ-tü'.

Ā sĕh bō mȧ-gȧ-zi*n*d[1]-bē-zhōōt-rē', sōō lĕh zȧr-kȧd', sĕh zha*n* kē päs', tōō sŭ vȧ ā vē-i*n*′! Kĕl spēk-tȧ-klȧ-nē-mā′!

---

[1] Remember that all consonants in the pronunciation (except *h*) are to be sounded.

# PART I.

## THE ARRIVAL.

## L'ARRIVÉE.

### SECTION III.

1. **IN AND OUT OF THE CUSTOM-HOUSE.**
2. **IN A CARRIAGE.**
3. **ABOUT TRAVELING, DRIVING, ETC.**
4. **CONCERNING du, de la, de l', and des.**
5. **IN A RESTAURANT.**
6. **TO GO TO A STORE.**
7. **THE TUILERIES AND CHAMPS-ÉLYSÉES.**
8. **THE BEGINNING OF LETTERS.**

# III.

## FRENCH.

**1. Et alors prendre[1] un fiacre.**

Monsieur Vogeli ne veut-il pas prendre un fiacre?

Mais oui.

Il est sorti[2] de la gare en arrivant.

Il est allé[2] nous[3] retenir un fiacre tout de suite en arrivant.

---

**2. Ne l'avez-vous pas vu depuis?**

Non. Mais, le voici.

Eh bien! Nous avez-vous retenu un fiacre?

Mais oui.

Il nous attend à l'entrée de la gare.

El bien! Sortons.[4]

---

### NOTES.

[1] For the *liaison*, or binding of words together, see PRONUNCIATION.

[2] Verbs of motion like **sortir,** *to go out,* **aller,** *to go,* **venir,** *to come,* take the auxiliary *to be* instead of *to have.* See LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[3] As already seen in preceding sentences, pronoun-objects [that is, pronouns (words standing for nouns) such as *me, thee, him, her, us, you, them; to me, to the,* etc., which are at the same time *objects* of the verb] are placed *before* the verb in French. *He has gone to-retain us a carriage = He has gone us to-retain a carriage.*

[4] Imperative of **sortir,** to go out.

# III.

| PRONUNCIATION. | TRANSLATION. |
|---|---|
| **1. Ā à-lor pran-drun fē-àkr'.** | **And then take a cab.** |
| —— vû-tēl pä pran-drun fē-àkr'? | Does not Mr. Vogeli want[1] to take a cab? |
| Mĕh wē'. | Why, certainly.[2] |
| Ēl ĕh sor-tē d' là gär'. | He went out of[3] the depot (as soon) as he got off (the train). |
| Ēl ĕh tà-lā nōō r'tŭ-nēr . . . tōōd sü-ēt an nà-rē-van'. | He went to get us a cab just as soon as he got here.[4] |
| **2. Nŭ là-vā-vōō pä vü dŭ-pü-ē'?** | **Have you not seen him[5] since?** |
| —— lŭ vò-à-sē'. | No. But, here he is.[6] |
| A bē-in'! Nōō zà-vā-vōō r'tŭ-nü un fē-àkr'. | Well! Did you get us a cab?[7] |
| | Yes, I have. |
| Ēl nōō zà-tan' à lan-trā' d'là gär'. | It is waiting[8] for us at the entrance. |
| —— sor-ton'. | Well! Let us go (*out*).[9] |

### LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 Mr. Vogeli will he not—?— 2 But yes.

3 He *is* (*i. e.* has) gone-out.

4 He *is* (*i. e.* has) gone *for*-us to retain a cab immediately on arriving.

5 Him have you not seen since?

6 No. But, him see-here.

7 Eh well! *For*-us have you retained—?

8 It us awaits at the entrance of the depot.

9 Go (*we*) out.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **3. Je parle.** | **zhŭ pȧr′-l'** | **I speak.** |
| Tu parles. | tü " | Thou speakest. |
| Il parle.* | ēl " | He speaks. |
| Nous parlons. | nōō pȧr-lo*n*'. | We speak. |
| Vous parlez. | vōō pȧr′-lā′. | You " |
| Ils parlent.* | ēl pȧr′-l'. | They " |

---

**4. Non; je dois.**[1]

Non; nous devons garder le numéro.

Nous devons garder le numéro et retourner à la salle d'attente.

Pourquoi faire?

Pour attendre qu'on vienne[2] ouvrir la salle d'octroi.

Nous devons faire visiter les bagages.

Ah, oui. C'[3]est vrai.

Allons[4] à la salle d'attente.

Allons-y.

---

**5. Facteur, veuillez porter nos[5] bagages à la voiture.**

C'est fait, messieurs.

---

**NOTES.**

[1] Indicative present of **devoir,** *to owe*, or *have to.*

[2] Subjunctive of **venir,** *to come.* — [3] Abbreviation of **ce,** *this* or *that.*

[4] Imperative of **aller,** *to go.* Lit.: go *we!* The French have no auxiliary such as *Let.* They use the simple verb form for the imperative: **Allons,** go-*we!* N. B. — The word *we* is not in the French form, but is expressed by the termination of the first person plural, **ons.**

[5] **Nos** = *our* before a plural noun. **Notre,** before a singular noun.

* **Elle parle,** she speaks; **elles parlent,** they speak; feminine.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **3. Est-ce que je parle?** * | | **Do I speak?** |
| Parles-tu? | pȧr′-l’ tü. | Dost thou speak? |
| Parle-t-il? † | pȧr-l’ tēl′. | Does he " |
| Parlons-nous? | pȧr-lo*n*′ nōō′. | Do we " |
| Parlez-vous? | pȧr′-lā′ vōō′. | Do you " |
| Parlent-ils? † | pȧr′-l’ tēl′. | Do they " |

---

**4. No*n*′ zhŭ dȯ-ȧ′.** — **No; I must.**[1]

Nōō dŭ-vo*n*′ gȧr-dā′ l’nü-mā-rō′. — No; we must keep the number (of the cab).

—— r’tōōr-nā′. — We must keep the number and go back to the waiting-room.

Why so? [2]

Pōōr ȧ-ta*n*′-dr’ ko*n* vē-ĕn ōō-vrēr lȧ sȧl dȯk-trȯ-ȧ′. — To wait until they come and open the examining-room.

We must have the baggage examined.

Ȧ wē′. Sĕh vrĕh′. — That ’s so.[3]

Ȧ-lo*n*-zȧ . /. — Let us go[4] to the waiting-room.

Ȧ-lo*n*-zē′. — Let us go there.[5]

---

**5. Fȧk-tür′ vû-yā′ por-tā′ nō bȧ-gȧzh’ . . .** — **Porter, please carry our baggage to the carriage.**

Sĕh fĕh, mĕs-yû′. — That ’s all,[6] gentlemen.

---

**LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.**

[1] I *owe to*, have to.
[2] Why to-do? — [3] Ah, yes. That is true.
[4] Go-we to ——.
[5] Go-we there. — [6] That is done.
* Is it that I speak? used instead of **Parlé-je.** Pron., **ĕs-kŭzh′ pȧr′-l’?**
† **Parle-t-elle,** does she speak? **parlent-elles?** do they speak? feminine.

Facteur, voilà vingt sous de pourboire.

Merci, Monsieur.
Cocher! Au Grand[1] Hôtel.
Très bien! Montez, Messieurs

---

**6. Attendez! Il y a[2] encore deux dames.**

Il y a deux dames à venir.

Ah! Les voilà.
Dépêchez-vous donc, Mesdames.

Montez vite.
Nous avons bien le temps.
Mais non. J'ai une faim de loup.

Je brûle d'arriver à l'hôtel.

Je veux déjeuner tout de suite en arrivant.

---

**Note.—Study the "six necessary tenses" of**

---

**7. Cocher! Brûlez le pavé!**
Prenez garde!
Qu'y a-t-il?[3]

---

NOTES.

[1] Final **d** is carried over with the sound of **t**.

[2] **Il y a** cannot be rendered even in poor English so as to make sense. It must be taken bodily as the idiomatic equivalent of *there is* and *there are*.— [3] **Il y a,** there is; **y a-t-il** (euphonic **t**), is there? **qu'y a-t-il?** what is there?

| | |
|---|---|
| Fȧk-tŭr′, vȯ-ȧ-lȧ vi*n* sōōd′ pōōr-bȯ-ȧr′. | Here are twenty cents[1] for you, porter. |
| Mĕr-sē′, mȯs-yû′. | Thank you, sir. |
| Ō gra*n* tō-tĕl′. | Cab! To the Grand Hôtel. |
| Mo*n*-tā′. | Very well Get in,[2] gentlemen. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **6. Ȧ-ta*n* dā′! Ēl ē yȧ a*n*-kor′ dû dȧm′.** | **Wait! There are two ladies yet.[3]** |
| Ēl ē yȧ dû dȧm zȧ v′nĕr′. | There are two ladies to come yet.[4] |
| Ä! lĕh vȯ-ȧ-lȧ′ | Here they are.[5] |
| Dā-pĕh-shā′ vōō do*n*, Mĕh-dȧm′. | Make haste,[6] ladies. |
| Mo*n*-tā′ vĕt′. | Get in, quick! |
| Nōō zȧ-vo*n* bē-i*n*′ l′ta*n*′. | We have plenty time.[7] |
| Zhā ün fi*n* dŭ lōō′. | No, indeed.[8] I am as hungry as a bear.[9] |
| Zhü brül dȧ-rē-vā′. | I am anxious[10] to get to the hotel. |
| —— tōōd sü-ēt′. | I want to have my breakfast as soon as I get there. |

---

**Avoir** (affirmatively), page 476.

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **7. Kȯ-shā′ brü-lā l′pȧ-vā′.** | **Cab! Go just as fast as you can!** |
| Prŭ-nā gȧrd′. | Take care! |
| Kē yȧ-tēl′? | What is the matter?[11] |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] There are (see-there) twenty cents *of tip.* — [2] Mount.
[3] There are yet two ladies. — [4] There are two ladies to come.
[5] Ah! Them see-there. — [6] Despatch *yourselves* (make despatch)!
[7] We have *well* the time. — [8] But no.
[9] I have a hunger of wolf. — [10] I burn. — [11] What is there?

Les chevaux vont[1] prendre le mors aux dents.

Arrêtez!
Dites au cocher d'arrêter.
Dites au cocher de ne pas[2] aller si vite.

Cocher! N'allez[3] pas si vite.
Ces dames ont peur.
Mais prenez le plus court.

---

**Note.—Study the "5 necessary tenses" of Avoir,**

---

## 8. Qu'avez-vous?

J'ai mal au cœur.
Je ne peux pas aller en arrière comme ça[4] sans avoir mal au cœur.

Alors, prenez ma place.
Mais j'ai peur que vous, vous ne[5] preniez[6] mal au cœur.
Un homme! Allons donc!
Merci. Vous êtes bien aimable.

---

NOTES.

1 The French cannot say, *The horses are going*, having no progressive form. They can only say, *The horses go.*

2 **Ne pas. Pas** is *generally* placed *before* the *infinitive;* although, elsewhere, it follows the verb.

3 Not having any auxiliary *do*, the French cannot say, *Do not go*, but only, *Go not.*

4 An abbreviation of **cela;** often used.

5 After certain restrictive words and locutions, such as *I fear*, *lest*, etc., **ne** is used after **que.** It has much the same force as *lest* in English. As if we said, here, "I fear *lest* you take sick."

6 Subjunctive of **prendre,** *to take.* The subjunctive is sometimes used after **que.** Explanation later on.

| | |
|---|---|
| Lĕh sh'vō von pran-dr'* lŭ mor ō dan'. | The horses are going[1] to run away. |
| Å-rĕh-tā'. | Stop! |
| Dēt zō kŏ-shā' dȧ-rĕh-tā'. | Tell[2] the driver to stop. |
| —— dŭ n'pä zȧ-lā' sē vēt'. | Tell the driver not to go so fast. |
| | Cabman! Do not go so fast.[3] |
| Sĕh dȧm zon pŭr'. | The ladies are frightened.[4] |
| Prŭ-nā l'plü kōōr'. | But take the shortest way.[5] |

(interrogatively), page 477.

| | |
|---|---|
| **8. Kȧ-vā vōō'?** | **What is the matter with you[6]?** |
| Zhā mȧl ō kŭr'. | I am sick[7] at my stomach. |
| Zhŭn pû pä zȧ-lā an nȧ-rē-air kȯm sȧ san zȧ-vŏ-ȧr'. | I cannot ride backward like that without being sick.[8] |
| Prŭ-nā mȧ plȧs'. | Then, take my place. |
| Pŭr kŭ vōō, vōō n' prŭ-nē-ā' mȧl ō kŭr'. | But I fear *you*[9] might get sick. |
| Un nȯm'! Å-lon don'! | A man! The idea![10] |
| Mĕr-sē'! Vōō zêt bē-in' nĕh-mȧ'-bl'. | Thank you. You are very kind. |

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 The horses go to-take the bit in-the teeth. — 2 Tell to-the.
3 Go not so fast. — 4 These ladies have fear.
5 But take the more short.
6 What have you? — 7 I have ill (-ness) at-the heart.
8 I cannot go in-rear without to-have ill (-ness) at-the heart.
9 I have fear that you, you may-take, etc. Notice the emphasis expressed in French by the repetition of the word **vous,** instead of strongly accenting it as in English.
10 *Let us go then!* An exclamation answering to, *Well, now, the idea!* etc.
* Let it be remembered that, in this pronunciation, final syllables followed by the apostrophe are not to be pronounced as full syllables, but to be given only the breathing quality of the consonant.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ...e je peux? § | | **Can I?** |
| | pû tü'. | **Canst thou?** |
| | pû tĕl'. | **Can he?** |
| ...ous? | pōō-von'-nōō. | **Can we?** |
| ...us? | pōō-vā'-vōō'. | **Can you?** |
| ...ls? ‡ | pŭv tĕl'. | **Can they?** |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| nōō zē vò-à-là'! | **Well, here we are!** [1] |
| ...lon'. | Let us get out.[2] |
| ...-dā'. | Come out, ladies.[3] |
| ...in' vōō dò-àzh'? [5] | Cab! What is my fare? [4] |
| ...fran', mòs-yû'. | Two francs, sir.[6] |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

...ally, us there see-there.
...scend (we)!
...escend (ye) my ladies!
...ow-much to-you owe I?
See preceding page, note *.
That is two francs.

*The following vocabulary is to be learned by heart.*

## VOCABULAIRE.

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **En chemin de fer,** | **With the cars; by rail.** |
| En voiture (vò-à-tür'), | In a carriage. |
| En traîneau (trĕh-nō'), | In a sleigh. |
| À pied (à pē-ā'), | On foot. |
| À cheval (à sh'vàl'), | On horseback. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Faire un tour en chemin de fer,** | **To take a railway trip.** |
| Faire un tour en voiture, | To take a drive; *or* go out driving. |
| " " " en traîneau, | To take a sleighride; *or* go out sleighing. |
| " " " à pied, | To take a walk. |
| " " " à cheval, | " " " ride. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Faire un tour en Orient,**[1] | **To take a trip to the East.** |
| Faire un tour au Japon,[2] | To take a trip to Japan. |
| " " " en Californie,[3] | " " " " to California. |

---

[1] **An nor-yan'.** — [2] **Ō zhà-pon'.** — [3] **An kà-lē-for-nē'.**

## First Cardinal Rule.[1]

### THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

---

**N. B.—The following rule, condensed as it is here, yet fully comprehensive of a cardinal principle in the language, should be completely mastered by the learner.**

I.

## Du, de la, de l', or des,

***SOME* or *ANY*.**

---

In French, **some** or **any** *must*[2] be expressed, and is rendered by **du, de la, de l',** or **des;**

EXCEPT IN THREE CASES,

when it is rendered simply by **de** (*or* **d'**). These are:

1. Before an adjective;
2. After an adverb (of quantity);
3. After a negation.

---

[1] In all, five rules, which I consider as "Cardinal" and almost indispensable, will be given through the text, in a prominent way.

[2] In English, we often can say indifferently *I have some bread*, or *I have bread; Have you bread?* or *Have you any bread?* The French *must* say, *I have* **some** *bread; Have you* **any** *bread?*

## EXAMPLES.

### STRAIGHT CASE.

| | |
|---|---|
| Bring me wine (*or* some wine), | Apportez-moi **du** vin. |
| Have you beer (*or* any beer)? | Avez-vous **de la** bière ? |
| He always drinks water, | Il boit toujours **de l'**eau. |
| Send him liquors, | Envoyez-lui **des** liqueurs. |

---

### EXCEPTIONAL CASES.

#### 1. Before an Adjective.

| | |
|---|---|
| Has he good (*or* any good) wine? | A-t-il **de** *bon* vin? |
| Here is good beer, | Voici **de** bonne bière. |
| Drink good water, etc., | Buvez **de** bonne eau. |

#### 2. After an Adverb.[1]

| | |
|---|---|
| Have you wine enough? | Avez-vous‿*assez* **de** vin? |
| Bring more beer, | Apportez *plus* **de** bière. |
| You order too many liquors, | Vous commandez *trop* **de** liqueurs. |

#### 3. After a Negation.[2]

| | |
|---|---|
| I do not sell wine, | Je ne bois *pas* **de** vin. |
| He has not brought any water yet, | Il n'a pas‿encore‿apporté **d'**eau. |
| I never drink liquors. | Je ne bois *jamais* **de** liqueurs. |

---

[1] After **bien,** used in the sense of *many, a great deal,* **du, de la,** and **des,** and not **de,** are used. This is due to the fact that **bien** is not *really* an adverb of *quantity.*

[2] When a negative question is asked in the absolute expectation of an affirmative answer, **du,** etc., are used. But this is *very* rare.

*The following vocabulary is to be learned by heart.*

## BOISSONS.[3]

| | |
|---|---|
| **De l'eau[*] fraîche** (dŭ lō frĕsh'), | **Cool or fresh water.** |
| De l'eau de Seltz (d'sĕltz'), | Seltzer water. |
| De l'eau rougie (rōōzhē'), | Wine and water. |
| De l'eau froide (frŏ-ȧd'), | Cold water. |
| De l'eau tiède (tē-ĕd'), | Tepid water. |
| De l'eau chaude (shōd'), | Warm (*or* hot) water. |
| De l'eau glacée (glȧ-sā'), | Ice-water. |
| Une carafe frappée[1] (kȧ-rȧf frȧ-pā'), | A decanter of ice-water. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **Du vin blanc** (dü vin blan'), | **White wine.** |
| Du vin rouge (rōōzh'), | Red wine. |
| Du vin de Bordeaux (d'bor-dō'), | Claret. |
| Du vin de Bourgogne (d'bōōr-gŏ'-ñŭ), | Burgundy. |
| Une bouteille de (ün bōō-tĕh'-yŭ dŭ), | A bottle of. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **De l'eau de vie**[2] (dŭ lō d'vē'), | **Brandy.** |
| Un verre d'eau sucrée (vĕr dō sü-krā'), | A glass of sugar-water. |
| Un verre de limonade (lē-mŏ-nȧd'), | A glass of lemonade. |

---

[1] Lit.: a decanter *struck* (by freezing, so to speak).
[2] Lit.: Water of life.
[3] **Bŏ-ȧ-son'**, beverages.
[*] **Eau** is feminine.

*To be learned by heart and repeated aloud, as a real conversation, whether for self-study or preparation for the class.*

## CONVERSATIONS.

### 1.—À PROPOS DU „BON MARCHÉ.„*

Je voudrais aller au Bon Marché, cet après-midi. – Voulez-vous y aller avec moi? — Je veux bien. — Je voudrais moi-même faire quelques[1] emplettes. — Votre amie, Madame Roland, ne veut-elle pas nous accompagner?[2] — Elle voudrait bien;[3] mais elle doit voir sa couturière. — Eh bien, partons.[4]

### 2.—EN ROUTE.†

Comment[5] voulez-vous y aller?— Je voulais y[6] aller à pied. — Je voudrais bien. Mais j'ai mal au pied.[7] — C'est vrai. Vous boitez.[8] Eh bien! prenons[9] une voiture. — Mais je ne vois[10] pas de fiacre. — Attendez! Voilà justement un omnibus[11] qui passe. — Conducteur! arrêtez![12]

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

[1] **Kĕl-kŭ zan-plĕt',** a few purchases.

[2] **Nōō zȧ-kon-pȧ-ñā',** accompany us.

[3] She would very much like to. — [4] **Pȧr-ton',** let us go.

[5] How. — [6] I wished (imperfect of **vouloir**).

[7] **Mȧl ō pē-ā',** my foot hurts me. Lit.: I have (a) pain at-the foot.

[8] **Vōō bȯ-ȧ-tā',** you limp.

[9] **Prŭ-non',** let us take. — [10] **Zhŭn vȯ-ȧ pä',** I do not see.

[11] Wait! There is an omnibus just passing. Lit.: there is just an omnibus which passes. — [12] Stop!

* **A prȯ-pō' dü Bon Mȧr-shā'** (store in Paris), about the Bon Marché. — † On the way.

### 3.—*UN TOUR À CHEVAL.*

Votre frère ne voudrait-il pas faire un tour à cheval avec moi, demain matin.[1]—Je ne sais pas. Je vais lui demander.[2]—Eh bien! Qu'a-t-il dit?[3]—Il a dit qu'il voudrait bien aller faire un tour à cheval avec vous, demain matin; mais il a un rendez-vous.[4]

### 4.—*AU RESTAURANT.*

Quelle espèce[5] de vin allez-vous commander?[6]—Je ne sais pas. Du vin de Bourgogne?—Ils n'ont pas de bon Bourgogne dans ce restaurant. Commandez plutôt[7] du vin de Bordeaux, ou du vin blanc.—Et vous, Monsieur Alfred? Quelle espèce de vin prendrez-vous?[8]—Je ne veux pas de vin. Je ne bois jamais de vin.

Garçon, apportez-nous deux bouteilles de Bordeaux, et pour Monsieur un verre de limonade.

---

**Note.—Study the "6 necessary tenses" of Être, (affirmatively), page 480.**

---

**Pronunciation and Translation.**

[1] **Dŭ-min mà-tin,** to-morrow morning.
[2] **Lü-ē' dŭ-man-dā',** ask him.
[3] **Kà-tēl dē'?** what did he say?
[4] An engagement, *or* appointment.
[5] **Kĕl ĕs-pĕs dŭ,** what kind of?—
[6] **Kò-man-dā',** order.— [7] **Kò-man-dā' plü-tō',** order rather.
[8] **Pran-drā vōō',** will you take? (future of **prendre**).

---

*To be translated and written into French; but also to be recited as a conversation in the class-room. (For Self-Study, see* ***Directions,*** *before* ***Part I.****)*

## EXERCISES.

### 1.—*IN A RESTAURANT.*

What will you (have) for[1] breakfast?—Bring me a beefsteak with cresses, some rolls, butter, and a cup of coffee.[2]—What will your little girl[3] (have)?—Bring her rolls, a cup of coffee, and two fried eggs.[4] — Very well, sir. — Bring me also a small bottle[5] of white wine and a decanter of ice-water.

### 2.—*ABOUT A FRIEND.*

When does Mr. Belmont want[6] to take a trip to the East?—Next Spring,[7] I believe. But I was told[8] he had gone to Newport.—No; he has[9] not

---

**Aids to Translation.**

[1] **Que voulez-vous pour.** N. B.—Words in parentheses are not to be translated into French.

[2] **Aussi un bifteck au cresson, des petits pains, du beurre et une tasse de café.**

[3] **Que veut votre petite fille (p'tēt fē'-yŭ).**

[4] **Apportez-lui—et deux‿œufs sur le plat, dû zû sür lŭ plà'.** Lit.: two eggs on the plate.

[5] **Aussi une petite—.**

[6] **Quand M. B. veut‿il—?**

[7] **Au printemps, ō pri*n*-ta*n*'.**

[8] **On m'a dit qu'il est‿allé,** one me has told *that* he has gone.

[9] **Il n'est pas—.**

gone to Newport. I saw him last night, at a reception.[1]

### 3.—*INDISPOSITION.*

Sit down, here.[2] What is the matter with you?—I feel sick at my stomach.—Will you (have) a glass of wine?—No, thank you.[3] I never drink wine. Only[4] a glass of ice-water, please.[5]—Thank you.

### 4.—*ABOUT A FRIEND.*

Come (and) have a drive[6] with me.—No, thank you. I must go to the Boulevards[7] with Mr. Ellesworth?—What for?—He wants to make some purchases and order[8] a pair of shoes, and he wishes me[9] to talk French for him—Does n't he speak French?[10]—Not one word.[11]

---

**Aids to Translation.**

1 **Je l'ai vu hier soir, à une soirée,** I saw him last evening at a soiree. Lit.: I him have seen yesterday evening —.

2 **Asseyez-vous ici, à-sā-yā vōō zē-sē'.**— 3 **Non, merci.**

4 **Seulement.**— 5 **S'il vous plaît, sēl vōō plĕh.**

6 **Venez faire un tour etc.**

7 **Aux boulevards.**— 8 **Faire faire une paire —.**

9 **Il veut que je parle français pour lui, kŭzh pårl fra*n*-sĕh' pōōr lü-ē'.** Lit.: he wants that I (may) speak, etc.

10 **Ne parle-t-il pas français, nŭ pårl tēl pä fra*n*-sĕh'.** Lit.: speaks he not French?

11 **Pas un mot, pä zu*n* mō'.**

---

*To be read by means of translation opposite, in preparation for reading aloud and translating in class. For Pronunciation,* *see Page 72.*

## LECTURE.

### LES TUILERIES ET LES CHAMPS-ÉLYSÉES.*

—Quittons ce jardin[1] et allons voir celui des Tuileries.

—En sommes-nous bien éloignés?

—C'est à deux pas. Nous y voici.

—Quelle foule! Quelle véritable fourmilière! Et quel air de gaîté sur toutes ces physionomies!

—Cela vous étonne?

—Oui. Ne pourrions-nous pas sortir de cette cohue? C'est à donner le vertige!

—Eh bien! suivons[2] la grande allée du jardin; elle nous conduira aux Champs-Elysées. Là, vous pourrez respirer plus à l'aise.

—Je ne demande pas mieux.—Quoi! Est-ce là les Champs-Elysées? Cette promenade est magnifique. Qui donc habite ces élégantes villas?

—Cela se demande-t-il?—des Anglais et des Russes.

—Sommes-nous encore loin du Champ de Mars?†

—Non. Ce n'est pas très loin.

—Eh bien! allons[2]-y.

---

[1] The Garden of the Palais-Royal.

[2] **Suivons,** follow (we), *angl.*, let us follow. **Allons,** go (we), *angl.*, let us go. The *we* is really not expressed except by the termination **ons,** which belongs to the first person plural.

* **Tü-ēl-rē',** tile-kilns. The palace is so-called because built on the site of ancient tile-factories.—**Lĕh Shan-zā-lē-zā',** *the Elysian Fields.*

† **Shan d' Mârs',** Field of Mars; an extensive ground between the Military School and the Seine, where drills and reviews are given.

*For Self-Study, the French text should be read by means of the literal translation until thoroughly mastered, then read aloud in French.*

## READING.

### THE TUILERIES, AND CHAMPS-ELYSÉES.

—(Let us)[1] leave this garden and go and see that[2] of-the Tuileries.

—Of-it are we well[3] distant?

—It is at[4] two steps. Us in-it see-here.[5]

—What (a) crowd! What veritable ant-hill! And what (an) air of gayety on all these physiognomies!

—That you astonishes?

—Yes. Could we not go-out of this fearful-crowd! That is (enough) to give (one) the vertigo!

—Well, then! (let us) follow the great avenue[6] of-the garden; it us will-conduct to-the Champs-Elysées. There you will-be-able to-breathe more at (*the*)* ease.

—I ask no better.—What! Is it there the Champs-Elysées? That avenue is magnificent. Who (*then*) inhabits these elegant villas?

—That itself asks it?[7] Englishmen and Russians.[8]

—Are we still far from-the Champ de Mars?

—No. It is not very far.

—Very well. Go-we there.

---

[1] Words not italicized, but in brackets, denote words not used in French.—[2] **Celui,** *that, the one.*

[3] *Anglice,* very.—[4] *Anglice,* within.

[5] Here we are (in-it).—[6] Lit.: alley, path *or* walk.

[7] *Anglice,* Is it necessary to ask?—[8] Lit.: *Some* Englishmen, and *some* Russians.

* Words used in French, and not in the corresponding Eng sentences, are italicized and in brackets.

*Memorize some or all of the French forms of letter-beginning, and*

## CORRESPONDANCE.

**Having witnessed, so often, the embarrassment and annoy-
books of the manner especially in which to *begin* a letter, the following information.**

### DU COMMENCEMENT DES LETTRES.

#### I.—*LETTRES D'AFFAIRES.*

1.

PARIS, le 14 juin,[1] 1887.[1]

MONSIEUR JOHN SMITH,
*Commerçant à Paris,*
MONSIEUR,

---

2.

MARSEILLE, le 5 avril, 1887.

MADAME AUGUSTINE DELACOUR,
*Modiste à New York,*

MADAME,

---

DE LA DATE.—La date se place ordinairement au haut et à la droite de la première page d'une lettre. Mais quand on veut témoigner du respect à quelqu'un et lorsqu'on écrit à une personne d'un rang supérieur, il faut mettre la date au bas de la lettre et à gauche.

---

[1] The French use the cardinal numbers (except in the case of the first) for the days of the month, and also (generally) use a small instead of a capital letter for the name of the month.

*some hours afterward, write them from memory, without the book.*

## CORRESPONDENCE.

**ance of learners because left in ignorance by the various text-author has thought it well, at this stage, to introduce the**

### THE BEGINNING OF LETTERS.

I.—*BUSINESS LETTERS.*

1.

PARIS, the 14 june, 1887.†

MR. JOHN SMITH,
*Merchant in Paris,*
SIR,

---

2.

MARSEILLES, the 5 april, 1887.

MRS. AUGUSTINE DELACOUR,
*Milliner in New York,*

MADAM,

---

DATES.—The date is ordinarily placed at the top and on the right-hand side of the first page of a letter. But when one desires to show respect to any one, and when writing to a person of superior rank, the date should be written at the end of the letter and on the left side.

---

† An exactly literal translation of these beginnings of letters will be given, in order the better to impress the peculiar foreign form upon the mind.

Lorsqu'on est déjà en bonnes relations avec les personnes à qui l'on écrit pour affaires, on peut se servir des formules :

*Mon cher Monsieur; Mon cher Monsieur B.;* ou bien: *Cher Monsieur, Chère Dame.*

### II.—*AUTRES LETTRES.*

1.

SAN FRANCISCO, le 25 juin.

MADEMOISELLE HENRIETTE CORDAY,

MADEMOISELLE (*or* Chère Demoiselle),

---

2.

CHICAGO, le 6 février.

MADAME F. B. EVANS,

MADAME (*or* Chère Dame),

---

3.

PHILADELPHIE, le 1er mars.

MONSIEUR FRANÇOIS D'AUBIGNÉ,

MONSIEUR (*or* Cher Monsieur, *or* Mon Cher Monsieur),

---

En écrivant à un parent ou un ami, les commencements de lettres sont semblables à ceux des lettres anglaises. Ainsi l'on dira, Mon cher Père, Ma chère Mère, Mon cher Cousin, Ma chère Cousine, Mon cher Ami, Ma chère Amie, Mon cher Albert.

When one is already in amiable relations with the persons to whom one writes, one can use the following formulas:

*My dear Sir*, *My dear Mr. B.;* or else, *Dear Sir*, *Dear Lady*.

II. — *OTHER LETTERS.*

1.

SAN FRANCISCO, the 25 june.

MISS HENRIETTE CORDAY,

MISS (*or* Dear Miss),

---

2.

CHICAGO, the 6 february.

MRS. F. B. EVANS,

MADAM (*or* Dear Lady),

---

3.

PHILADELPHIA, the 1st march.

MR. FRANÇOIS D'AUBIGNÉ,

SIR (*or* Dear Sir, *or* My dear Sir),

---

When writing to a relative or friend, beginning of letters are similar to those of English letters. Thus, one will write: *My dear Father*, *My dear Mother*, *My dear Cousin*, *My dear Friend*, *My dear Albert*. The word *my* may be left out, as in English.

***PRONUNCIATION OF THE READING MATTER ON PAGES 66 AND 67.***

**Note.** — *The pupil is advised to read the foregoing exercise with as little aid from this pronunciation as possible. For this purpose, the table of pronunciation given just before* **Part I.** *should be studied. Farther on, no pronunciation will be given.*

## Lĕh Tü-ēl-rē′ zā lĕh Sha*n*-zā-lē-zā′.

Kē-to*n* s' zhȧr-di*n*′ ā ȧ-lo*n* vȯ-ȧr′ sŭ-lü-ē′ dĕh Tü-ēl-rē′.

A*n* sȯm-nōō bē-i*n*′-nā-lȯ-ȧ-ñā′?

Sĕh tȧ dû pä′. Nōō zē vȯ-ȧ-sē′.

Kĕl fōō′-l'! Kĕl vā-rē-tȧ-bl' fōōr-mē-lē-air'! Ā kĕl air dŭ gĕh-tā sür tōōt sĕh fē-zē-ȯ-nȯ-mē'!

Sŭ-lȧ vōō zā-tȯ′-n'?

Wē. Nŭ pōō-rē-o*n*′ nōō pä sor-tēr′ dŭ sĕt kȯ-ü'? Sĕh tȧ dȯ-nā l' vĕr-tēzh'!

Ā bē-i*n*′! sü-ē-vo*n* lȧ gra*n*-dȧ-lā′ dü zhȧr-di*n*′. Ĕl nōō ko*n*-dü-ē-rȧ′ zō Sha*n*-zā-lē-zā′. Lȧ, vōō pōō-rā rĕs-pē-rā′ plü zȧ lêz'.

Zhŭn dŭ-ma*n*′-d pä mē-û′. — Kȯ-ȧ! ēs lȧ lĕh Sha*n*-zā-lē-zā'? Sĕt prȯm-nȧd ĕh mȧ-ñē-fēk'. Kē do*n* kȧ-bēt′ sĕh zā-lā-ga*n*-t vēl-lȧ′?

Sŭ-lȧ s'dŭ-ma*n*d tēl′? — dĕh za*n*-glĕh′ zā dĕh Rüs'.

Sȯm-nōō za*n*-kor bē-i*n* nā-lȯ-ȧ-ñā dü sha*n* d' Mȧrs′?

No*n*′. Sŭ nĕh pä trĕh lȯ-i*n*′.

Ā bē-i*n*′! Ȧ-lo*n* zē′.

# PART I.

## THE ARRIVAL.

## L'ARRIVÉE.

### SECTION IV.

# IV.

## FRENCH.

**1. Et aller tout droit déjeuner à l'hôtel.**

Où allons-nous comme ça[1]?
Nous allons tout droit déjeuner à l'hôtel.

Je ne vous ai pas compris.
Je ne comprends pas très bien le français.[2]
J'ai dit.[3]
J'ai dit **que** nous allons tout droit déjeuner à l'hôtel.

---

**2. À votre place, je voudrais plutôt déjeuner dans un restaurant.**

Eh bien! Et les bagages?

C'est vrai.
D'ailleurs, il vaut[4] mieux.
Il vaut mieux aller à l'hôtel, choisir nos chambres et nous reposer un instant avant de déjeuner.

---

NOTES.

[1] An abbreviated form of **cela**, *that.*

[2] Adjectives of nationality do not take a capital letter in French, unless used as a noun. **C'est français,** *It is French;* **C'est un Français,** *He is a Frenchman.*

[3] In conversation the simple past form *I said* is very rarely used; but *I have said,* instead.

[4] From **valoir,** *to be worth.* Thus, when speaking of the advisability of doing a thing, the French say: It *is-worth* better, instead of: It *is* better.

# IV.

| PRONUNCIATION. | TRANSLATION. |
|---|---|
| 1. **Ā ȧ-lā' tōō drȯ-ȧ' dā-zhŭ-nā' ȧ lō-tĕl'.** | **And go straight to the hotel for breakfast.** |
| ——kȯm sȧ'? | Where are we going[1] *now?*[2] |
| | We are going straight to the hotel for breakfast. |
| Zhŭn vōō zā pä ko*n*-prē'. | I did n't understand you.[3] |
| Zhŭ n' ko*n*-pra*n*' pä trĕh bē-i*n*' l' fra*n*-sĕh'. | I do not understand[4] French very well. |
| Zhā dē'. ——knōō zȧ-lo*n*' . . . . | I said[5] we are going straight to the hotel for breakfast. |
| 2. **Ȧ vȯ'-tr' plȧs', zhŭ vōō-drĕh' plü-tō' dā-zhŭ-nā' da*n* zu*n* rĕs-tor-a*n*'.** | **In your place, I would prefer[6] to take my breakfast in a restaurant.** |
| | Well! What about the baggage?[7] |
| Sĕh vrĕh. | That 's so. |
| Dȧ-yŭr' ēl vō mē-û'. | Anyway, it is best.[8] |
| Shȯ-ȧ-zēr' nō sha*n*'-br' zā nōō r'pō-zā' u*n* ni*n*-sta*n*' ava*n* d dā-zhŭ-nā'. | It is better to go to the hotel, select our rooms, and rest[9] a little before having breakfast. |

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] Where go-we? The French have no progressive or emphatic form. They can neither say, *we are going*, nor *we do go*, but only, *we go*, **nous allons.** — [2] Like that.

[3] I you *have* not understood. The French, having no form similar to the auxiliary **do,** or its past tense **did,** use **have** instead of this last.

[4] I you understand not. See note 1.

[5] I said *that* —. **That** can *never* be omitted in French.

[6] I would-like rather to-breakfast in. — [7] Well! and the baggages.

[8] It is-worth better. — [9] Rest *ourselves*-before *to-breakfast.*

Vous avez raison.
D'ailleurs, nous y voici.
Monsieur Vogeli, parle très bien français. Il parlera au concierge.

---

**Note.—Study the "6 necessary tenses" of Parler,**

---

**3. Concierge, nous avez-vous retenu des chambres?**

Oui, monsieur. Mais elles ne sont pas encore tout-à-fait prêtes.
Nous avons dû[1] faire mettre de[2] nouveaux tapis.

Elles seront[3] prêtes dans une demi-heure d'ici.

Si ces messieurs et dames voulaient[4] bien déjeuner, tout d'abord?

Très bien. Veuillez nous dire où est la salle à manger.
Tout droit devant vous; de l'autre côté de la cour.

---

**4. Eh bien! Entrons.**
Asseyez-vous là,[5] messieurs et dames.

---

NOTES.

[1] Past participle of **devoir,** to have to.

[2] See page 60, Sect. I.— [3] Future of **Être,** *to be.*

[4] **Voulaient** (imperfect of **vouloir,** *to wish, to want, to will*) often translated by *would* in English, if preceded by **si.**

[5] Imperative of **s'asseoir,** to sit down.

| | |
|---|---|
| Vōō zȧ-vā rĕh-zo*n*'. | You are right. |
| Nōō zē vȯ-ȧ-sē'. | Besides, we are there now. |
| Ēl pȧr-lŭ-rȧ ō ko*n*-sē-airzh'. | Mr. Vogeli speaks French very well. He will speak to the porter. |

(affirmatively), page 484.

| | |
|---|---|
| **3. Ko*n*-sē-airzh', nōō zȧ-vā vōō r'tŭnŭ' dĕh sha*n*'-br'?** | **3. Porter, did you keep rooms for us?**[1] |
| Mĕh zĕl nŭ sȯ*n* pä za*n*-kor' tōō-tȧ-fĕh prê'-t'. | Yes, sir. But they are not quite ready, yet.[2] |
| Nōō zȧ-vo*n*' dü fair mĕh'-tr' dŭ nōō-vō tȧ-pē'. | We had[3] to have some new carpets put in. |
| Ĕl sŭ-ro*n*' prêt da*n* zŭn dŭ-mē-yŭr' dē-sē'. | They will be ready in half an hour from now.[4] |
| Sē sĕh mĕs-yû' zā dȧm vōō-lĕh . . . ? | If the ladies and gentlemen *would*[5] take their breakfast, first?[6] |
| Vŭ-yā nōō dēr ōō ĕh lȧ sȧl ȧ ma*n*-zhā'. | Very well. Please tell us where the dining-room is. |
| Tōō drȯ-ȧ d'va*n* vōō'; dŭ lō-tr' kō-tā' d'lȧ kōōr'. | Right before you on the other side of the court. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **4. Ā bē-i*n*'! A*n*-tro*n*'.** | **Well! Let us go in.** |
| Ȧ-sĕh-yā' vōō lȧ', mĕs-yû zā dȧm'. | Sit down[7] there, ladies and gentlemen. |

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 For-us have you kept rooms? — 2 Not yet quite ready.
3 We have had-to make to-put some new carpets.
4 Lit.: from *here*.
5 If these gentlemen and ladies wished to-take —.
6 All at-first. — 7 Sit-*yourselves*.

Garçon, qu'avez-vous pour déjeuner?

Voici la carte du jour.

---

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **5. Je veux.** | **zhŭ vû′.** | **I wish.** |
| Tu veux. | tü vû′. | Thou wishest. |
| Il veut. | ēl vû′. | He wishes. |
| Nous voulons. | nōō vōō-lo*n*′. | We wish. |
| Vous voulez. | vōō vōō-lā′. | You " |
| Ils veulent. | ēl vŭl′. | They " |

---

**6. Monsieur Vogeli, que voulez-vous prendre?**

Je voudrais une tasse de café, des[1] petits pains et un œuf à la coque.

Ne voudriez-vous[2] pas des huîtres, tout d'abord?

Des huîtres avec un verre de vieux Chablis?

Pardon, je ne bois jamais de vin.

Ma santé ne me permet pas.[3]

Mon médecin ne me permet pas.

Alors, garçon, ne nous apportez qu'une demi-bouteille de vin.

---

NOTES.

1 **Des** instead of **de,** because *petits* is not considered as an adjective *here*, but as an integral part of the compound noun **petits pains.**

2 **Voudrais-je, vōō-drĕzh'?** would I like? **Voudriez-vous, vōō-drē-yā′-vōō′?** Would you like? (*also* Would you please?) **Nŭ vōō-drē-yā′ vōō pä′?** Would you not like?

3 Lit.: Allows me not. The French have no emphatic form, having no auxiliary corresponding to *do*. They cannot say, *My health does not permit me*, but only, *My health permits me not.*

| | |
|---|---|
| Gȧr-so*n*′, kȧ-vā-vōō′? | Waiter, what have you for breakfast? |
| Vȯ-ȧ-sē′ lȧ kȧrt dü zhōōr′. | Here is the bill of fare.[1] |

---

**5. Est-ce que je veux?*** — **Do wish?**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Veux-tu? | vû-tü′. | Does thou wish? |
| Veut-il? | vû-tēl′. | Does he " |
| Voulons-nous? | vōō-lo*n*′-nōō′. | Do we wish? |
| Voulez-vous? | vōō-lā′-vōō′. | Do you " |
| Veulent-ils? | vŭl-tēl′. | Do they " |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **6. Mȯs-yû′ Vōzh-lē′, kŭ vōō-lā′-vōō pra*n*′-dr’?** | **What will you have,[2] Mr. Vogeli?** |
| Zhŭ vōō-drĕh′ zün täs dŭ kȧ-fā′, dĕh p’tē pi*n*′ ā u*n* nŭf ȧ lȧ kȯk′. | I would like to have a cup of[3] coffee, some rolls and a soft-boiled egg.[4] |
| Nŭ vōō-drē-yā vōō pä dĕh zü-ē-tr’. | Would you not like[5] to have some oysters, first? |
| Ȧ-vĕk u*n* vair dŭ vē-û′ shȧ-blē′. | Oysters with a glass of old Chablis? |
| Pȧr-do*n*′, zhŭn bȯ-ȧ′ zhȧ-mĕd vi*n*′. | I beg your pardon, but I never drink wine. |
| Mȧ sa*n*-tā′ n’mŭ pĕr-mĕh′ pä′. | My health does not allow[6] me. |
| Mo*n* mād’-si*n*′ n’mŭ . . . | My physician does not permit me. |
| Nŭ nōō zȧ-por-tā kün dŭ-mē′ bōō-tĕh′-yŭ dŭ vi*n*′. | Then, waiter, bring us[7] only a small bottle[8] of wine. |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] The card of-the day. — [2] Take. — [3] I would-like a cup. . .

[4] An egg *with* the shell. **Œuf** is pronounced **ŭf** in the singular, but **û** in the plural.

[5] Would you not? (conditional of **vouloir,** to *will*).

[6] Me permits not.

[7] **Que** following a verb preceded by **ne** has the sense of *but*, or *only*.

[8] A half-bottle.

* Instead of **veux-je,** not used. **Ĕs kŭzh vû?**

**Note. — Study "the general make-up of a sentence**

---

**7. Mademoiselle Marie, prenez donc[1] une côtelette.**

Une côtelette de mouton? Je veux bien.

Et vous, madame?

Pour moi, un bifteck.

Eh bien, garçon, apportez-nous trois tasses de café, des petits pains et une douzaine d'huîtres.

Après cela, vous pouvez nous apporter une côtelette de mouton, un bifteck aux pommes, des œufs sur le plat, et pour moi, une aile de poulet.

---

**8. Où voudriez*-vous aller après déjeuner?**

Je voudrais[2] tout d'abord passer chez mon ami Boisrobert.

Il n'est pas chez lui.

Que me dites-vous là!

Monsieur Bell m'a écrit qu'il[2] est allé chez lui, tout en arrivant.

---

NOTES.

[1] **Donc** is not a necessary part of the sentence, but adds strength to it. **Prenez,** *take;* **Prenez donc,** *do take,* or *please take.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| * **Je voudrais,** | **zhŭ vōō-drĕh',** | *I would like.* |
| **Tu voudrais,** | **tü " "** | *Thou wouldst like.* |
| **Il voudrait,** | **ēl " "** | *He would like.* |
| **Nous voudrions,** | **nōō vōō-drē-yon',** | *We would like.* |
| **Vous voudriez,** | **vōō vōō-drē-yā',** | *You would "* |
| **Ils voudraient,** | **ēl vōō-drĕh',** | *They would "* |

**in French," page 494, parag. 1–2.**

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **7. Måd-mo-å-zĕl′ Må-rē′, prŭ-nā′ don kün kŏ-tlĕt′.** | **Miss Marie, take a chop, won't you?** [1] |
| —— dŭ mōō-ton′? Zhŭ vû bē-in′. | A mutton chop,[2] then. |
| | And for you, madam? |
| Pōōr mo-å′ un bēf-tĕk′. | For me, a beefsteak. |
| Å-por-tā′ nōō tro-ä′ täs dŭ kå-fā′, dĕh p'tē pin′ ā ün dōō-zĕn dü-ē′-tr′. | Then, waiter, bring us three cups of coffee, some rolls, and a dozen oysters.[3] |
| Å-prĕh s'lå un bēf-tĕk′ ō pom′, dĕh zû sür lŭ plå′, ā pōōr mo-å′ ü-nĕl dŭ pōō-lĕh′. | After that you can bring us a mutton-chop, a beefsteak with potatoes, some fried eggs,[4] and for me, the wing of a chicken. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **8. ŌŌ vōō-drē-yā′ vōō zå-lā′ å-prĕh dā-zhŭ-nā′?** | **Where would you want to go after breakfast?** |
| Pä-sā′ shā mon nå-mē′ Bo-ä-ro-bĕr′. | I should like first to call[5] on my friend Boisrobert. |
| Ēl nĕh pä shā lü-ē′. | He is not at home.[6] |
| Kŭm dēt vōō lå′? | What do you say![7] |
| Mos-yû′ Bēl må ā-krē kēl ĕh tå-lā′ shā lü-ē′ tōō tan nå-rē-van′. | Mr. Bell wrote me that he called on him,[8] as soon as he arrived. |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] Take *then* a chop.

[2] A chop of mutton.— [3] A dozen *of* oysters.

[4] *Some* eggs *on the plate.* We can also say: **Des œufs frits** (lit.: *some* eggs fried); but it is not so usual.

[5] To pass at-the-house-of (chez).

[6] At-the-house-of-him.

[7] What to-me say you!

[8] He has (*is*) gone to-the-house-of-him.

On lui a dit.
On lui a dit[1] qu[2]'il est allé à la campagne.

---

## 8. Ah! voici le garçon, qui va nous servir.

J'en suis bien aise.
J'ai grand'[3] faim.
Et moi, aussi, j'en suis bien aise.
J'ai grand'[3] soif.
Et vous, Monsieur Vernon.
À dire vrai, je n'ai ni faim ni soif.

Qu'avez-vous donc?
Je ne sais pas ce que[4] j'ai depuis quelques jours. Je n'ai pas d'appétit.

---

**Note.** — Study the "6 Necessary Tenses" of **Avoir**,

---

## 9. Comment trouvez-vous ces huîtres?

Je les trouve excellent**es**.[5]

---

NOTES.

1 **On lui a dit,** *they have told him*, or *he was told;* lit.: *One has told him.* The French are very fond of using the active voice with **on** instead of the passive.

2 **That** is *never* omitted in French.

3 Before a few words the **e** of **grande** is dropped and an apostrophe substituted.

4 **Ce que,** lit.: *that which.* When **what** can *at all* be turned in English into **that which,** it must be expressed in French by **ce que.**

5 **Excellentes,** feminine plural of the adjective, which agrees in gender and number with the feminine plural noun it qualifies, here.

| | |
|---|---|
| On lü-ē' à dē'. Kēl ĕh tà-lā à là kan-pà'-ñŭ. | They told him;[1] *or* He was told he has gone to the country. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **8. Ä! vò-à-sē l'gàr-son', kē và nōō sĕr-vēr'.** | **Ah! Here is the waiter;[2] he is going to wait on us.** |
| Zhan sü-ē' bē-in' nêz'. | I am very glad of it.[3] |
| Zhā gran fin'. | I am very hungry.[4] |
| Ā mò-à' ō-sē'. | I am very glad, too.[5] |
| Gran sò-àf'. | I am very thirsty. |
| | And you, Mr. Vernon? |
| À dēr vrĕh'; zh'nā nē fin' nē sò-àf'. | To tell the truth,[6] I am neither hungry nor thirsty. |
| | What is the matter with you?[7] |
| Zhŭ n sĕh pä s'kŭ zhā dŭ-pü-ē' kĕl-kŭ zhōōr'. | I do not know what is the matter with me[8] for the last few days. |

---

(negatively), page 478.

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **9. Kò-man' trōō-vā vōō sĕh zü-ē'-tr'.** | **How do you like[9] these oysters?** |
| Zhŭ lĕh trōōv ĕk-sĕh-lan'-t'. | I think[10] they are excellent. |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 One him has told *that* he *is*—.
2 Here is the waiter, *who* goes (*is going*) us to serve.
3 I of-it (*en*) am well pleased.
4 I have great hunger.
5 *Me* also, etc.
6 To say true.
7 What have you?
8 I know not that which I have since some days.
9 How find-you—?
10 I them find excellent.

Monsieur Vernon ne les trouve pas bonnes.

Au contraire. Elles sont tout-à-fait à mon goût.

Comment Madame Fremont trouve t elle le bifteck?

Je le trouve un peu trop saignant.

Le garçon pourrait* le faire cuire un peu plus.[1]
Merci. Cela ne vaut pas la peine.

---

## 10. Pourquoi ne buvez-vous pas votre café?

Il est trop chaud.
Je ne bois jamais le café quand il est chaud.

Mademoiselle, vous ne mangez pas.
Pardon, j'ai bien mangé.

Qu'avez-vous donc?

Je ne suis pas bien à mon aise.
La fatigue du voyage, sans doute.

---

**Note.—Study the Forms of questions in French,**

---

NOTES.

[1] **Plus** is pronounced **plüs** when it is affirmative, and at the same time found at the end of a sentence (*or* before **que**). Otherwise **plü.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| * **Je pourrais.** | **zhŭ pōō-rĕh′.** | *I could.* |
| **Tu pourrais.** | **tü " "** | *Thou couldst.* |
| **Il pourrait.** | **ēl " "** | *He could.* |
| **Nous pourrions.** | **nōō pōō-rē-on′.** | *We could.* |
| **Vous pourriez.** | **vōō pōō-rē-ā′.** | *You could.* |
| **Ils pourraient.** | **ēl pōō-rĕh′.** | *They could.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| N'lĕh trōōv pä bȯn'. | Mr. Vernon does not seem to like them. |
| Ō kon-trair'. Ĕl son tōō tȧ fĕh' tȧ mon gōō. | On the contrary. They just suit me.[1] |
| Trōōv-tĕl lŭ bēf-tĕk'? | How does Mrs. Fremont like the beefsteak?[2] |
| Zhŭl trōōv un pû trȯ sĕh-ñan'. | I find it a little rare.[3] |
| Pû l'fair kü-ēr un pû plüs'. | The waiter can have it cooked[4] a little more. |
| Sŭ-lȧ' n'vō pä lȧ pĕn'. | No, thank you. It is not worth while.[5] |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **10. Pōōr-kȯ-ȧ' n'bü-vā' vōō pä vȯ-tr' kȧ-fā'?** | **Why do you not drink your coffee?** |
| Trȯ shō'. | It is too warm. |
| Zhŭ n'bȯ-ȧ zhȧ-mĕh' l'kȧ-fā' kan tēl ĕh shō'. | I never drink coffee when it is too hot. |
| Vōōn man-zhā' pä'. | Miss —, you are not eating. |
| | I beg your pardon, I have eaten quite heartily.[6] |
| | What is the matter with you? |
| Zhŭn sü-ē' | I don't feel well.[7] |
| Lȧ fȧ-tēg* dü vȯ-ȧ-yȧzh', san dōōt'. | The fatigue of the trip, I suppose.[8] |

---

**page 495, parag. I–2.**

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] Altogether to my taste.
[2] How Madame F. finds she the beefsteak?
[3] A little *too* rare.
[4] Have it cooked (it make to-cook).
[5] That is not-worth the trouble. — [6] Well eaten.
[7] Not well at my ease. — [8] Without doubt.
* In the pronunciation, **g** has always the sound of English **g** before *a* or *o*.

pas bonnes.

à mon goût

elle le bifteck

un peu plus.

pas votre café ?

chaud.

Mr. Vernon does not seem to like them.
On the contrary. They just suit me.
How does Mrs. Freeman like the beefsteak?
I find it a little rare.
The waiter can have it cooked a little more.
No, thank you. It is not worth while.

---

[illegible] n'bū-vā' [illegible] pā vō-tr' kā-fā'? [illegible] shō'.

[illegible] n'bō-á zhá-mĕn' l'kā- [illegible] tāl ĕh shō'.

[illegible] mān-zhā' pā'.

[illegible] sū-é

[illegible] fā-tēg' dū vō-á-yāzh'. [illegible] dōōt'.

**Why do you not drink your coffee?**
It is too warm.
I never drink coffee when it is too hot.
Miss —, you are not eating.
I beg your pardon, I have eaten quite heartily.
What is the matter with you?
I don't feel well.
The fatigue of the trip, I suppose.

---

page 495, parag. 1–2.

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

Altogether to my taste.
How Madame F. finds she the beefsteak?
A little too rare.
Have it cooked [illegible]

Oui,[1] Monsieur. Tout droit.
Oui, Monsieur. Tout droit devant

---

**6. Où voulez-vous aller?**

Où Monsieur veut-il aller?

Où votre ami veut-il aller?

Je veux aller.
Il veut aller.
Nous voulons aller à la salle d'attente

Tout droit devant vous, Monsieur.

---

**7. Où votre amie[2] veut-elle aller vant?**

Elle veut aller tout droit à l'[3]hôtel.

À quel hôtel veut-elle aller?
À l'Hôtel de l'Opéra.

---

NOTES.

[1] The **w** used in the pronunciation should have the val oo; that is, not quite so broad a sound as it is usually given

[2] **Ami,** male friend; **amie,** female friend.

[3] Abbreviation of **le** (or **la**), *the.* The French word for *th* forms:

**Le,** used before masculine nouns in the singular; Ex.:
**La,** " " feminine " " " Ex.:
**L',** " " any noun (masculine or feminine), wh begins with a vowel or silent *h*; Ex.: **l'ami, l'hôtel.**
**Les,** used before all plural nouns; Ex.: **les bagages.**

N. B.—There is no *neuter* gender in French. Hence in objects, like persons, can only be classified as masculine o nine.

not seem to

They just

remont like

e.[3]
it cooked[4]

is not worth

not drink

when it is

eating.
I have eaten

with you?

trip, I sup-

*The following vocabulary to be learned by heart.*

## VOCABULAIRE.

### I.—LE DÉJEUNER.

| | |
|---|---|
| Le premier déjeuner (prŭ-mē-ā), | Early breakfast |
| Le second déjeuner[1] (lŭ s'gon'), | Second breakfast,[1] or meat breakfast. |
| Le goûter (gōō-tā'), | Lunch. |
| Du pain (dü pin), | Bread, some bread. |
| Du café (noir) (kȧ-fā nȯ-ȧr'), | Coffee, black coffee. |
| Du café au lait (kȧ-fā ō lĕh'), | Coffee with milk. |
| Du chocolat (shȯ-kȯ-lä'), | Chocolate (some). |
| Un bifteck { bien cuit (bē-in' kü-ē'), | A beefsteak, well done. |
| Un bifteck { cuit à point (kü-e' tȧ pȯ-in'), | Done to a turn.[2] |
| Une côtelette au naturel (ō nȧ-tü-rĕl'), | A plain chop. |
| Un bifteck aux pommes (de terre) (pȯm (dŭ tair')), | Beefsteak with potatoes. |
| Des œufs (dĕh zû'), | Eggs. |
| Le poivre (pȯ-ȧ'-vr'), | Pepper. |
| Le sel (sĕl), | Salt. |
| Couper (kōō-pā'), | To cut. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| Avoir faim (ȧ-vȯ-ȧr fin'), | To be hungry. |
| Avez-vous froid?[3] (frȯ-ȧ'), | Are you cold? |
| A-t-elle chaud? (shō'), | Is she warm? |
| J'ai soif (sȯ-ȧf'), | I am thirsty |

---

[1] About 11 o'clock.

[2] **Assez cuit (ȧ-sā kü-ē')**, medium done; **saignant (sĕh-ñan')**, rare.— [3] Lit.: *Have* you cold? *Has* she warmth?

*The following vocabulary to be learned by heart.*

## VOCABULAIRE.

### II.—LA VAISSELLE.[1]

| | |
|---|---|
| Une assiette (ü-nȧ-sē-ĕt'), | A plate. |
| Un plat (un plȧ), | A dish. |
| Des plats (dĕh plȧ), | Dishes. |
| Une soucoupe (ün sōō-kōōp'), | A saucer. |
| Une salière (sȧ-lē-air'), | A salt-cellar. |
| Le vinaigrier[2] (vē-nĕh-grē-yā'), | The vinegar-cruet. |
| Une cuiller (kü-ē-yĕr'), | A spoon. |
| Une cuiller à café, | A teaspoon. |
| " à soupe, | A large spoon. |
| Une fourchette (fōōr-shĕt'), | A fork. |
| Un couteau (kōō-tō'), | A knife. |
| Un couvert (kōō-vĕr'), | A cover.[1] |
| Une serviette (sĕr-vē-ĕt'), | A napkin. |
| La nappe (nȧp'), | The tablecloth. |
| La soupière (sōō-pē-air'), | The soup-tureen. |
| Un tire-bouchon (tēr-bōō-shon'), | A cork-screw. |
| Le sucrier (sü-krē-yā'), | The sugar-bowl. |
| La poivrière (pȯ-ȧ-vrē-yair'), | The pepper-box. |
| La burette (bü-rĕt'), | The oil-cruet. |
| L'huilier (lü-ē-lē-ā'), m., | The (set of) casters. |
| Un coquetier (kȯk-tē-ā'), | An egg-cup. |
| Un cure-dents (kür-dan'), | A tooth-pick. |

[1] **Lȧ vĕh'-sĕl',** dishes, in general; table service.

[2] With **gr, dr,** etc., a slight y sound seems to introduce itself into the pronunciation of **ē-ā.** Hence I give these as **grē-yā', drē-yā',** etc.

### III.—IDIOMS.

| | |
|---|---|
| En ville (a*n* vēl'), | In town, over to town. |
| Hors de la ville (or dŭ lȧ vēl'), | Out of town. |
| Chez qui (shā kē′), | Where ? |
| Chez moi (shā mȯ-ȧ′), | At my house. |
| Chez un ami (shā zu*n* nȧ-mē′), | At a friend's. |

### IV.—THE SEASONS.*

| | |
|---|---|
| En été (a*n* nā-tā′), | In, during, next, *or* last, summer. |
| En automme (a*n* nō-tȯn'), | " " " *or* " fall. |
| En hiver (a*n* nē-vĕr′), | " " " *or* " winter. |
| Au printemps (ō pri*n*-ta*n*′), | " " " *or* " spring. |

### V.—EXPRESSIONS WITH "J'AI MAL," ETC.

| | |
|---|---|
| J'ai mal[2] à la tête (ȧ lȧ têt'), | I have a headache. |
| " " aux dents (mȧl ō da*n*′), | I have the toothache. |
| " " à la gorge (ȧ lȧ gorzh'), | I have a sore throat. |
| Elle a mal aux oreilles (ō zor-ĕh′-yŭ), | She has the earache. |
| Il a mal à l'estomac (ȧ lĕs-tȯ-mȧ′), | He has the stomach-ache. |
| Avez-vous mal au bras[2] (ō brȧ′) ? | Is your arm sore ? |
| Avez-vous mal aux pieds (ō pē-ā′) ? | Do your feet hurt you ? |
| Qu' a-t-il donc ?[3] | What is the matter with him ? — With her ? |
| Qu' a-t-elle donc ? | |

---

[1] Lit.: At-the-house-of (**chez**) whom ? *Anglice*, At whose house or place ? The *general* word for *where* is **où.**

[2] Lit.: I have (a) pain *in*-the head. Have you (a) pain in-the arm ? etc.

[3] Lit.: What has he *then ?* **Donc** may be omitted.

* **Les Saisons, sĕh-zo*n*′.**

*To be studied by heart, in preparation for reciting in class.* (*For Self-Study, see* **Directions,** *before* **Part I.**)

## CONVERSATIONS.

### 1.—*DANS UN RESTAURANT.*

Garçon, pouvons-nous avoir un cabinet particulier[1]? —Oui, messieurs. Veuillez monter au premier.[2]— Apportez-nous la carte du jour.—La voici, monsieur. —Quel potage[3] prendrez-vous, Monsieur Vernon?— Je ne prendrai[4] pas de[5] potage.—Eh bien! apportez-nous trois tasses de café au lait, des petits pains, des rôties,[6] et des œufs sur le plat.—Apportez-nous aussi une bouteille de vin ordinaire et de l'eau de Seltz.

### 2.—*EN SE RENCONTRANT.**

Comment vous portez-vous,[7] ce matin?—Assez bien, merci. Et vous-même?[8]—Je me porte [9] comme ci comme ça [10], depuis quelques jours.[11]—Comment se

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

1 **U*n* kå-bē-nĕh pår-tē-kü-lē-ā',** private room.

2 **Ō prŭ-mē-ā',** go up to the second floor. Literally, to the *first* floor. *Ground* floor: **Rez-de-chaussée, rād shō-sā'.**

3 **Pó-tåzh',** soup. **Prendrez-vous?** will you take?

4 I will not take.— 5 *Any*, see page 60, par. 3.

6 **Rō-tē',** roasted bread, toast.

7 **Kó-ma*n*' vōō por-tā'-vōō'?** how do you do? Lit.: How yourself carry you?

8 Pretty well (lit.: enough well), thank you. And yourself?

9 **Zhŭm por'-t',** I am (speaking of health). Lit.: I myself carry.

10 **Kóm sē' kóm så',** so so. Lit.: like this, like that.

11 For the last few days. Lit.: since a-few days.

* On meeting. Lit.: on one another(se)- meeting.

porte[1] (madame) votre belle-sœur[2]? — Elle se porte à merveille,[3] comme toujours.[4]

### 3.—*PETITES SOUFFRANCES.**

Comme vous avez l'air mal[5]! — En effet, on me dit que j'ai mauvaise mine[6] depuis quelques jours. — Qu'avez-vous donc? — J'ai mal à l'estomac.

Votre frère boite, il me semble.[7] Qu'a-t-il donc? — Il a mal aux pieds. Ses nouveaux souliers lui font mal.[8]

Votre amie n'a-t-elle pas froid? Elle tremble, il me semble.[9] — Attendez! Je vais lui demander. — Avez-vous froid, ma chère?

Non; je n'ai pas froid. Je ne sais pas† pourquoi je tremble. — N'avez-vous pas un peu de fièvre?[10] — Cela se peut.[11]

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

1 How is (lit.: *how herself carries*) your —

2 **Mâ-dâm' vô'-tr' bĕl sŭr'.** — When there is a certain degree of acquaintance existing, *madame* is not used.

3 Lit.: She herself carries to (a) marvel; admirably; exceedingly well.

4 As ever. Lit.: As always.

5 How bad you look! Lit.: How you have the air bad.

6 They tell (lit.: *one tells*) me I look bad. Lit.: I have bad mien (or look).

7 Limps, it seems to me. — 8 To-him make pain.

9 It appears to me. — 10 **Un pû d' fē-ĕh'-vr',** a little (*of*) fever.

11 That is possible. Lit.: That *can itself*. — † I do not know.

* Small Ailments.

*To be translated and written into French; but also to be treated conversationally in the class-room. For Self-Study, see* ***Directions****, before* ***Part I.****)*

## EXERCISES.

### 1.—*IN A RESTAURANT.*

Waiter, bring us two plates and a knife.—Here they are,[1] sir!—What will you (have), my dear fellow? —I'll take a beefsteak with cresses.—Waiter, bring us a beefsteak with cresses, a plain chop, a cup of coffee with milk, a cup of chocolate, and bread and butter.[2]

### 2.—*SAME SUBJECT.*

Will you please pass me that[3] knife. I want to cut some bread.—Here it is.[4]—Thank you.

What is the matter with you?—You do not eat. I am not hungry,[5] this morning. I have a headache and a sore throat.—You have a cold.[6]—Yes, I think so.[7]

### 3.—*TO HAVE A WATCH MENDED.*

By the way;[8] I would like to have my watch mended?—Could you[9] tell me where to find a good watchmaker.[10]—Why don't you go to Tiffany's.[11]—

---

**Aids to Translation.**

[1] Them see-here, **les voici.** — [2] **Du beurre.**

[3] **Ce**=this *or* that, masculine. — [4] It (**le**) see-here.

[5] **Je n'ai pas faim.** — [6] **Vous‿avez‿un rhume (rüm').**

[7] **Je crois que oui** (*I think that* yes).

[8] **À propos.** I would like to-make to-mend my watch.

[9] **Pourriez-vous.** — [10] **Où trouver un bon‿horloger.**

[11] Go you not?—**chez Tiffany.**

What do you mean?[1]—Why, don't you know[2] that Tiffany has a branch[3] here?—Where is it?[4]—No. 36,[5] Avenue de l'Opéra.—All right, I'll go there[6] at once after leaving here.[7]

### 4.—*ABOUT DINNER.*

At what hour[8] are you going[9] to have dinner?[10] —I'll take dinner at six.[11]—All right; I can take mine[12] at six.—After that, I want to go to my hatter's, (and) buy a hat.—Then I shall take a stroll in the[13] Palais-Royal.—Well, then, we'll meet again[14] at six, here?—Yes.—All right, good-by.[15]—Good-by.

---

#### Aids to Translation.

[1] **Que voulez-vous dire?** Lit.: what wish you to say?
[2] **Ne savez-vous pas?**— [3] **Une succursale.**
[4] **Où est-ce.** Lit.: Where is this?
[5] **Au numéro trente-six, tra*n*t-sēs'**—.
[6] **Je vais‿y aller.** Lit.: I go (am going there to-go).
[7] **En partant d'ici.**— [8] **À quelle heure.**— [9] Go you.
[10] **Avoir votre diner;** *or simply,* **diner** (go you to-dine?).
[11] **Mon dîner à six‿heures** (sē-zŭr').
[12] **Le mien.** Lit.: *the* mine.— [13] **Je ferai un tour au.**
[14] **Alors, nous nous reverrons.** Lit.: Then, we ourselves (each other) will-*re*-see.— [15] **Au revoir.**

---

**Note.—Study the "5 Necessary Tenses" of Être, (interrogatively), page 481.**

---

*PRONUNCIATION OF THE FOLLOWING EXERCISE.*

*In order to have the learner make a first attempt at reading without aid, the latter portion of the pronunciation of this exercise will be omitted, — the names of persons and places only being given.*

Mi*n*t-na*n*', rŭ-tōōr-no*n*' zō bōōl-vår'. Kŏ-shā', ĕt-vōō prē'? No*n*? Ā bē-in'! Bōōl-vår dŭ là måd-lĕn'. À là kōōr'-s'.

Tŭ-nā', nōō zē vŏ-å-là dā-zhå'. Dĕh-sa*n*-do*n*' d' vŏ-å-tür'. Vŏ-å-sē dû fra*n*, kŏ-shā; u*n* fra*n* si*n*-ka*n*-t pōōr là kōōr'-s, ā dû sōōd' pōōr-bŏ-år'.

Mi*n*t-na*n*', mo*n* shĕr', vŏ-å-yā dĕh dû kō-tā' sĕh so*n*p-tü-û' må-gå-zi*n*', sĕh zō-tĕl må-ñē-fēk', sĕh kå-fā' ōō lor ā lĕh glås ā-ti*n*-sĕl'.

Kĕl ĕh sĕt sü-pĕr'-b' rü' kŭ nōō lĕh-so*n* zå drŏ-åt'?

Sĕh là rü d' là Pĕh'. Nå-pŏ-lā-o*n*' prŭ-mē-ā' là fē pĕr-sā sür la*n*-plås-ma*n*' du*n* kōō-va*n*' dĕh kå-pü-sēn'. Vŏ-å-yā-vōō là-bä là kŏ-lŏn Va*n*-dô'-m'?

Wē. Sĕh tu*n* bē-i*n*' bō mŏ-nü-ma*n*'.

Pa*n*-sā kēl å ā-tā fĕh' dŭ dōōz-sa*n* kå-no*n*' prē sür lĕh zå-lē-ā' da*n* là gĕr dål-må'-ñŭ dŭ mēl-ü-ē-sa*n*-si*n*k', kē dü-rå trŏ-ä mŏ-ä'.

Mĕh zōō vo*n* sĕh zā-nor'-m' vŏ-å-tür ra*n*-plē d'shä-sē', kē rōōl sür lŭ bōōl-vår'?

Ĕl tra*n*s-por'-t lĕh dā-kor' kē sĕr'-v' tō rŭ-prā-za*n*-tä-sē-o*n*' dŭ lŏ-pā-rå'.

**Théâtres.** — Tā-ä-trē-tå-lē-i*n*', Grå*n*-tŏ-pā-rå'. — Tā-ä'-tr' dĕh Vå-rē-ā-tā' (*or* by abbrev., lĕh Vå-rē-ā-tā'). Lŭ Zhēm-näz'. — Tā-ä'-tr' dŭ là Por-t Si*n*-Mår-ti*n*'. — La*n*-bē-gü-kŏ-mēk'. — Lĕh Fŏ-lē-drå-må-tēk'.

**Boulevards.** — Mo*n*-mår'-tr'. — Bŏn-nōō-vĕl' — Si*n*-mår-ti*n*'.

**Auteurs.**—Skrēb'. — Dü-mä fēs'.— Vēk-tor-ē-i*n*' Sår-dōō'.

*To be used by means of the literal translation opposite, then without it, in preparation for reading aloud and translating in class. For the pronunciation, see page 93.*

## LECTURE.

### LA COLONNE VENDÔME.—LES BOULEVARDS.—LES THÉÂTRES,—LE GRAND OPÉRA.

—Maintenant, retournons aux boulevards. Cocher, êtes-vous pris?[1] Non? Eh bien! Boulevard de la Madeleine. À la course.

—Tenez, nous y voici déjà. Descendons de voiture. Voici deux francs, cocher; un franc cinquante, pour la course, et dix sous de pourboire.

—Maintenant, mon cher,[2] voyez des[3] deux côtés ces somptueux magasins, ces hôtels magnifiques, ces cafés où l'or et les glaces étincellent.

—Quelle est cette superbe rue que nous laissons à[4] droite?

—C'est la rue de la Paix. Napoléon I^er^ la fit percer sur l'emplacement d'un couvent des Capucines. Voyez-vous là-bas la colonne Vendôme?

—Oui. C'est un bien beau monument.

—Pensez qu'il a été fait de 1200 canons pris sur les alliés dans la guerre d'Allemagne de 1805, qui dura trois mois.

—Mais où vont ces énormes voitures remplies de châssis, qui roulent sur le boulevard?

---

[1] **Pris,** past participle of **prendre,** *to take.* Lit.: taken.
[2] Lit.: my dear.
[3] Lit.: of-the.
[4] Lit.: at.

*For Self-Study, should be read by means of the translation, then without it, and when thoroughly understood, read aloud in French.*

## READING.

### THE VENDOME COLUMN.—THE BOULEVARDS.—THE THEATRES.—THE GRAND OPÉRA.

—Now, let-us-return to-the Boulevards. Cab, are you engaged? No? Well-then, Boulevard de la Madeleine. By the mile.[1]

—See, we are there already. Let-us-get-down from carriage. Here are two francs, cab; one franc fifty,[2] for the mile, and ten cents of tip.

—Now, my friend, see on-the two sides those sumptuous stores, those magnificent hotels, these cafés where (*the*) gold and (*the*) fine large-mirrors are sparkling.

—What is this superb street which we leave on (our) right?

—That is the rue de la Paix. Napoleon I. it had cut-through on the site of a Capucine convent. Do you see yonder the Vendome Column?

—It is a very beautiful monument.

—Think that it has been made of 1200 cannons taken from the Allies in the War of Germany[3] of 1805, which lasted three months.

—But where go these enormous wagons filled with canvas-frames, rolling along on the Boulevards?

---

[1] Strictly, *the course.*

[2] One franc and fifty *centimes;* one franc being nearly equal to twenty cents, and fifty centimes to ten cents, or *sous.*

[3] *i. e.*, German War.

—Elles transportent les décors qui servent aux[1] reprêsentations de l'Opéra.

—De quel Opéra voulez-vous parler, Monsieur? Du Théâtre Italien?

—Pardon, Monsieur, du Grand Opéra. Tenez,[2] le voilà devant nous.

—Quel bel édifice! Que c'est grandiose! Et puis, ces boulevards de deux côtés, et cette grande avenue qui va de l'Opéra jusqu'au Louvre! Tout cela est magnifique! Mais quel est ce petit bâtiment, plus loin, à droite.

—Sur le Boulevard Montmartre? Ce sont les Variétés.

—Et qu'est-ce[3] qu'on y joue?

—Le vaudeville[4] la féerie, et les revues.[5]

—Un peu plus loin, à gauche, sur le Boulevard Bonne-Nouvelle s'élève le Gymnase. C'est sur ce théâtre que Scribe a brillé pendant trente ans, que Dumas fils et Victorien Sardou ont compté, de nos jours, leurs plus beaux succés.

—Et tous ces attroupés, de loin en loin?

—Sur le Boulevard Saint-Martin? Ce sont les queues du théâtre de la Porte-Saint-Martin,[6] de l'Ambigu-Comique, et des Folies-Dramatiques.

—Mais voici l'heure de mon rendez-vous au club. Je vous quitte. Au revoir.

—À demain.[7]

---

[1] Lit.: serve to-the.— [2] Lit.: Hold.

[3] (**Ce** and **C'**) may be rendered either by *this*, *that* or *it*.

[4] *i. e.*, light comedy with songs.— [5] Lit.: reviews.

[6] Gate St. Martin, a triumphal arch built on the site of one of the ancient gates of Paris, on the Boulevards, and near which the theatre is located.— [7] Abbreviation of **jusqu'à demain,** *until to-morrow*, a favorite expression on parting.

—They transfer the sceneries which serve for-the representations of the Opera.

—Of what Opera wish you to-speak, sir? Of-the "Théâtre Italien?"[1]

—(I beg your) pardon, sir, of-the Grand Opera. See, there it is before us.

—What beautiful edifice! How it is grand! And then, these Boulevards on two sides, and this great avenue which goes from the Opera until the Louvre! All that is magnificent! But what is that little building, farther, on the right?

—On the Boulevard Montmartre? That[2] *are* the VARIÉTÉS.

—And what is it that one plays there?

—The vaudeville, fairy pieces, and actuality plays.

—A little farther on (the) left, on the Bonne-Nouvelle Boulevard, rises the GYMNASE. It is on this theater that Scribe (has) shone during 30 years, that Dumas fils[3] and Victorien Sardou counted, in our days, their most beautiful successes.

—And those trooping-together from far to far.[4]

—On the Saint-Martin Boulevard? That *are* the files[5] of-the Porte-Saint-Martin Theatre, of-the AMBIGU COMIQUE, and of the FOLIES-DRAMATIQUES.

—But here is the time of-my appointment at the club. I you leave. Good-by.

—To to-morrow.[6]

---

1 The Italian Opera-house.

2 *Anglice*, those are. In this French expression, Ce (lit.: this *or* that) remains singular, while the verb is in the third person plural. **C'est nous, c'est vous** = *It is we, you;* **Ce sont eux** = *It is they.*

3 Dumas *son*, the younger Dumas.

4 From distance to distance.

5 That is to say, the files of theatre-goers.— 6 *i.e.*, Good-by.

*These letter endings should be learned by heart, and written from*

## CORRESPONDANCE.

### DES FINS DE LETTRES.

#### I.—*LETTRES D'AMITIÉ.*

1. Agréez l'expression de mes sentiments d'amitié.
2. Agréez l'assurance de ma sincère amitié.
3. Croyez à ma bien sincère amitié.
4. Croyez moi, comme toujours,
   Votre fidèle ami.[2]
5. Je vous serre affectueusement la main.
6. Je suis, comme toujours,
   Votre très[3] dévoué.
7. Votre ami dévoué.[4]
8. Bien[5] à vous.
9. Ta[6] sœur bien affectionnée.
10. Ta mère, qui t'embrasse comme elle t'aime.

---

[1] Letters of friendship.
[2] *Or*, **Votre fidèle amie.**
[3] *Or*, **bien dévoué, tout dévoué,** or, simply, **dévoué.** If a lady is writing, **dévouée.**

*memory either in class or at home, some hour or two afterward.*

## CORRESPONDENCE.

### THE ENDING OF LETTERS.

#### I.—*LETTERS TO FRIENDS.*

1. Accept the expression of my sentiments of friendship.

2. Accept the assurance of my sincere friendship.

3. Believe in my sincere friendship.

4. Believe me, as ever,
Your faithful friend.

5. I press your hand affectionately.

6. I am, as ever,
Your very devoted.

7. Your devoted friend.

8. Entirely yours.

9. Your affectionate sister.

10. Your mother, who kisses you as she loves you.

---

[4] *Or*, **votre amie dévouée.**

[5] Lit.: Well to you; *i. e.*, *Indeed* yours; or else, *quite* yours.

[6] Where, as is sometimes the case, the familiar form is not used among relatives, **votre** is substituted for **ta** (*or* **ton**).

# PART II.

## HOTEL AND BOARDING HOUSE.

## HÔTEL ET PENSION.

### SECTION I.

1. AT THE HOTEL.
2. ROOMS, MEALS, etc.
3. TOILET ARTICLES, FURNITURE.
4. BATH-ROOM, TOWELS, SOAP, etc.
5. AT A FURNITURE DEALER'S.
6. TO HAVE A ROOM MADE UP.
7. TO HAVE FURNITURE MENDED.
8. READING: THE MINT, "INSTITUT," etc.
9. A LETTER FROM PARIS.

## II.

### HÔTEL ET PENSION.

**On nous‿a donné des chambres‿au troisième‿étage; mais‿il y a un‿ascenseur. Et vous?—Nous, nous sommes logés‿à l'entresol et nous‿avons trois chambres qui donnent sur le jardin des Tuileries.**

PRONUNCIATION.

**O*n* nōō zȧ dȯ-nā′ dĕh sha*n*′-br' zō trȯ‿ä-zē‿ĕm ā-tȧzh', mĕh zēl ē yȧ u*n* nȧ-sa*n*-sŭr′.[1] Ā vōō′?—Nōō, nōō sȯm lȯ-zhā zȧ la*n*-trŭ-sȯl′ ā nōō zȧ-vo*n* trȯ‿ä sha*n*′-br'[2] kē dȯn sür lŭ zhȧr-di*n*′ dĕh Tü‿ēl-rē'.**

---

1 Let the pupil remember that these *accents*, while giving the true tonic quality of French words, do not amount in strength to *English* accentuation, but denote, first, that no *other* syllable is to be at all accented, and, secondly, that but the slightest emphasis is to be laid upon the accented syllable.

2 Let it be remembered that these *apostrophes* denote the vanishing quality of the French (so-called) mute e.

# II.

## HOTEL AND BOARDING-HOUSE.

**They have given us rooms on the third story; but there is an elevator. And you? —We are on the "entresol," and we have three rooms facing on the Tuileries.**

### LITERAL TRANSLATION.

**One[1] to-us has given some rooms at-the third story; but there is an elevator. And you?—We, we[2] are lodged at the *entresol* and we have three rooms which give on the garden of the Tuileries.**

---

[1] ***On*** = *one, people* (also *they*, and even *we* and *you*, when taken in a general sense). The French are also fond of using **on** with the active form, instead of the passive form in English—especially when referring to anything *habitual*. Thus: the baggage is examined here = **on visite les bagages ici.** Lit.: One visits (*or* they visit) the baggage here.

[2] **Nous, nous.** Reduplication indicating emphasis, instead of a stress on one word as in English.

# I

## FRENCH.

### 1. On nous a donné des chambres au premier étage.

A l'hôtel où nous sommes[1] descendus[2] à Londres, on nous a donné des chambres au premier étage.[3]

Concierge, à quel étage pourriez-vous nous loger?

A quel étage pourriez-vous nous donner trois chambres?

Je ne peux pas vous dire.

Je dois appeler le maître de l'hôtel.

Le maître d'hôtel?

Pardon. Le maître de l'hôtel.

---

NOTES.

[1] **Descendre,** to go or get hence, down; to stop (at a hotel, house, etc.). **Nous sommes descendus,** lit.: we are (*i. e.* we have) stopped. **Descendre** is one of the 12 neuter verbs which are conjugated with the auxiliary **être. Nous sommes descendus,** lit.: we *are* descended.

[2] Adjectives and past participles used with **être** *agree* in gender and number with the subject of **être.** Thus **descendu** takes here the sign of the plural (s), **descendus,** because the subject **être,** which is **nous,** is plural.

[3] Or simply, **au premier.**

# I.

| PRONUNCIATION. | TRANSLATION. |
|---|---|
| **1. *On* nōō zȧ dȯ-nā dĕh shan′-br'-zō prŭ-mē-ā rā-tȧzh'.** | **They have given us rooms on the first story.[1]** |
| ——nōō sȯm dĕh-san-dŭ zȧ Lon′-dr', on nōō zȧ dȯ-nā′ dĕh shan′-br' zō prŭ-mē-ā′ rā-tȧzh'. | At the hotel, where we put up[2] in London, they gave us rooms on the first story. |
| Kon-sē-airzh',* ȧ kĕl ā-tȧzh' pōō-rē-ā′ vōō nōō lȯ-zhā′? | Porter, on what story could you put us?[3] |
| | On what story could you give us[4] three rooms? |
| Zhŭ n'pû pä vōō dēr'. | I cannot tell you. |
| Zhŭ dȯ-ȧ-zȧ-plā′ l'mê′-tr' dŭ lō-tĕl′. | I must call the proprietor.[5] |
| Lŭ mê′-tr' dō-tĕl′? | The *maître d'hôtel?* (*i. e.* the butler?)[6] |
| Pȧr-don′. Lŭ mê′-tr' dŭ lō-tĕl′. | I beg pardon. The *maître de l'hôtel* (*i. e.* the proprietor). |

---

### LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 At the first story.

2 We *are* descended, *i. e.* have *got-down*, *i. e.* we got down.

3 Us lodge.

4 To-us give.

5 The master of the hotel.

6 The master *of* hotel = *the butler*, against the master *of the* hotel = the proprietor.

* Let it be remembered that the signs ‿, *in the pronunciation*, denote that the vowels so joined are to be pronounced rapidly together, as a diphthong.

**2. Bonjour, Monsieur.—Vous voudriez des chambres?**

Combien de[1] chambres voudriez-vous?

Nous voudrions quatre chambres.

Quatre chambres à coucher?
Non, Monsieur. Ne pourriez-vous pas nous donner un salon, deux chambres à coucher contiguës,[2] avec un cabinet de toilette?

Je pourrais vous donner cela.

Mais le salon donne sur la cour.
Cela nous est égal.

---

**3.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. **Me, *to* me.** | 4. **Her,** or **it.** | 7. **You, *to* you.** |
| 2. **Thee, *to* thee.** | 5. ***To* him, *to* her.**[3] | 8. **Them.** |
| 3. **Him,** or **it.** | 6. **Us, *to* us.** | 9. ***To* them.** |

In **English,** the above **pronoun-objects** are placed **after** the verb. Thus:

ENGLISH.

| | VERB. | PRON. |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Could you | *give* | **us?** |
| 2. I cannot | *tell* | **you.** |
| 3. Will you | *lend* | **me?** |

---

NOTES.

[1] After **combien,** and other adverbs of quantity, **de** is used before the noun.

[2] Adjectives agree in gender and number with the nouns to which they belong. **Contiguës** is spelled with the feminine plural ending **es,** because **chambres** is feminine plural.

[3] Or, *to* **it.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **2. Bon-zhōōr′, mós-yû′. — Vōō vōō-drē-yā′ děh shan′-br'?** | **Good day, sir. Would you like (to have)[1] rooms?** |
| Kon-bē-in′ d'shan′-br' vōō-drē-yā vōō′? | How many rooms[2] would you like (to have)? |
| Nōō vōō-drē-yon′ kȧ′-tr'. | We would like to have four rooms. |
| —— shan′-br' zȧ kōō-shā? | Four sleeping-rooms?[3] |
| Nŭ pōō-rē-ā′ vōō pä nōō dó-nā′ un sȧ-lon′, dû shan′-br' zȧ kōō-shā kon-tē-gü' ȧ-věk un kȧ-bē-něd tó-ȧ-lět'? | No, sir. Could you not let us have a parlor, two bed-rooms adjoining each other,[4] with a dressing-room? |
| Zhŭ pōō-rěh′ vōō dó-nā s'lȧ! | I could give you that. |
| L'sȧ-lon′ dón sür lȧ kōōr′. | But the parlor is in the back.[5] |
| Sŭ-lȧ nōō zěh tā-gȧl′. | That 's immaterial.[6] |

---

meaning { 1. **Me.** 2. **Te.** 3. **Le.** 4. **La.** 5. **Lui.** 6. **Nous.** 7. **Vous.** 8. **Les.** 9. **Leur.**

In **French,** the above **pronoun-objects** are placed **before** the verb. Thus:

**FRENCH.**

| | PRON. | VERB. | | PRON. | VERB. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. Could you | **us** | *give?* | — Pourriez-vous | **nous** | *donner.* |
| 2. I cannot | **you** | *tell.* | — Je ne peux pas | **vous** | *dire.* |
| 3. Will you | **me** | *lend?* | — Voulez-vous | **me** | *prêter.* |

---

**LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.**

[1] You would like, or you would like to have. The French can also add **avoir,** *to have.*

[2] How many *of* rooms —?

[3] Rooms to lie-down. — [4] Rooms to lie-down contiguous.

[5] Gives (*i. e.* looks) into the yard.

[6] That to-us is equal (*i. e.* indifferent).

This does not hold, however, when the verb is in the an *affirmative*) command. Then the pronouns are placed **after**

| | VERB. | PRON. | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Speak to | **her** | = |
| 2. | Send | **us** | = |

---

Naturally, it follows that if the verb is in the **imperative** pronoun is placed before the verb, according to the general

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Do not speak to | **her** | = |
| 2. | Do not send | **us** | = |

---

**4. Où pourriez-vous nous donner ces chambres?**

Au deuxième (étage).—See note,* page 109.

C'est trop haut![1]

Ma femme ne peut pas monter si haut.

Ne pourriez-vous pas nous donner des chambres plus bas?

Mais, sans doute. Seulement, je ne pourrais pas vous donner plus de trois chambres.

---

NOTES.

[1] In European hotels and houses, the *second* story often answers to our *fourth*. The *first* or ground floor is the **rez-de-chaussée**; the *second* is the **entresol**; the next or *third* is called **le premier**; the next or *fourth* is called **le deuxième**, etc. This often gives rise to disappointments and, sometimes, no little indignation on the part of tourists, who, when having made arrangements by letter or telegraph to have rooms on the *first* floor, find themselves taken up to the *third* story by the nevertheless innocent host.

**imperative *affirmative*,** that is when we give a positive (*i. e.*, the verb, just as in English. Thus:

VERB. PRON.
1. Parlez-**lui.**
2. Envoyez-**nous.**

---

***negative*** (that is, when a *negative* command is given), the rule. Thus:

1. To **her** speak not. — Ne **lui** parlez pas.
2. **Us** send not. — Ne **nous** envoyez pas.

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **4. ŌŌ pōō-rē-ā′-vōō nōō dȯ-nā sĕh shan′-br'?** | **Where could you give us these rooms?** |
| Ō dû-zē-ēm (ā-tȧzh'). | On[1] the second (story).* |
| Sĕh trȯ ō′! | It is too high (see note). |
| Mȧ fȧm nŭ pû pä mon-tā sē ō′. | My wife cannot go up so high.[2] |
| Plü bä? | Could you not give us rooms lower (than that)?[3] |
| Sŭl-man′, zhŭn pōō-rĕh pä′ vōō dȯ-nā′ plüd trȯ-ā′ shan′-br'. | Why, certainly.[4] Only, I could not give you more than[5] three rooms. |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

[1] *At* the —.
[2] Mount. — [3] More low.
[4] But, without doubt.
[5] More *of* three rooms. After **plus** and **moins, de** is used before numbers instead of **que.**
* **Étage** may be left off. **Au deuxième, au troisième,** etc., are really more frequent than **au deuxième étage, au troisième étage,** etc.

À quel étage, alors?
Au rez[1]-de-chaussée.
Eh bien! Nous nous contenterons de trois chambres.

---

## 5. De quel prix seront ces chambres?

Elles sont de quarante-cinq francs par jour.

C'est très cher.
Je puis[2] vous donner des chambres à meilleur marché.

Au deuxième étage,[3] n'est-ce pas?

Non, Monsieur; à l'entresol.[4]

---

## 6. De quel prix seraient[5]-elles?

Elles seraient **de** trente francs par jour.
Et **de** combien par semaine?
Voyons.[6] Par semaine, je vous les laisserais[7] à cent-soixante-quinze francs.

Eh bien! Je prendrai les chambres de l'entresol.

---

NOTES.

[1] **Au rez-de chaussée,** lit.: On the level (*rez*) of highway.
[2] Weaker form of **je peux,** *I can.*
[3] This is really the *fourth* story. — [4] This is really the *second* story.
[5] Lit.: **would be they?** Conditional (third person, plural) of **être,** *to be.*
[6] **Voyons.** Lit.: See-*we.* A very favorite expression, answering either to *Let me see,* or *Let us see.*
[7] **Would leave them to you** (*i.e.*, let you have them). Conditional (first person, singular) of **laisser,** *to leave.*

| | |
|---|---|
| | On[1] what story, then? |
| —— ō rād shō-sā'! | On[2] the first floor. |
| Nōō nōō kon-tan-trond trò-ä' shan'-br'. | Well, then! We will[3] do with three rooms. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **5. Dŭ kĕl prē' sron sĕh shan'-br'?** | **What will be the price of these rooms?[4]** |
| Ĕl son dŭ kà-ran' t-sin fran' pàr zhōōr'. | Forty-five francs a day.[5] |
| Sĕh trĕh shĕr.' | That's very dear. |
| Zhŭ pü-ē' vōō dò-nā dĕh shan'-br' zà mĕh-yŭr màr-shā'! | I *can* give you rooms cheaper.[6] |
| Ō dû-zē-ĕm ā-tàzh,' nĕs pä'? | On the second floor, is it not?[7] |
| | No, sir. On the *entresol.* |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **6. Dŭ kĕl prē srĕh-tĕl'?** | **How much would they[8] be?** |
| Ĕl srĕh dŭ trant fran'. | Thirty francs a day.[9] |
| Pàr sŭ-mĕn'? | And how much a week?[10] |
| Vò-à-yon'.—Zh' vōō lĕh lĕh-srĕh zà sò-à-sant-kinz fran' | Let us see.[11] By the week, I would let you have them[12] at one hundred and seventy-five francs?[13] |
| Zh'pran-drā lĕh shan'-br' dŭ lan-trŭ-sòl'. | Well! I'll take the rooms on the entresol. |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 At what story?
2 At the ground floor (*absolutely: on-the-level of* (*the*) *highway*).
3 We ourselves will content *of* three rooms.
4 Of what price will be these rooms?
5 They are of 45 francs *by* day.— 6 *At better* market.
7 *Is this not*, a reversed form of question much used by the French.
8 Of what price would be they?— 9 By (per) day.
10 By *or* per week.— 11 See-*we*.
12 I to-you would leave them.— 13 One hundred sixty-*fifteen* francs.

**Note.—Study the "6 necessary tenses" of Être,**

---

**7. Quand Monsieur voudrait-il dîner?**

Avez-vous une table d'hôte à l'hôtel?
Oui, Monsieur. Nous tenons table d'hôte.

Quelles[1] sont les heures des repas?
Le premier déjeuner entre sept heures et neuf heures du matin.

Le déjeuner à la fourchette[2] entre onze heures du matin et une heure de l'après-midi.

Le dîner à six heures (du soir).

Et le prix?
C'est dix francs par personne.
Mais nous avons deux enfants.
Doivent-ils payer autant que les grandes personnes?

Les enfants ne paient que[3] moitié prix.

Très bien; nous dînerons[4] à la table d'hôte à six heures.

---

**NOTES.**

[1] **Quelles,** feminine plural. Masculine singular, **quel;** plural, **quels.** Feminine singular, **quelle.**

[2] More often called, **second déjeuner.**

[3] Two ways of saying only. Ex.: Les enfants paient **seulement;** or, Les enfants **ne** paient **que**—.

[4] Future of the verb **dîner.**

(negatively), page 482.

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **7. Kan mós-yû′ vōō-drĕh-tēl′ dē-nā′?** | **When would you want[1] to dine?** |
| Á-vā vōō zün tá-bl' dō′-t′. | Have you a table d'hôte? |
| Nōō tü-non′ (*or simply*, t'non) tá-bl' dō-t′. | Yes, sir. We keep (a) table d'hote. |
| Kĕl son′ lĕh zür′ dĕh r'pä′? | What are the hours?[2] |
| Lŭ prŭ-mē-ā′ dā-zhŭ-nā an-tr' sĕh-tür′ zā nŭ-vür dü má-tin′. | The *first* breakfast between seven and nine in the morning.[3] |
| —— á lá fōōr-shĕt′ an-tron zür . . . ā ünür dŭ lá-prĕh mē-dē′. | The *second* breakfast[4] between eleven in the morning and one in the afternoon.[5] |
| Lŭ dē-nā′ á sē-zür dü. | The dinner at six.[6] |
| Ā l'prē′? | And the price? |
| Sĕh dē fran pár pĕr-son′? | Ten francs for one person. |
| Dû zan-fan′. | But we have two children. |
| Dó-áv-tēl pĕ-yā′ ō-tan k'lĕh grand' pĕr-son′? | Must they pay as much as grown people? |
| Lĕh zan-fan n'pĕh-y' kŭ mó-á-tē-ā′ prē′. | No. Children pay only half price. |
| —— nōō dēn-ron′ zá lá tá-bl' dō′t′. | Well. We'll dine at the table d'hôte at six o'clock. |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

1 When Monsieur would he dine?—2 The hours of-the meals.

3 Between seven *hours* and nine *hours of* the morning.

4 The breakfast with (à) a fork.

5 Eleven *hours* of the morning, and one *hour* of the afternoon.

6 At six *hours* (of the evening). The last may be omitted, as in English.

**8. Garçon, avez-vous fait monter mes bagages?**

Oui, Monsieur. Je les ai fait monter, il y a un instant.

Vous avez oublié[1] ce nécessaire.

Lequel voulez-vous dire?

Ce petit-là.

Pourquoi ne l'avez-vous[2] pas fait monter?

Je ne l'avais pas vu.

Vous l'aviez mis derrière le bureau.

---

**Note.** — **Study the "5 necessary tenses" of Parler,**

---

**9. Pourquoi la femme de chambre[3] ne nous a-t-elle pas apporté de savon?**

Ne vous a-t-elle pas apporté de savon?

Ma femme dit que non.[4]

Elle a regardé dans la boîte à savon et sur la table.

Elle ne peut trouver de savon nulle part.

---

NOTES.

[1] The French would not say, conversationally, **you forgot.** Practically, they say only, **you have forgotten.**

[2] The French not having any auxiliary *do*, *did*, must say in the present case, *why have you not* — .

[3] **Femme de chambre,** or **Fille de chambre.**

[4] **Says that no,** *i. e.* says that *it is* no, *or* not.

| | |
|---|---|
| **8. Går-son′, å-vā-vōō fĕh mon-tā′ mĕh bå-gåzh′?** | **Waiter, have you had my baggage taken to my room?**[1] |
| Zhŭ lĕh (*or* zh'lĕh) zā fĕh mon-tā′, ēl ē yå un nins-tan′. | Yes, sir. I had them taken up, a moment ago.[2] |
| Vōō zå-vā zōō-blē-ā′ sŭ nā-sĕh-sair′. | You forgot this[3] dressing-case. |
| | Which one do you mean? |
| Sŭ p'tē lå′. | That small one. |
| | Why did n't you have[4] it carried up? |
| Zhŭn lå-vĕh pä vü′. | I did n't see it.[5] |
| Vōō lå-vē-ā mē dĕh-rē-air lŭ bü-rō′. | You had put it[6] behind the desk. |

---

(interrogatively), page 485.

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **9. Pōōr-kō-å lå fåm dŭ shan′-br' nŭ nōō zå-tĕl pä zå-por-tā′ d' så-von′?** | **Why did n't the chambermaid bring us soap?**[7] |
| ——pä zå-por-tā d'så-von′? | Did n't she bring you soap? |
| Må fåm dē k'non′. | My wife says not. |
| Ĕl å r'går-dā dan lå bō-å′-tå så-von′ ā sür lå tå′-bl′. | She looked into the soap-dish and on the table. |
| Ĕl nŭ pû trōō-vā d'så-von′ nül′ pår′. | She can't find any soap anywhere. |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 Have you made to-take up my baggage?
2 I then have made to-carry-up. There is an instant.
3 You have forgotten (see note 1, opp. page).
4 Why it have you not made to-carry-up?
5 I it had not seen. — 6 You it had put.
7 Why the girl of room to-us has she not brought *any* soap?

Envoyez-moi[1] un morceau de savon tout de suite.

Mais ne m'[2]envoyez pas de[3] savon d'amandes.

J'aime mieux le savon de Marseille.

---

**Note.—Study parag. 1 to 2, page 459.**

---

**10. Pourquoi la femme de chambre n'a-t-elle pas fait nos chambres, ce matin?**

Voyez comme tout‿est plein de poussière!

Je lui ai dit de les faire.
Elle a encore une fois oublié de les faire.

Je vais lui dire de monter les faire tout de suite.

---

**NOTES.**

[1] See page 108.— [2] See page 108.

[3] After negations, the article is omitted before partitive nouns. Thus: send me soap=**envoyez-moi du** (*i. e.* of *the*) soap; but, Do not send me=**ne m'envoyez pas de** (*that is, simply*, **of**) soap.

[4] The French have no adjective use of nouns. They cannot say, *almond* soap, *castile* (*or*, rather, *Marseilles*) soap, but only *soap of almonds*, *soap of Marseilles.*

| | |
|---|---|
| A*n*-vò-à-yā-mò-à u*n* mor-sō d'sà-vo*n*'. | Send me a cake[1] of soap at once. |
| Mĕh n'ma*n*-vò-à-yā pä d'sà-vo*n* dà-ma*n*'-d'. | But do not send[2] me any almond soap. |
| Zhĕm mē-û' l'sà-vo*n* d'mär-sĕh'-yŭ. | I prefer castile soap. |

---

**"No adjective use of nouns in French."**

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **10. Pōōr-kò-à là fàm dŭ sha*n*-br' nà tĕl pä fĕh nō sha*n*-br' s'mà-ti*n*'?** | **Why did not the chambermaid clean our rooms, this morning?[3]** |
| Vò-à-yā kòm tōō tĕh pli*n* d'pōō'-sē-air'. | See how dusty everything is![4] |
| Zhŭ lü-ē ā dē dlĕh fair'. | I told her how[5] to clean them. |
| Ĕl à a*n*-kor ün fò-à ōō-blē-yā dlĕh fair'. | She has forgotten to clean them, once again.[6] |
| Zhŭ vĕh —. | I am going[7] to tell her to come and make them up, at once. |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] A piece.
[2] Send me not.
[3] Why the woman of room has she not made our rooms — .
[4] See how all is full of dust!
[5] I to-her have said — .
[6] She has still one time forgotten.
[7] I go to-her to say to come-up (and) make them.

*The following vocabulary to be learned by heart.*

## VOCABULAIRE.

### LA CHAMBRE.

| | |
|---|---|
| La porte (por′-t'), | The door. |
| La fenêtre (fŭ-nê′-tr'), | The window. |
| Le tapis (tȧ-pē′), | The carpet. |
| Par terre (pȧr-tȧir′), | On the floor. |
| Le plafond (plȧ-fo*n*′), | The ceiling. |
| Le mur (mür), | The wall. |
| La chaise (shĕz'), | The chair. |
| La berceuse (bĕr-sûz'), | The rocking-chair. |
| Le lit (lē), | The bed. |
| Le matelas (mȧ-t'lä′), | The mattress. |
| Le sommier élastique (sȯ-mē-ȧ ā-lȧs-tēk') | The spring-mattress. |
| Le drap (drȧ), | The sheet. |
| Le traversin (trȧ-vĕr-si*n*′), | The bolster. |
| L'oreiller (lor-ĕh-yā′), | The pillow. |
| La lampe (la*n*′-p'), | The lamp. |
| Un abat-jour (u*n*-nȧ-bȧ-zhōōr′), | A lamp-shade. |
| Une bougie (ün bōō-zhē'), | A candle. |
| Un chandelier (sha*n*-dŭ-lē-ā′), | A candle-stick. |
| Du savon (sȧ-vo*n*′), | Soap. |
| Des allumettes (dĕh zȧ-lü-mĕt'), | Matches. |
| Une éponge (ü nā-po*n*zh'), | A sponge. |
| Du cirage (sē-rȧzh'), | Blacking. |
| La serviette (sĕr-vē-ĕt'), | (fine) towel. |
| Un essuie-main (ĕh-sü-ē-mi*n*′), | (coarse) towel. |

*The following vocabulary to be learned by heart.*

## VOCABULARY.

### LA TOILETTE.

| | |
|---|---|
| La table (tȧ'-bl'), | The table. |
| Le lavabo (lȧ-vȧ-bo'), | The washstand. |
| Les robinets (rȯ-bē-nĕh'), | The faucets. |
| Le miroir (mē-rȯ-ȧr'), | The mirror. |
| La brosse à cheveux (lȧ brȯs ȧ sh'vû'), | The hair-brush. |
| " " à dents (lȧ brȯs ȧ da*n*'), | The tooth " |
| " " à ongles ( " " " o*n*-gl'), | The nail " |
| " " à cirer ( " " " sē-rā'), | The blacking-brush. |
| " " à habit ( " " " ȧ-bē'), | The clothes " |
| " " à chapeau (ȧ shȧ-pō'), | The hat " |
| Le polissoir (pȯ-lē-sȯ-ȧr'), | The nail polisher. |
| La houppe à poudrer (hōō-pȧ pōō-drā), | The powder puff. |
| Le peigne (lŭ pĕh'-ñŭ), | The comb. |
| Le peigne fin (lŭ pĕh'-ñŭ fi*n*'), | The fine comb. |
| Le démêloir (dā-mĕh-lȯ-ȧr'), | The coarse " |
| La pommade (pȯ-mȧd'), | The pomatum. |
| Le canif (kȧ-nēf'), | The penknife. |
| La salle de bain (sȧl dŭ bi*n*'), | The bathroom. |
| Se baigner (sŭ bĕh-ñā'), | To bathe. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| Cirez ces bottines (sē-rā'), | Black these shoes. |
| Brossez mes habits (brȯ-sā'), | Brush my clothes. |
| Repassez ce linge (rŭ-pä-sā'), | Iron this linen. |
| Raccommodez ces bas (rȧ-kȯ-mȯ-dā'), | Mend these stockings. |

*To be learned by heart and repeated aloud, as a conversation, whether for self-study or preparation for the class-room.*
*(See **Directions** before **Part I.**)*

## CONVERSATIONS.

### 1.—*LA TOILETTE.*

Où avez-vous mis[1] la brosse à cheveux?—Je ne sais pas. Je ne l'ai pas vue[2] depuis hier soir.[2]—Où l'aviez-vous laissée.[3]—Je l'ai laissée sur le lavabo.—Eh bien! N'y est-elle[4] pas à présent?—Non. Je ne peux la trouver nulle part.—Regardez[5] dans la commode.—Non, pas dans ce tiroir[6]-là.—Dans celui du haut.[7]—Oui. La voilà.

---

**Note.—Study the "Plural of Nouns," parags. 1 and 2, page 460.**

---

### 2.—*LA BLANCHISSEUSE.*

Ma femme voudrait savoir[8] où elle pourrait faire repasser son linge.—Il y a une blanchisseuse qui vient

---

**Pronunciation and Translation.**

[1] **Mē,** put.—[2] **Vü,** seen; **dŭ-pü-ē' yĕr' sŏ-år,** since last night.

[3] **Lĕh-sā',** left.—[4] **Nē ĕh-tĕl pä?** is it not there? Lit.: There is it not?

[5] **Rŭ-går-dā',** look.

[6] **Tē-rŏ-år'-lå',** that drawer.

[7] **Sü-lü-ē dü ō',** the top one. Lit.: That of the top.

[8] **Så-vŏ-år',** to know.

chercher le linge tous les lundis.[1] Est-elle déjà venue?[2] — Non, monsieur; pas encore.[3] Quand elle viendra,[4] veuillez lui dire de monter. — Très bien, monsieur.

### 3.—*SALLE DE BAIN.*

Ma femme veut savoir où est la salle de bain. Elle voudrait se baigner, cet après-midi. — La salle de bain est dans votre corridor, à droite,[5] tout en sortant[6] de votre appartement. — Merci bien.[7]

### 4.—*LE MATIN.*

Comment avez-vous passé la nuit?[8] — Pas très bien. J'ai mal dormi.[9] Je n'avais pas assez de couvertures. Le matelas est trop dur.[10] — J'en suis bien fâchée. Je vous ferai mettre une couverture plus épaisse[11] et un autre matelas, ce soir.

---

**Pronunciation and Translation.**

1 Every Monday. Lit.: all the Mondays.
2 *Is* (*i. e.* has) she already come?
3 Not yet. — 4 When she *will*-come.
5 **À drò-à'-t',** on the right.
6 Just as you come out. Lit.: all on coming-out.
7 Many thanks. Lit.: thank-you well.
8 Spent the night. — 9 Badly slept. — 10 Hard.
11 I for-you will-make to put; *that is,* I will have a thicker cover, etc., put on for-you.

*To be translated and written into French; but also to be recited as a conversation in the class-room. (See **Directions** before **Part I.**)*

## EXERCISES.

### 1.—*TO MAKE UP A ROOM.*

Why did n't the servant make the bed,[1] yesterday? — Did n't she make it?[2] That is not possible.[3] — Yes, she forgot it. — Why did n't you ring?[4] I am going[5] to speak to her. But when you want anything done in your room, please ring, and she will come[6] at once.

### 2.—*ABOUT LUGGAGE.*

Please have my trunks brought[7] from the depot. — Please give me your luggage-check. — Let me see. I cannot find it.[8] — Ah, here it is.[9] — Make haste. I want to change my linen.[10]

---

**Pronunciation and Translation.**

1 Why the servant has she not made (**fait**) the bed?
2 It has she not made (**ne l'a-t-elle pas fait**)?
3 Cela ne se peut pas.
4 Why have you not rung (**sonné**)?
5 Je vais lui parler.
6 Quand vous voulez faire faire quelque chose **à** votre chambre; veuillez sonner et elle viendra, etc.
7 Veuillez faire apporter mes malles de la gare.
8 Voyons. Je ne peux pas le trouver.
9 It (**le**) there is. — 10 **Changer de linge.**

### 3.—*CANDLES, SHOES, ETC.*

Waiter, you did n't bring me any candle.[1] — Beg your pardon, sir. I brought you a[2] candle. — Where is it?[3] — I put it[4] on the washstand. — Ah! there it[5] is. — Very well. Now, black these shoes and brush my overcoat.

---

**Note. — Study the "5 Necessary Tenses" of Avoir (negatively-interrogatively), page 479.**

---

### 4.—*LE BAIN.*

Waiter, please show me[6] the bath-room. — There it[7] is, sir. Straight before you. — Bring me some soap, and[8] towels; please. — You will find soap and towels[8] in the bath-room, sir. — Ah! Very well. Thank you.

---

**Aids to Translation.**

[1] Lit.: you to-me have not brought (**apporté**).
[2] **Une.**
[3] **Elle.** Lit.: Is *she* (**Bougie** being feminine).
[4] I it have put (**mise**).
[5] **La.**
[6] Me montrer.
[7] **La.**
[8] Remember *some* or *any* can *not* be omitted

*To be read by means of literal translation, in preparation for the class-room.*

## LECTURE.

### LA MONNAIE.—L'INSTITUT.—LE CORPS LÉGISLATIF.—LE SÉNAT.—LES THERMES.

—Voyez-vous ce magnifique édifice, parallèle à la Seine, là-bas, sur le quai Conti?

—Parfaitement.

—C'est l'Hôtel de la Monnaie.[1]—Plus loin, mais toujours sur le quai Conti, ce bâtiment à forme sphérique que vous apercevez, c'est le Palais de l'Institut ou Palais Mazarin, fondé en 1661, d'après le testament du cardinal[2] de ce nom, et où se tiennent les séances solennelles des cinq académies.[3]

—Ah! d'ici vous pouvez voir, sur le quai d'Orsay, juste à la jonction des Tuileries et des Champs-Elysées, cette colonnade surmontée d'un fronton. C'est là que, jusqu'en 1871, les représentants de la nation tenaient leurs séances.

—Ah! j'y suis—le Palais Bourbon.

—Il s'est nommé plus tard Palais du Corps-Legislatif. A l'heure qu'il est, il a repris son ancien nom et il est occupé par le président de la chambre,[4] M. Gambetta.

---

[1] The Mint.

[2] The Cardinal de Mazarin, State Minister of Louis XIV.

[3] The **Académie Française,** and the four academies of Belles-Lettres, Sciences, Fine-Arts, and Moral and Political Sciences.

[4] *I. e.*, Legislature.

*For self-study, to be read by means of literal translation, then without it. See also* **Directions** *before* **Part I.**

## READING.

### THE MINT.—THE "INSTITUT."—THE LEGISLATIVE BODY.—THE SENATE.—THE THERMES.

—See-you that magnificent edifice parallel to-the Seine, yonder,[1] on the quay Conti?

—Perfectly.

—That is the Mansion-of-the Money.—Farther, but always[2] on the quay Conti, that building of[3] spherical form which you perceive, (*that*) is the Palace of the Institute or Palace Mazarin founded in 1661, according[4] to the will of the cardinal of that name, and where are held[5] the solemn sessions of the five academies.

—Ah! From here you can see, on the quay d'Orsay, exactly at the Junction of the Tuileries and the Champs-Elysées, that colonnade surmounted by a pediment. It is there that, until 1871, the representatives of the nation held their sessions.

—Ah! I about-it am[6]—(it is) the Palace Bourbon.

—It itself has named later the Palace of-the Legislative body. At present, it has retaken its ancient name and it is occupied by the chairman of the House, Mr. Gambetta.

---

1 Lit.: there-below.— 2 *Anglice*, still.

3 Lit.: at. à is often used in the sense of *with* or *of*.

4 Lit.: from-after. 5 Lit.: Hold *themselves*.

6 J'y suis, *anglice*, I see (*or* I understand).—**Vous y êtes,** you have it, you have caught the idea.

— Et où se réunissaient les sénateurs sous le second empire?

— Dans le palais du Luxembourg, devenu Palais du sénat. Ce palais a été occupé tour à tour par Marie de Médicis, la duchesse de Montpensier et Louis XVIII. Depuis lors, il a servi successivement de maison d'arrêt[1] sous la République, de palais pour le sénat royaliste, puis pour la chambre des pairs;[2] enfin c'est là que siégeaient les nouveaux sénateurs créés par Napoléon III. — Mais donnons un coup d'œil,[3] en passant, aux ruines du palais des Thermes, bâti par l'empereur Julien.

— Comment! Paris aurait aussi son Herculanum?[4]

— Parfaitement. Nous irons voir tout cela demain. Je veux vous montrer aussi, dans le même quartier, l'hôtel de Cluny, bâti sur une partie de ces ruines, et qui renferme une magnifique collection d'objets d'art. Le mélange d'architecture qu'on y remarque, tient aux[5] variations du goût et au grand nombre des maîtres qui y ont travaillé. Mais je vous en parlerai davantage quand nous irons le visiter.

---

[1] *Anglice*, jail. — [2] Under Louis XVIII.
[3] Lit.: A *stroke* of eye; *i. e.* a glance.
[4] *Anglice*, What! Paris has also its Herculaneum?

— And where themselves assembled the senators under the Second Empire.

— In the Palace of the Luxemburg, (which had) become Palace of-the Senate. That palace was occupied, turn by turn, by Mary of Medicis, the duchess of Montpensier and Louis XVIII. Since then it has served successively as (a) house of arrest under the Republic, as (a) palace of the royalist senate, then for the Chamber of Pairs; finally, it is there that sat the new senators created by Napoleon III. — But (let us) give a glance (*of eye*), in passing, to-the ruins of the palace of Thermes, built by the emperor Julian.

— What![5] Paris would-have also its Herculaneum?

— Exactly. We will go (and) see all that to-morrow. I want to show you also in the same quarter (of the city), the Hôtel Cluny, built upon a part of those ruins, and which contains a magnificent collection of objects of art. The mixture of (styles of) architectures, which one therein remarks, comes from the[6] variations of-the taste, and from the great number of-the masters who to-it have worked. But I to-you about-it will-speak more when we will-go it to-visit.

---

[5] Lit.: How? **Quoi**; lit.: What! is not considered polite in French, and is used only when much astonishment or indignation is felt.

[6] Lit.: Holds to-the—.

*Learn the following letter by heart, and write it from memory,*

## LA CORRESPONDANCE.

PARIS, le 8 juin, 1887.

MON CHER AMI,[1]

Je vous ai promis de vous écrire aussitôt mon arrivée à Paris. Je m'acquitte de ma promesse. Nous sommes arrivés ce matin, en bonne santé, mais fatigués à outrance. Pardonnez-moi donc si je ne vous envoie qu'un mot.

Je tâcherai de vous écrire d'ici huit ou dix jours.

En attendant, croyez à ma vive amitié,

A. ——

---

### Pronunciation.

Mo*n* shĕr ȧ-mē',

Zhŭ vōō zā prȯ-mē' dŭ vōō zā-krēr' ō-sē-tō mo*n* nȧ-rē-vā ȧ Pȧ-rē'. Zhŭ mȧ-kēt dŭ mȧ prȯ-mĕs'. Nōō sȯm zȧ-rē-vā sŭ mȧ-ti*n*', a*n* bȯn sa*n*-tā', mĕh fā-tē-gā zā ōō-tra*n*s'. Pȧr-dȯ-nā mȯ-ȧ do*n*' sē zhŭn vōō za*n*-vȯ-ȧ ku*n* mō'.

Zhŭ täsh-rād vōō zā-krēr dē-sē ü-ē tōō dē zhōōr'

A*n* nȧ-ta*n*-da*n*', krȯ-ȧ-yā zȧ-mȧ vēv ȧ-mē-tē-ā'.

---

[1] Or (if to a lady), **Ma chère Amie.**

*some hour or two afterward.*

## CORRESPONDENCE.

PARIS, June 8th, 1887.

MY DEAR FRIEND,

I promised to write you as soon as I arrived in Paris, and I am as good as my word. We arrived here this morning, in good health, but tired to death. Therefore you will excuse me if I send you a word only. I will try to write you within the next eight or ten days.

Meanwhile, believe me

Sincerely your friend,

A.——

---

(LITERAL TRANSLATION.)

PARIS, the 8 June, 1887.

MY DEAR FRIEND,

I you have promised to to-you write as-soon-as my arrival in Paris. I myself acquit of my promise. We are arrived this morning, in good health, but tired to excess. Pardon me, then, if I you send only a word.

I will-try to to-you write from *here* (*i. e.* from *now*) in eight or ten days.

While waiting, believe to (*in*) my lively (*warm*) friendship.

A.——

---

***PRONUNCIATION.***

*While the pronunciation of the foregoing matter is still given, the pupil is advised to endeavor to read it as much as possible without its aid. For this purpose, the chapter on pronunciation, before Part I. should be studied. After this Part II. no pronunciation will be given, so as to exercise the pupil in reading independently of help.*

**Lȧ Mȯ-nĕh'. — Li*n*-stē-tü'. — Lŭ Kor-lā-zhēs-lȧ-tēf'. — Lŭ Sā-nȧ'. — Lĕh Tĕr'-m'.**

Vȯ-ȧ-yā'-vōō sŭ mȧ-ñē-fēk ā-dē-fēs', pȧ-rȧl-lĕl' ȧ lȧ Sĕn', lȧ-bä', sŭr lŭ kā Ko*n*-tē'?

Pȧr-fĕt-ma*n*'.

Sĕh lō-tĕl dŭ lȧ Mȯ nĕh'. — Plü lȯ-i*n*', mĕh tōō-zhōōr sür lŭ kā Ko*n*-tē', sŭ bä-tē-ma*n*' ȧ for'-m' sfā-rēk kŭ vōō zȧ-pĕr-sŭ-vā', sēh l'pȧlĕh dŭ li*n*-stē-tü· ōō Pȧ-lĕh-Mȧ-zȧ-ri*n*', fo*n*-dā a*n* sĕh-z' sa*n* sȯ-ȧ-sa*n*-tā-u*n*', dȧ-prĕh l'tĕs-tȧ-ma*n* dü kȧr-dē-nȧl dŭ sŭ no*n*', ā ōō sŭ tē-ĕn lĕh sā-a*n*s sȯ-lȯ-nĕl dĕh si*n*-kȧ-kȧ-dā-mē'.

Ä! dē-sē vōō pōō-vā vȯ-ȧr sür lŭ kā dor-sā, zhüs-tȧ lȧ zho*n*k-sē-on' dĕh Tü-ĕl-rē zā dĕh sha*n*-zā-lē-zā', sĕt kȯ-lȯ-nȧd sür-mo*n*-tā du*n* fro*n*-to*n*'. Sĕh lȧ kŭ lĕh r'prā-za*n*-ta*n* dŭ lȧ nä-sē-on' tŭ-nĕh zhüs ka*n* mēl ü-ē-sa*n*-sȯ-ȧ-sa*n*-tā-o*n*z' lŭr sā-a*n*'s'.

Ä zhē sü-ē'-lŭ Pȧ-lĕh Bōōr-bo*n*'.

Sû-go*n* ta*n*-pēr'. — Lük-sa*n*-bōōr'.

Mȧ-rēd-mā-dē-sēs'. — Dü-shĕs dŭ Mo*n*-pa*n*-sē-ā'.

Lōō-ē dēz-ü-ēt'. — Rȯ-ȧ-yȧ-lēst' —

Nȧ-pȯ-lā-o*n* trȯ-ä.' — Kōō-dŭ'-y*ŭ*. — Zhü-lē-i*n*'.

So*n* nĕr-kü-lȧ-nŭm. — Klü-nē'.

---

# PART II.

## HOTEL AND BOARDING-HOUSE.

## HÔTEL ET PENSION.

### SECTION II.

1. IN A BOARDING-HOUSE.
2. AT THE TABLE.
3. THE LAUNDRESS.
4. NO EMPHATIC NOR PROGRESSIVE FORMS.
5. THE FAMILY; THE HOURS.
6. ABOUT SILVERWARE.
7. THE PANTHEON, OBSERVATORY, etc.
8. THE ENDING OF LETTERS (II)

## II.

### FRENCH.

### 1. Mais il y a un ascenseur.

Vous êtes bien heureux.
Chez moi, il n'y a pas d'ascenseur.

A votre place, je ne voudrais pas rester dans un hôtel comme celui-là.
Je vous conseille **d'**[1]aller dans une pension.

C'est plus comme chez soi.
C'est vrai, et l'on entend beaucoup plus parler français.
Il y a une bonne pension au coin de la rue.

---

### 2. Est-ce une pension française?[2]

Sans doute.

---

**NOTES.**

[1] The use of prepositions "*before*" verbs always seems a perplexing one to the learner. In point of fact, it is the verb *preceding* the preposition which regulates its use and not the one *following* it. Thus we say, **je voudrais aller** (*no preposition*); **je vous conseille d'aller** (*prep.* **de**); **je vous invite à aller** (*prep.* **à**); all before the *same* verb, but *after* different ones. Thus, some verbs require *no* preposition after them, others require **de,** others **à,** etc. Tables of these verbs will be found on pages 502-3 But it is not practicable to memorize them. In fact, the ear is the best guide, and after all an easy one. But of the 30 verbs which require *no* preposition after them, the most important are: **aller, pouvoir, vouloir, savoir, faire,** and (usually) **venir.** It will be well to memorize *these.* — [2] **Français,** masc.: **française,** fem.

## II.

| PRONUNCIATION. | TRANSLATION. |
|---|---|
| 1. **Mĕh zēl ē yȧ u*n* nȧ-sa*n*-sŭr′.** | **But there is an elevator.** |
| Vōō zêt bē-i*n* nŭ-rû′. | You are very fortunate.[1] |
| Ēl nē yȧ pä′. | At my place,[2] there is no[3] elevator. |
| Zhŭn vōō-drĕh . . . . da*n* zu*n* nō-tĕl kȯm sŭ-lü-ē-lȧ′. | In your place,[4] I would n't stay in such a hotel.[5] |
| Zh' vōō ko*n*-sĕh′-yŭ dȧ-lā da*n* zün pa*ns*-ē-o*n*′. | I advise you to go to a boarding-house. |
| Plü kȯm shā sȯ-ȧ′. | It is more like a home.[6] |
| Lo*n* na*n*-ta*n* bō-kōō plü. | That 's true. And you hear more French spoken.[7] |
| Bȯn pa*n*-sē-o*n* ō kȯ-i*n* d'lȧ rü'. | There is a good[8] boarding-house at the corner of the street. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 2. **Ĕs ün pa*n*-sē-o*n*′ fra*n*-sĕz'?** | **Is it a French boarding-house?** |
| Sa*n* dōōt'. | Certainly.[9] |

### LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] You are *well* (*i. e.* indeed) happy.

[2] At my house (*at-the-house-of* me).

[3] There is not any (**d**) —.

[4] *At* your place.

[5] In a hotel like that one (**celui-là**).

[6] More like *at-the-home-of* one (**soi** = *one, one's self*).

[7] And one hears much more) speak French. — Notice that adjectives of nationality (**français, anglais,** etc.) do not begin with a capital in French.

[8] **Good** = **bon,** before singular masculine nouns; **bonne,** before singular feminine nouns.

[9] Without doubt.

J'en suis bien aise. Je vais y aller tout de suite. Je veux en finir.

Ne pourriez-vous pas m'accompagner?
Vous savez que je ne parle pas bien **le**[1] français.

C'est entendu.

---

**Note.** — **Study the "6 necessary tenses" of**

---

3. **Pardon, Madame; est-ce que vous prenez[2] des pensionnaires?**

Oui, Monsieur. Seulement, nous avons très peu de place, en ce moment.
C'est dommage. Car ma femme et moi, **nous** voulions venir en pension chez vous.

Si vous vouliez vous accommoder de trois chambres au quatrième étage —.

Je ne crois pas **que** ma femme voudrait monter si haut.
Mais en tout cas, montrez-moi[3] les chambres.

---

NOTES.

[1] After **parler,** the article is (usually) omitted from before (adjective) names of languages, such as **français, anglais,** etc.; but it is *used,* if an adverb (**bien, mal,** etc.) is present. After all other verbs it is always used.

[2] **Est-ce que vous prenez?** instead of **prenez-vous.** This form of question with **est-ce que** is frequently used with the first person singular of the indicative present, and also occasionally with other persons and tenses. Here it sounds less abrupt than to say, **Prenez-vous?**

[3] **Montrez-moi.** After the *imperative affirmative* **moi** is used instead of **me. Veuillez *me* montrer; ne *me* montrez pas; montrez-moi.**

| | |
|---|---|
| Bē-*in* nĕz'. Zh' vĕh zē.... Zhŭ vû z*an* fē-nēr'. | I am glad of it. I'll go[1] at once. I want to make an end of it.[2] |
| Mȧ-ko*n*-pȧ-ñā'? | Could n't you go with me? |
| Kŭ zhŭn pȧrl pä bē-*in* l' fr*an*-sĕh'. | You know I do not speak French well.[3] |
| Sĕh t*an*-t*an*-dü'. | Well, agreed.[4] |

**Finir, affirmatively, page 488.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **3. Pȧr-do*n*', mȧ-dȧm'; ĕs kŭ voo prŭ-nā dĕh p*an* sē-ȯ-nair'?** | **I beg your pardon, Madam; do you take boarders?**[5] |
| Trĕh pûd-plȧs' *an* s'mȯ-m*an*'. | Yes, sir. Only, we have very little room at present. |
| Mȧ fȧm ā mȯ-ȧ', noo voo-lē-o*n* v'nēr. | That's too bad. For my wife and I[6] wanted to come and board with you. |
| Dŭ trȯ-ä sh*an*'-br'-zō kȧ-trē-yĕm ā-tȧzh'. | If you were willing[7] to do with three rooms on the fourth floor —. |
| Zhŭn krȯ-ȧ päk mȧ fȧm — sē ō'. | I don't think[8] my wife would go up so high. |
| Mĕh z*an* too kä', mo*n*-trā mȯ-ȧ'. | But in any[9] case, show me the rooms.[10] |

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] I am-going there to go. The French could also say simply, **J'y vais.**

[2] I wish with-it (*en*) to-finish. — [3] Speak not well *the* French.

[4] That is understood (*lit.:* heard).

[5] Is it that you take —?

[6] For, my wife and *me*, **we** wished to come *in board* —.

[7] If you wished (*or* would).

[8] I do not think *that* my wife. — That (**que**) can never be omitted.

[9] All *or* every.

[10] Also, **Faites-moi voir les chambres,** lit.: Make me see the rooms.

**4. Veuillez passer devant. Je vais vous faire voir les chambres.**

Voyez! Il y a un meuble[1] en acajou dans la chambre de devant.

Dans la chambre à coucher, les meubles sont en noyer.

Il n'y a pas de sommier élastique sur le lit.

Pardon, Monsieur. Voyez plutôt.

J'avais tort. Combien de chambres y a-t-il?

Il y a trois chambres et un cabinet de toilette.

Cela ferait mon affaire.

Voulez-vous voir la chambre de derrière?

Certainement. N'y a-t-il pas de paravent[2] pour cette cheminée?

Oui, Monsieur. Il est en bas.

Je le ferai monter tout de suite.

Est-ce que les tableaux vont avec la chambre?

Tous excepté ce tableau-ci et cette gravure-là.[3]

---

NOTES.

1 The French say either **un meuble,** or **les meubles.** The first may refer to a single piece of furniture or to a *set*. The second refers to any furniture in a room or house, whether a *set* or otherwise.

2 *A screen* = **un paravent,** but *no screen, not any screen* = **pas *de* paravent.** Likewise, *I have a fork* = **j'ai une fourchette;** but *I have no fork* = **je n'ai pas *de* fourchette.**

3 **Ci** (abbreviation of **ici,** *here*), and **là,** *there*, are often used after nouns with **ce, cet, cette, ces,** to make sharper the distinction between *this* and *that, these* and *those.*

| | |
|---|---|
| **4. Vŭ-yā pä-sād-van′.* Zhŭ vĕh vōō fair vȯ-ȧr lĕh shan′-br′.** | **Will you please pass ahead?[1] I will show you[2] the rooms.** |
| Vȯ-ȧ-yā. . . . . Mŭ-blan nȧ-kȧ-zhōō′ . . . . dŭ dŭ-van′. | See! The furniture in the front room is in mahogany.[3] |
| Shan-brȧ-kōō-shā . . . . son tan nȯ-ȧ-yā′. | In the bed-room, the furniture is in walnut. |
| Ēl nē yȧ päd sȯ-mē-ā′ ā-lȧs-tēk′. | There is no spring mattress on the bed. |
| Plü-tō′. | Pardon me, sir. There is one. See for yourself.[4] |
| Zhȧ-vĕh tor′ . . . . shan′-br′ zē yā tēl′? | I was wrong.[5] How many rooms[6] are there? |
| | There are three rooms and a dressing-room. |
| Sŭ-lȧ frĕh. | That would answer.[7] |
| Dŭ dĕh-rē-air′? | Do you wish to see the back-room?[8] |
| Päd pȧ-rȧ-van′ pōōr sĕt sh′ mē-nā′? | Certainly. Is there no screen for that fire-place?[9] |
| Ĕl-ĕh tan bä′. | Yes, sir. It is down stairs.[10] |
| Zhŭl frā. | I'll have it brought up,[11] at once. |
| Lĕh tȧ-blō von-tȧ-vĕk? | Do the pictures go with the room? |
| Tōōs ĕk-sĕp-tā sŭ tȧ-blō-sē ā sĕt grȧ-vür′-lȧ′. | All except this painting and that engraving.[12] |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] Before. — [2] I am-going to make you see the rooms.
[3] There is *a* furniture (*set*) in the room of *before.*
[4] See rather. — [5] I *had* wrong. — [6] How-many *of* rooms.
[7] That would *make* my *business.* — [8] Room *of* back.
[9] Is there not-any (**de**) screen for that chimney?
[10] *On low.* — [11] I will-make (*somebody*) bring it *up.*
[12] This picture-*here* and that engraving-*there.*
* Remember that the nasal sounds (*an*, *in*, *un*, etc.) are hard, inelastic, and that the mouth *does not close* on the *n.*

**Note. — Study the plural of nouns,**

---

**5. Quel serait le prix de la pension avec la chambres?**

Les voulez-vous au mois ou à la semaine?

A la semaine.[1]

Pour vous et votre dame, ce serait cent soixante francs par semaine.[2]

C'est horriblement cher!

Mais nous tenons une table de premier ordre.

Je fais balayer les chambres tous[3] les jours et mettre des draps blancs deux fois[4] par semaine.

Eh bien, j'essaierai cela pour une semaine.

---

**6. Madame est servie.**

Descendons, Messieurs. Le dîner est servi.

Asseyez-vous ici, Monsieur.

De ce côté-ci?

Pardon, Monsieur. De ce côté-là.

---

NOTES.

[1] **Au mois; à la semaine** (lit.: *at* the month, etc.) = *by* the month; *by* the week.

[2] *A month, a week,* in this sense = **par mois, par semaine** (lit.: *by* month; *by* week).

[3] **Tous** is pronounced **tōō** when it is closely connected with its noun, and **tōōs,** when it is used separately from its noun.. Thus, **avez-vous tous les draps = à-vā-vōō tōō lĕh drà'?** But, **je les ai tous = zhŭ lĕh zā tōōs'.**

[4] *Time* = **temps,** in the sense of duration, but to **fois,** in the sense of a number of *times.* **Une fois,** *once;* **deux fois,** *twice;* **trois fois,** *three times,* etc.

**parag. 1 to 6, page 460.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **5. Kĕl srĕl prē d'là pan-sē-on' à-vĕk lĕh shan'-br'?** | **What would be the price for board and rooms?**[1] |
| Ō mò-ä' ōō à là s'mĕn'? | Do you want them by the month or week?[2] |
| | By the week. |
| Sŭ s'rĕh san-sò-à-san't fran'. | For yourself and wife,[3] it would be 160 francs a week. |
| Sĕh tor-ē-blŭ-man shĕr'. | That's frightfully dear.[4] |
| Dŭ prŭ-mē-ā-ror'-dr'. | But we keep a first class table.[5] |
| Bà-lā-yā .... tōō lĕh zhōōr, ā mĕh'-tr' dĕh drà blan dû fò-à. | I have the rooms swept every day and clean sheets put on twice a week.[6] |
| Zhĕh-sā-rā s'là. | Well, I'll try it[7] for a week. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **6. Mà-dà-mĕh sĕr-vē'.** | **Dinner is served.**[8] |
| Dĕh-san-don', mĕs-yû'. | Let us go down, gentlemen. Dinner is served. |
| À-sā-yā vōō zē-sē'. | Sit down[9] here, sir. |
| Dŭs kō-tā sē'? | On this side?[10] |
| Dŭs kō-tā là'. | No, sir. On that side. |

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 The price *of* the board with the rooms?
2 *At* the month, or *at* the week.
3 For you and your lady.
4 *Horribly* dear.
5 A table of first order.
6 I have the rooms swept *all the days* and clean sheets put-on *two times* a week.
7 I will-try that.
8 *Madam is served* (the formal phrase).
9 Sit-*yourself*.
10 *Of* this side-*here*.

Prendrez-vous du potage?[1]
S'il vous plaît, Madame.
Maintenant, vous offrirai-je un peu de ce poisson?

Merci. Coupez-moi plutôt une tranche de ce gigot.

Il a vraiment l'air appétissant.

Auriez-vous l'obligeance de me passer le pain?

Veuillez me passer le sel. Ah! pardon. Il est de ce côté-ci.[2]
Auriez-vous l'obligeance de me passer le beurre?

Certainement, Monsieur.
Maintenant, vous offrirai-je à boire?

Non, merci. Je vous demanderai une tasse de café.
Vous offrirai-je une tranche de ce melon?

Volontiers.

---

### 7. La blanchisseuse ne m'a-t-elle pas encore apporté mon linge?

Pardon, Madame. Elle l'a rapporté.[3]
Où est-il donc?

---

NOTES.

[1] **Soupe** = soup. **Potage** = *made soup.*

[2] **De ce côté-ci,** *on this side.* **De ce côté-là,** *on that side.* **De l'autre côté,** *on the other side.* **À côté de,** *by the side of.*

[3] **Apporté,** *brought;* **rapporté,** *brought back;* but the former is quite often used for the latter, just as in English.

| | |
|---|---|
| Pò-tázh'. | Will you take soup? |
| Sēl vōō plĕh'. | If you please, Madam. |
| Vōō zò-frē-rāzh *un* pûd sŭ pò-à-so*n*'. | Now, shall I offer you a little of the fish? [1] |
| Ŭn tra*n*sh dŭ sŭ zhē-gō'. | No, thank you. But if you will cut me a slice of that leg of mutton. [2] |
| Vrĕh-ma*n* lair à-pā-tē-sa*n*'. | It looks really appetizing. [3] |
| Or-ē-ā vōō lò-blē-zha*n*s dŭ mŭ pă-sāl-pi*n*'. | Would you have the kindness to pass me the bread? |
| Vŭ-yām pä-sāl sĕl'! | Please pass me the salt. Ah! excuse me. It is on this side. |
| Pä-sāl bŭr'? | Would you have the kindness to pass me the butter? |
| | Certainly, Sir. |
| Vōō zò-frē-rāzh à bò-àr'? | Now, shall I offer you something to drink? |
| Zhŭ vōōd-ma*n*-drā. | No, thank you. I will ask you [4] for a cup of coffee. |
| Ŭn tra*n*sh dŭ sŭ m'lo*n*'. | Shall I offer you a slice of this melon? |
| Vò-lo*n*-tē-ā'. | Yes, please. [5] |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **7. Là bla*n*-shē-sûz' nŭ mà-tĕl pä za*n*-kor' à-por-tā mo*n* li*n*zh'?** | **Has not the laundress brought my linen yet?** |
| | Pardon me, Madam. She has brought it back. |
| | Where is it? |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] A little of this fish.
[2] Cut me rather a slice of that leg-of-mutton.
[3] It has really the air appetizing.
[4] I will ask you a cup of coffee.
[5] Willingly.

Je l'ai fait porter en haut.

Eh bien, voudriez-vous monter avec moi voir si le compte y est?

Certainement, Madame.

---

## 8. Tenez;[1] le voilà sur le guéridon.

Voyons si le compte y est?

Non. Il me[2] manque un jupon brodé et deux collerettes.

Il y a aussi trois paires de chaussettes de mon mari qui manquent.[3]

N'oubliez[4] pas de réclamer ces pièces.

Non, Madame, je n'y manquerai pas.

---

## 9. Second Cardinal

### NO EMPHATIC NOR PROGRESSIVE

I.

1. **Affirmative.** — As already seen, the French have neither say: *We do not eat*; nor, *We are eating;* but only, *We eat.* Neither *went* (with the *imperfect* termination)* **j'allais, nous allions,** having no auxiliary *did,* have to say: *He has written, You have*

---

NOTES.

[1] Lit.: *Hold!* Used in calling attention suddenly to, or in presenting, anything.

[2] *Il* is often used with verbs in the sense of *there.* I miss = **Il me manque** = lit.: there to me lacks.

[3] Imperative of **Oublier,** *to forget.*

* The terminations of the imperfect are **ais, ait, ions, iez, aient.**

| | |
|---|---|
| *An* ō. | I had it taken[1] up stairs. |
| Sē lŭ ko*n*-tē-yĕh'? | Well, would you go up with me and see if the full number of pieces is there?[2] |
| Sĕr-tĕn-ma*n*'. | Certainly, Madam. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **8. Tŭ-nā'; lŭ vȯ-ȧ-lȧ sür lŭ gā-rē-do*n*'.** | **See;[3] there it is on the small round table.** |
| Vȯ-ȧ-yo*n*'. | Let us see if the full count is there? |
| Ēl mŭ-ma*n*-ku*n* zhü-po*n* .... dû kȯl-rĕt'. | No, I miss[4] an embroidered underskirt and two ladies' collars. |
| Trȯ-ä pair dŭ shō-sĕt dŭ mo*n* mȧ-rē' kē-ma*n*'-k'. | There are also three pairs of socks of my husband missing.[5] |
| Nōō-blē-yā päd rā-klȧ-mā sĕh pē-ĕs'. | Don't forget[6] to claim these pieces. |
| Zh' nē ma*n*-krā pä'. | No, Madam, I wont?[7] |

---

## Rule.

### FORMS IN FRENCH.

I.

the emphatic nor progressive forms; *that is,* they can neither can they say: *I was going, We were going;* but only, *I went, We* etc. Likewise, instead of *he did write, you did write,* the French, *written,* etc.

---

### LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] I it have made to-take-up stairs (lit.: *on high*).

[2] If the count there is.

[3] See! Sudden appeal in pointing out is often rendered by **Tenez** or **Tiens;** lit.: Hold!

[4] *Il* (*i. e., there*) to me lacks an embroidered underskirt, etc.

[5] Which miss. — [6] Forget not. — [7] I to it shall fail-not.

2. **Interrogative.**—With questions, the case is the same the French can neither say, *Do you speak?* nor *Are you speak-we write? Did you speak?* but only *Have we written? Have you*

3. **Negative.**—Negative forms differ from the above only **rien,** etc.

Observe that these will come exactly where they would in Naturally, the general sign of negation, **ne** is found in its usual

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | You do not speak. | = | You speak not. |
| | Do you not speak? | = | Speak you not? |
| 2. | We are not going. | = | We go not. |
| | Are we not going? | = | Go we not? |
| 3. | Were you not writing? | = | Wrote you not? |
| 4. | Did they never write? | = | Have they never written? |

II.

**The Conversational Tense.**—But on the other hand, versation as the English do. They do not say, *I sent, We received;* **reçu.** In order to keep this frequent use of the Past Indefi-eye, and also to distinguish it from the simple past tense or **Conversational Tense.**

III.

**A Word of Advice.**—All this is simple in itself, yet often But the learner will avoid all perplexity, if he follows the advice

Until his mind has become thoroughly familiarized with sentence in which they occur, change it, in his thought, into

---

NOTES.

[1] Another form of question is used for the first person of the Present Indicative generally which answers somewhat to the use of *do* in English. This is **Est-ce que;** lit.: Is it that? The French say: **Est-ce que je parle?** *Do I speak?* (*Is it that I speak.*) **Est-ce que** is sometimes used with the other persons and tenses also, either to give greater emphasis, or to vary the form of expression. Thus, *Do you speak?* = **Parlez-vous?** *or* more rarely, **Est-ce que vous parlez?** *Shall we go?* = **Irons-nous?** or more rarely, **Est-ce que nous irons?**

as the above. Having neither emphatic nor progressive forms, *ing?* but only *Speak you?* **Parlez-vous?** They cannot say, *Did spoken?* **Avons-nous écrit; Avez-vous parlé?**[1]

in the introduction of the negatives **pas, jamais, personne,**

English *in sentences identical with* (or *reduced to*) *the French form.* place before the verb.[2]

= Vous ne parlez pas.
= Ne parlez-vous pas?
= Nous n'allons pas.
= N'allons-nous pas?
= N'écriviez-vous pas?
= N'ont-ils jamais écrit?

II.

the French very rarely use the simple form of the past in con-
but, *I have sent, We have received;* **J'ai envoyé, nous avons**
nite (*I have received, I have sent,* etc.) clear before the mind's
Preterit, which is the tense of *narration,* I call the first the

III.

proves perplexing, especially when pronoun-objects are present.
here given:
these verbal forms, let the learner every time he is to utter a
the French form, *but by means of English words.*

---

NOTES.

[2] As already seen, I treat *ne* (although etymologically the real negation) as an adjunct or general sign of negation, — *the real negations* of modern French practically being: **pas, jamais, personne, rien,** etc. This simplifies French construction very much, as these negations generally occupy the same place in French as they do in English in equivalent forms. It also will guard the learner against the almost universal habit of putting in **pas** everywhere, even where **rien, jamais, personne,** or other negations occur. As if **pas** was not simply *one* of those, to be used exactly like, but never *with* them.

Thus, if he has to say:

1. We are speaking too fast.
2. You do wind it.
3. They were walking together.
4. We are not speaking to you.
5. We do not speak to her.
6. They were not writing to-us.

Or,

7. Do you wind it?
8. Are the ladies speaking too fast?
9. Do we not speak to her?
10. Was not your brother writing to us?
11. Did she not bring it?
12. Did n't the laundress bring it?

And then, he will say without difficulty,

1. Nous parlons trop vite.
2. Vous la remontez.
3. Ils marchaient ensemble.
4. Nous ne vous parlons pas.
5. Nous ne lui parlons pas.
6. Ils ne vous écrivaient pas.

---

## 10. Est-ce que vous‿avez sonné?

Est-ce que Madame a sonné?

---

NOTES.

[1] This transposition of English sentences into their French equivalents, though by means of English words, I recommend in the case of the forms above treated, when the learner is not clear about what he is going to utter. Wherever he can utter the foreign phrase at first hand and as a matter of absolute oral memory, he is to do it. Indeed, he should diligently cultivate this independence of translation, as it is the true basis both of correct and fluent speech. But, with the forms

change it into {
1. We speak too fast.
2. You it wind.
3. They walked together.
4. We to-you speak not.
5. We to-her speak not.
6. They to-us wrote not.

change it into {
7. It wind you?
8. The ladies speak-they too fast?
9. To-her speak we not?
10. Your brother to-us wrote he not?
11. It has she not brought?
12. The laundress it has she not brought?

and with entire correctness:

7. La remontez-vous?
8. Les dames parlent‿elles trop vite?
9. Ne lui parlons-nous pas?
10. Votre frère ne nous‿a-t-il pas‿écrit?
11. Ne l'a-t‿elle pas‿apporté?
12. La blanchisseuse ne l'a-t‿elle pas‿apporté?[1]

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **10. Es-kŭ vōō zȧ-vā sȯ-nā'?** | **Did you ring?**[2] |
| Mȧ-dȧ-mȧ-sȯ-nā'? | Did Madam ring?[3] |

---

NOTES.

in question, unless he sees his sentence stand clearly before the mind's eye he is strongly advised to follow the mental process just explained. He will find that, in a surprisingly short space of time, it will impart to him a firm and intuitive knowledge of these peculiar French forms, especially in their connection with pronoun-objects, and enable him to use them with an ease and correctness seldom attained otherwise.

[2] Is it that you have rung? — [3] Is it that Madam has rung?

Oui. Jeanne ne m'a pas nettoyé mes bottines.

Et Jean a oublié de cirer les souliers de mon frère[1] et de brosser les habits de mon garçon.[1]

Je leur avais pourtant dit de le faire.

Mais veuillez me les donner. Je vais le leur faire faire[2] tout de suite.

Jean, cirez ces bottes et brossez ces habits, au plus vite.

Jeanne, nettoyez ces bottines.

---

**Note.— Study parags. 1 and 2, page 459.**

---

NOTES.

1 The French have no possessive case, and cannot say: ***My brother's shoes, my son's clothes;*** but must say: The shoes of my brother, the clothes of my son. Neither can they say, ***my brother's***, but ***that*** (or ***those***) of my brother=**celui** (or **ceux**) **de mon frère.**

2 *To have them do it,* — **le leur faire faire.** Keep clear the distinction between *to have* in the sense of *causing* a thing to be done, which is **faire,** and *to have* in the sense of having done (seen, written, sent, etc.) anything, which is rendered by **avoir.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Zhän . . . . nĕh-tȯ-ȧ-yā mĕh bȯ-tēn'.** | Yes. Jane has not cleaned[1] my shoes. |
| **ŌŌ-blē-ād sē-rā lĕh sōō-lē-ād mon frair', ād brȯ-sā.** | And John has forgotten to black my brother's shoes and to brush my son's clothes.[2] |
| **Pōōr-tan'.** | Yet, I had told them to do it.[3] |
| **Vŭ-yā m'lĕh . . . . tōōd sü-ēt'.** | But give them to me.[4] I am going to have them do it at once.[5] |
| **Sĕh zȧ-bē', ō plü vēt'.** | John, black these boots and brush these clothes, as quick as you can.[6] |
| **Zhän'.** | Jane, clean these shoes.[7] |

---

**"no Possessive case in French."**

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 For-*me* has not cleaned my (*high*) shoes.
2 The shoes of my brother and the clothes of my son.
3 I to-them had yet told.
4 Please to-me them to-give.
5 I am-going it to-them to-make to-do, *i. e.*, I am going to have it done *by* them.
6 At-the quickest.
7 These *high* shoes.

*The following vocabulary to be learned by heart.*

## VOCABULAIRE.

### LA FAMILLE.[1]

| | |
|---|---|
| Les parents (pȧ-ran′,) | Parents *or* relatives. |
| Le père (pair'), | The father. |
| La mère (mair), | The mother. |
| Le beau-père, | The father-in-law. |
| La belle-mère, | The mother-in-law. |
| Le mari (mȧ-rē′), | The husband. |
| La femme (fȧm'). | The wife. |
| Le grand-père, | The grandfather. |
| La grand'[2] mère (gran mair'), | The grandmother. |
| L'oncle (lon′-kl'), | The uncle. |
| La tante (tan′-t'), | The aunt. |
| Le parrain (pä-rin′), | The godfather. |
| La marraine (mä-rĕn'), | The godmother. |
| Les‿enfants, | The children. |
| Le fils (fēs), | The son. |
| Le garçon, | The boy *or* son. |
| La fille (fē′-yŭ), | The girl *or* daughter. |
| Le beau-fils, | The son-in-law. |
| La belle-fille, | The daughter-in-law. |
| Les petits‿enfants (p'tē zan-fan′), | The grandchildren. |
| Le petit-fils, | The grandson. |
| La petite fille (p'tēt'), | The granddaughter. |
| Le neveu (nŭ-vû′), | The nephew. |
| La nièce (nē‿ĕs'), | The niece. |

---

[1] **Lȧ fȧ-mē′-yŭ.**

[2] **Grand',** instead of **grande,** before a few feminine nouns.

*The following vocabulary to be learned by heart.*

## VOCABULAIRE.

### LES HEURES.*

| | |
|---|---|
| Il est midi (mē-dē′), | It is twelve o'clock. |
| Il est une heure (tü-nŭr'), | It is one o'clock. |
| Une heure cinq minutes,[1] | Five minutes past one. |
| Deux heures dix minutes,[1] | Ten minutes past two |
| Trois heures et quart,[2] | Quarter past three. |
| Quatre heures vingt,[3] | Twenty minutes past four. |
| Cinq heures vingt-cinq,[4] | Twenty-five minutes past five. |
| Six heures et demie,[5] | Half past six. |
| Sept heures moins vingt-cinq,[6] | Twenty-five minutes to seven. |
| Huit heures moins vingt,[7] | Twenty minutes to eight. |
| Neuf heures moins un quart,[8] | Quarter to nine. |
| Dix heures moins dix,[9] | Ten minutes to ten. |
| Onze heures moins cinq,[10] | Five minutes to eleven. |
| Près de minuit (prĕd-mē-nü-ē′), | Nearly midnight. |
| Minuit précises (prā-sēz'), | Exactly midnight. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| Une montre (mo*n*′-tr'), | A watch. |
| Une pendule (pa*n*-dül'), | A clock. |
| Une horloge (ü-nor-lȯzh'), | A large (*or* tower) clock. |
| Votre montre retarde de[11] —, | Your watch is — slow. |
| Votre montre avance de —, | Your watch is — fast. |
| Elle va bien (*or* mal), | It goes right (*or* wrong). |

---

1 **Ü-nŭr′ si*n* mē-nüt'. Dû zŭr dē mē-nüt'.** *Or*, less correct but more usual: **Une heure cinq, Deux heures dix; ü nŭr si*n*k, dû zŭr dēs′**, etc.

2 **Trȯ-ä zŭr′ ā kår′.** — 3 **Kå-trŭr-vi*n*′.** — 4 **Si*n*-kŭr′-vi*n*t-si*n*k′.** — 5 **Sē-zŭr′-zād-mē'.** — 6 **Sĕt ŭr′ mȯ-i*n*.** — 7 **Ü-ē-tŭr′ mȯ-i*n* vi*n*′.** — 8 **Nŭ-vŭr′ mȯ-i*n* zu*n* kår′.** — 9 **Dē zŭr mȯ-i*n* dēs′.** — 10 **O*n* zŭr mȯ-i*n* si*n*k′.** — 11 **Rŭ-tård dŭ.** — * **Lĕh zŭr'.**

*To be learned by heart and recited as a real conversation. (For Self-Study, see* ***Directions,*** *before* ***Part I.****)*

## CONVERSATIONS.

### 1.—*DE L'HEURE.**

Quelle heure est-il à[1] votre montre?—Il est deux heures moins un quart. Mais je crois que ma montre retarde.—De combien retarde-t-elle?—Je crois qu'elle retarde de dix minutes.—Mais pourquoi m'avez-vous demandé l'heure? Est-ce que vous n'avez plus[2] votre montre?—Mais si,[3] je l'ai toujours.[4] Seulement, j'ai oublié de la remonter, hier soir.

### 2.—*MÊME SUJET.*

Pardon; pourriez-vous me dire quelle heure il est?—Il est dix heures moins vingt, à ma montre.—Va-t-elle bien?—Elle ne va pas très bien, mais elle est à l'heure,[5] à présent. Je l'ai réglée[6] à l'horloge de l'hôtel de ville,[7] en passant. Est-ce que votre montre ne va pas?—Non; le ressort est cassé.[8] Je

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

[1] By (*lit.:* at).— [2] No more, no longer.

[3] Why, *yes.* **Si** is used instead of **oui,** as an affirmative answer to a negative proposition.

[4] Still (*lit.:* always).— [5] It is right. Lit.: It is at the hour.

[6] Regulated.— [7] City Hall.

[8] **Lŭr-sor ĕh kä-sā',** the spring is broken.

* Lit.: *Of* the hour. Really an abbreviation of **à propos de l'heure.**

vais la porter chez un horloger pour la faire arranger. — Allez donc chez mon horloger, rue Saint-Denis, nº 23. . . . . Mais il est tard. Je vous quitte. Adieu.[1]

### 3.—A *PROPOS D'ARGENTERIE.*

Où avez-vous acheté ces couverts?[2] — Lesquels voulez-vous dire? les couverts d'argent? — Oui, ceux-là.[3] — Je ne les ai pas achetés. On me les a donnés. C'est un cadeau de Noël[4] que ma marraine m'a fait. Comment les trouvez-vous? — Je les trouve fort jolis,[5] ma foi. De quelle fabrique viennent ils?[6] — Ils ont été achetés à l'orfèvrerie[7] Christophle. — Je ne connais pas ça. Où est-ce donc?[8] — C'est au coin du Boulevard des Italiens et de la rue Louis-le-Grand. — Ah, oui; je me rappelle,[9] à présent. Je dois y aller. Je voudrais acheter de l'argenterie pour faire un cadeau à ma petite nièce. — Eh bien, allons-y demain. — Demain, à quelle heure? — À midi. — Non, à midi, je dois passer chez ma tailleuse.[10]

---

**Note. — Study the feminine of nouns, page 461.**

---

**Pronunciation and Translations**

1 **Â-dē-û′**, farewell. — 2 **Kōō-vĕr′**, silver (*i. e.* knives, spoons, and forks). Lit.: these *silvers*.

3 **Sû-là′**, those. — 4 **Kà-dōd-nò-ĕl′**, a Christmas present.

5 **For zhò-lē′**, very pretty. — 6 **Vē-ĕn′**, are they. Lit.: come they?

7 **Lor-fĕh-vrŭ-rē′**, silver goods (*or* store).

8 I know not *that*. Where is it?

9 **Zhŭm rà-pĕl′**, I remember. Lit.: I to-myself recall.

10 **Tailleur,** tailor; **tailleuse,** tailoress.

*To be translated and written into French, but also to be recited orally in the class-room. (For Self-Study, see* ***Directions,*** *before* ***Part I.****)*

### 1.—*AT THE TABLE.**

The soup is served.—Will you take soup?—If you please, Madam.—John, take this off,[1] and bring us the leg of lamb, with the beans and cauliflowers.[2]—John, you have forgotten to put on[3] the salt-cellar and the pepper-box.—Shall I offer you a slice of this leg of lamb?—Yes, please. It looks very appetizing.—Mr. Clémenceau, would you have the kindness to carve[4] this leg of lamb?—Certainly, Madam.—In the mean while,[5] I'll help your friend to the spinach.[6]—Not any for me,[7] thank you.—Do you like lean?[8]—Yes, give me some of the[8] lean, if you please.

### 2.—*ABOUT TRAVEL.*

Do you know that Mrs. Vogeli's brother-in-law[9] has already left the city?—Yes. Albert's godfather[9]

---

**Aids to Translation.**

[1] **Ôtez cela.**— [2] **Les haricots et les choux-fleurs.**

[3] **Mettre.**— [4] **De découper.**

[5] **Pendant ce temps-là.** Lit.: *during that time.*

[6] **Je servirai des épinards à votre ami,** I will serve some spinach to—.

[7] **Pas pour moi,** not for me.

[8] **Aimez-vous le maigre.—Donnez-moi du.**

[9] The son-in-law of Mrs. Vogeli.—The godfather of Albert.

* **À table.**

called at his house, yesterday. He had left[1] the city day before yesterday, with his wife and[2] children. —Where did they go?[3]—They have gone to Spa for a few days. After that, they want (to) go to Switzerland; and then to Florence. They are going[4] (to) stay two weeks in Florence with[5] their grandfather.

### 3.—*ABOUT A WATCH.*

Look! My uncle bought me a watch, yesterday. —How beautiful![6] Where did he buy it?[7]—At Tiffany's.—At Tiffany's here, in Paris?—Yes, he has a branch in the Avenue de l'Opéra.—I should like (to) go there.[8] Would n't you go[8] with me to-morrow morning?—Yes.[9] At what time?—Well, let us say,[10] at half past nine.—Very well.

---

**Aids to Translation.**

1 **Quitté.**
2 His.
3 **Où sont-ils allés.** Lit.: Where *are* they gone?
4 They go, **Ils vont.**
5 **Chez,** *i. e.* at the house of.
6 **Comme elle est belle!**
7 It has he bought (**achetée**).
8 There (**y**) go.
9 **Mais oui.**— 10 **Eh bien, disons.**

---

*To be read by means of translation opposite, in preparation for reading aloud and translations in class. For Pronunciation* *see page 158.*

## LECTURE.

### LE PANTHÉON, L'OBSERVATOIRE, LA SORBONNE, ETC.

—Eh bien, maintenant que nous avons vu les superbes collections et reliques des temps passés que contient le Musée de Cluny, allons visiter le Panthéon.

—Quel est ce dôme, là-bas, sur la hauteur?

—C'est cela même.[1] Vous savez qui a fondé cet édifice.

—Ma foi, non.

—Eh bien, c'est Clovis, qui le nomma Sainte-Geneviève. Louis XV., le voyant tomber en ruines, le releva et lui fit donner le nom de Panthéon.

—Quelle est la hauteur du Panthéon?

—Deux cent cinquante pieds. Le portique est formé de vingt-deux colonnes et il supporte un fronton qui contient un chef-d'œuvre du sculpteur David.

—Maintenant, nous allons descendre dans les souterrains.[2] Vous y entendrez un écho très remarquable et vous verrez les tombeaux de Voltaire et de Rousseau.

---

[1] **Même**=*same*, or *even*, or *very*. Here, by adding the word *thing*, it is best translated by *very*.

[2] Also, **dans la crypte,** in the crypt.

*For Self-Study, the French text should be read by means of the literal translation until thoroughly mastered, then read aloud in French.*

## READING.

### THE PANTHEON, THE OBSERVATORY, THE "SORBONNE," ETC.

—Well, now that we have seen the superb collections and relics of-*the* times past which contains[1] the Museum of Cluny, (let us) go (and) visit the Pantheon.

—What is that dome, yonder, on the height?

—It is that same.[2] You know who (*has*) founded that edifice.

—My faith, no.

—Well, it is Clovis, who called it Sainte-Geneviève. Louis XV., it seeing fall *in* ruins, it raised-again and to-it made to-give the name of Pantheon.

—What is the height of the Pantheon?

—Two hundred (and) fifty feet. The portico is formed of twenty-two columns, and it supports a pediment which contains a masterpiece of the sculptor David.

—Now, we are-going to-go-down into the vaults. You there will hear an echo very remarkable and you will see the tombs of Voltaire and *of* Rousseau.

---

[1] An inversion very frequent in French. *Relics which contains the Museum,* instead of *Relics which the Museum contains.*

[2] It is the very thing.

—Je vous prierai de me dire ce que[1] c'est que j'aperçois là-haut, sous la voûte du dôme. On dirait des peintures à fresque.[2]

—Vous ne vous trompez pas. C'est l'apothéose de Sainte-Geneviève, patronne de l'église.

—Tout cela est bien beau. Mais, est-ce que nous aurons le temps d'aller voir l'Observatoire?

—Sans doute.—Vous savez que je connaissais l'ancien directeur?

—Qui voulez-vous dire? le célèbre astronome Le Verrier, qui est mort en 1877?

—Non, son prédecesseur, le fameux Arago. Mais partons. Comme nous sommes en plein Quartier Latin, je vous ferai voir en route, la Sorbonne[3] et l'École de Médecine.

---

*PRONUNCIATION.*

**Lŭ Pan-tā-on', Lȯb-sĕr-vȧ tȯ ȧr', Lȧ Sor-bȯn', etc.**

Ā bē-in' mint-nank' nōō zȧ-von vü' lĕh sü-pĕr'-b' kȯ-lĕk-sē-on' zā rŭ-lĕk dĕh tan pä-sā' kŭ kon-tē-in' lŭ Mü-zād klü-nē', ȧ-lon vē-zē-tāl Pan-tā-on'.

Kĕl ĕh sŭ dōm', lȧ-bä', sür lȧ ō-tŭr'?

Sĕh s'lȧ mê'-m'. Vōō sȧ-vā kē ȧ fon-dā sĕt ā-dē-fēs'?

Klȯ-vēs',—Sint' zhŭn-vē-ĕv'—Lōō-ē kinz—Nȧ-pȯ-lā-on trȯ-ä'.

---

[1] What, when meaning *that which*, is rendered by **ce que.** *What it is that I see* is rendered in French by *that which it is that I see:* **ce que c'est que je vois.**

[2] **On dirait des peintures à fresques;** lit.: One would *say* fresco paintings. *Anglice*, One would *think* (they were) frescoes.

[3] The **Sorbonne,** founded in 1253 by Robert de Sorbon, and rebuilt in 1629, is the seat of the faculties of the university, excepting those of law, medicine, and Protestant theology.

—I you will pray to to-me tell that which it is that I[1] perceive yonder[2] under the arch of the dome. One would-say (they were) (*some*) fresco paintings.

—You yourself deceive not.[3] That is the apotheosis of Sainte-Geneviève, the patron-saint[4] of the Church.

—All that is very beautiful. But shall we have (the) time to go (and) see the Observatory?

—Without doubt. You know that I used-to-know[5] the former director?

—Whom do you mean, the celebrated astronomer Le Verrier, who died[6] in 1877?

—No, his predecessor, the famous Arago. But (let us) go. As we are in full Latin Quarter,[7] I you will make to-see on (the) way the Sorbonne and the School of Medicine.

---

**Kĕl ĕh lȧ ō-tŭr dü Pa*n*-tā-o*n*′? Dû-sa*n*-si*n*-ka*n*t pē-ā′.**

**Lŭ por-tēk ĕh for-mā dŭ vi*n*t-dû kȯ-lȯn′, ā ēl sü-por-tu*n* fro*n*-to*n*′ kē ko*n*-tē-i*n*′ tu*n* shĕh′-dŭ′-vr′.**

**U*n* nā-kō.—Vȯl-tair′.—Rōō-sō′.**

**Lȧ-pȯ-tā-ōz dŭ Si*n*t-zhŭn-vē-ĕv′.**

**Lŭ sā-lĕh-brȧs-trȯ-nȯm Lŭ Vĕh-rē-ā′.**

**Mēl-ü-ē-sa*n*-sȯ-ȧ-sa*n*t-dēs-sĕt′.**

**Lŭ-fȧ-mû zȧ-rȧ-gō′.—Lŭ kȧr-tē-ā lȧ-ti*n*′.**

**Lā-kȯl dŭ mād-sēn′.**

---

1 *Anglice*, What it is I perceive, etc.

2 *Yonder* is rendered by **là-haut** (lit.: there (on) high; up there), or **là-bas** (lit.: there (down) low, down there).

3 You are not mistaken.— 4 **Patron,** patron; **patronne,** patroness.

5 The French have no such form as *used to*, but express it by the imperfect of the verb. *I used to know*=*I knew* (with the *imperfect ending* **ais**): **Je connaissais.**

6 Lit.: Who is dead (*i. e.* has died).

7 The quarter of various colleges, faculties, and of students.

*Let the learner read these over and select three or four to mem- afterward.*

## CORRESPONDANCE.

### DES FINS DE LETTRES.

#### II.—*LETTRES D'AFFAIRES.*

1. Recevez mes salutations empressées,[1]
Adam Smith.

2. J'ai l'honneur de vous saluer (bien affectueusement[2]).

3. Je suis, Monsieur,
Votre humble[3] serviteur.

4. J'ai l'honneur d'être, Monsieur,
Votre dévoué serviteur.

5. Je vous prie d'agréer l'assurance de notre parfaite considération.

6. Agréez, Messieurs, l'assurance de notre parfait dévouement.

7. Veuillez, Monsieur, agréer l'expression de ma considération distinguée.

---

[1] Or, **respectueuses, affectueuses, distinguées.**

*orize. These he should write without looking at the book, some hours*

## CORRESPONDENCE.

### THE ENDING OF LETTERS.

#### II.—*BUSINESS LETTERS.*

1. Receive my eager salutations,
Adam Smith.

2. I have the honor of saluting you (very affectionately).

3. I am, sir,
Your humble servant.

4. I have the honor to be, sir,
Your devoted servant.

5. I pray you to accept the assurance of our perfect consideration.

6. Accept, gentlemen, the assurance of our perfect devotedness.

7. Please, sir, accept the expression of my distinguished consideration.

---

[2] Can be omitted. — [3] Or, **très humble,** *very humble.*

# PART II.

## HOTEL AND BOARDING-HOUSE.

## HÔTEL ET PENSION.

### SECTION III.

1. RENTING UNFURNISHED ROOMS.
2. TO ASK ONE'S WAY.
3. THE NUMBERS.
4. MEETING A FRIEND.
5. ADDITION, SUBTRACTION, etc.
6. DEPARTURE FROM THE HOTEL.
7. "ABOUT IDIOMS."
8. HOW TO DIRECT A LETTER.

## III.

### FRENCH.

**1. Nous, nous[1] sommes logés[2] à l'entresol.**

C'est beaucoup mieux.

Moi, je ne voudrais pas demeurer si haut que ça.

Que voulez-vous? Je leur avais écrit de Vienne de me garder des chambres au premier.

Eh bien?

Eh bien, quand je suis arrivé, on m'a mis au troisième.

---

**Note.—Study paragraphs 1 and 2, page 461.**

---

**2. Moi, je changerais[3] immédiatement d'hôtel.**

Moi aussi, je le ferais.

---

NOTES.

1 **Nous, nous sommes,** lit.: we, we are, instead of *we* are.—**Moi, je;** "Me I," instead of *I*.

2 **Logés,** plural of **logé.** Past participles (such as **logé, vu, meublé,** etc.) when conjugated with **être,** *to be*, agree like adjectives with the subject of the verb. **Logés** is plural here, because **nous,** the subject, is plural.

3 Conditional of **changer,** to change.

## III.

| PRONUNCIATION. | TRANSLATION. |
|---|---|
| 1. **Nōō, nōō sòm lò-zhā zà lan-trŭ-sòl.** | **We are[1] on the entresol.** |
| Sĕh bō-kōō mē-û′. | That 's much better. |
| Sē ōk-sà′. | *I* would n't go up[2] as high as that. |
| Dŭm gàr-dā′. | What could you do?[3] I had written them[4] from Vienna to keep me rooms on the first floor. |
| | Well? |
| Kan zh' sü-ē zà-rē-vā′ ——. | Well, when I got here they put me[5] on the third story. |

**"How to tell the gender of nouns."**

| | |
|---|---|
| 2. **Mò-à, zhŭ shan-zhrĕh zēm-mā-dē-àt-man dō-tĕl′.** | **I 'd change my hotel right away.** |
| Zhŭl frĕh′. | So would I.[6] |

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] We are lodged *at* the—.

[2] *Me*, I would n't live—.

[3] *What will you?* a frequent expression. *What could you do about it*, however, would be literally, **que pourriez-vous y faire.**

[4] I to-them had written.

[5] When I *am* arrived here, they (**on**) me have put—.

[6] *Me* also, I it would do.

Mais je veux trouver un appartement.

Un appartement meublé? J'ai votre affaire.

Non. Un appartement non meublé.

Comment ça?
Parce que je veux rester tout à fait à Paris.

C'est une autre paire de manches.
Dans ce cas-là, nous devons chercher.

Je vais justement chez un agent de change, rue Vivienne.
Voulez-vous venir avec moi. Nous regarderons en chemin.
Cela fera justement mon affaire.

---

**Note.—Study "the possessive adjectives,"**

---

Savez-vous[1] où est la rue Vivienne?

Pas exactement. Nous devons[2] demander notre chemin.
Ah! voilà un sergent de ville.
Pardon. La rue Vivienne, s'il vous plaît.

---

NOTES.

[1] From **savoir,** to know. **Je sais, tu sais, il sait, nous savons, vous savez, ils savent,** I know, thou knowest, etc.

[2] From **devoir,** *to owe, to have to.* **Je dois, tu dois, il doit, nous devons, vous devez, ils doivent,** *I owe, have to,* or *must,* etc.

| | |
|---|---|
| | But I want to find an apartment. |
| — Mŭ-blā-zhā vȯ-trȧ-fair'. | A furnished apartment? I have just what you want.[1] |
| | No. An unfurnished apartment. |
| Kȯ-ma*n* sȧ'? | How is that?[2] |
| Pȧr-skŭzh vû——. | Because I want to stay permanently in Paris. |
| Ü-nō-tr' pair dŭ ma*n*'-sh'. | That's a different thing.[3] |
| Da*n*-skä-lȧ'. | In that case, we have to look (for one). |
| Ȧ-zha*n*d sha*n*'-z'. | I am just going to a broker's, in rue Vivienne. |
| Nōōr-gȧr-dro*n* za*n*sh-mi*n*'. | Will you come with me? We will look[4] on the way.[5] |
| Mo*n* nȧ-fair'. | That will just suit me.[6] |

**page 462. parags. I to 4.**

| | |
|---|---|
| | Do you know where Vivienne Street is?[7] |
| Pä zĕg-zȧk-tŭ-ma*n*'. | Not exactly. We shall have to[8] ask. |
| Sĕr-zha*n*d-vēl'. | Ah! here is a policeman. |
| | I beg pardon. Which is the way to Vivienne Street? |

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] I have your affair. — [2] How that?
[3] It's another pair of sleeves (*familiar*). *Anglice*, it's a horse of another color.
[4] Look-*for*. — [5] On way. — [6] That will make exactly my affair.
[7] Know you where is the rue Vivienne? — [8] We have to.

Prenez[1] la troisième à gauche, et alors suivez tout droit. C'est la cinquième à droite.

Bien des remercîments.
Tenez! voilà votre affaire.
Que voulez-vous dire?
Voyez-vous[2] cet écriteau?
Qu'est-ce qu'il y a dessus?
Voyons.[2] — Appartements à louer, meublés ou non meublés.
C'est justement notre affaire. Entrons.

---

**3. Bonjour, Messieurs. Qu'y a-t-il pour votre service?**

Vous avez des chambres à louer?
Oui, Monsieur. Les voudriez-vous meublées ou non meublées?[3]
Je voudrais me mettre dans mes meubles.

Eh bien, je pourrais vous louer un appartement non meublé au deuxième étage.

C'est un peu haut. Mais je crois que ça ferait[4] mon affaire.

---

NOTES.

[1] From **prendre,** to take.
[2] From **voir,** to see.
[3] Sing. **meublé. Meublées** is written with the feminine plural ending **es,** because **chambres,** which it qualifies, is a feminine plural noun.
[4] Conditional of **faire,** third person singular.

| | |
|---|---|
| Trò-ä-zē-ĕm-à-gōsh' . . . . sü-ē-vā tōō drò-à'. . . . . Sin-kē-ĕm à drò-àt'. | Take the third (turning) to the left, and then go straight ahead. It 's the fifth turning to the right.[1] |
| R' mĕr-sē-man'. | Many thanks. |
| | See! There 's what you want! |
| | What do you mean? |
| Vò-à-yā vōō sĕt ā-krē-tō'? | Do you see that bill out?[2] |
| Kĕs-kēl yàd-sü'? | What is there on it?[3] |
| Vò-à-yon'.—À-pàr-tü-man mŭ-blā zōō non . . . . | Let us see.[4] Apartments to let, furnished or unfurnished. |
| Sĕh zhŭs-tŭ-man. | That 's exactly what we want.[5] Let us go in. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **3. Bon-zhōōr', Mĕs-yû'. Kē-yà-tēl pōōr vò'-tr' sĕr-vēs'?** | **Good morning, gentlemen. What do you wish?[6]** |
| | You have apartments to let? |
| Mŭ-blā' ōō non mŭ-blā'? | Yes, sir. Would you want them furnished or unfurnished? |
| Vōō-drĕm mĕh'-tr'. | I should like to furnish my rooms.[7] |
| Un nà-pàr-tŭ-man'. | Well, I could rent you an unfurnished apartment on the second story. |
| Mĕzh krò-àk-sà frĕh. | That 's a little high (up). But I think it would do.[8] |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] Take the *third to left* and then follow all straight. It is the *fifth to right.* — [2] That placard. — [3] What is there *upon?*
[4] **Voyons,** Let us see. Is also used for, Let *me* see.
[5] It 's exactly our affair. — [6] What is there for your service?
[7] I would like *to put myself in my furniture.*
[8] I think that it would do my business.

Donnez-vous la peine de monter,[1] *gentlemen.*

Comment, vous parlez anglais?

Non, Monsieur. Je ne le parle pas à présent.

Autrefois, je le parlais[2] un peu.

---

**Note.—Study the "6 necessary" tenses of**

---

**4. Mais, c'est au troisième que vous nous faites monter.**

Pardon, Monsieur. Il y a d'abord le rez-de-chaussée, puis le premier,[3] et enfin le second, où nous sommes à présent.

Me voila tout essoufflé![4]

Nous y voilà, Messieurs.

Ah! voilà l'appartement? Il ne me convient pas très bien.

Je voudrais quelque chose **de**[5] plus petit et **de** moins cher à garnir.

Eh bien, voudriez-vous monter encore un étage?[6]

---

NOTES.

1 **Monter,** *to come up, go up;* also, *to take* or *bring up stairs.*

2 **Je parlais** (imperfect of **parler**) = I *used to* speak. Lit.: I spoke.

3 Many houses have no **entresol.**

4 If a lady were speaking, the word would be written **essoufflée.**

5 **Quelque chose, quelqu'un, rien, quoi, que,** require the preposition **de** after them, if followed by an adjective or past participle. **Somebody wounded = quelqu'un de blessé.**

6 **Encore un étage,** *or* **un étage de plus (plüs')** = *another,* that is, one more story.

| | |
|---|---|
| Pĕn dŭ .... | Please walk up stairs,[1] gentlemen. |
| Vōō pår-lā zan-glĕh? | What! You (can) speak English? |
| Zhŭn lŭ pårl pä zå prā-zan′. | No, sir. I do not speak it, now. |
| Ō-trŭ-fò-å, zhŭl pår-lĕh zun pû′. | Formerly, I used to speak[2] a little. |

**Parler, negatively, page 486.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **4. Mĕh sĕh tō trò-ä-zē-ĕm′ kŭ vōō nōō fĕt mon-tă′.** | **But you are taking us to the third story.[3]** |
| Pü-ēl-prŭ-mē-ā′, ā an-fin lŭ s′gon′, ōō nōō sòm zå prā-zan′. | I beg your pardon, sir. First, there is the ground-floor, then the first floor, and then[4] the second, where we are now. |
| Tōō tĕh-sōō-flā′. | Well! I am all out of breath.[5] |
| Nōō-zē vò-å-lå, mĕs-yû′. | We are there now, gentlemen. |
| Kon-vē-in′. | Ah! that is the apartment.[6] I don't like it very well.[7] |
| Kĕl-kŭ shōz dŭ plüp-tē′ ād mò-in′ shĕr′ å går-nēr′. | I would like one somewhat smaller[8] and less expensive to furnish. |
| An-kor un nā-tåzh′. | Well, would you go one story higher?[9] |

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 Give yourself the trouble to ascend.
2 I it spoke a little.
3 It is to the third story that you make us go.
4 And finally.
5 Here I am all out-of-breath.
6 There is the apartment.
7 It me pleases not.
8 Something *of* smaller.
9 Yet a story.

Encore un étage! Ma foi, je ne sais[1] trop. L'appartement est-il plus petit?

Oui, Monsieur, plus petit et moins cher.

Eh bien, faites-moi[2] voir cela.
Très bien, Monsieur; montons.

---

## 5. Il fait bien sombre dans cet escalier.

Tenez-vous à la rampe.
Pardon. Je ne vous comprends pas.

Tenez-vous à la balustrade.
Ah! cela s'appelle[3] aussi une rampe?

Oui, Monsieur. Mais voici l'appartement.

Vous voyez que le salon donne sur la rue, tandis que les chambres à coucher et la cuisine donnent sur la cour.

Je choisirais[4] bien celui-ci,[5] mais il me semble à peine assez grand.

Pourquoi ne choisiriez-vous pas celui du troisième?

---

NOTES.

[1] With **pouvoir,** to be able, **savoir,** to know (also **oser,** *to dare*, **cesser,** *to cease*), **pas** is sometimes omitted, *but may always be used.* If omitted, the negative is not (usually) so strong.

[2] **Faire voir,** *to show.* Lit.: *to make see.*

[3] That is called. Lit.: *that calls itself.*

[4] Conditional of **choisir,** conjugated like **finir.**

[5] **Celui-ci,** masculine. **celle-ci,** feminine, this one.

| | |
|---|---|
| Zhŭn sĕh trō' .... plüp-tē'? | Another story! I scarcely know.[1] Is the apartment smaller? |
| Plüp-tē ā .... | Yes, sir. The apartment is smaller and cheaper. |
| Fĕt mò-á vò-àr slà'. | Well, you might show it to me.[2] |
| Mon-ton'. | Very well, sir; let us go up (to it). |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **5. Ēl fĕh bē-in son'-br' dan sĕt ĕs-kă-lē-à'.** | **These stairs are very dark.**[3] |
| Tŭ-nā vōō zà là ran'-p'. | Hold on[4] to the banisters. |
| Zhŭn vōō kon-pran' pä'. | I beg pardon. I don't understand you. |
| Bà-lüs-tràd'. | Hold on to the banisters. |
| Slà sà-pĕl. | Ah! You also call[5] that a *rampe?* |
| | Yes, sir. But, here is the apartment. |
| Tan-dēs kŭ lĕh shan'-brŭ-zà kōō-shā' ā là kü-ē-zēn' dòn sür là kōōr'. | You see the parlor windows open[6] on the street, while[7] the sleeping-rooms and kitchen are facing the yard. |
| Zhŭ shò-à-zē-rĕh .... mĕh zēl mŭ san'-blà-pĕn à-sā gran'. | I would decide for[8] this one; but it scarcely seems to me (to be) large enough. |
| Nŭ shò-à-zē-rē-ā-vōō pä. | Why would you not take the one on[9] the third floor? |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] I know not.
[2] Make me see that.
[3] It *makes* very dark on these stairs. **Il fait** is used impersonally for *it is*, in expressions of weather, temperature, or light.
[4] Hold yourself. — [5] That calls itself.
[6] Give. — [7] While *that*.
[8] I would-choose indeed. — [9] The-one of.

**Note.—Study the "6 necessary tenses"**

---

**6. Remarquez qu'[1]il y a beaucoup de placards.**

Quant à ça, c'est bien commode.

Jusqu'à quelle heure les corridors sont-ils éclairés le soir?

Jusqu'à minuit, Monsieur.

Quel est le prix du loyer?

Il est de douze cents francs par trimestre.[2]

C'est affreusement cher.

Veuillez remarquer, Monsieur, que cet[3] appartement est tout près des boulevards, des théâtres et de la Bourse.

Le propriétaire a tout **fait**[4] mettre à neuf.

Enfin, la maison est excessivement bien tenue.

Tout cela compte.

---

**Note.—Study the Demonstrative**

---

NOTES.

[1] *That* is never omitted.

[2] Term of three months.

[3] **Cet,** instead of **ce,** before masculine nouns beginning with a vowel or silent **h.**

[4] Let not the distinction be lost between *to have,* in the sense of causing a thing to be done, which is rendered by **faire,** and *to have,* meaning *to possess,* or *to have done* (*seen, written,* etc.) *anything,* which is rendered by **avoir.**

**of Finir, negatively, page 492.**

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **6. Rŭ-mȧr-kā-kēl ē yȧ bō-kōōd-plȧ-kȧr′.** | **You see there is abundant closet space.**[1] |
| Ka*n*-tȧ-sȧ′ . . . . kȯ-mȯd′. | Yes,[2] that is very convenient. |
| Zhüs-kȧ . . . . kȯ-rē-dor so*n*-tēl zā-klĕh-rā lŭ sȯ-ȧr′? | How late[3] are the halls lighted at night? |
| | Till midnight, sir. |
| L'prē dü lȯ-ȧ-yā′. | What is the rent?[4] |
| Trē-mĕs′-tr′. | Twelve hundred francs per quarter. |
| Sĕh tȧ-frûz-ma*n* shĕr′. | It 's frightfully dear. |
| Vŭ-yā r' mȧr-kā . . . . tōō prĕh dĕh . . . . | Remember, sir, that the apartment is right by[5] the Boulevards, the theatres, and Exchange. |
| Lŭ prȯ-prē-yā-tair′ ȧ tōō fĕh mĕh-trȧ nŭf.′ | The landlord has had everything refitted anew.[6] |
| Ĕh tĕg-sĕh-sēv-ma*n*′ bē-i*n* t'nü′. | Moreover, the house is very well kept.[7] |
| Tōō sŭ-lȧ ko*n*′-t′. | All that is to be considered.[8] |

---

**Adjectives, par. I and 2, page 463.**

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 Observe *that* there-are many (*of*) placards.
2 As for that.
3 Until what hour.
4 What is *the price of the rent?*
5 *All* near; quite near.
6 The landlord has made to *put* everything *to* new.
7 Finally, the house is excessively well kept.
8 All that counts.

*The following numbers to be learned by heart.*

## VOCABULAIRE.

### NOMBRES CARDINAUX.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Un, | *un*, | 1 | Dix-neuf, | dēz-nŭf′, | 19 |
| Deux, | dû, | 2 | Vingt, | vi*n*, | 20 |
| Trois, | trò-ä′, | 3 | Vingt et un, | vi*n*-tā-un′, | 21 |
| Quatre, | kȧ-tr′, | 4 | Vingt-deux, | vi*n*t-dû′, | 22 |
| Cinq,[1] | si*n*k′, | 5 | Vingt-trois, | vi*n*t-trò-ä′, | 23 |
| Six,[2] | sēs, | 6 | Vingt-quatre, | vi*n*t-kȧ-tr′, | 24 |
| Sept,[3] | sĕt, | 7 | Vingt-cinq, | vi*n*t-si*n*k′, | 25 |
| Huit,[3] | ü-ēt′, | 8 | Vingt-six, | vi*n*t-sēs′, | 26 |
| Neuf,[3] | nŭf′, | 9 | Vingt-sept, | vi*n*t-sĕt′, | 27 |
| Dix,[2] | dēs′, | 10 | Vingt-huit, | vi*n*-tü-ēt′, | 28 |
| Onze, | onz′, | 11 | Vingt-neuf, | vi*n*t-nŭf′, | 29 |
| Douze, | dōōz′, | 12 | Trente, | tra*n*′-t′, | 30 |
| Treize, | trĕz′, | 13 | Trente et un, | tra*n*-tā-u*n*′, | 31 |
| Quatorze, | kȧ-torz′, | 14 | Trente-deux, etc., | tra*n*t-dû′, | 32 |
| Quinze, | ki*n*z′, | 15 | Quarante, | kȧ-ra*n*′-t′, | 40 |
| Seize, | sĕz′, | 16 | Quarante et un,[4] | | 41 |
| Dix-sept, | dīs-sĕt′, | 17 | Quarante-deux, etc., | | 42 |
| Dix-huit, | dē-zü-ēt′, | 18 | | | |

---

[1] **Cinq** is pronounced si*n*k, when alone, or before a word beginning with a vowel (*or* silent **h**). Otherwise, si*n*. **Cinq assiettes, cinq heures = si*n*-kȧ-sē-ĕt, si*n*-kŭr. Cinq minutes = si*n* mē-nüt′.**

[2] **Six** and **dix** are pronounced **sēs** and **dēs,** when alone, **sēz** and **dēz** when before a vowel (or silent **h**), and **sē** and **dē** before a consonant (or **h** aspirate). **Six assiettes, six heures = sē-zȧ-sē-ĕt′, sē-zŭr′. Six minutes = sē mē-nüt′.**

[3] **Sept, huit,** and **neuf** before a consonant are generally pronounced **sĕh, ü-ē, nŭ.** Thus, **Sept jours = sĕh zhōōr,** etc.

*The following numbers to be learned by heart.*

## VOCABULARY.

### CARDINAL NUMBERS.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Cinquante, sin-kan'-t', | 50 | Quatre-vingt-dix, | 90 |
| Cinquante et un,[4] | 51 | Quatre-vingt-onze, | 91 |
| Soixante, sò-à-san't', | 60 | Quatre-vingt-douze, | 92 |
| Soixante et un,[4] | 61 | Quatre-vingt-treize, | 93 |
| Soixante-dix,[5] | 70 | Quatre-vingt-quatorze, | 94 |
| Soixante et onze,[7] | 71 | Quatre-vingt-quinze, | 95 |
| Soixante-douze, | 72 | Quatre-vingt-seize, | 96 |
| Soixante-treize, | 73 | Quatre-vingt-dix-sept, | 97 |
| Soixante-quatorze, | 74 | Quatre-vingt-dix-huit, | 98 |
| Soixante-quinze, | 75 | Quatre-vingt-dix-neuf, | 99 |
| Soixante-seize, | 76 | Cent, san, | 100 |
| Soixante-dix-sept, | 77 | Cent un, san un, | 101 |
| Soixante-dix-huit, | 78 | Mille, mēl', A thousand. | |
| Soixante-dix-neuf,[6] | 79 | Un million, mē-lē-on', a million. | |
| Quatre-vingts, | 80 | Un milliard, mē-lē-àr', a billion. | |
| Quatre-vingt-un,[8] | 81 | | |

---

[4] **Kà-ran-tā-un'; Sin-kan-tā-un', Sò-à-san-tā-un'.** The **t** of the conjunction **et** is never carried forward.

[5] **Sò-à-sant-dēs; Sò-à-san-tā-onz'; sò-à-sant-dōōz'; .... Kà-trŭ-vin'; Kà-trŭ-vin-un'; Kà-trŭ-vin onz'.**

[6] As will have been observed, the French count from 60 to 100 in two series of twenty each, instead of four series of ten. Thus they say, *sixty-nine, sixty-ten, sixty-eleven, sixty-twelve .... sixty-nineteen, eighty;* and, *eighty-nine, eighty-ten, eighty-eleven .... eighty-nineteen, hundred.*

[7] Some say also, **soixante-onze (sò-à-san-tonz').**

[8] After eighty the word **et** is dropped from before **un.** Thus, **quatre-vingt-un,** not ***et* un; quatre-vingt-onze,** not ***et* onze; cent un,** not ***et* un.**

*The following numbers to be learned by heart.*

## VOCABULAIRE.

### THE ORDINAL NUMBERS.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Premier,[1] | 1st | Vingt et unième, | 21st |
| Deuxième,[2] / Second,[1] | 2d | Vingt-deuxième, | 22d |
| | | Trentième, | 30th |
| Troisième,[2] | 3d | Trente et unième, | 31st |
| Quatrième,[2] | 4th | Quarantième, | 40th |
| Cinquième,[2] | 5th | Quarante et unième, | 41st |
| Sixième,[2] | 6th | Cinquantième, | 50th |
| Septième,[2] | 7th | Cinquante et unième, | 51st |
| Huitième, | 8th | Soixantième, | 60th |
| Neuvième, | 9th | Soixante et unième, | 61st |
| Dixième,[2] | 10th | Soixante-dixième, | 70th |
| Onzième, | 11th | Soixante et onzième,[3] | 71st |
| Douzième, | 12th | Quatre-vingtième, | 80th |
| Treizième, | 13th | Quatre-vingt-unième, | 81st |
| Quatorzième, | 14th | Quatre-vingt-dixième, | 90th |
| Quinzième, | 15th | Quatre-vingt-onzième, | 91st |
| Seizième, | 16th | Centième, | 100th |
| Dix-septième, | 17th | Cent unième, | 101st |
| Dix-huitième, | 18th | Deux centième, | 200th |
| Dix-neuvième, | 19th | Millième, | 1000th |
| Vingtième, | 20th | Millionième, | 1,000,000th |

---

[1] **Le premier (lŭ prŭ-mē-ā′)** and **le second (lŭ s′gon′)** have each a feminine form, — **la première, la seconde.** All other numbers indicate gender by using **la** instead of **le. Le troisième étage; la troisième maison.**

[2] **Dû-zē-ĕm′. Trȯ-ä-zē-ĕm. Kȧ-trē-yĕm′. Sin-kē-ĕm′. Sē-zē-ĕm′. Sĕh-tē-ēm′. dē-zē-ĕm′.** [3] Also, **soixante-onzième.**

*The following numbers to be learned by heart.*

## VOCABULARY.

### ORDINAL ADVERBS.

| | |
|---|---|
| Premièrement (prŭ-mē-ĕr-man'), | First. |
| Deuxièmement (dû-zē-ĕm-man'), | Secondly. |
| Troizièmement (trò-ä-zē-ĕm-man'), | Thirdly. |
| Quatrièmement (kà-trē-yĕm-man), | Fourthly, etc. |

### FRACTIONAL NUMBERS.

| | |
|---|---|
| Un quart (kàr), | One quarter. |
| Deux quarts, | Two quarters. |
| Un demi (dŭ-mā'), Une demie (dŭ-mē'), | A half.[1] |
| La moitié (là mò-à-tē-ā'), | The half. |
| Le tiers (tē-ĕr'), | The third. |
| Un cinquième (sin-kē-ĕm'), | One-fifth. |
| Un sixième (sē-zē-ĕm'), | One-sixth, etc. |
| Une dizaine (dē-zĕn'), | (About) ten. |
| Une douzaine (dōō-zĕn'), | A dozen.[2] |
| Une vingtaine (vin-tĕn'), | A score (*about* twenty). |
| Une centaine (san-tĕn'), | About a hundred.[2] |
| Un millier, | About a thousand. |
| Une fois (ün-fò-à'), | Once. |
| Deux fois (dû-fò-à'), | Twice. |
| Dix fois (dē-fò-à'), | Ten times, etc. |
| Toutes les fois (tōōt lĕh fò-à'), | Every time. |

---

[1] **Demi** is an adjective and agrees with the noun it qualifies. **Un demi mètre,** *half a yard;* **une demie livre,** *half a pound;* **un jour et demi,** *a day and a half;* **une heure et demie,** *an hour and a half.*

[2] Or, *a dozen or so, a hundred or so, a thousand or so.*

## PECULIARITIES OF CARDINAL NUMBERS.

**Un** alone has a feminine form, **une.**

Vingt takes an **s** in the form of **quatre-vingts,** when not followed by another number.

**Quatre-vingts hommes** (80 men);
but, **Quatre-vingt-cinq hommes** (85 men).

**Cent,** like the above, takes an **s,** when there are two or more hundred, *if* not followed by another number. Thus:

**Deux cents hommes;**
but, **Deux cent cinquante hommes.**[1]

**Mille,** as a number, has two forms:

**Mille** = a thousand.
**Mil** = one thousand.[2]

Both are invariable.

**Mille** is also a noun, = a mile, and is then variable.

**Deux milles** = two miles.

**Cent** and **mille** do not take the indefinite article as *hundred* and *thousand* do in English. The French say, *hundred,* not *a hundred; thousand,* not *a thousand.*

---

1 **Cent,** when used *for* **centaine** (*about* a hundred), is used as a noun, and hence always variable. Thus, **deux cents de foin** = two hundred (pounds, *understood*) of hay.

2 **Mil** is used only in dates. **En mil huit cent quatre-vingt-sept,** in 1887.

## PECULIARITIES OF ORDINAL NUMBERS.

*Not used for titles or dates, excepting for the* FIRST.[1] *Thus:*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Le premier juillet[2] | = the 1st of July. | Napoléon 1er | = Napoléon the 1st. |
| Le *deux* juillet | = the 2d of July. | Napoléon deux | = Napoléon the 2d. |
| Le *trois* juillet | = the 3d of July. | Louis quinze | = Louis the 15th. |
| Le *quatre* juillet | = the 4th of July. | Charles six | = Charles the 6th. |
| Le *quatorze* juillet | = the 14th of July. | Henry huit | = Henry the 8th. |
| Le premier août[3] | = the 1st of Aug. | Charles deux | = Charles the 2d. |
| Le deux‿août[3] | = the 2d of Aug. | Louis dix‿huit | = Louis the 18th. |
| Le onze‿août[4] | = the 11th of Aug. | | |

N. B. — The French use the absolute case (*no preposition*) in dates. Thus:

*On* the first of July = **Le premier juillet.**
*On* the second day of August = **Le deux‿août.**

And,

On Monday, (*i. e.* next[5] Monday), } = **Lundi** (simply, *Monday*).

On Monday (*i. e.* every Monday) On Mondays } = **Le lundi** (simply, *The Monday,* or **Les lundis,** *The Mondays.*

---

[1] With names of princes one may use the ordinal for the 2d. — Not frequent.

[2] **Zhü‿ē-yĕh′.** — [3] **ŌŌ.** — **Lŭ dû zōō′.**

[4] The e of the article is never elided before **onze. Le onze,** not **l'onze.** — [5] Also, *last.*

*To be learned by heart and recited as a real conversation. For Self-Study see* ***Directions****, before* ***Part I.****)*

## CONVERSATIONS.

### 1.—*EN SE RENCONTRANT DANS LA RUE.*

Eh bien, avez-vous trouvé une place? Non, je vais rester au Grand Hôtel, pour le moment. Venez donc me voir, demain. — Je voudrais bien; mais je ne pourrais pas. — Quand pourriez-vous venir? — Je crois que je pourrais venir jeudi ou vendredi.[1] — Eh bien, je vous attendrai.[2] Ne me manquez pas de parole![3] — Non. Vous pouvez compter[4] sur moi. — Eh bien, au revoir. Faites mes compliments à votre dame. — Merci. Je n'y manquerai pas.[5] Au revoir.

### 2.—*À PROPOS DE VOYAGES.*

Pourquoi votre amie ne voudrait-elle pas faire un tour en Italie avec nous, cet été? — Elle voudrait bien; mais elle ne peut pas quitter Paris. — Ne veut-elle pas aller à Rome et à Florence, avant de retourner en Amérique? — Si,[6] Monsieur. Mais elle

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

[1] **Zhû-dē ōō van-drŭ-dē′.**
[2] I will expect you. Lit.: I will wait-for you.
[3] Don't fail me. Lit.: Fail me not *of* word!
[4] Count, depend.
[5] I (to-it) will not fail.
[6] **Si** = yes, in answer to a negative question.

compte[1] y aller en automne. — En même temps, elle veut faire un tour en Espagne.[2] — Ne parle-t-elle pas bien l'espagnol?[2] — Elle le comprend un peu, mais elle ne le parle pas bien. — On m'avait dit qu'elle le parlait bien.

---

**Note. — Study the "5 necessary tenses" of Parler, negatively-interrogatively, page 487.**

---

### 3. — *MÊME SUJET.*

Quel quantième sommes-nous[3] aujourd'hui? — Nous sommes aujourd'hui le quinze. — Comme le temps se passe![4] Voici déjà un tiers de l'année de parti.[5] — Quand comptez-vous retourner aux Etats-Unis? — Nous voulons être de retour[6] à New York, le premier janvier 1889.[7] — Vous avez encore beaucoup à voir en Europe.[8] — Je le crois bien![9] Et puis nous voulons faire un tour en Tunisie et au Maroc. — En ce cas, je vous conseille de ne pas perdre de temps.

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

1 Counts, intends.

2 **An nĕs-pȧ'-ñŭ. — Lĕs-pȧ-ñol',** Spanish.

3 **Kĕl ka*n*-tē-ĕm',** what day-of-the-month, *are* we? **Quantième** is scarcely translatable, and used only with this expression.

4 Lit.: passes (*itself*).

5 Gone (by).

6 Back. Lit.: *Of return.*

7 **Mēl ü-ē-sa*n*'-kȧ-trŭ-vi*n*-nŭf.** — 8 **An nŭ-rŏp'.**

9 Lit.: I believe it indeed.

### 4.—*ADDITION, SOUSTRACTION, MULTIPLICATION, ET DIVISION.**

*In this paragraph, the answers will be left blank, so as to exercise the pupil. This drill can of course be enlarged upon at will by the teacher or self-learner.*

Combien font[1] vingt-trois et cinquante-deux?—Vingt-trois et cinquante-deux font— De quatre-vingt-quatorze ôtez douze, combien reste-t-il?[2]—Douze de quatre-vingt-quatorze, reste—[3] Combien font dix-huit multiplié par quatre?—Dix-huit multiplié par quatre font— Étant donné cent trente pour dividende et cinq pour diviseur,[4] quel sera le quotient?—Le quotient sera—

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

[1] Make. Third person, plural, indicative present of **faire.**
[2] Remains *it* (*i. e.* there)?
[3] Lit.: 12 from 94, *remains* 82.
[4] **Dē-vē-zŭr′, dē-vē-da*n*′-d’, kô-sē-a*n*′.**
* **Å-dē-sē-o*n*′, Sōōs-tråk-sē-o*n*′, Mül-tē-plē-kä-sē-o*n*′, Dē-vē-zē-o*n*′.**

*To be translated and written into French, but also to be recited conversationally in the class-room. (For Self-Study, see **Directions** before **Part I.**)*

## EXERCISES.

### 1.—*TO HIRE ROOMS.*†

Good-morning, sir. Do you have any rooms to let? —Yes, sir. We have a furnished room[1] on the third story.—That is a little high (up). But let us go up (and) see it.[2]—The room suits me pretty well. What would be the rent?—How do you wish (to)* hire the room,—by the week or by the month?—By the week.—It[3] would be fifty francs a week.—That's very high.[4]—But remember[5] it is a front room and facing[6] the Boulevards.

### 2.—*THE VISIT.*

Ah! here you are, at last. How do you do this morning?—Very well, thank you. And yourself?—Not very well. I have a cold.[7]—I am very sorry.[8]

---

**Aids to Translation.**

[1] **Garnie,** or **meublée.**— [2] **La.**— [3] **Ce.**
[4] **Cher.**— [5] *That* is never omitted.
[6] **Une chambre de devant et qui donne sur.**
[7] **Un rhume (rüm').**— [8] **J'en suis bien fâché.**
* Words in parentheses are not to be translated. In the case of the preposition *to*, however, this will be usually indicated only where the learner is not supposed to have become already acquainted with the case in point.
† **Pour louer des chambres.**

. . . . But how beautiful everything is[1] in this hotel! — Have you seen the parlors?[2] — I saw them as I came up.[3] The dining-room too is very large.[4] — Yes. You know there is[5] room[6] (in it) for 600 persons. Then, the hotel is lighted by 4000 gas jets.[7] — It is wonderful.[8].

Well, I must leave you. It is twenty minutes to three, and I have an engagement.[9] When will you come[10] (to) see me? — I do not know. I am going (to) leave Paris to-morrow. — What! so soon?[11] Where are you going? — I am going to Switzerland (to) spend ten days (or so),[12] and after that, I go to London on business. — When do you intend to return?[13] In a month from now.[14] — Well, come (and) see me then. — Very well. — Good-by.

### 3. — *DEPARTURE FROM THE HOTEL.*

What do you wish, sir? — Please make out my account.[15] I want (to) leave[16] to-morrow morning. —

---

**Aids to Translation.**

[1] **Comme tout est beau.** — [2] **Salons.**
[3] **En montant.** — [4] **Grande.**
[5] **Qu'il y a.** — [6] **De la place.**
[7] **Becs de gaz (bĕk dŭ gäz').** — [8] **C'est étonnant!**
[9] **Rendez-vous.** — [10] **Viendrez-vous?** (See Remark 1, opp. page.)
[11] **Si tôt.**
[12] **Passer une dizaine de jours.**
[13] **Comptez-vous revenir?**
[14] **D'ici.**
[15] **Faire mon compte.** (See Remark 2, opp. page.)
[16] **Partir,** *to start* or *to leave.*

Very well, sir. By what train do you wish (to) leave? — By the 8 o'clock train.[1] — Please have my trunks brought down.[2] — Very well. Must we send them to the depot and have them checked? — Yes, please have them checked for Brussels. — At what o'clock do you wish to start? — I must leave[3] the hotel at quarter to eight. Wake me up on *time*.[4]

---

### Aids to Translation.

[1] The train of 8 o'clock.

[2] **Faire descendre mes malles.** Lit.: To-make to-bring-down.

[3] **Partir de l'hôtel,** or **quitter l'hôtel.**

[4] **Réveillez-moi à temps.**

---

### Remarks.

1. Viendrez-vous (future of **venir**). Je viend**rai,** tu viend**ras,** il viend**ra,** nous viend**rons,** vous viend**rez,** ils viend**ront** (**zhŭ vē-in-drā, tü vē-in-drà',** etc.); *I shall* (or *will*) *come*, etc. N. B. — Distinguish between this form (*the future of a verb*), which expresses mainly *futurity*, and the form with **je veux,** etc. (like **je veux venir, voulez-vous acheter,** etc.), which express more specially *desire* or *willingness*.

2. Naturally, in these translations, only that portion of the sentence is given which the pupil is supposed not to know. For instance, **Faire mon compte** (note 15, page 184) and **Faire descendre mes malles** (note 3, page 185) do not mean, *Please make out my account* and *Please have my trunks brought down;* but only, *make-out my account*, *have my trunks brought down*, the student being left to supply the word for *Please*. Let the learner guard against mistaking a part of the sentence thus given for the whole of it.

*To be read by means of the literal translation, then without it, in preparation for reading aloud and translating in class.*
*For the Pronunciation, see page 192.*

## LECTURE.

### À PROPOS D'IDIOTISMES.

—Savez-vous, mon cher ami, que votre langue française est parfois bien exaspérante?

—Comment ça? N'est-ce pas la langue la plus claire qu'il y ait[1] au monde? Sans parler de ses qualités inapprochables pour la conversation. Car Alexandre Dumas père l'a bien dit: "Tous les peuples parlent. Il n'y a que le Français qui sait causer."

—C'est bien là la vanité gauloise!

—Enfin, quelle mouche vous pique à présent?

—Figurez-vous que je me promenais sur les boulevards, cet après-midi. J'arrive[2] au coin de la rue Saint-Martin. Il y avait des ouvriers qui repavaient la rue. J'allais traverser, tout comme j'aurais fait à Baltimore. Mais l'un d'eux m'arrête et me dit, „Monsieur, on ne passe pas.„ Un peu en colère, je me tourne du côté des boulevards pour descendre du trottoir, lorsque le même individu me crie, „Prenez

---

1 **Qu'il y ait,** subjunctive of **il y a.** Lit.: That there *be.*

2 The Indicative Present is often used in French in narration, and is then called the Historical Present.

*For Self-Study, should be read by means of the literal translation, then without it, and when thoroughly understood, read aloud in French.*

## READING.

### ABOUT IDIOMS.

— Do you know, my dear friend, that your French language is sometimes very exasperating?

— How (is) that? Is it not the language the most clear (*that*) there *be* in-the[1] world? Without speaking of its unapproachable qualities for conversation. For Alexander Dumas, the elder,[2] (*it*) has indeed said: "All (*the*) nations speak. There is only the French[3] who knows (how) to-converse.

— That is indeed (*there the*) gallic vanity!

— Well, what fly stings you now?[4]

— Imagine (*to-yourself*) that I (*myself*) promenaded ..... I arrive at the ..... There were some workmen who were-repaving the street. I was-going to cross, just as I would have done in Baltimore. But one of them me stops and me tells: "Sir, one passes not." A little out of temper,[5] I myself turn toward-the side of the Boulevard to get down from the sidewalk, when the same individual to-me cries: "Take

---

[1] Lit.: *At*-the. — [2] Father. — [3] Lit.: The Frenchman.
[4] *Anglice*, What bee has got into your bonnet?
[5] Lit.: A little in wrath.

garde de tomber!„ Il n'avait pas dit, que je m'étais accroché les jambes[1] dans une corde qui était tendue près du bord du trottoir, et que je mesurais l'asphalte de tout mon long. L'ouvrier accourt pour me relever, tandis que plusieurs personnes s'assemblaient. Je le repousse en lui disant, „Vous êtes un insolent!„

—Ah bien, voilà qui est fort!

—Je ne sais ce qui serait arrivé. Heureusement qu'un monsieur s'est avancé et m'a demandé en anglais comment cet homme m'avait insulté. Je lui dis alors que pour se moquer de moi, il m'avait crié: "*Take good care to fall!*" „Pardon, me dit ce monsieur, mais évidemment il y a erreur. Cet homme vous a crié au contraire, Take care *not* to fall! Vous avez mécompris ce singulier idiotisme français. Voilà tout.„ Sans en demander davantage, je me confonds en excuses, je me sauve au plus vite, et me voici.

—Jolie aventure, ma foi!

—Atroce. Mais enfin, comment expliquez-vous une phrase pareille?

—C'est bien facile. La préposition **de** dans cette expression a la force de notre *from*, ou mieux encore, de notre *lest;* et les Français disent en réalité, "Take care, or take heed *from* falling. Take heed *lest* you fall!"

—Ah! vous m'en direz tant?[2]

---

[1] With parts of the body, the French preferably use the article instead of the possessive adjectives (**mon, ma,** etc.), whenever such use does not lead to confusion of meaning. The personality is then expressed before the verb by **me, nous, vous,** etc.

[2] Lit.: Ah! you to-me about-i will-say so-much!

(good) care *to fall!*" He had scarcely *said*,[1] when[2] I *to-myself* had caught *the* leg in a string which was stretched near the edge of the sidewalk, and when[2] I measured the asphaltum with[3] all my length. The workman runs in-order-to me to-pick-up, while several persons (*themselves*) were-gathering. I push him away, while to-him saying: "You are an insolent fellow!"

—Well, that's a little too much![4]

—I do not know what would-have[5] happened. Fortunately (*that*) a gentleman (*himself has*) advanced and me (*has*) asked, in English, how that man me had insulted. I to-him said then that in-order-to mock (*himself of*) me he to-me had cried: "Take (good) care to fall!" "Pardon (me)," to-me said that gentleman, "but there is evidently (a) mistake. This man-to-you (has) cried on-the contrary, Take care *not* to fall! You (*have*) misunderstood that singular French idiom. That is all." Without about-it asking any-more, I go into many excuses,[6] I hurry away,[7] and here I am!

—(A) pretty adventure, (upon) my word!

—Atrocious. But after-all, how do you explain such a phrase?

—It is very easy. The preposition **de** in that sentence has the force of our *from*, or better still, of our *lest*. And the French really say, "Take care, *or* Take heed *from* falling. Take heed *lest* you fall?"

—Ah! if you put it in that way—.

---

[1] Lit.: He had *not* said, that.

[2] Lit.: That.— [3] Lit.: Of.

[4] *There is what is strong!* *i. e.* That's strong, *or* too much!

[5] Lit.: Would-*be*.— [6] I myself *confound* in excuses.

[7] Lit.: *I myself save at the quickest.*

***PRONUNCIATION OF READING EXERCISE ON PAGE 188.***

## **À Prò-pō dē-dē-ò-tĕs′-m'.**[1]

Sà-vā vōō bē-in′ mon shĕr à-mē′,[2] kŭ vò-tr' lan-g fran-sĕz′ ĕh pàr-fò-à bē-in nĕg-zà-spā-ran′-t' ?

Kò-man-sà′? Nēs pä là lan′-g là plü klair′ kĕl ē yĕh tō mon′-d'? San pàr-lā dŭ sĕh kà-lē-tā zē-nà-prò-shà′-bl' pōōr là kon-vĕr-sä-sē-on′. Kàr-à-lĕg-zan′-dr' Dü-mä pair′ là bē-in dē′: „Tōō lĕh pŭ-pl' pàr′-l'. Ēl nē yà kŭ lŭ Fran-sĕh′ kē sĕh kō-zā′.„

Sĕh bē-in là′ là vá-nē-tā gō-lò-àz'!

An-fin kĕl mōōsh vōō pēk′ à prā-zan′?

Fē-gü-rā-vōō′ kŭ zhŭm pròm-nĕh sür lĕh bōōl-vàr′ sĕt à-prĕh mē-dē′. Zhà-rēv ō kò-ind' là rü Sin-Màr-tin′. Ēl ē yà-vĕh dĕh zōō-vrē-yā′ kē rŭ-pà-vĕh là rü'. Zhà-lĕh trà-vĕr-sā, tōō kòm zhor-ĕh fĕh à Bàl-tē-mor'. Mĕh lun dû mà-rêt′ ām dē′: „Mŭs-yû′, on n'päs pä′.„ Un pû an kò-lair', zhŭm tōōrn dü kō-tā dĕh bōōl-vàr′ pōōr dĕh-san′-dr' dü trò-tò-àr′, lōr-skŭ l' mêm in-dē-vē-dü′ mŭ krē′: "Prŭ-nā gàrd dŭ ton-bā′!„ Ēl nà-vĕh pä dē′, kŭzh mā-tĕh zà-krò-shā lĕh zhanb[3] dan zün kord[3] kē ā-tĕh tan-dü prĕh dü bor dü trò-tò-àr′ ā kŭzh mŭ-zü-rĕh làs-fàlt′ dŭ tōō mon lon′. Lōō-vrē-yā à-kōōr pōōr mŭr-lŭ-vā, tan-dēs kŭ plü-zē-ŭr pĕr-sòn sà-san-blĕh′. Zhŭ lŭ r' pōōs an lü-ē dē-zan′: „Vōō zêt zun nin-sò-lan′.„

*The remainder of this reading exercise presenting no special difficulty, its pronunciation will be omitted.*

---

[1] Two vowels joined together (**dē-ò**) are pronounced as a diphthong.

[2] Accents denote only a *slight* emphasis, and are mainly intended to guard the pupil against accentuating any *other* syllable.

[3] All consonants in the pronunciation are to be sounded.

## CORRESPONDANCE.

### DE L'ADRESSE DES LETTRES.*

1. Monsieur Adolphe Belot, négociant,[1]
Rue Saint-Martin, 45,
à[2] Paris.

---

2. Madame W. S. Baldwin,
217, Rue Richelieu,
à Paris.

---

3. Mademoiselle Lucie Martineau,
Cinquantième rue, ouest, 58,
à New York,
États-Unis.

---

4. Monsieur Martin, Pharmacien,
Villemanoche,
Par[3] Pont-sur-Yonne,[4]
(Yonne).[5]

---

[1] Merchant.
[2] The à may be omitted.
[3] By; *i. e.* by way of.
[4] The nearest post-office.
[5] The department.
* The direction of letters.

# PART II.

## HOTEL AND BOARDING-HOUSE.

## HÔTEL ET PENSION.

### SECTION IV.

1. IN THE RESTAURANT.
2. A MATTER OF MONEY.
3. THE BILL OF FARE.
4. AT THE TABLE.
5. TO START FROM THE HOTEL.
6. AT THE THEATER.
7. A LETTER TO THE GRAND HOTEL.

## IV.

### FRENCH.

**1. Nous avons trois chambres qui donnent sur les Tuileries.**

Tiens![1] Monsieur Bocage!

Mais oui. Je lui avais donné rendez-vous ici, à onze heures.

Bonjour, Messieurs. Comment allez[2]-vous, ce matin?

Très bien. Et vous?

Moi, je me porte a merveille.

Vous en avez l'air.

Eh bien! Où irons[3]-nous déjeuner?

Chez Tissot, n'est-ce pas?

Au Palais-Royal?

Oui. Est-ce que ça vous convient?[4]

Je n'y[5] ai jamais été. Est-ce qu'on y mange[6] bien?

---

NOTES.

[1] Lit.: Hold! *Anglice*, Why! *Why*, as an exclamation, but not so energetic as **tiens**, is also often rendered by **mais.**

[2] Second person singular of the indicative present of **aller,** an irregular verb. **Je vais, tu vas, il va, nous allons, vous allez, ils vont;** *I go, thou dost go, he goes*, etc.

[3] **Irons-nous,** future of **aller,** *to go*. **J'irai,** I *shall*, or will go, etc.

[4] **Convient,** indicative present of **convenir,** to suit.

[5] **En** and **y,** like the pronoun-objects, come before the verb, except in the imperative affirmative.

[6] **Mange,** indicative present of **manger,** to eat.

# IV.

| PRONUNCIATION. | TRANSLATION. |
|---|---|
| **1. Nōō zȧ-von tró-ȧ shan'-br' kē dón sür—.** | **We have three rooms facing on the Tuileries.** |
| Tē-in'! Mŭs-yû Bó-kȧzh'! | There is Mr. Bocage! † |
| Mĕh wē. | Why, yes. I had an appointment to meet here at eleven.[1] |
| Bón-zhōōr, mēs-yû'. Kó-man-tȧ-lā vōō s'mȧ-tin'? | Good morning, gentlemen. How do you do,[2] this morning? |
| | Very well. And yourself? |
| Zhŭm pór-tȧ mĕr-vĕh'-yŭ. | I am *very* well, indeed.[3] |
| | You look like it.[4] |
| ŌŌ ē-ron-nōō'? | Well! Where shall we go [and] breakfast? |
| Shā Tē-sō' nēs pä'? | At Tissot's, shall we[5] not? |
| | In the Palais-Royal? |
| Ĕs kŭ sȧ vōō kon-vē-in'? | Yes. Will that suit you?[6] |
| Zhŭ nē ā zhȧ-mĕh zā-tā'. Ĕs-kon nē manzh bē-in'? | I have never gone[7] there. Is it a good place?[8] |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

† Why! Mr. Bocage!
[1] I to-him had given rendez-vous.
[2] How go you?
[3] I *carry myself* to a marvel.
[4] You of-it have the appearance.
[5] Is this not?
[6] Does that suit you (*Is* it that this —).
[7] I there have never been.
[8] Is it that one there eats well. Also: **Est-ce un bon endroit (ĕs-un bó-nan-dró-ȧ')? Est-ce un bon restaurant?**

Quelle question! Est-ce que j'irais[1] là, autrement?

**Note.** — **Study the "Interrogative adjectives,"**

**2. Garçon, la carte du jour, s'il vous plaît!**

Apportez-nous trois biftecks aux champignons.

Comment ces messieurs les voudraient-ils?

Saignants.

Qu'est-ce que ces messieurs voudraient en fait de légumes?

Qu'en[2] dites-vous, mon cher?

Eh bien! prenons des pommes de terre frites et des choux-fleurs.

Et en[3] fait de vin?

Trois bouteilles de vieux Mâcon.

**Note.** — **Study the "5 necessary Tenses" of Finir,**

**3. Tout en mangeant, mon cher, je voudrais vous parler d'une petite affaire.**

NOTES.

[1] **J'irais,** conditional of *aller*, to go.

[2] **En** and **y,** like the pronoun-objects, come *before the verb*, unless the verb is in the imperative affirmative. **En** = *of it*, *of them*, *from it*, *from them*, *about it*, *about them*, etc.

[3] **En** may also be a *preposition*, as here, meaning *in*, *while*, *by*.

| | |
|---|---|
| Kĕl kĕs-tē-on′. Ĕs kŭ zhē-rĕh ..... | What [a] question![1] Would I go there otherwise?[2] |

page 463.

| | |
|---|---|
| **2. Går-son′, lå kårt dü zhōōr′, sēl vōō plĕh′!** | **Waiter, the bill of fare, if you please!** |
| Bēf-tĕk ō shan-pē-ñon′. | Bring us three beefsteaks with[3] mushrooms. |
| | How would the gentlemen like [to have] them? |
| Sĕh-ñan′. | Rare. |
| Vōō-drĕh tan fĕd lā-güm′? | What vegetables would you like?[4] |
| Kan dēt vōō? | What do you say,[5] my dear fellow? |
| Pòm dŭ tair frēt′ ā dĕh shōō-flŭr′. | Well! Let us take[6] some fried potatoes and cauliflowers. |
| Ā an fĕd vin′? | And what kind[7] of wine? |
| Vē-û Mä-kon′. | Three bottles of old Mâcon. |

in both interrogative forms, page 492.

| | |
|---|---|
| **3. Tōō tan man-zhan′ mon shĕr′, zhŭ vōō-drĕh vōō pår-lā′ dün pŭ-tēt å-fair′.** | **While we are eating,[8] my dear fellow, I would like to speak to you about a matter of business.[9]** |

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] What question! — [2] Is it that I would go. — [3] At the.

[4] What is it that these gentlemen would like in the way of vegetables? — [5] What about-it say you? — [6] Let us take.

[7] And in the-way of wine. — [8] All while eating.

[9] Of a little affair.

Qu'est-ce que c'est[1]?
Je suis porteur d'une traite.
Sur qui est-elle tirée?
Elle est tirée sur la Banque Centrale.
Qu'est-ce que vous me dites là![1]
La banque a fait faillite, ce matin.
Faites protester votre lettre de change, sans tarder.

Vous avez raison,[2] mais je n'ai pas le temps.
Je voudrais partir pour Vérone, ce soir même.

Me voilà dans un bel[3] embarras!

---

**4. Et je ne sais pas comment me tirer d'affaire.**

Je vais vous aider à vous tirer d'affaire.
Comment cela?
Je puis vous prêter cinq cents francs.

Comment! vous voudriez faire cela?
Voyez plutôt. Voici trois cents francs en billets de banque, cent francs en napoléons,[4] et une

---

NOTES.

[1] Or, simply, **Qu'est-ce?** Or, **Que me dites-vous là?**

[2] Lit.: You *have* right. *Nine* substantives are thus idiomatically conjugated with **avoir** (*to have*). They are: **Faim, soif, chaud, froid, raison, tort, peur, honte,** and **sommeil.** The French therefore say: I *have* hunger, I *have* thirst, I *have* warmth, I *have* cold, I *have* right, I *have* wrong, I *have* fear, I *have* sleep (*i. e.* sleepiness), instead of I *am* hungry, I *am* thirsty, etc.

[3] **Beau** (*beautiful, fine*) has another form, **bel,** used before masculine nouns in the singular and beginning with a vowel (*or* silent **h**) instead of a consonant.

[4] Twenty franc pieces. Also called, occasionally, **louis.**

| | |
|---|---|
| Kĕs kŭ sĕh'. | What is[1] it? |
| Zhŭ sü-ē' por-tŭr'. | I have a letter of credit.[2] |
| Ĕh tĕl tē-rā'? | On whom is it?[3] |
| Bank San-trȧl'. | On the *Banque Centrale*. |
| Kĕs kŭ vōōm dĕt lȧ'? | What is that![4] |
| Fȧ-yĕt', sŭ mȧ-tin'. | The bank failed[5] this morning. |
| Fĕt prȯ-tĕs-tā' vȯt' lĕh'-tr' dü shanzh', san tȧr-dā'. | Have your letter of credit protested without delay.[6] |
| | You are right; but I have, etc. |
| Vā-rȯ'-n' .... mê'-m'. | I want[7] to start for Verona, this very evening. |
| Dan zun bĕl an-bȧ-rä'. | I am in a pretty[8] fix! |

| | |
|---|---|
| **4. Ā zhŭn sĕh pä kȯ-man' m'tē-rā dȧ-fair'.** | **And I do not know how to get out of it.**[9] |
| | I 'll help you out.[10] |
| | How? |
| Vōō prê-tā'. | I can lend you five hundred francs. |
| | What! you would do that? |
| Vȯ-ȧ-yā' plü-tō'. .... San fran an nȧ-pȯ-lā-on[1] .... | Why not? See,[11] here are three hundred francs in bills, one hundred in *Napoleons*, |

## LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 *What is it that it is?*
2 I am bearer of a —.
3 Is it drawn.
4 What is this that you tell me there?
5 Has *made failure*.
6 Without delaying (*absol.:* to-delay).
7 I would like (*could be:* **Je veux**).
8 Me there-is in a fine embarrassment.
9 To pull myself out of business (*i. e.* trouble).
10 I am-going to help you to draw yourself out of *business* (*i. e.* trouble). — 11 See rather. Here is.

traite pour cent de plus sur le meilleur[1] banquier de Paris.

Vous me tirez une fameuse‿épine du pied.

Je ne sais comment vous remercier.

Il n'y a pas de quoi.
À ma place vous feriez[2] de même.

---

**Note. — Study the "Feminine of Adjectives," page 464,**

---

**5. Mais vous ne buvez[3] pas.**

Ce Mâcon a dix‿ans de bouteille.

Vous savez qu'ils‿ont une des meilleure**s** caves de Paris, ici.

Merci, vous m'en donnez trop.

Ce vin-là ne vous fera[4] pas de mal.
Merci. Je ne boirai pas davantage.[5]

Vous ne mangez pas non plus.[6]

---

NOTES.

1 **Bon,** *good;* **meilleur,** *better;* **le meilleur,** the best.

2 Conditional of **faire.**

3 Indicative present (second person plural) of **boire,** to drink.

4 Future of **Faire.** Indicative present: **Je fais, tu fais, il fait, nous faisons (fŭ-zon), vous faites, ils font;** *I make, thou makest, he makes*, etc.

5 Often used to mean *more than that*, giving a more complete meaning than **plus.**

6 The French cannot say *not either*, but only *neither* (**non plus**).

| | |
|---|---|
| sa*n*d plüs' sür lŭ mĕh-yŭr' ba*n*-kē-ād Pȧ-rē'. | and a draft for another hundred[1] on the best banker in Paris. |
| Vo͞om tē-rā' ün fȧ-mûz' ā-pēn dü pē-ā'. | You get me out of a[2] bad scrape. |
| Zhŭn sĕh kȯ-ma*n* vo͞or-mĕr-sē-ā'. | I do not know how to thank you. |
| Ēl nĕ yȧ päd kȯ-ȧ'. | Don't mention it.[3] |
| | In my place you would do the same thing.[4] |

**parags. 1 to 6 inclusively.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **5. Mĕh vo͞on bü-vā pä'.** | **But you do not drink[5] anything.** |
| Ȧ dē za*n*d bo͞o-tĕh'-yŭ. | This Macon has been bottled ten years.[6] |
| Kēl zo*n*-tün dĕh mĕh-yŭr kȧv dŭ Pȧ-rē', ē-sē'. | You know they have one of the finest cellars in Paris here. |
| Mĕr-sē'. Vo͞o ma*n* dȯ-nā trō'. | Thank you. You are giving me too much.[7] |
| Frȧ päd mȧl. | This wine will not hurt you.[8] |
| Zhŭn bȯ-ȧ-rā pä dȧ-va*n*-tȧzh'. | Thank you. I will not drink any more. |
| No*n* plü'. | But you don't eat anything, either.[9] |

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 A hundred (*of*) more.
2 Pull for-me a famous thorn from the foot.
3 There is not of what (*i. e.* wherewith) to thank me.
4 *Of same.*
5 You drink not.
6 Has ten years of bottle.
7 You to-me of-it give too much.
8 Will do you no harm.
9 You eat not either; *lit.:* neither; *absol.:* no more.

Je vous avouerai que cette affaire de la traite m'ôte l'appetit.

Allons donc! Mais vous n'y perdrez rien.

Je le sais. Seulement, où trouver des fonds?

Écrivez sur le champ à vos banquiers à New-York.

Ils vous enverront[1] tout de suite une traite sur quelque[2] autre maison.

Garçon, l'addition, s'il vous plaît.

La voici, Messieurs. Veuillez avoir l'obligeance de payer au comptoir.

Très bien. Voici pour vous, garçon.

---

**Note.** — Study "the Feminine of Adjectives," page 464,

---

NOTES.

[1] Future of **envoyer,** *to send.*

[2] **Du, de la, des,** mean *some* in the sense of *quantity*, **quelque** in the sense of *particularity:* some *one* other house.

| | |
|---|---|
| Å-vōō-rā .... mōt lȧ-pā-tē′. | I admit that this letter of credit business takes my appetite away.[1] |
| Å-lo*n*-do*n*′. | The idea! Why, you do not lose[2] anything by it. |
| Fo*n*. | I know. But where shall I find funds,[3] now? |
| Ba*n*-kē-ā′ zȧ Nŭ-York′. | Write at once to your bankers in New-York. |
| Ēl vōō za*n*-vĕh-ro*n* .... sür kĕl-kō′-tr′ mēh-zo*n*′. | They'll send you a draft on some other house, at once. |
| Lȧ-dē-sē-o*n*′. | Waiter, the bill, if you please. |
| Pā-yā ō ko*n*-tȯ-ȧr′. | Here it is, gentlemen. Please pay at the counter. |
| | All right. Here is something for you, waiter. |

---

**parags. 7 to 11.**

---

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

1 I will admit to you that this-from-me takes-away the appetite.
2 *Go* (*we*) then! You by-it will-lose nothing.
3 Where to-find funds?

---

## VOCABULAIRE.

### I.—LE DINER.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Potages** (m. pl.) **(pò-tàzh'),** | **Soups.** |
| Un bouillon (bōō-yon'), | A broth. |
| De la soupe (sōōp'), | Soup. |
| Un potage au vermicelle (vĕr-mē-sĕl'), | Vermicelli soup. |
| " " à la julienne (zhü-lē-ĕn'), | Vegetable soup. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Hors d'œuvres (or dŭ'-vr'),** | **Side dishes.** |
| Une douzaine d'huîtres (dü-ē'-tr'), | A dozen oysters. |
| Une tranche de melon (transh dŭ m'lon'), | A slice of melon. |
| Des artichauts (dĕh zàr-tē-shō'), | Artichokes. |
| Des radis (rà-dē'), | Radishes. |
| Un pâté de fois gras (pä-tād-fò-à-grä'), | Goose liver pie. |
| Des saucisses (sō-sēs'), | Sausages. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Poissons (pò-à-son'),** | **Fish.** |
| Une truite (trü-ēt'), | A trout. |
| Un turbot (tür-bō'), | A turbot. |
| Du saumon (sō-mon'), | Salmon. |
| Une sole frite (sòl frēt'), | A fried sole. |
| Un maquereau (mà-krō'), | A mackerel. |
| Une anguille (ü-nan-gē'-yŭ), | An eel. |
| Un hareng (à-ran'), | A herring. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Œufs (û),** | **Eggs.** |
| Des œufs frits (dĕh zû frē'), | Fried eggs. |
| " " à la coque [1] (là kòk'), | Soft-boiled eggs. |
| " " durs (dür'), | Hard " " |
| " " brouillés (brōō-yā'), | Scrambled " |
| " " pochés (pò-shā'), | Poached " |

[1] Lit.: At (*i. e.* in) the shell.

## VOCABULAIRE.

### II.—LE DINER.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Volaille (vò-lä-yŭ),** | **Poultry.** |
| Un chapon (shȧ-pon′), | A capon. |
| Un pigeon (aux pois),[1] | A pigeon (with peas). |
| Un poulet[1] en salade, | A chicken salad. |
| " " en mayonnaise,[1] | " " mayonnaise. |
| Une perdrix (aux choux),[2] | A partridge (with cabbages). |
| Une caille à la financière,[3] | A quail à la financière. |
| Un canard sauvage,[4] | A wild duck. |
| Une oie (ŭ nȯ-ȧ'), | A goose. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **Gibier (zhē-bē-ā'),** | **Game.** |
| Un lapin (lȧ-pin′), | A rabbit. |
| Un lièvre (lē-ĕh′-vr'), | A hare. |
| Un civet (sē-vĕh′), | A jugged hare. |
| Un filet de chevreuil,[5] | A steak of venison. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **Bœuf, mouton, etc. (bŭf, mōō-ton′),** | **Beef, mutton, etc.** |
| Du bœuf à la mode (mȯd'), | Beef à la mode. |
| " " " " sauce tomate,[6] | Beef with tomato sauce. |
| Un filet au vin de madère,[7] | Fillet with Madeira. |
| Un rosbif[8] aux pommes (de terre), | Roast beef and potatoes. |
| Une côtelette à la maître d'hôtel, | Chop maître d'hôtel. |
| Deux rognons à la brochette,[9] | Two broiled kidneys. |
| Un fricandeau (au jus), | Fricandeau (with gravy). |
| Une tête de veau, | Calf's head. |

---

1 **Pē-zhon ō pȯ-ä′.—Pōō-lĕh.—Mȧ-yȯ-nĕz'.**
2 **Pĕr-drē ō shōō′.—** 3 **Kä′-yŭ.—Kä-yȧ lȧ fē-nan-sē-air'.**
4 **Kȧ-nȧr sō-vȧzh'.—** 5 **Fē-lĕd-shŭ-vrŭ′-yŭ.—** 6 **Sōs tȯ-mȧt'.**
7 **Mȧ-dair',—** 8 **Rȯs-bēf',—** 9 **Rȯ-ñon zȧ lȧ brȯ-shĕt',**

## VOCABULAIRE.

### III.—LE DINER.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Entremets (a*n*-trŭ-mĕh′),** | **Relishes.** |
| Une omelette soufflée (ü-nòm-lĕt sōō-flā′), | Puffed omelet. |
| " " au rhum (ō rŭm′), | Omelet with rum. |
| Une crême à la vanille (và-nē′-yŭ), | Vanilla cream. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **Légumes (lā-güm′),** | **Vegetables.** |
| Des petits pois (p'tē pò-ä′), | Green peas. |
| Des pommes de terre frites, | Fried potatoes. |
| Des asperges (dĕh zàs-pĕr′-zh′), | Asparagus. |
| Des carottes (kà-ròt′), | Carrots. |
| Des navets (nà-vĕh′), | Turnips. |
| Des betteraves (bĕt-ràv′), | Beets. |
| Des choux-fleurs (shōō-flŭr′), | Cauliflowers. |
| Des salsifis (sàl-sē-fē′), | Oyster plant. |
| Des haricots blancs (dĕh à-rē-kō bla*n*′), | White beans. |
| " " verts ( " " " vĕr′), | French beans. |
| Des épinards (dĕh zā-pē-nàr′), | Spinach. |
| Des concombres (ko*n*-ko*n*′-br′), | Cucumbers. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **Salades (sà-làd′),** | **Salads.** |
| Une laitue (lĕh-tü′), | Lettuce. |
| Une salade de chicorée (shē-kor-ā′), | Chickory salad. |
| Un homard en salade,[1] | Lobster salad. |

---

[1] U*n* ò-màr a*n* sà-làd′.

## VOCABULAIRE.

### IV.—LE DINER.

| Pâtisseries et desserts,[1] | Pastries and desserts. |
|---|---|
| Des petits pâtés (p'tē pä-tā'), | Patties. |
| Un vol-au-vent (vòl ō van'), | A vol-au vent. |
| Une tarte aux cerises (tàr-tō-srēz'), | Cherry tart. |
| Un gâteau aux pommes (gä-tō ō pòm'), | Apple pie. |
| " " à la crème (à là krêm'), | Cream tart. |
| Un fromage à la crème (frò-màzh'), | Cream cheese. |
| Du fromage de gruyère, etc.[2] | Gruyère. |
| Des pruneaux (prü-nō'), | Stewed prunes. |
| Des confitures (kon-fē-tür'), | Preserves. |
| De la compote de pêches,[3] | Stewed peaches. |
| De la marmelade d'abricots,[4] | Marmalade of apricots. |
| Des beignets aux pommes (bĕh-ñĕh'), | Apple fritters. |
| Un ananas (un nà-nà-nä'), | A pine apple. |
| Des pommes, | Apples. |
| Des prunes (prün'), | Prunes. |
| Des poires (pò-àr'), | Pears. |
| Des groseilles (grō-zĕh'-yŭ), | Currants. |
| Des fraises (frĕz'), | Strawberries. |
| Des framboises (fran-bò-àz'), | Raspberries. |
| Une grappe de raisin (rĕh-zin'), | A bunch of grapes. |
| Des noix (nò-ä'), | Nuts. |
| Des noisettes (nò-ä-zĕt'), | Hazel nuts. |

---

[1] **Pä-tēs-rē zā dĕh-sĕr'.** — [2] **Grü-ē-yair'.**
[3] **Kon-pòt dŭ pêsh'.** — [4] **Màr-mŭ-làd-dà-brē-kō',**

*To be learned by heart and repeated aloud as a real conversation, whether for self-study or preparation for the class-room.* (*See* **Directions** *before* **Part I.**)

## CONVERSATIONS.

### 1.—*LE DÎNER.*

Eh bien! que prendrons-nous en fait[1] de potage? Prenons un potage au vermicelle, si vous voulez?—Je veux bien. Et des huîtres, n'est-ce pas?—Pas pour moi. Je prendrai plutôt des sardines.—Maintenant, le poisson.—Eh bien! prenons une truite.—C'est cela. Garçon! Apportez-nous deux potages au vermicelle, une douzaine d'huîtres, des sardines et une truite. Nous commanderons le reste après.

### 2.—*CHEZ LE MARCHAND DE MEUBLES.**

Je voudrais acheter de quoi meubler[2] un appartement.—Monsieur veut-il des meubles[3] en acajou?[4]—Je voudrais des meubles de bon goût,[5] mais pas trop

---

**Pronunciation and Translation.**

1 **En fait de**, in the way of. Lit.: in *fact* of.

1 **Kô-man-dron'**, we will order.

2 Lit.: of what to furnish; *anglice*, furniture for.

3 Furniture. Lit.: *movables.*

4 **An-nâ-kâ-zhōō**, *in* mahogany. **Meubles en acajou**, mahogany furniture.

5 **Bon gōō'**, good taste.

* **Shāl-mâr-shan d'mŭ'-bl'**, at the furniture *store.* Lit.: at the furniture *seller.*

chers. — Eh bien! J'ai un meuble de salon[1] en acajou qui fera votre affaire. — De quoi se compose-t-il?[2] Il y a six fauteuils,[3] douze chaises, un canapé,[4] et un guéridon.[5] — Voici une étagère,[6] qui irait très bien avec.[7] — Combien demandez-vous du tout?[8] — Ce serait sept cents francs, monsieur. — Ah! c'est trop cher. Vous devez me faire cela moins cher. — Eh bien, disons six cent cinquante francs.

### 3. — *DE L'HEURE.*

À quelle heure madame voudrait-elle sortir?—Je voudrais sortir à onze heures et quart. Quelle heure est-il à présent? — La pendule s'est arrêtée,[9] madame. — Eh bien, regardez à[10] votre montre. — Je n'ai pas ma montre sur[11] moi. — Alors, allez regarder à la pendule de la bibliothèque.

---

**Note. — Study the "5 necessary tenses" of Être, negatively-interrogatively.**

---

**Pronunciation and Translation.**

1 A parlor set.

2 What does it consist of? Lit.: *Of what does it compose* itself; *i. e.* of what is it composed? The French often use the reflexive form instead of the passive.

3 **Fō-tŭ'-yŭ,** arm-chairs. — 4 **Kȧ-nȧ-pā',** sofa.

5 **Gā-rē-don',** center-table. — 6 **Ā-tȧ-zhair',** what-not.

7 Which would-go very well with (*it*). **Irait**, conditional of **aller**.

8 Do you ask of-the whole?

9 **Sĕh tȧ-rĕh-tā',** has stopped. Lit.: *itself has stopped.*

10 **Regardez à** = look at. **Regarder** = *look* or *look at*, in the ordinary and simple sense. **Regarder à** = look at, in the sense of *consulting* the object (book, watch, etc.)

11 **Sur moi**, with me. Lit.: *on* me.

*To be translated and written into French, but also to be treated conversationally in the class-room. (For self-study, see* ***Directions*** *before* ***Part I.****)*

## EXERCISES.

### 1.—*IN THE HOTEL.*

John, have you taken[1] those towels (up) to Mr. and Mrs. Hayne's room[2]?—Yes, sir; I took them (up) to them[3] a moment ago.[4]

John, you did n't brush my overcoat.—Yes, sir; I brushed it.—You didn't bring it (up)[5]—Why, yes,[6] sir; I brought it to you.[7]—I don't see it anywhere.[8] —I hung it in your wardrobe.[9]—Ah, here it is.[10]

### 2.—*TO[11] START FROM THE HOTEL.*

Please make up my account; I want to leave to-morrow morning.—Very well, sir. At what time do

---

**Aids to Translation.**

1 **Porté,** or **monté.**
2 To the room of.
3 I them to-them (les leur) have taken up (**portés,** or **montés**).
4 **Il y a un moment.** Lit.: there-is a moment.
5 You it have not brought up (**monté**).
6 **Mais oui.**
7 I to-you it (**vous l'**) have—.
8 I it see nowhere (**nulle part,** with **ne** before *it*).
9 I it have hung (**pendu**) . . . . . **Armoire.**
10 **Le**—.
11 *To,* in the sense of *in order to* = **Pour.**

you intend to leave?—Please order[1] the carriage for six o'clock precisely. I want to take the half past six train for Brussels.[2]—Very well, sir.—Wake me (up) at five o'clock, and have my baggage brought down.[3] I would not miss[4] the train for anything.[5]

### 3.—*AT THE TABLE.**

What shall we take[6] in the way of dessert?—Well, let us take some prunes and[7] stewed apricots.—I think I will rather take[8] some apple-fritters.—Very well. Now, shall we take coffee[9] here, or at the coffee-house?[10]—Let us take it[11] at the coffee-house. It is much better[12] than here.—Very well, then. Waiter! Bring us some prunes, stewed apricots, and apple-fritters.—Very well, gentlemen.

---

**Aids to Translation.**

1 Order = **faire venir.** Lit.: make come.
2 The train of half past six for Brussels (**Bruxelles**).
3 **Faites descendre —.** Lit.: make to bring-down.
4 **Manquer.**
5 **Pour tout au monde.** Lit.: for all in the world.
6 **Prendrons-nous.**— 7 *Some* or *any* is never omitted.
8 I think *that* I will-take (**prendrai**) rather.— 9 **Le café.**
10 **Au café.**— 11 **Le** (**café** being masc.).
12 **Bien meilleur** (mĕh-yŭr').

---

*To be read by means of the literal translation opposite, then without it, in preparation for reading aloud and translating in class.*

## LECTURE.

### AU SPECTACLE.

— Que donne-t-on[1] ce soir aux Français?

— Une comédie nouvelle de Victorien Sardou, l'auteur de La Famille Benoîton, de Rabagas, etc.

— Quel titre porte-t-elle?

— DANIEL ROCHAT.

— Est-ce bien charpenté?

— Pas trop. Mais il y a, dit-on, beaucoup d'esprit, de la malice.

— Les rôles[2] sont-ils bien distribués?

— On dit que oui.

— La pièce est sans doute montée avec soin. N'êtes-vous pas curieux de voir cette première représentation?

—Ma foi, oui. Ne voulez-vous pas y aller avec moi?

— Avec beaucoup de plaisir. Quelles places prendrons-nous?

— Prenons deux places d'orchestre.

— Nous voici justement arrivés au théâtre.

— Avez-vous deux bonnes places d'orchestre?

— Oui, Monsieur, j'en ai deux au sixième rang.

— Très bien, je les prends. Combien est-ce?

---

1 *Anglice*, What do they play? — 2 **Le rôle**, the part.

*For self-study, should be read by means of the literal translation, then without it, and when thoroughly understood, read aloud in French.*

## READING.

### AT THE THEATRE.

— What plays one[1] at the Théâtre-Français, this evening?

— A new comedy of Victorien Sardou, (*the*) author of the *Benoîton Family*, (*of*) *Rabagas*, etc.

— What title bears it?

— Daniel Rochat.

— Is it well *carpentered?*

— Not too (well). But there is, say-*they*,[3] much *of* wit, some keen humor.

— The parts are they well distributed?

— They say so.

— The piece is without doubt mounted with care. Are you not curious to see this first representation?

— (Upon) my faith, yes. Will you not there go with me?

— With much (*of*) pleasure. What seats shall we take?

— Let us take two orchestra seats.

— Here we are (*just arrived*) at the theatre.

— Have you two good orchestra seats?

— Yes, sir. I of-them[4] (*en*) have *at*-the sixth row.

— Very well. I them take. How much is it?

---

3 *Anglice*, But they say there is. — 4 *Anglice*, some.

—C'est huit francs.

—Eh bien! Mon cher; nous arrivons à point nommé. On va jouer l'ouverture.

—Mais non; le rideau est déjà levé. Prêtez-moi un instant vos jumelles.[1] Je crois reconnaître[2] quelqu'un dans cette loge.

—Les voici.

—Je ne me trompais pas.

—Qui est-ce?

—C'est Jean Mistral, le fameux millionnaire.

—Ah! bah! Voici la première fois que je le vois.

—Tiens! voilà qu'on baisse la toile. Est-ce que le premier acte serait déjà fini?

—Il paraît. Nous sommes arrivés aux dernières scènes.

—Et que donne-t-on demain?

—Demain, il n'y aura pas de spectacle.

—Eh bien! Allons un instant au foyer pendant l'entracte.

---

### *PRONUNCIATION.*

Kŭ dòn-to*n* sŭ sò-ȧr' ō Fra*n*-sĕh'?

Ŭn kò-mād-ē nōō-vĕl' dŭ Vēk-tor-ē-i*n*' Sȧr-dōō', lō-tŭr dŭ lȧ Fȧ-mē'-yŭ Bŭ-nò-ȧ-to*n*', dŭ Rȧ-bȧ-gäs, ĕt sā-tā-rȧ'.

Kĕl tē'-tr' por-tŭ-tĕl'?

Dȧ-nē-ĕl Rò-shȧ'.

Ĕs bē-i*n* shȧr-pa*n*-tā'?

Pä trō'. Mĕh zēl ē yȧ', dē-to*n*', bō-kōō dĕs-prē, dŭ lȧ-mȧ-lēs. Lĕh rōl so*n* tēl bē-i*n*' dēs-trē-bü-ā'.

O*n* dē k' vvē'.

---

[1] Double opera-glass. Lit.: your *twins*.

[2] Lit.: I think *to-recognize; anglice*, I think I recognize. When two verbs depend directly on the same subject, the second is often placed in the infinitive.

—It is eight francs.

—Well! my dear (fellow); we arrive just in time. They are going to-play the overture.

—Why no; the curtain is already raised. Lend me an instant your opera-glass*es*. I think *to*-recognize some one in that box.

—Here they are.

—I myself deceived not.

—Who is it?

—It is John Mistral, the famous millionaire.

—Why! Here-is the first time (*that*) I see him.

—Why! (*there-is that*) they lower the curtain. Is it that the first act could-be already finished?

—It seems (so). We *are* arrived during the last scenes.

—And what do they give to-morrow?

—To-morrow, there will be no play.

—Well! Let us go a moment to-the foyer, during the intermission.

---

**Lȧ pē-ēs ĕh sa*n* dōōt mo*n*-tā ȧ-vĕk sȯ-i*n*′. Nêt vōō pä kü-rē-û dŭ vȯ-ȧr sĕt prŭ-mē-air rŭ-prā-za*n*-tä-sē-o*n*′?**

**Mȧ fȯ-ȧ wē′. Nŭ vōō-lā-vōō pä zē ȧ-lā ȧ-vĕk mȯ-ȧ?**

**Ȧ-vĕk bō-kōōd plā-zēr′. Kĕl plȧs pra*n*-dro*n*-nōō′?**

**Prŭ-no*n* dû plȧs dor-kĕs′-tr′.**

**Nōō vȯ-ȧ-sē zhüs-tŭ-ma*n* ȧ-rē-vā zō tā-ä′-tr′.**

**Ȧ-vā-vōō dû bȯn plȧs dor-kĕs′-tr′?**

**Wē, mŭs-yû; zha*n* nā dû′ ō sē-zē-ĕm ra*n*′.**

**Lōō-vĕr-tür′.—Rē-dō′.—Zhü-mĕl′.—Lȯzh′.—Zha*n*-mēs-trȧl′.—Ä bä!—Tȯ-ȧl′.—Prü-mē-ā-rȧk′-t′.—Dĕr-nē-air sĕn′.—Fȯ-ȧ-yā′.—Spĕk-tȧ′-kl′.**

---

[1] *Anglice*, I think I recognize.

*Learn the following letter by heart, and write it from memory,*

## CORRESPONDANCE.

CINCINNATI, le 5 juin, 1887.

A Monsieur B, directeur du Grand Hôtel, à Paris,

MONSIEUR,

Je partirai d'ici le 15 courant, avec Madame X, mes deux enfants et leur bonne, comptant arriver à Paris vers[1] le 25 du mois. Je vous écris pour vous prier de nous retenir, pour la date nommée, trois chambres au deuxième ou au troisième étage et, si cela se peut, donnant sur les boulevards.

Je vous télégraphierai de Londres le jour et l'heure de notre arrivée à Paris.

Veuillez envoyer une voiture à notre rencontre[2] à la gare Saint-Lazare.

Agréez, Monsieur, mes salutations les plus respectueuses,

Edward B. X—.

---

**Pronunciation.**—Mŭs-yû', zhŭ pȧr-tē-rā dē-sē' lŭ ki*n*z kōō-ra*n*', ȧ-vĕk mȧ-dȧm ēks, mĕh dû za*n*-fa*n* ā lŭr bȯn', ko*n*-ta*n*-tȧ-rē-vā ȧ Pȧ-rē' vĕr lŭ vi*n*t-si*n*k dŭ mȯ-ä'. Zhŭ vōō zā-krē' pōōr vōō prē-yā dŭ nōōr-tŭ-nĕr' pōōr lȧ dȧt nȯ-mā', trȯ-ä sha*n*-brŭ zō-dû-zē-ĕm' ōō ō trȯ-ä-zē-ĕm ā-tȧzh' ā sē slȧ spû dȯ-na*n* sŭr lĕh bōōl-vȧr'.

---

[1] Lit.: toward.

[2] **A notre rencontre,** idiomatic. Lit.: *to our meeting.*

*an hour or two afterward.*

## CORRESPONDENCE.

CINCINNATI, June 5th, 1887.

To Mr. B, Director of the Grand Hotel, Paris,

SIR,

I leave here on the 5th inst., with Mrs. X, my two children, and their maid, expecting to arrive in Paris about the 25th. I write to[1] ask you to reserve for us, for the date mentioned, three rooms in the second or third story and facing the Boulevards, if possible.

I shall telegraph you from London the day and hour of our arrival in Paris.

Please send a carriage to meet us at the Saint-Lazare Depot.

I remain,

Very respectfully yours,

Edward B. X—.

---

Zhŭ vōō tā-lā-grȧ-fē-rā dŭ Lo*n*'-dr' lŭ zhōōr ā lŭr dŭ nȯ-trȧ-rē-vā' ȧ Pȧ-rē'.

Vŭ-yā za*n*-vȯ-ȧ-yā' ün vȯ-ȧ-tür ȧ nȯ-trŭ ra*n*-ko*n*-trȧ-lȧ gär Si*n*-Lȧ-zȧr'.

Ȧ-grā-ā', mŭs-yû', mĕh sȧ-lü-tä-sē-o*n*' lĕh plü rĕs-pĕk-tü-ûz'.

---

[1] **Pour.** Lit.: in order to.

# PART III.

## THE WEATHER AND THE CITY

## LE TEMPS ET LA VILLE.

### SECTION I.

# III.

## LE TEMPS ET LA VILLE.

**Je voudrais bien sortir, aujourd'hui; mais si le temps ne s'éclaircit pas‿avant midi, il nous faudra rester à la maison.**

### PRONUNCIATION.

**Zhŭ vōō-drĕh bē‿in[1] sor-tēr′, ō-zhōōr-dü‿ē′[1] mĕh sēl ta*n* n'sā-klĕr-sē′ pä′ zȧ-va*n* mē-dē′, ēl nōō fō-drȧ′ rĕs-tā′ ȧ lȧ mĕh-zo*n*′.**

---

[1] Let it be remembered that the sign ‿, placed under two letters in the pronunciation, indicates that the two vowels thus joined are to be uttered rapidly together, as a diphthong.

## III.

### THE WEATHER AND THE CITY.

**I should like to go out to-day; but, if the weather does not clear up before twelve, we shall have to stay at home.**

#### LITERAL TRANSLATION.

**I would (like) very-much to-go-out to-day; but if the weather[2] itself clears not before mid-day, it to-us will-be-necessary[3] to-stay at the house.**

---

[2] **Temps** = *weather* or *time*.

[3] **Il faut** = it is-necessary; **il faudra** = it will-be-necessary; from **falloir,** to be necessary.

# I.

## FRENCH.

**1. Je voudrais bien sortir avec vous.**

Mais il fait[1] si mauvais temps.
Et les trottoirs sont si mouillés.

Vous pourriez mettre vos caoutchoucs.
Je n'ai pas encore acheté **de** caoutchoucs.

Et, hier soir, j'ai perdu mon parapluie en revenant du spectacle.

Je n'ose pas me hasarder à sortir comme ça.
Mais votre cousin pourrait vous prêter ses caoutchoucs.
Ah! oui, Alfred; vous m'obligerez beaucoup.

Mais j'ai peur qu'ils **ne** soient[2] trop petits.

N'avez-vous pas honte de parler de la sorte?

Vous vous moquez de moi.

---

### NOTES.

[1] **Il fait,** lit.: *it makes,* is used impersonally with expressions of the weather, or temperature, in the sense of *it is.* It must always precede the word **temps.** Never say, **Le temps fait mauvais;** but, **Il fait mauvais temps.**

[2] **Soient,** subjunctive present (3d person, plural) of **être.** — N. B. **Ne** is used with the subjunctive after a few *restrictive* verbs and locutions, such as **J'ai peur** (*I fear*), **à moins que** (*unless*), etc.

# I.

| PRONUNCIATION. | TRANSLATION. |
|---|---|
| **1. Zhŭ vōō-drĕh bē-in′ sor-tēr ȧ-vĕk vōō′.** | **I would very much like to go out with you.** |
| Sē mo-vĕh tan′. | But the weather is so bad.[1] |
| Lĕh trȯ-tȯ-ȧr son sē mōō-yā′. | The sidewalks are so wet. |
| | You could put on your rubbers. |
| Ȧsh-tād-kȧ-ōōt-shōō′. | I have n't bought any rubbers yet. |
| Pȧ-rȧ-plü-ē′. | And last night,[2] I lost my umbrella, on my way from the theatre.[3] |
| Zhŭ nōz-pä mŭ ȧ-zȧr-dā. | I am afraid to go out this way.[4] |
| | But your cousin could lend you his rubbers. |
| Ȧl-frĕd′. Vōō mȯ-blē-zh'rā. | Yes, Alfred. You 'll greatly oblige me. |
| Kēl nŭ sȯ-ȧ trȯ p-tē′. | But I am afraid they are too small.[5] |
| Nȧ-vā vōō pä on′-t'. | Are you not ashamed to speak that way?[6] |
| Vōō vōō mȯ-kȧd-mȯ-ȧ′. | You are making fun of me.[7] |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] It *makes* so bad weather.

[2] Yesterday evening. — If referring to the *night* and not to the *evening*, *last night* would be rendered by **la nuit passée.**

[3] *On* or *when* returning from the play. Can also say, **du théâtre.**

[4] I dare not hazard myself to-go-out like that.

[5] I fear *lest* they (**qu'ils ne**) be too small.

[6] *Of the sort.* — [7] You yourself mock of me.

## 2. Eh bien! Voulez-vous me les prêter?

Que voulez-vous dire, — mes caoutchoucs et mon[1] parapluie?

Mais, sans doute.

Bien entendu. Je vais **vous les** faire apporter tout de suite.

Jean, montez dans ma chambre.

Vous y trouverez mes **nouveaux** caoutchoucs sous le lit et mon parapluie dans l'armoire.

Descendez-les.

---

**Note. — Study "the Plural of Adjectives,"**

---

## 3. Vous ne lui avez pas donné votre clef.

Non, je ne **la lui** ai pas donné**e.**[2]

Il ne pourra pas ouvrir la porte.

N'a-t-il pas son passe-partout?

C'est juste.

A propos, avez-vous vu Monsieur Félix, ces jours-ci?

Moi, non. Je ne sais pas ce qu'il est devenu.

---

NOTES

[1] Possessive adjectives, like the article, are repeated before each successive noun.

[2] Past participles conjugated with **avoir** agree in gender and number with the **direct object,** when that object *precedes* the verb. Thus, in the sentence: **Vous ne lui avez-pas donné votre clef,** the direct object is **votre clef,** *fem. sing.*, but the past participle **donné** remains invariable because **clef** *follows* it. But in the next sentence, **donnée** is written with the feminine sign (**e**) because the direct object **la** *precedes* it.

| | |
|---|---|
| **2. Ā bē-*in*′! Vōō-lā vōō m'lĕh prĕh-tā′?** | **Well! Will you lend them to me?**[1] |
| | What do you mean, — my rubbers and[2] umbrella? |
| | Why, of course. |
| Bē-*in* na*n*-ta*n*-dü′. Zh' vĕh. | Certainly.[3] I 'll have them brought to you at once.[4] |
| | John, go up to my room. |
| Nōō-vō kȧ-ōōt-shōō′ sōōl lē′ . . . . . da*n* lȧr-mȯ-ȧr′. | You will find my rubbers under the bed, and my umbrella in the closet. |
| | Bring them down. |

---

**Page 465, parags. 1, 2, and 3.**

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **3. Vōōn lü-ē′ ȧ-vā′ pä dȯ-nā′ vȯtr' klā′.** | **You did n't give him your key.** |
| Zhŭn lȧ lü-ē′ ā pä. | No. I did n't give it to him.[5] |
| Pōō-rȧ′. | He will not be able to open the door. |
| Päs-pȧr-tōō′. | Has n't he his skeleton key?[6] |
| Sĕh zhüs′-t'. | That 's true. |
| Fā-lēks, sĕh zhōōr sē′? | By the way, have you seen Mr. Felix, lately?[7] |
| Zhŭn sĕh pä skēl ĕd-vŭ-nü′. | I? No. I don't know what has become of him.[8] |

---

**LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.**

1 Will you to-me them lend?
2 And my.
3 Quite understood (*or* agreed).
4 I go to-you them to-make to-bring (*i. e.* to have brought).
5 I it to-him have not given.
6 Lit.: *pass-everywhere.*
7 These days. Means, also, *in a very few days.*
8 *Me*, no. I don't know what he *is* (*i. e.*, *has*) become. **Devenir,** *to become*, is a compound of **venir,** *to come.*

Pourquoi n'allez-vous pas le voir?

C'est lui qui devrait venir me voir.
Je suis si occupé que je ne sais où donner de la tête.
Mais quand on va vous voir, vous n'êtes jamais chez vous.
Moi![1] Vous plaisantez. C'est à peine si je mets le pied dehors.

---

## 4. C'est moi = It is I. C'est nous = It is we.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| C'est toi | = It is thou. | C'est vous | = It is you. |
| C'est lui | = It is he. | *Ce sont* eux | = It is they (*m.*). |
| C'est elle | = It is she. | *Ce sont* elles | = It is they (*f.*). |

It is not I = **Ce n'est pas moi,** etc. It was I = **C'était moi.** It was they = **C'étaient eux** (or **elles**).

---

## 5. Voyons, quand irez-vous[2] le voir?

Je ne sais. Demeure-t-il toujours dans la même maison?

---

NOTES.

[1] **Moi!** Lit.: *Me!* Of the pronoun-objects, four are never used away from the verb. They are **me, te, le, la,** and **les.** The others (**moi, toi, lui, elle, eux, elles, nous,** and **vous**) may be used either in immediate connection with the verb, or with a preposition, or entirely alone. Ex.: *Speak to me,* **Parlez-moi;** *Come with me,* **Venez avec moi;** *Who wants to go there?* Answer, *I;* **Qui veut y aller?** Answer, **Moi.**

[2] Future of **Aller. J'irai, tu iras, il ira, nous irons, vous irez, ils iront;** *I shall* (or *will*) *go, thou shalt* (or *wilt*) *go, he shall* (or *will*) *go,* etc.

| | |
|---|---|
| Päl vò-àr'? | Why don't you go and see him? |
| V'nēr mŭ vò-àr'. | *He* ought to come and see *me.*[1] |
| Zhŭn sĕh zōō dò-nā dlà tê'-t'. | I am so busy I don't know what to do.[2] |
| Ka*n*-to*n*. | But you are never in when people call on you.[3] |
| Plĕh-za*n*-tā'. Sĕh tà pĕn' sēzh mĕl pē-ā' dŭ-or'. | I! You are joking. I scarcely ever go out.[4] |

---

## 4. C'est à moi = That's mine. C'est à nous = It's ours.

| | |
|---|---|
| C'est à toi = It's thine. | C'est à vous = That's yours. |
| C'est à lui = " his. | C'est à eux = " theirs. |
| C'est à elle = " hers. | C'est à elles = " " |

That's mine, *or* It's mine, is also rendered by **C'est le mien**; thine, **c'est le tien**; his, **c'est le sien,** etc.

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **5. Vò-à-yo*n*'. Ka*n* tē-rā vōōl vò-àr'?** | **Well, now. When will you go and see him?**[5] |
| Zhŭn sĕh'. Dŭ-mŭr-tēl. | I scarcely know?[6] Does he live in the same house?[7] |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] It is he who ought to-come to-see me.

[2] Scarcely know *where to give with my head;* i. e. *which way to* "*head,*" or "*turn.*"

[3] When one goes to-see you, you are never at home.

[4] *Me*, you jest. It is scarcely if I put my foot (lit.: *the* foot) outside.

[5] Let-us-see. When will-you-go see him?

[6] I know "not." With **savoir** and **pouvoir, pas** may sometimes be omitted. But then, the negation is weakened and has the value of *scarcely* rather than of *not.*

[7] Lives he *always* (*i. e.* still) in the.

Oui, mais je ne sais s'il[1] est chez lui, ce matin.

Eh bien, je passerai par là.
Mais, dites-moi.
A-t-on envoyé ces échantillons à votre dame?[2]

---

**6. Non. On ne les lui a pas encore envoyés.**[3]

Je ne comprends pas ce que[4] cela veut dire.
Je **le leur** avait pourtant bien recommandé.

Ah! voilà Jean qui vous apporte les choses que vous voulez.
Mais non. Il ne les a pas.

---

**7. Jean, pourquoi ne nous les avez-vous pas descendues?**[5]

Je les ai cherch**ées**[5] dans tous les coins.

Je ne puis les trouver nulle part.
Attendez, mon ami. Je vais **vous les** apporter moi-même.

---

NOTES.

1 **Si** loses **i** before **il** and **ils** (but not before **elle** and **elles**). **S'il vient,** *If he comes;* **Si elle vient,** *If she comes.*

2 Or, more familiarly, **votre femme.**

3 As the direct-object **les** (representing the plural masculine noun **échantillons**) *precedes* the past participle (**envoyé**), the latter agrees with it and takes the sign of the plural (**s**); while, for the contrary reason, it remained invariable, in the sentence just above.

4 *What,* meaning *that which* = **ce que.**

5 As the direct object **les** (representing the plural feminine noun **choses**) *precedes* the participles (**descendu, cherché**), the latter agree with it and take the sign of the feminine plural (**es**).

| | |
|---|---|
| S'màt-*in*'.[7] | Yes, but I don't know if he is at home, this morning. |
| Zh'päs-rā pår là'. | Well, I 'll call that way.[1] |
| Sĕh zā-sha*n*-tē-yo*n*'. | But, say,[2] have they sent those samples to your wife? |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **6. O*n* nŭ lĕh lü-ē' à pä za*n*-kor' a*n*-vò-ă-yā'.** | **They have not sent them (to her) yet.[3]** |
| Sŭ kŭ slà vû dēr'. | I don't understand how that is.[4] |
| Zhŭ lŭ lŭr à-vĕh pōōr ta*n* bē-i*n*' r'kò-ma*n*-dā'. | I had told them so particularly about it.[5] |
| | Ah! here is John bringing the things you want. |
| | Why no. He has n't *got* them.[6] |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **7. Zha*n*', pōōr-kò-à' nŭ nōō lĕh zà-vā vōō' pä dĕh-sa*n*-dü'?** | **John, why have n't you[7] brought them down (to us)?** |
| Da*n* tōō lĕh kò-i*n*'. | I looked for them[8] in every corner. |
| | I can't find them anywhere.[9] |
| | Wait, my dear fellow. I'll[10] bring them to you, myself.[11] |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 I'll pass by there.
2 But, tell me.
3 One them to-her has not yet sent.
4 That which that means (lit.: *wishes to-say*).
5 I it to-them had notwithstanding well recommended.
6 He them has not.
7 Why to-us them have you not brought?
8 I them have looked-for (sought).
9 I can find them nowhere.
10 I go to-you them to-bring myself
11 Me *even*.

**Note. — Study "the Conjunctive and Disjunctive**

---

## 8. Voici mes caoutchoucs. Mais je ne peux pas mettre la main sur mon parapluie.

Mais le voilà dans le coin, n'est-ce pas?
Celui-là n'est pas à moi.[1]
Je ne sais à qui il est.
C'est quelqu'un qui l'a laissé ici.
Voyons donc. Mais, mon ami, c'est le mien.[2]
C'est le vôtre![3] Cela ne ne se peut pas.

Le vôtre avait une pomme d'ivoire.

Le vieux.[4] Oui.
Mais c'est un nouveau[4] que j'ai acheté au bas de la ville, il y a huit jours.
Ce matin, je l'ai cherché partout.

Comme je ne pouvais pas le trouver, j'ai cru l'avoir[5] perdu en revenant du spectacle, hier soir.

Ah, bien. S'il est à vous, vous voilà hors d'embarras.

---

NOTES.

1 **Être à,** *to belong* to; lit.: to *be* to. **N'est pas à moi** = *is not mine;* lit.: *belongs not to me.*

2 **Le mien,** *mine,* for a masculine singular noun; **la mienne,** for a feminine singular noun; **les miens, les miennes,** for plural nouns; **le tien,** *thine,* and **le sien,** *his* or *hers,* are declined likewise.

3 **Le vôtre, la vôtre, les vôtres.**

4 Adjectives are often used substantively. **Le vieux,** *the old,* i. e. *the old one;* **le rouge,** *the red,* i. e. *the red one,* etc.

5 When two verbs following each other immediately depend on the same subject, the last is often put in the infinitive. *I thought it to have lost,* instead of *I thought that I had lost it.*

**Pronouns," page 468.**

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **8. Vȯ-ȧ-sē′ mĕh kȧ-o͞ot-sho͞o′. Mĕh zhŭn pû pä mĕt′ lȧ min′.** | **Here are my rubbers. But I can't put my hand[1] on my umbrella.** |
| Dan l'kȯ-in, nēs pä′? | But isn't it there in the corner?[2] |
| Pä zȧ mȯ-ȧ′. | That is not mine.[3] |
| Sĕh zȧ kē. | I don't know whose it is.[4] |
| Kĕl-kun′. | Somebody left it here.[5] |
| Sĕh l'mē-in′. | But, my dear (fellow), it's mine.[6] |
| Sĕh l'vō′-tr'? S'lȧn-sŭ pû pä′. | It is *yours?*[7] It cannot be. |
| Lŭ vō-trȧ-vĕh tün pȯm dē-vȯ-ȧr'. | Yours had an ivory handle.[8] |
| | The old (one),[9] yes. |
| Ēl ē yȧ ü-ē zho͞or′. | But this is a new (one)[9] I bought down town a week ago.[10] |
| Pȧr-to͞o′. | This morning I looked for[11] it everywhere. |
| Zhā krü lȧ-vȯ-ȧr. | As I could not find it, I thought I had lost[12] it on my way from the theatre last night. |
| Or dan-bȧ-rä′. | Well, if it is yours, you are all right. |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 I cannot put *the* hand.

2 There it is in the corner, is n't it?

3 That-one *is not to me.* — 4 I don't know *to whom it is.*

5 It is somebody who it has left here.

6 It is (*the*) mine. — 7 It is (*the*) yours.

8 **Pomme,** lit.: *apple,* i. e. *head* (of a cane, etc.). *Handle,* literally, = **manche.**

9 The old. The new. — 10 *There-are* eight days.

11 I have sought it.

12 I thought it to-have lost. Could also say, **Je croyais que je l'avais perdu.**

En effet. Eh bien, Philippe, me voilà prêt. Partons.

---

**9. À propos, Alfred. Si l'on venait[1] me demander, vous diriez que je rentrerai à cinq heures.**

Très bien. Mais ne rentrez pas plus tard.

Le monsieur qui est venu vous voir avant-hier allait revenir aujourd'hui.

Que me veut-il?

Je crois qu'il voudrait vous vendre sa maison.

Il ne la vendrait jamais au prix que je voudrais mettre.[2]

Oui, en payant comptant. Il a besoin de fonds.[3]

Enfin, nous verrons.

Eh bien, à tantôt.[4] Soyez ici, sans faute.

Au revoir, Philippe.

Au plaisir.[4]

---

**Note. — Study the "6 necessary tenses" of Vendre,**

---

NOTES.

[1] With *if* (except when it means *whether*) the conditional **is** not used, but the imperfect instead. **Si l'on venait,** *If one came*, not **Si l'on viendrait.**

[2] **Mettre,** to *put*, is sometimes used instead of *to-pay "for." How high would you go?* (referring to price) = **Combien voudriez-vous mettre?**

[3] Or, **Il a besoin d'argent.**

[4] Abbreviation of **jusqu'à tantôt; jusqu'au plaisir de vous revoir;** lit.: *Until by-and-by; Until the pleasure of seeing you again.*

| | |
|---|---|
| A*n* nĕh-fĕh'. . . . . Fē-lēp'. . . . . . Pȧr-to*n*'. | Yes, indeed. Well, Phillip, I am ready. Let us go. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **9. Ȧ prȯ-pō', Ȧl-frĕd'. Sē lo*n* v'nĕh mŭd-ma*n*-dā', vōō dē-rē-ā kŭzh ra*n*-trŭ-rā.** | **By the way, Alfred. If anyone should come and ask for me, say that I shall be back at five o'clock.[1]** |
| | Very well, but do not come any later. |
| Ȧ-va*n*-tē-ĕr'. | The gentleman who called to see you[2] day before yesterday was going to return to-day. |
| Kŭ m'vû tēl'. | What does he want with me?[3] |
| | I think he wants to sell you his house. |
| Kŭzh vōō-drĕh mĕh'-tr'. | He would never sell it for what I would pay.[4] |
| A*n* pē-ya*n* ko*n*-ta*n*'. | Yes, if you paid cash. He needs money.[5] |
| Nōō vĕh-ro*n*'. | Well, we 'll see.[6] |
| Sȯ-ȧ-yā zē-sē, sa*n* fōt'. | Very well, good-by.[7] Be here, without fail. |
| | Good-by, Phillip. |
| | Good-by.[8] |

---

**affirmatively; also, negatively. Pages 490–3.**

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] If one *came* to-ask me, you would-say that I will-come-in-again.

[2] Who *is* (i. e. *has*) come to see you.

[3] What *of*-me wants he?

[4] At the price that I would *put*.

[5] By paying "*counting*" (*i. e.* "money down"). He has need of funds.

[6] We will-see. (Future of **voir.**)

[7] To by-and-by.

[8] To-the pleasure.

... Ordinal Rule.

## ... OF THE PRONOUN-OBJECTS.

... distinction between the pro- ... and the ... are not treated at ... the beginning, and ... Il me me ... referred to where their ... are used both as ... but the learner allow

... the place of pronoun-objects in ... before the verb ...

... Nous ... Les a-

... compound tense [is made ... être or avoir ]. Thus, it is ... in these sentences have ... sentence, have and seen in ... the pronoun-objects it, us, and

**3. Even if there are two pronoun-objects.**

*Thus:*

I sent him to you = I **to-you him** have sent; Je **vous**[1] **l'ai**[2] envoyé.

They sent them to us = They **to-us them** have sent; Ils **nous les** ont[3] envoyés.

**To-you** and **him** in the first sentence, and **to-us** and **them** in the second, *both* come before *both* parts of the verb (*have* and *sent*).

This placing of the pronoun-objects before the verb being established, there remains only one more point to be determined. That is, when there *are* two pronoun-objects to come before the verb, which should *precede* the other?

Now, when there are *two* pronoun-objects, one of them will *always* be either **le, la,** or **les.**[4] And this **le, la,** or **les** will always be *second* of the two, except when the *other* pronoun is **lui** or **leur.**

Thus, suppose we have two pronoun-objects to place before a verb:

If they are, **la** and **vous,** the order will be, **vous la;**
If they are, **les** and **me,** the order will be, **me les;**
If they are, **nous** and **le,** the order will be, **nous le;** — since **le, la,** or **les** are always *second.*

---

[1] **Vous** = *you* or *to-you;* **nous** = *us* or *to-us.* Likewise **me** = *me* or *to-me;* **te** = *thee* or *to-thee.*

[2] **Le** = *him* or *it;* **la** = *her* or *it.* Both become **l',** before a vowel.

[3] Notice that *have* is **ai,** if it is *I* who *have;* that it is **ont,** if it is *they* who *have;* **avez,** if it is *you* who *have;* and **a,** if it is *he* or *she* who *has.* Many annoying mistakes will be avoided if this point is kept in view.

[4] **En** and **y** will be treated later.

But, on the other hand:

If they are, **lui** and **le,** the order will be, **le lui;**

If they are, **les** and **leur,** the order will be, **les leur;**— since **le, la,** or **les** are second *except* when *the other pronoun is* **lui** *or* **leur.**

All this, *i. e.*, all the possible relative positions of the above pronoun-objects before the verb, the learner will find readily illustrated in the following simple table:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Me**<br>**Te**<br>**Nous**<br>**Vous** | **Le**<br>**La**<br>**Les** | **Lui**<br>**Leur** |

**Key to the Table.**

If the learner will cover the right-hand square (containing **lui** and **leur**) with his hand or pencil, he will see that **le, la, les** are always *second*, that is, always follow the other pronouns (**me, te,** etc.). But if he now will uncover the right-hand square, and place hand or pencil over the left-hand one, the two exceptional cases will appear illustrated, *i. e.*, that **le, la,** and **les,** although *ordinarily* second, do *precede* **lui** and **leur.** *Examples:*

Do not return it to me, Ne[1] *me le* rendez pas.

He does not return it to you, Il ne[1] *vous la* rend pas.

He does not sell it to me, Il ne[1] *me la* vend pas.

They have sold them to us, Ils *nous les* ont vendus.

---

[1] As seen here, **ne** always takes its place *just before* the pronoun-objects.

But:

Did you tell him (about) it? *Le lui* avez-vous dit?
Did n't he send it to them? Ne *la leur* a-t-il pas envoyée?
Had n't he sent them to her? Ne *les lui* avait-il pas envoyés?

#### RECAPITULATION OF THE ABOVE.

**1. The place of the pronoun-objects is before the verb, even if the verb has two parts, even if there are two pronouns.**[1]

**2. When there are two pronouns,† *le, la,* or *les* is always second, except when the other pronoun is *lui* or *leur.***

#### ONE EXCEPTION

to the whole rule just recapitulated:

**When the verb is in the imperative-*affirmative*, the pronoun-objects are placed just as in English;** that is to say, after the verb, and in the same order in relation to one another as in English. Thus:

Give it to me = Give *it to-me;* Donnez-**le moi.**[1]
Send them to her = Send *them to-her;* Envoyez-**les lui.**
Bring her to us = Bring *her to-us;* Amenez-**la nous,** etc., etc.

Notice that, as this exception applies only to the **imperative-*affirmative*,** pronoun-objects do follow the general rule (that is, are placed before the verb), if the verb is in the **imperative-*negative*.** Thus:

Give it to me = Give *it to-me;* Donnez-**le moi;** *But:*

---

[1] *Me* and *to-me* = **me** and **moi.** Before the verb **me** is used. After it, **moi.** The same is true of **te** and **toi** (*thee, to thee*). — † *Objects.*

Do not give it to me = *To-me it* give not; Ne **me le** donnez pas.

Send them to her = Send *them to-her;* Envoyez-**les lui;**[1] *But:*

Do not send them to her = *Them to-her* send not; Ne **les lui** envoyez pas.

Bring her to us = Bring *her to-us;* Amenez-**la nous;** *But:*

Do not bring her to us = *To-us her* bring not; Ne **nous l'**amenez pas.

Tell him so = Dites-**le**[2] **lui;**[3] *But:*

Do not tell him so = Ne **le lui** dites pas.

---

**RECAPITULATION OF THE WHOLE RULE.**

*This being by far the most important rule in French, and treated here in a novel and comprehensive manner, the pupil should now memorize and master it textually, as recapitulated:*

**1. The pronoun-objects are placed immediately before the verb, even if the verb has two parts, even if there are two pronoun-objects.**

**2. When there *are* two pronoun-objects, *le, la,* or *les* is second, except when the other pronoun is *lui* or *leur*.**

---

[1] **Lui** = *to him* or *to her*.

[2] *So* in this and such phrases is rendered by *it* (**le**). *Tell him so.* French: *Tell him it.* Also, *Tell him about it.* French: *Tell him it,* **le lui.**

[3] **Lui** (lit.: *to-him, to-her*), is used for **him** (or *her*) only when *him* or *her* really mean *to-him, to-her.* As, *Send him, Tell her so,* etc., which in reality mean *Send to him, Tell it to her,* etc. The same is true of **leur** (lit.: *to-them*), which is used for *them,* but only in the same cases as just mentioned.

**3. To this whole thing there is *one* exception:**

**When the verb is in the imperative-*affirmative*, the pronouns are placed exactly as in English.**

---

The pupil is advised to keep this rule well in mind, returning to and studying it from time to time. In applying it to sentences containing pronoun-objects, he is reminded to use the process explained on page 144, and *shape these sentences in his thought by means of English words*, before uttering them in French. This will soon make him so familiar with their mechanism that they will shape themselves readily for him without this aid.

*The following vocabulary to be studied by heart.*

## VOCABULAIRE.

### I.—LES JOURS.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Lundi (lu*n*-dē'),** | **Monday.** |
| Mardi (mär-dē'), | Tuesday. |
| Mercredi (mĕr-krŭ-dē'), | Wednesday. |
| Jeudi (zhû-dē'), | Thursday. |
| Vendredi (va*n*-drŭ-dē'), | Friday. |
| Samedi (såm-dē'), | Saturday. |
| Dimanche (dē-ma*n*'-sh'), | Sunday. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **Lundi prochain (prȯ-shi*n*'),** | **Next Monday.** |
| Lundi dernier (dĕr-nē-ā'), | Last " |
| Lundi, | On Monday.[1] |
| Le lundi (lŭ lu*n*-dē'), | On Monday.[2] |
| Les lundis (lĕh lu*n*-dē'), | On Mondays.[2] |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **Avant-hier (å-va*n*-tē-ĕr'),** | **Day before yesterday.**[3] |
| Demain (dŭ-mi*n*'), | To-morrow. |
| Après-demain (å-prĕd-mi*n*'), | Day after to-morrow. |
| La semaine prochaine (s'mĕn prȯ-shĕn'), | Next week. |
| La semaine dernière (dĕr-nē-air'), | Last " |
| Une semaine, *or* huit jours,[5] | A week. |
| Deux semaines, *or* quinze jours,[6] | Two weeks. |
| Il y a quinze jours,[7] | Two weeks ago. |

---

[1] Meaning either *next* or *last*. — [2] Meaning, *on every Monday*.
[3] Lit.: Before-yesterday. — [4] Lit.: After-to-morrow.
[5] Lit.: Eight days. — [6] Lit.: Fifteen days.
[7] Lit.: There are fifteen days. Also, **Il y a deux semaines.**

*The following vocabulary to be studied by heart.*

## VOCABULAIRE.

### II.—LES MOIS.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Janvier (zhan-vē-ā′),** | **January.** |
| Février (fā-vrē-yā′), | February. |
| Mars (mȧrs′), | March. |
| Avril (ȧ-vrēl′), | April. |
| Mai (mā), | May. |
| Juin (zhü-in′), | June. |
| Juillet (zhü-ē-yĕh′), | July. |
| Août (ōō),[1] | August. |
| Septembre (sĕp-tān′-br′), | September. |
| Octobre (ȯk-tȯ′-br′), | October. |
| Novembre (nȯ-van′-br′), | November. |
| Décembre (dā-san′-br′), | Decembre. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **En Janvier (an zhan-vē-ā′),** | **In January.** |
| Au mois[2] de janvier, | Next or last January. |
| Dans trois mois (d'ici), | In three months (from now). |
| Dans huit jours " | In a week (from now). |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Les vacances (vȧ-kan′-s'),** | **The vacation.** |
| Noël (nȯ-ĕl′), | Christmas. |
| Le jour de l'an[3] (zhōōr dŭ lan′), | New Year's day. |
| Le mardi gras[4] (grä), | Shrove Tuesday. |
| Le dimanche de Pâques (päk'), | Easter Sunday. |

[1] The vulgar pronounce this word ȧ-ōō. As this pronunciation is frequent, although a sign of ignorance in French people who use it, the pupil is warned against it.

[2] Ō mȯ-äd. — [3] Lit.: The day of the year. — [4] Lit.: *Fat* Tuesday.

*The following sentences to be learned by heart.*

### III.—LE QUANTIÈME.*

| | |
|---|---|
| Quel quantième avons-nous?[1] | What day of the month have we? |
| C'est aujourd'hui le dix,[2] | It 's to-day the tenth. |
| Voyons,[3] | Let me see. |
| C'est juste,[4] | That 's right. |
| Quel jour de la semaine avons-nous? | What day of the week have we? |
| C'est aujourd'hui jeudi, | To-day is Thursday. |
| Vous vous trompez, | You are mistaken. |
| Ce n'est que mercredi, | It is only Wednesday. |
| Pardon. Regardez[5] au calendrier, | Beg pardon. Look at the calendar. |
| Vous avez raison, | You are right. |
| C'était hier mardi,[6] | Yesterday was Tuesday. |
| Ce sera demain jeudi,[6] | To-morrow will be Thursday. |
| C'était hier le neuf,[7] | Yesterday was the 9th. |
| Ce sera demain le onze,[7] | To-morrow will be the 11th. |

---

[1] Or, **Quel quantième sommes-nous?** Also, **Quel jour du mois avons-nous?**

[2] Or, **nous avons** (or, **nous sommes**) **le dix.**

[3] Let me see, *or* Let us see. Lit.: Let-us-see.

[4] **Sĕh zhüs′-t'.**

[5] **Regarder,** to look at. **Regarder à,** to look at (*in order to consult*).

[6] Lit.: It was yesterday Tuesday. It will be to-morrow —.

[7] Lit.: It was yesterday the 9th. It will be to-morrow —.

* **Kan-tē-ĕm'.** As if we said, *The "quantity" (of the month).*

*The following vocabulary to be learned by heart.*

## IV.—LA BOURSE.*

| | |
|---|---|
| **À la Bourse,** | On 'Change.† |
| Un courtier [1] (kōōr-tē-ā'), | A (stock) broker. |
| Un fripier [2] (frē-pē-ā'), | A curbstone broker. |
| Un changeur (sha*n*-zhŭr'), | A money broker. |
| La hausse (ōs'), | The rise. |
| La baisse (bĕs'), | The fall. |
| Des actions (dĕh zȧk-sē-o*n*'), | Stocks. |
| De l'or (dŭ lor'), | Gold. |
| En or (a*n* nor'), | In gold. |
| De l'argent [3] (lȧr-zha*n*'), | Silver. |
| De l'argent français,[4] | French money. |
| En argent (a*n* nȧr-zha*n*'), | In silver. |
| De la petite monnaie [5] (p'tēt mȯ-nĕh'), | Small change. |
| Un billet de banque (bē-yĕd-ba*n*k'), | A banknote. |
| Une note (nȯt'), | A note. |
| Une traite (trĕt'), | A draft. |
| Une lettre de crédit (lĕh-tr' dŭ krā-dē'), | A letter of credit. |
| Payable à vue (pā-yȧ-blȧ-vü'), | Payable on sight. |

---

[1] Also, **Un agent de change.** A *merchant*-broker is a **courtier de commerce (kȯ-mĕr'-s').**

[2] This also means *a dealer in second-hand clothing.*

[3] Also means *money.* — [4] Lit.: *Some* money French.

[5] **Monnaie** = *change;* or, *money* in a general sense, as, the money (*i. e.* coinage) of a country. In the very widest, as well as in the ordinary sense, *money* = **argent.**

* **Lȧ Bōōr'-s',** the Exchange.

† Or, On "the street."

*To be learned by heart and repeated aloud as a real conversation, whether for self-study or preparation for the class-room.*
*(See also **Directions**, before **Part I.**)*

## CONVERSATIONS.

### 1.—LE LEVER.

Monsieur, vous m'avez dit de vous réveiller à sept heures?—Comment! Il est déjà sept heures? —Oui, Monsieur. Il est sept heures cinq.—Eh bien, je vais me lever.[1]—Monsieur ne veut-il pas mettre[2] sa robe de chambre?—Non, donnez-moi mon caleçon et mon pantalon.—Les voici.—Je ne trouve pas mes pantoufles.—Je ne sais plus où je les ai mises.[3]—Les voilà; à côté du lavabo.—Jean, versez[4] de l'eau chaude[4] dans ma cuvette, je vais me laver.[5]—Après cela, je veux me raser.[6]—Veuillez me passer mon rasoir et le blaireau.[7]—C'est bien. Maintenant, veuillez m'apporter une serviette.—Merci. Versez un peu d'eau froide[8] dans la cuvette.—Voilà, monsieur. —Où est le démêloir? Je ne l'ai pas vu depuis hier soir.—Le voici, monsieur. Il était tombé derrière la commode.

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

[1] **Se lever,** to rise; lit.: to *raise* one's self. **Me lever,** to rise; lit.: to *raise* myself.— [2] To put, *or* put on.

[3] **ŌŌ zhlĕh zā mēz'.**— [4] Pour out—**shōd'.**

[5] Wash myself.— [6] Shave myself.— [7] **Lŭ rä-zô-âr āl blĕh-rō',** the razor and shaving-brush.— [8] **Frô-âd'.**

### 2.—*MÊME SUJET.*

Quels souliers monsieur voudrait-il mettre?—Je ne sais trop.[1]—Je crois que vous feriez mieux[2] de mettre vos souliers à doubles semelles,[3] car[4] il fait mauvais temps.—Non. Donnez-moi mes bottines. Mais monsieur, les semelles sont tout à fait usées.[5]—Eh bien, faites-les ressemeler[6] aujourd'hui même.[6]—Très bien, monsieur. Je n'y manquerai pas.—Dites au[7] cordonnier de me les rapporter après-demain matin, sans faute.

### 3.—*CHEZ UN CHANGEUR.*

Pourriez-vous me donner de l'argent français pour ce billet de cent dollars?—Pardon, Monsieur, nous ne prenons pas[8] les billets de banque.—Vous trouverez un bureau qui les prend,[9] rue Réaumur, N° 274.[10] —C'est horriblement loin.—C'est vrai. Vous auriez mieux fait de porter[11] de l'or, ou mieux encore[12] une lettre de crédit.

---

**Note.—Study "List of verbs in er," page 502.**

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

[1] I don't know *about that.* Lit.: I know not *too-much.*

[2] Would do better.— [3] Double-sole shoes.

[4] As a conjunction, *for* = **car;** as a preposition (*used before a noun*) **pour.**

[5] **Ü-zā',** worn out.

[6] Have them half-soled this very day (lit.: to-day even).

[7] Lit.: Tell to-the.— [8] We do not take.— [9] Which takes them.

[10] We sometimes write N°, but always pronounce in full, **nü-mā-rō'.**

[11] You would have done better to carry (*i. e.* bring).— [12] Better still.

*To be translated and written out into French, but also to be recited orally in the class-room. (For Self-Study, see* ***Directions,*** *before* ***Part I.****)*

## EXERCISES.

### 1.—*ABOUT SAMPLES.*

Did Mr. Macy send[1] you those samples of silk?—No, he has not sent them to me yet.[2]—I told him to do so,[3] day before yesterday.—Please call on him[4] to-day and ask him why he has not sent them yet. Tell him[5] I must have them before to-night.[6]

### 2.—*SAME SUBJECT.*

Why did n't you send those samples of silk to Mr. Lovell?—Why,[7] I sent them to him, yesterday.—He has not received them.[8]—That 's impossible. When did you see him?—I saw him this very morning.[9]—Well, wait a minute. I am going to have them sent to him,[10] at once.

### 3.—*INFORMATION.*

(Beg) pardon, sir; would you please tell me where the Bazar du Voyage is?[11]—I am very sorry,[12] but

---

**Aids to Translation.**

[1] Mr. Macy has he sent—?
[2] He to-me them has not yet (**encore**) sent.— [3] To (**de**) *it* do.
[4] **Passer chez lui et demander** (lit.: ask *to*-him).
[5] **Dites-lui que.**— [6] **Ce soir.**— [7] **Mais.**— [8] **Reçues.**
[9] This morning *even* (**même**).— [10] Them to-him to-make to-send.
[11] Where is the.— [12] **J'en suis bien fâché.**

I do not know exactly. Ask[1] that policeman. He will be able to tell you.[2]

What day of the month have we? — To-day is the 10th. — Isn't Mr. Clémenceau's note[3] payable to-day? — Let me see. January 12th, 1888. — That's right. — Now, what day of the week have we? — To-day is Thursday.

### 4.—*AT A MONEY BROKER'S.*

Would you have the kindness to give me French money for these twenty dollar pieces?[4] — How would you like to have them?[5] — In gold, or bank bills? — In gold, if you please.

Why, you give me only[6] three-hundred francs! — That's right. — But three hundred francs are not worth[7] sixty dollars. — No, sir. But there is the exchange.[8] Look at that bulletin,[9] by the door.[10] You will see the rate on it.[11]

---

**Aids to Translation.**

1 **Demandez à.**
2 **Il pourra vous le dire.**
3 The note of Mr. C. is it (**elle**) not —?
4 These pieces (**pièces**) of twenty dollars.
5 How them would-you-like?
6 You give me only (**ne . . . . . que**).
7 **Ne valent pas** (from **valoir**, to be worth).
8 **L'agio, lä-zhē-ō'.**
9 **À ce bulletin.**
10 **À côté de.**
11 **Vous verrez le taux dessus.**

*To be read by means of the literal translation opposite, then without it, in preparation for reading aloud and translating in class.*

## LECTURE.

### LA BOURSE. LE PASSAGE DES PANORAMAS.

— Eh bien, si nous voulons sortir aujourd'hui, il est temps. Partons! Partons! .....

— Tenez! Nous voilà à la Bourse. C'est beau, n'est-ce pas? Ce vaste emplacement, ce large édifice en style corinthien, au milieu!

— En effet! C'est magnifique. Mais qui sont ces individus, près du parquet?

— Des commis qui échangent des ordres.

— Et là, sur les côtés?

— Ce sont les rois de la finance.

— On les nomme, je crois, des loups-cerviers?

— Oui; par jalousie. — Mais voyez, sous les galeries, ces boursicotiers qui lisent leur feuilleton. Voyez-vous! L'un d'eux pose son journal et s'informe[1] du cours de la rente près de[2] l'agent de change qui passe. Celui-ci lui offre du papier sur Vienne;[3] celui-là des fonds espagnols. — Mais allons maintenant au passage des Panoramas. — Tenez! Entrons-y par la galerie de la Bourse. — Comme c'est gai, n'est-ce pas? Du moins, on n'a pas à craindre les voitures. A présent tournons à droite, dans cette galerie. C'est la galerie Montmartre, qui débouche sur[4] le boulevard du même nom.

---

[1] Lit.: Informs himself (s') *of* the. — [2] Lit.: Near *of* the.
[3] Paper on Vienna. — [4] Lit.: Which *opens* on.

*For self-study, should be read by means of the translation, then without it, and when thoroughly understood, read aloud in French.*

## READING.

### THE EXCHANGE. PASSAGE OF PANORAMAS.

— Well, if we wish to-go-out to-day, it is time. Let us start! Let us start! . . . . .

— See! We are now at the Exchange. It is fine, is it not? That wide square, that large building, in (the) Corinthian style, *in*-the middle!

— Yes, indeed! It is magnificent. But who are those individuals, near the parquet?

— Clerks who are-exchanging orders.

— And there, on the sides?

— Those are the kings of finance.

— One names them, I believe, *lynxes?*

— Yes; from jealousy. — But see, under the colonnades, those small speculators who read their *feuilleton.*[1] (Do) you see? One of them puts (down) his paper and asks information concerning the rate of stocks from the broker who is passing. One offers him Vienna stocks; another, some Spanish funds. — But let us go now to the Passage of-*the* Panoramas. — There! Let us go in-it by the Gallery of the Bourse. — How it is gay, is it not? At least one has not to fear (*the*) carriages. Now, let us turn to (the) right, into that gallery. That is the Montmartre Gallery, the entrance of which is on the Boulevard of-the same name.

---

[1] **Fŭ-yŭ-ton',** a novel periodically published in a newspaper.

*The French text of the following notes should be learned by heart,*
*the case of pupils under a teacher, may be done either at home*

## CORRESPONDANCE.

(COMMERCIALE.)

### I.—*BILLET À ORDRE.*

Fin de mars prochain, je paierai à M. Dorigny ou à son ordre, la somme de quatre cent cinquante francs, valeur reçue en marchandises.

BRUXELLES, 15 mai, 1888.

X—.

---

### II.—*TRAITE À VUE.*

NEW-YORK, ce 5 nov. 1888.

*Bon pour 1,500 francs.*

MONSIEUR,

À vue, il vous plaira payer par cette seule de change, à l'ordre de M. Simon, la somme de quinze cents francs, valeur reçue de M. Masson, et que vous passerez au compte de votre serviteur.

X—.

À MONSIEUR B., *Commerçant,*
À PARIS.

---

**Pronunciation.**—Fi*n* dŭ már-s pró-shi*n'*, zhŭ pā-rā á mŭs-yû Dor-ē-ñē', ōō á so*n* nor'-dr', lá sóm dŭ ká-trŭ sa*n* si*n*-ka*n*t fra*n*, vá-lŭr rŭ-sü a*n* már-sha*n*-dēz'.—Brü-sĕl, ki*n*z mā', mĕl ü-ē sa*n* ká-trŭ-vi*n*-ü-ēt'.

*and written from memory some hour or two afterward. This, in or in class, as he may direct.*

## CORRESPONDENCE.

(COMMERCIAL.)

### I.—*NOTE OF HAND.*

On the 31st of March next, I promise to pay to Mr. Dorigny, or his order, the sum of four hundred and fifty francs, value received in merchandise.

BRUSSELS, May 15, 1888.

X—.

---

### II.—*SIGHT DRAFT.*

NEW-YORK, NOV. 5, 1888.

*Draft for 1,500 francs.*

SIR,

At sight, please to pay on this sole bill of exchange, to the order of Mr. Simon, the sum of fifteen hundred francs, value received from Mr. Masson, and pass it to my account. Your humble servant,

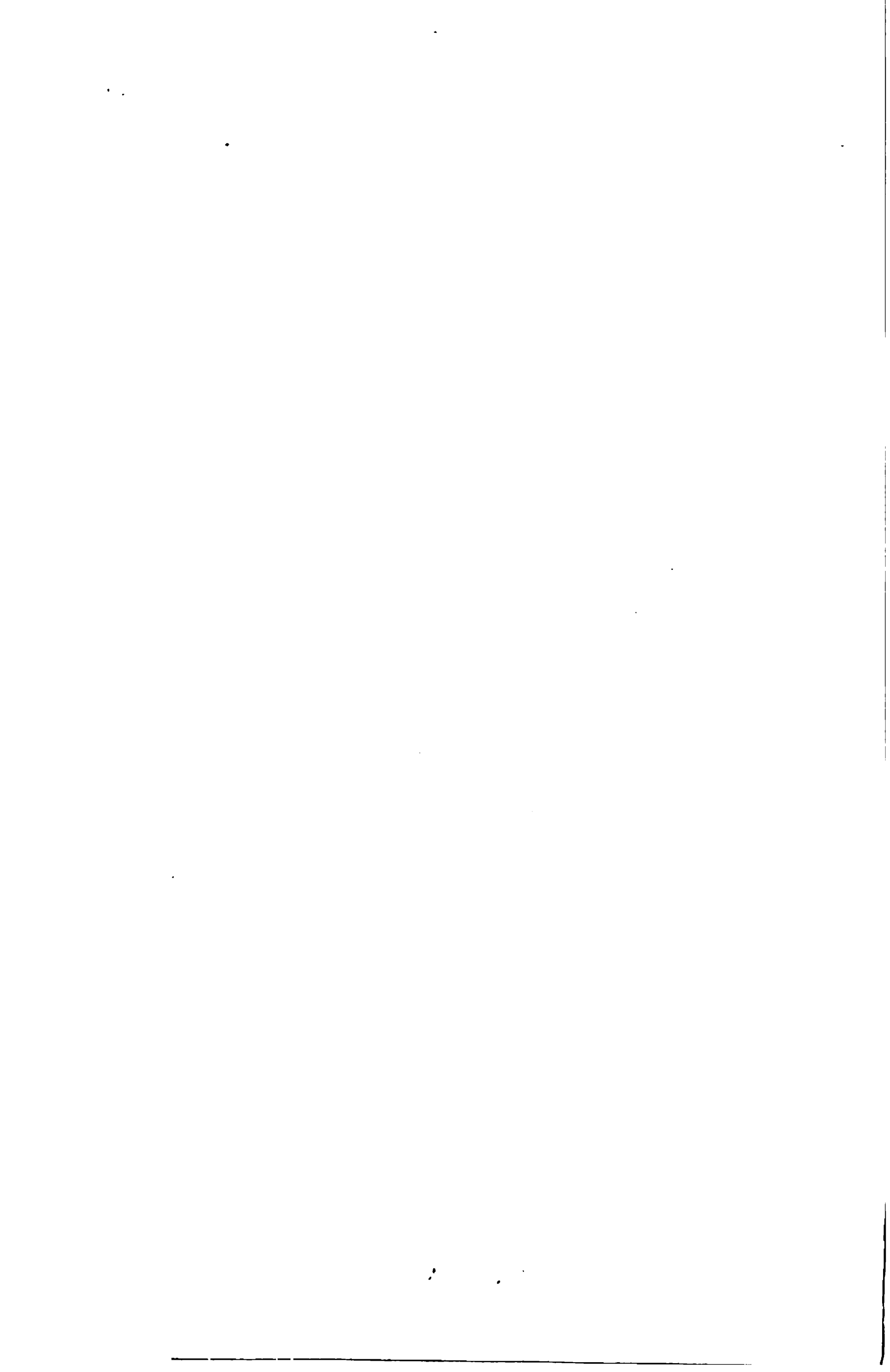
X—.

To MR. B., *Merchant*,

PARIS.

---

**Pronunciation.**—Á vü ēl vōō plĕh-rȧ pā-yā pȧr sĕt sŭl dŭ sha*n*zh', ȧ lor'-dr' dŭ mŭs-yû Sē-mo*n*, lȧ sȯm dŭ ki*n*z sa*n* fra*n*, vȧ-lŭr rŭ-sü dŭ mŭs-yû Mä-so*n*, ā kŭ vōō pä-srā zō ko*n*t dŭ vȯ'-tr' sĕr-vē-tŭr'.



# PART III.

## THE WEATHER AND THE CITY.

## LE TEMPS ET LA VILLE.

### SECTION II.

## II.

### FRENCH.

**1. Mais si le temps ne s'éclaircit pas avant midi,**

Je ne pourrai pas le faire.

Que faites-vous?

Je sonne le domestique.[1] Je veux faire cirer mes bottes avant de sortir.

Je ne vous conseille pas[2] de mettre le pied dehors, ce matin.

Voyez donc. Le temps s'assombrit.

Quel ennui! Il fait mauvais temps, tous les jours.

---

**2. Il a fait mauvais temps depuis que nous sommes à Paris.[3]**

La première semaine, il a plu.[4]

---

NOTES.

[1] **Le domestique,** the (male) servant; **la domestique,** the (female) servant.

[2] In the case of two verbs closely connected in the same clause, the French always prefer to use the negative *with the first,* where the sense is not altered thereby.

[3] When speaking about the length of time they have been in a place where they are still at the time they speak, the French use the present. The English say, *since we have been;* the French, *since* **we are** *in Paris.*

[4] *Conversational Tense.* English, *It rained;* French, *It has rained.*

## II.

| PRONUNCIATION. | TRANSLATION. |
| --- | --- |
| **1. Mĕh sēl ta*n*′ n'sā-klĕr-sē pä′ zȧ-va*n* mē-dē′,*** | **But if the weather does not clear up[1] before noon,** |
| | I shall not be able to do so. |
| | What are you doing?[2] |
| Zhŭ sȯn. | I am ringing for the servant. I want to have my boots blacked before I go out.† |
| Zhŭn vōō ko*n*-sĕh′-yŭ päd′ mĕh′-tr′ l'pē-ā dŭ-or′. | I advise you not to go out this morning.[3] |
| Lŭ ta*n* sȧ-so*n*-brē′. | See. The weather is clouding up.[4] |
| Kĕl a*n*-nü-ē′. Ēl fĕh mȯ-vĕh ta*n*′. | What an annoyance! Every day we have bad weather.[5] |

| | |
| --- | --- |
| **2. Ēl ȧ fĕh mȯ-vĕh ta*n*′ dŭ-pü-ēk nōō sȯm zȧ Pȧ-rē′.** | **We have had bad weather since we've been in Paris.[6]** |
| Ēl ȧ plü′. | The first week, it rained.[7] |

### LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 Clears not itself.
2 What do you?
3 I advise you not to put a (lit.: *the*) foot outside, this morning.
4 Darkens itself.
5 It *makes* bad weather.
6 It has *made* bad weather since we are in Paris.
7 It has rained.
* Let the pupil return, from time to time, to the PRONUNCIATION, before PART I., and review the TABLE OF SIGNS, etc.
† Before *to go-out* (*i. e.* going out).

La seconde, il a fait de la neige presque tous les jours.
La troisième, il a fait du soleil le lundi et le mardi seulement.

Le mercredi, il a plu.
Et aujourd'hui, il pleut encore.
Vous vous trompez, il ne pleut pas.[1]
C'est vrai, je me trompais, heureusement.

Mais, il fait si sombre que je croyais qu'il pleuvait.

---

**Note.** — **Study the comparison of adjectives,**

---

### 3. Quel temps fait-il dehors, Monsieur X?

Il ne pleut pas encore.
Mais, ça ne va pas tarder. Le temps s'obscurcit.

Voyez comme[2] le ciel se couvre!
Vraiment, on n'y voit plus.

Il va pleuvoir à l'instant.
L'orage va fondre sur nous.

Je savais qu'il pleuvrait, d'ailleurs.

---

NOTES.

[1] **Il ne pleut pas** = It is-not (*i.e.* raining). The French cannot say, simply, *It is, it does, he does, we do*, etc., referring to a preceding verb. They must say, It is *raining*, It does-*rain* (rains), He does-*go* (goes), We *think so*, etc.

[2] *How*, in the sense of *in what manner* = **comment.** In exclamations, however, *how* = **comme.**

| | |
|---|---|
| Là s'gon'-d' ..... dlà nĕzh prĕs'-k'. | The second, it snowed nearly every day. |
| Dü sò-lĕh'-yŭ. | The third, we had sunny days[1] on Monday and Tuesday only. |
| Ēl à plü'. | On Wednesday, it rained. |
| | And to-day, it is raining yet.[2] |
| | You are mistaken. It is not.[3] |
| Zhŭm tron-pĕh', zŭ-rûz-man'. | That's so. I was mistaken,[4] fortunately. |
| Sē son'-br' kŭzh krò-à-yĕh. | But it is so dark, I thought it must be raining.[5] |

**page 466, parags. 1 and 2.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **3. Kĕl tan fĕh-tēl dŭ-or', Mŭs-yû' Ēks?** | **How is the weather[6] outside, Mr. X?** |
| Plû pä zan-kor'. | It is not raining yet. |
| Sàn và pä tàr-dā' ..... sòb-skür-sē'. | But it will rain before long. It is clouding up. See how |
| Lŭ sē-ĕl' sŭ kōō'-vr'. | cloudy the sky is getting![7] |
| On nē vò-à plü'. | Yes. It's so dark you can't see anything.[8] |
| | It will rain in a moment. |
| Lò-ràzh và fon'-dr'. | The storm will be down upon us.[9] |
| Dà-yŭr'. | I knew it would rain, any way. |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] It *has* made some sun; *i. e.* there has been sunshine.
[2] It rains yet. — [3] It rains not. — [4] I myself deceived.
[5] It *made* (*i. e. was*) so dark that I thought *that* it was-raining.
[6] What weather *makes* it outside? — [7] How the sky covers itself!
[8] One *there* sees no more.
[9] The storm is-going to *melt;* figuratively: *to fall* or *swoop upon.*

Je me rappelle[1] qu'il faisait du soleil hier pendant qu'il pleuvait.[2]

C'est toujours un signe de pluie pour le lendemain.

C'est ce qu'on dit.

---

**4. Je ne vous conseille pas de sortir par un si mauvais temps.**

Mais si vous sortez, enveloppez-vous bien.

C'est dommage. J'ai tout à fait usé mon manteau de caoutchouc. Il n'est plus mettable.

Prenez le mien.

D'ailleurs, pourquoi ne faites-vous pas venir votre voiture?

Parce qu'il y a **une** des roues de derrière **de**[3] cassée.

Jean doit la faire réparer aujourd'hui.

Alors, prenez la mienne.[4]

---

**Note.** — Study the "5 necessary tenses" of **Vendre,**

---

NOTES.

[1] From **Se rappeler,** *to recall, to remember.* Lit.: *To-recall to-one's self.*

[2] It *rained* (with **ait** as a termination) for *It was raining;* the French, as already seen, having no progressive form.

[3] After numerals and expressions of number (like **plusieurs,** etc.), **de** is used before a following past participle.

[4] **La mienne,** fem. sing. of **le mien.** Possessive pronouns take the gender *of the object possessed,* not of the possessor. **La mienne** is feminine here, because **voiture** is feminine.

| | |
|---|---|
| Kēl fü-zĕh dü sò-lĕh′-yŭ ē-yĕr′. | I remember the sun was shining yesterday while it was raining. |
| Sē-ñŭ dŭ plü-ē. | It 's a sure sign of rain for the next day.[1] |
| Sĕh skon dē′. | That 's what they say. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **4. Zhŭn vōō kon-sĕh′-yŭ päd sor-tĕr pȧr.** | **I advise you not to go out in such bad weather.[2]** |
| An-vlò-pā vōō bē-in′. | But, if you do go out, wrap yourself up well. |
| Tōō-tȧ-fĕh-tü-zā mon man-tōd kȧ-ōōt-shōō′. . . . Mĕh-tȧ′-bl′. | It 's too bad. My rubber cloak is entirely worn out.[3] I can't wear it any more.[4] |
| Prŭ-nāl mē-in′. | Take mine.[5] |
| Pōōr-kò-ȧn fêt-vōō. | Anyway, why don't you order your carriage?[6] |
| Rōōd dĕr-ē-air dŭ kä-sā′. | One of the hind wheels is broken.[7] |
| | John is to have it repaired to-day.[8] |
| Lȧ mē-ĕn′. | Well, take mine,[5] then. |

---

**both interrogative forms, page 493.**

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] It is always a sign of rain for the morrow. *Next day* is also **le jour suivant.**

[2] *By* a so bad weather.

[3] I have entirely worn out my cloak of rubber.

[4] It is no longer "wear*able*."

[5] *The* mine.

[6] Why make you not come your carriage?

[7] One of-the wheels of behind (*of*) broken.

[8] John *owes* (*i. e. has*) to-make to-repair it.

**5. Ciel! Quel[1] coup de tonnerre!**

Voyez comme il fait des éclairs!
Décidément, je ne vais pas mettre le pied dehors.

Je crois bien. Il pleut à verse.

---

**6. Qui est-ce qui[2] descend de voiture à la porte de la maison vis-à-vis?**

Je crois vraiment que c'est votre beau-frère.

Mais oui. C'est son équipage.
Le cocher s'est trompé de maison.

Que voulez-vous — par un tel orage — ?
Ah! le voilà qui vient[3] de ce côté-ci de la rue.

Je me demande ce qu'il vient faire ici par un temps pareil.
Bonjour, belle-sœur, comment vous portez-vous?

Je me porte à merveille.[4] Mais je crains pour votre santé.
Vous voilà bien arrangé!
Vous êtes mouillé jusqu'aux os.
Vous ne pouvez pas manquer de prendre froid.

---

**NOTES.**

[1] **Quel** in exclamations = What a!

[2] Or, simply, **Qui descend.**

[3] Indicative present of **venir. Je viens, tu viens, il vient, nous venons, vous venez, ils viennent (ēl vē-ĕn'),** *I come, thou comest,* etc.

[4] Lit.: *I myself carry to a marvel.* Anglice, *I am marvelously* (*i. e. wonderfully*) *well.*

| | |
|---|---|
| **5. Sē-ĕl′! Kĕl kōōd tó-nair′!** | **Goodness![1] What [a] clap of thunder!** |
| Dĕh zā-klair′. | How it is lightening![2] |
| Dā-sē-dā-ma*n*′. | Really, I am not going out, now.[3] |
| Ēl plû-tȧ vĕr′-s′. | I should think so.[4] It is *pouring* down. |
| **6. Kē ĕs kē dĕh-sa*n*′ d′-vó-ȧ-tür′ ȧ lȧ por-t dŭ lȧ mĕh-zo*n*′ vē-zȧ-vē′?** | **Who is that getting out of a carriage at the door of the house opposite?** |
| | I really think it is your brother-in-law. |
| So*n* nā-kē-pȧzh′. | Why, it is his turn-out. |
| Tro*n*-păd′ mĕh-zo*n*′. | The coachman mistook[6] the house. |
| Da*n* zu*n* tĕl or-ȧzh′. | Well, in[7] such a storm! |
| Dŭ skō-tā-sē dlȧ rü′. | But, there he is coming on this side. |
| Zhŭm dŭ-ma*n*′-d skēl.... u*n* ta*n* pȧ-rĕh′-yŭ. | I wonder[8] why he comes here *in* such weather.[9] |
| Vōō por-tā-vōō′? | Good morning, sister-in-law. How are you?[10] |
| Zhŭm por-tȧ-mĕr-vĕh′-yŭ. | I am very well, indeed. But I fear for *your* health. |
| Bē-i*n* nȧ-ra*n*-zhā′. | You are in a nice "fix!"[11] |
| Mōō-yā zhüs-kō-zō′. | You are wet to the skin.[12] |
| Ma*n*-kād pra*n*′-dr′ fró-ȧ′. | You are sure to take cold.[13]. |

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] Heaven! — [2] How it makes lightning-flashes!
[3] Decidedly, I go not to put (*the*) foot outside.
[4] I believe well. It rains to pour. — [5] Descends from.
[6] Himself has deceived *of* house. — [7] By. — [8] I myself ask.
[9] *By a weather similar.* — [10] *How yourself carry you? How do you carry yourself?* — [11] There you are well "fixed"!
[12] Wet to the bones. — [13] You cannot fail to take cold.

Tenez! Vous éternuez déjà.
C'est vrai. Mais il pleut à verse.
Et rien que de traverser le trottoir, je me suis trouvé tout mouillé.[1]

**Note.**—Study "the Position of Adjectives,"

**7. Croyez-vous qu'il pleuve[2] toute la journée?**
Je crois du moins qu'il pleuvra[3] toute la matinée.

Approchez-vous du feu, et séchez-vous.

Ôtez vos souliers.
Mes pantoufles sont trop petites pour vous, mais mon frère va vous prêter les siennes.

Mettez-les tandis que vos souliers sèchent.

Mais je vous dérange.
Vous ne nous dérangez pas du tout.

**8. Mais pourquoi donc êtes-vous venu[4] par une averse comme celle-là?**

NOTES.

[1] If a lady is speaking, **toute mouillée.**

[2] Subjunctive present of **Pleuvoir.** After **que,** when doubt or negation is expressed *or* implied, the subjunctive is used.

[3] Future of **Pleuvoir,** although after **que,** and with doubt really implied in the sentence. But in using the verbs *to hope*, *to believe*, *to think*, affirmatively, the French, singularly enough, do not appear to consider them as implying doubt, and hence do not then use the subjunctive. *Do you think it is raining*, **Croyez-vous qu'il pleuve** (*subj.*); but, *I think it is raining*, **je crois qu'il pleut** (*indic.*).

[4] **Venir** and **Partir** are two of the 12 neuter verbs conjugated with **être.**

| | |
|---|---|
| Vōō zā-tĕr-nü-ā. | See! You are sneezing already.[1] |
| | That's so. But it is just pouring down rain. |
| Rē-i*n* * kŭd trȧ-vĕr-sāl trȯ-tȯ-ȧr'. | And I got all wet[2] simply coming across the sidewalk. |

page 466, parags. 1 to 7.

| | |
|---|---|
| **7. Krȯ-ȧ-yā-vōō kēl plŭv tōōt lȧ zhōōr-nā'.** | **Do you think it will rain[3] the whole day?** |
| Mȧ-tē-nā'. | I think it will rain[4] all the morning, any way. |
| Dü fŭ ā sā-shā-vōō | Come near to the fire[5] and dry yourself. |
| | Take off your shoes. |
| Trȯp-tēt † ..... Lĕh sē-ĕn'. | My slippers are too small for you, but my brother will lend you his. |
| Ta*n*-dēs-kŭ ..... sĕsh'. | Put them on while[6] yours are drying. |
| Zh' vōō dā-ra*n*'-zh'. | But I disturb you. |
| | You do not disturb us at all. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **8. Mĕh pōōr-kȯ-ȧ' do*n*-kĕt vōōv-nü' pȧr ŭ-nȧ-vĕrs † kȯm sĕl-lȧ'?** | **But why did you[7] come in such a terrible shower as this?** |

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] You sneeze already.
[2] I myself have found all wet.
[3] Think you that it may-rain?
[4] Will-rain.
[5] *Approach yourself of* the fire. — [6] Whilst that.
[7] Why *are* you come by a shower like that (one)?

* Let the pupil remember that in the nasal sounds the *n* is not sounded or pronounced in full, and hence that the organs of speech should *not* close upon it. *In* is a sharp as well as nasal sound, like that of *an* in *shank*, *rank*, etc.

† Remember that all letters in the pronunciation are to be sounded.

Il ne pleuvait pas quand je suis parti de chez moi.

Où allez-vous en nous quittant?

J'allais passer chez votre amie, mademoiselle Howe.

Et je venais vous chercher pour aller avec moi.

Et alors nous passerons la soirée[1] ensemble.

Je voudrais bien aller avec vous; mais par un temps pareil, c'est impossible.

Non, ça ne se peut pas.

---

### NOTES.

[1] *Day*, *morning*, *evening*, and *year* have two forms: **jour** and **journée; matin, matinée; soir, soirée; an, année.** In general, the short forms are used when *number* is referred to; the long forms, when *duration* or *quality* are referred to. *Every day*, **tous les jours**; *all day*, **toute la journée**; *a fine day*, **une belle journée**; etc.

| | |
|---|---|
| | It was not raining when I started.[1] |
| Nōō kē-ta*n*'. | Where are you going when you leave us?[2] |
| Mád-mó-á-zĕl. | I was going to call on[3] your friend, Miss Howe. |
| Zhŭv-nĕh'. | And I was coming after you to have you go with me. |
| Só-á-rā a*n*-sa*n*'-bl'. | And then we'll spend the evening together. |
| Sĕh ti*n*-pó-sē'-bl'. | I should very much like to go with you. But in such weather,[4] it is n't possible. |
| Sán sŭ pû pä'. | No, it is not possible.[5] |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 When I *am* (*i. e. have*) started.
2 When leaving us.
3 I was-going to pass at-the-house-of.
4 *By a weather similar.*
5 No, *that cannot itself.*

*The following vocabulary to be learned by heart.*

## VOCABULAIRE.

### LE TEMPS.

| | |
|---|---|
| Il fait beau temps, | It is nice weather. |
| " " vilain " (vē-l *n'*), | " " bad " |
| Il fait un temps [1] magnifique,[2] | " " splendid weather. |
| " " " " abominable, | " " atrocious " |
| " " " " noir, | " " gloomy weather, etc. |

*Or, simply:*

| | |
|---|---|
| **Il fait beau,** | **The weather is fine.** |
| " " mauvais, | The weather is bad. |
| " " magnifique, | " " " splendid. |
| " " humide;[3] sec (sĕk), | " " " damp; dry. |
| " " chaud; froid, | " " " warm; cold. |
| " " lourd, | " " " muggy. |
| " " jour; nuit, | It is daylight; dark. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| Il fait du vent, | It is windy. |
| Il fait un vent glacial,[4] | The wind is icy cold. |
| Il fait du brouillard, | It is foggy. |
| Il fait de la boue, | " " muddy. |
| " " de la poussière, | " " dusty. |
| " " du verglas, | " " sleety. |
| " " de l'orage, | " " stormy. |
| Il fait une chaleur étouffante, | " " sultry. |

---

[1] Notice that with any other adjectives than **beau, vilain,** and **mauvais, un** has to precede the word **temps,** and the adjective comes last.

[2] **Mȧ-ñē-fēk'**; also, **superbe.** — [3] **Tü-mēd', lōōr.**

[4] **Glȧ-sē-ȧl', brōō-yȧr', bōō', pōō-sē-air', vĕr-glä, shȧ-lŭr ā-tōō-fan'-t'.** (Lit.: *It makes a stifling heat!*)

*The following vocabulary to be learned by heart.*

## VOCABULARY.

### THE WEATHER.

| | |
|---|---|
| Il tombe,[1] | There falls. |
| Il tombe de la pluie, | It is raining. |
| " " " " neige, | " " snowing. |
| " " " " grêle, | " " hai.ing. |
| *Or, simply:* | |
| Il pleut (plû), | It rains. |
| Il neige (nĕzh'), | It is snowing. |
| Il grêle (grêl'), | " " hailing. |
| Il gèle (zhĕl'), | " " freezing. |
| Il dégèle[2] (dā-zhĕl'), | " " thawing. |
| Il a plu (plü), | It rained. |
| Il pleuvait (plŭ-vĕh'), | It was raining. |
| Il a neigé, | It snowed. |
| Il neigeait (nĕh-zhĕh'), | It was snowing. |
| Il va geler (zh'lā), | It is going to freeze. |
| Le temps se met‿au beau,[3] | The weather is improving. |
| Le temps va se mettre à‿la pluie,[4] | It 's going to rain. |
| Le temps se gâte,[5] | The weather is getting bad. |
| Quel temps! | What weather! |
| Quel beau temps! | " fine weather. |
| Quel temps abominable! | What frightful weather! |
| Quelle chaleur![6] | How hot it is! |

---

[1] Lit.: *It* falls. The impersonal use of *it* for *there* in French has already been brought to the learner's notice.

[2] Lit.: It "*un*freezes."

[3] **S'mĕh tō bō'.** Lit.: *Puts itself to the fine.*

[4] Also, **Il va pleuvoir.**

[5] Lit.: The weather is-spoiling (*itself*, **se**). — [6] Lit.: What heat!

*To be learned by heart and repeated aloud as a real conversation, whether for self-study or preparation for the class-room.*

## CONVERSATIONS.

### 1.—*DU TEMPS.*

Qu'il fait chaud, aujourd'hui![1]—N'est ce pas? Il n'a pas fait si chaud *de* tout l'été.—Ne marchez pas si vite.[2] Je suis tout‿en nage.[3]—Oui, cela vous fait transpirer.[4]

Qu'avez-vous donc?—Cette voiture m'a éclaboussée.[5] Voilà ma nouvelle robe couverte[6] de boue.—Quel temps! Ce matin, il faisait du soleil, et à présent, il pleut‿à verse.—Mettons-nous‿à couvert.

### 2.—*POUR PRENDRE‿UN FIACRE.*

Cocher! Êtes-vous pris?—Non, Madame.—Je vous prends‿à l'heure. Regardez‿à votre montre.—Pourquoi ne le prenez-vous pas‿à la course?—Parce que je veux d'abord vous mener voir[7] Madame du Châtelet.—Madame, il est quatre‿heures moins‿un quart.—Bien, rue du Bac, numéro 295.

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

[1] How warm it is!— [2] Do not walk so fast.

[3] **Tōō tan nâzh'** (lit.: all *in* swimming), all over perspiration.

[4] Makes you perspire.— [5] Spattered (with mud).

[6] **Kōō-vĕr'-t dŭ bōō',** covered with mud.

[7] Take you to-see. **Mener,** to take (*any one anywhere*), to lead.

### 3. — *VISITE INFRUCTUEUSE.**

Madame du Châtelet est-elle chez elle? — Non, madame, elle n'y est pas.[1] — Quel dommage! — Mais madame ne tardera pas à[2] rentrer. Donnez-vous la peine d'entrer et de vous asseoir.[3] — Non, nous ne pouvons pas attendre. Veuillez lui remettre[4] ces cartes, et dites-lui que nous sommes bien contrariées[5] d'être privées[6] du plaisir de la voir.

### 4. — *AUTRE VISITE.*

Madame du Châtelet est-elle visible?[7] Oui, madame. Donnez-vous la peine d'entrer au salon.

Ah! bonjour, ma chère. C'est un vrai plaisir de vous voir.[8] — Je vous dérange, peut-être?[9] — Non, pas du tout. Donnez-vous la peine de vous asseoir. . . . .

Quel temps magnifique, n'est-ce pas? En effet. Mais les jours diminuent.[10] Il fait déjà nuit. Jean, allumez. On n'y voit plus[11] . . . . .

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

[1] She is not in (**y**). Also, **Elle n'est pas chez elle.**

[2] **Nŭ târ-drâ pä zâ** — will not be long; lit.: will *not be tardy in* coming-in.

[3] Please walk in, etc.; lit.: give yourself the trouble to walk in and *to sit yourself.* — [4] Give (lit.: hand) her.

[5] **Kon-trâ'-rē-ā,** sorry, annoyed; *feminine plural.*

[6] Deprived. — [7] Lit.: visible; *i. e.* 'at home.'

[8] I am so very glad to see you! Lit.: It is a real pleasure, etc.

[9] **Zhŭ vōō dā-ranzh pŭ-tê'-tr',** I hope I don't disturb you. Lit.: Perhaps I disturb you.

[10] **Dē-mē-nü',** are getting shorter. Lit.: diminish.

[11] Light (up). It 's too dark (lit.: *one there sees no more*).

* **Vē-zē-tin-frük-tü-ûz',** Useless Visit.

*To be translated and written into French, but also to be treated orally in the class-room. (For Self-Study, see* ***Directions*** *before* ***Part I.****)*

## EXERCISES.

### 1.—*ABOUT THE WEATHER.*

How is the weather to-day?—It is splendid. Get up; we'll go (and) take a walk.[1]—I cannot. I must go down town (and) buy a trunk.—What for?—I want to take the 3.45 train,[2] to-morrow afternoon. To what store would you advise me to[3] go?—Go to the Bazar du Voyage. They sell very cheap.

### 2.—*SKATING,* ETC.*

The weather is improving.—Yes, but it is freezing still.[4] Let us go (and) skate in the[5] Bois de Boulogne.—I am willing. But I haven't any skates.[6]—You can hire a pair, over there.[7]—All right, let us go.[8]

What is making that noise against the window?[9]

---

**Aids to Translation.**

[1] **Levez-vous; nous irons nous promener** (lit.: *promenade ourselves*).— [2] The train of 3.45 (*quarter to four*).

[3] **Me conseilleriez-vous d'; or, voudriez-vous me conseiller d'.**

[4] **Encore.**— [5] **Allons patiner au.**

[6] **De patins (pă-tin').**

[7] **En louer une paire** (lit.: *of them* **(En)** to-rent, etc.).

[8] **Très bien, partons.** When *to go* really means *to go away,* **partir** is used instead of **aller.**

[9] **Qu'est-ce qui fait ce bruit contre la fenêtre.**

* **Patinage; pă-tē-năzh'.**

It is not raining, I hope.[1] — No, it is too cold for that.[2] It is hailing. — What frightful weather! Shall we *go out*[3] in such weather? — Yes, let us *go out* anyhow.[4]

---

**Note. — Study the Peculiar Verbs in "er," page 500.**

---

### 3. — *ON MEETING.*

Did you see Mr. Habberton, this morning? — Yes, I saw him on Broadway. — Well, did you speak to him about that little affair in Wall street?[5] — No, I did n't tell him (about) it.[6] — Why did n't you?[7] — Because he did n't ask me.[8] I thought he knew it.[9] — Have Caswell and Co. sent us those packages?[10] — They have n't sent them yet.[11] — Why did n't you write to them about it?[12] — I did,[13] but they have not answered me yet.[14]

---

**Aids to Translation.**

1 **J'espére.** — 2 **Cela.** — 3 **Sortirons-nous?**
4 **Sortons, quand même** (lit.: *when even*).
5 **De cette petite affaire à la Bourse?**
6 I *it to him* have (**ai**) not told (**dit**). N. B. — Don't forget **ne.**
7 Why *it to-him* have (**avez**) you not told? Mind **ne.**
8 He *me it* has (**a**) not asked (**demandé**).
9 **Je croyais qu'il le savait.**
10 Caswell and Co. to-us have they sent those packages (**paquets**)?
11 They *to-us them* have not yet (**encore**) sent (**envoyés**). Mind **ne.**
12 Why *it to-them* . . . . . **écrit.**
13 I it to-them have written.
14 They me have not yet answered (**répondu**).

***To be read by means of the literal translation opposite, then without it, in preparation for reading aloud and translating in class.***

## LECTURE.

### LE PASSAGE DE L'OPÉRA.—LE GRAND OPÉRA.

—Maintenant, au passage de l'Opéra!

—Oh! que de[1] brillants équipages devant ce grand bazar!

—Que voulez-vous dire?

—De l'autre côté des boulevards.

—Ah!—Mais nous voici au passage.

—Que de monde!

—Oui; ce passage a la vogue. Il la doit à l'élégance de ses magasins, à son aristocratie de bon goût, à ses allures de bonne compagnie. Les entrepreneurs ont fait là une fameuse spéculation!

—Ah! nous voici dans la galerie Colbert. Elle[2] vaut bien le passage dont[3] nous sortons, n'est-ce pas? —Mais à propos, êtes-vous curieux de voir la galerie Vivienne? Elle est négligée, mal tenue. Néanmoins, c'est un des passages les plus fréquentés[4] de la capitale.

—Fréquenté par le beau monde?

—Oh! non; par les commerçants. Tout ce que vous y voyez s'adresse aux besoins d'une vie paisible

---

[1] **Que de!** How many! *i. e.*, What (*a quantity*) of!

[2] Lit.: *She* (*galerie* being feminine). — [3] **Dont**=of-which, whose.

[4] Superlatives are often placed after the noun in French, the article being repeated. "It is one of *the* covered-streets *the* most frequented."

*For Self-Study, should be read by means of the literal translation, then without it, and when thoroughly understood, read aloud in French.*

## READING.

### THE PASSAGE DE L'OPÉRA.—THE "GRAND OPÉRA."

—Now, to the passage of-the Opera!

—Oh! what fine turn-outs before that great bazar!

—Where do you mean?

—On the other side of-the Boulevards.

—Oh!—But here we are at the passage.

—What a crowd![1]

—Yes; this passage has the vogue. It owes *it* to the elegance of its stores, to its refined aristocracy, to its good society ways.[2] The managers have made there a famous speculation![3]

—But here we are in the Colbert Gallery! It's just as fine as the gallery from-which we are-coming-out, is it not?—But, by the way, are you curious to see the Vivienne Gallery? It is neglected, badly kept. Nevertheless, it is one of the passages the most frequented of the capital.

—Frequented by the *élite?*[4]

—Oh! no; by the tradespeople. All (*that which*) you there see addresses itself to-the needs of a life

---

[1] **Monde** = world, *or* people; **que de monde!** lit.: What (*a quantity of*) people!— [2] To its ways of good society.

[3] *i. e.*, a *fine* speculation.

[4] Lit.: the fine *world*, the fine *people*.

et calculée. C'est un foyer[1] continuel d'activité, un des centres de l'industrie parisienne.

— Il nous reste encore deux heures avant de nous rendre au théâtre. Ne pourrions-nous pas visiter le Diorama?

— Il n'existe plus. C'était un spectacle très amusant. Vous connaissez de réputation l'auteur, Daguerre?

— Celui qui a donné son nom au daguerréotype?

— Lui-même.

— On dit que ce Diorama était une des merveilles de Paris. L'illusion, parait-il,[2] était si complète qu'on aurait juré être à Rome, à Saint-Pétersbourg, ou dans les montagnes de la Suisse. On parlait aussi beaucoup des effets de lumière. L'ombre projetée par les arbres suivait, dit-on,[2] tous les mouvements que le vent imprimait à leurs branches. Le brouillard se formait et se dissipait à volonté. Vous croyez peut-être que cette mécanique lui coûtait cher? Eh bien, pas du tout.

— Comment ça?

— Oh! ce n'est pas bien malin. Il y avait des châssis placés à distance[3] et tendus de gaze. Quand on les rapprochait, l'air devenait obscur; quand on les éloignait, il redevenait clair. — Mais l'heure avance et nous ne trouverons plus de place à l'Opéra. Dépêchons-nous. Vous allez voir des costumes frais et élégants, de magnifiques décors qui ravissent le public par leur variété, leur richesse et leur nouveauté.

---

[1] **Foyer** = center (lit.: *hearth*).

[2] *Seems it*, instead of *it seems; say they* instead of *they say* — an inversion customary with the French in narration.

[3] *Anglice*, from distance to distance.

peaceful and regulated. It is a continual focus of activity, one of-the centers of Parisian industry.

— There to-us remains yet two hours before *rendering ourselves* to the theatre. Could we not visit the Diorama?

— It does not exist any more. But it was a very amusing show. You know *of* reputation the author, Daguerre?

— The-one who has . . . . . to-the daguerreotype?

— Himself.

— They say that this Diorama was one of the marvels of Paris. The illusion, it seems, was so complete that one would have vowed he was[1] in . . . . . . . . . . People spoke also much of the effects of light. The shadow projected by the trees followed, say they, all the movements which the wind imparted[2] to their limbs. The fog formed (*itself*) and dispersed (itself)[3] at will. You think perhaps that all this mechanism cost him dear? Well, not at all.

— How (is) that?

— Oh! it is not very wonderful.[4] There were sashes placed *at distance* and stretched over with gauze. When one them brought together, the air became dark; when one them separated, it became-again clear. — But the hour is-advancing,[5] and we will find no-more places at the opera. Let-us-make-haste. You are-going to see fresh and elegant costumes, and magnificent scenery,[6] which . . . . .

---

[1] Lit.: One would-have *sworn to-be.* — [2] Lit.: imprinted.
[3] Lit.: dissipated itself. — [4] Lit.: very shrewd.
[5] *Anglice,* Time is passing. — [6] Lit.: Sceneries which delight . . . ., by their variety, their richness . . . . .

*Learn the following French letter by heart, and write it some time after from memory.*

## CORRESPONDANCE COMMERCIALE.

### *LETTRE D'OFFRES DE SERVICES.*

NEW YORK, le 29 mars, 1888.

Messieurs Lachat et Legros, à Paris,

MESSIEURS,

Nous venons, par la présente, vous faire nos offres de services. Notre capital et la considération dont nous jouissons sur la place nous permettent de traiter avantageusement les affaires qui nous sont confiées. Pour preuve, nous vous soumettons, ci-inclus, la quote des marchandises achetées par nous hier pour le compte de[1] M. Lancan, de votre ville. Si vous voulez bien nous confier vos commandes, nous pouvons vous assurer que nous nous acquitterons de[2] la commission à votre satisfaction entière et parfaite.

En attendant de vous lire,[4] nous vous prions d'agréer l'assurance de notre haute considération,

Robert et Cie [3]

---

### *TRANSLATION.*

Messrs. Lachat and Legros, Paris.—Gentlemen, We come by the present (writing) to make our offer of services to you. Our capital and the consideration we enjoy in the market allow us advantageously to treat what business is intrusted to us. As a proof, we submit to you, herein enclosed, the quotation . . . . . . . . . intrust your orders to us, we can assure you that we will execute the commission to your entire satisfaction.

---

[1] Lit.: For the account of.— [2] Lit.: We will acquit ourselves of.
[3] Pronounced always in full, **Robert et Compagnie (Rò-bĕr ā kon-pà-ñē')**; never, **ā sē'.** — [4] Lit.: *While waiting to read you.*

# PART III.

## THE WEATHER AND THE CITY.

## LE TEMPS ET LA VILLE.

### SECTION III.

1. ABOUT THE WEATHER.
2. USE OF IL FAUT.
3. VOCABULARY: THE CITY.
4. TO ASK ONE'S WAY.
5. IN A CAB AND OUT.
6. À PROPOS DE FRANÇAIS.
7. IN PARIS.
8. ACCEPTANCE AND ORDER.

## III.

### FRENCH.

## 1. Il nous faudra[1] rester à la maison.

Le ciel est couvert. Il faut[2] rester à la maison.

Qu'est-ce que votre père a dit?
Il a dit qu'il nous faut rester à la maison.
Pourquoi ça?
Parce que nous allons avoir de l'eau. Le temps est si couvert.

---

## 2. Qui est-ce qui[3] fait tant de bruit.

C'est Julie, n'est-ce pas?
Qu'est-ce que vous dites?[4]
Je dis que c'est Julie.
Dites-lui qu'il faut se taire.
Elle est fâchée parce qu'il lui faut rester à la maison.

---

### NOTES.

[1] **Il faudra,** *There*-will-be-necessary; future of **falloir,** *to-be-necessary.* — [2] **Il faut** indicative present of **falloir.**

[3] *Who,* beginning an interrogative sentence, is rendered by **Qui,** or **Qui est-ce qui.** Thus, **qui fait tant de bruit?** or **qui est-ce qui fait tant de bruit?** (Lit.: *Who is it who* makes, etc.). **Qui est-ce qui** is used when more energy is required, or for euphony.

[4] *What,* at the beginning of an interrogative sentence, is rendered either by **que or qu'est-ce que.** *What do you say* = **que dites-vous** (lit.: *What say you?*), or, **qu'est-ce vous dites** (lit.: *What is it that you say?*). The latter is used when more energy is required, or for euphony.

## III.

| PRONUNCIATION. | TRANSLATION. |
|---|---|
| **1. Ēl nōō fō-drȧ′ rĕs-tā′ ȧ lȧ mĕh-zon′.** | **We shall have to stay at home.**[1] |
| Lŭ sē-ĕl ĕh kōō-vĕr′. | The sky is overcast. We must stay at home.[2] |
| Kĕs kŭ. | What did your father say?[3] |
| | He said we must stay at home. |
| Pōōr-kȯ-ȧ sȧ′? | Why so?[4] |
| Lŭ tan ĕh sē kōō-vĕr′. | Because we are going to have rain.[5] The weather is so cloudy.[6] |

---

| PRONUNCIATION. | TRANSLATION. |
|---|---|
| **2. Kē ĕs kē fĕh′ tan-d brü-ē′?** | **Who is making so much noise?**[7] |
| Zhü-lē′, nĕs pä′? | It is Julia, is n't it? |
| Kĕs kŭ vōō dēt′? | What do you say? |
| Zhŭ dĕk sĕh zhü-lē′. | I say it is Julia. |
| Kēl fōs tair′. | Tell her she must be silent.[8] |
| Fä-shā′. | She is angry because she has[9] to stay at home.[10] |

---

### LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 It to-us will-be-necessary to.
2 It is necessary to.
3 What is this that your father has said?
4 Why that? — 5 Water. — 6 Covered.
7 Who is this who makes so-much *of* noise?
8 Tell-her that it-is-necessary herself to-silence.
9 Because it is-necessary for-her.
10 At the house. — When speaking to or about any one either in their own house, or if we frequent their house, we often use: **à la maison,** for *home* or *at home* (instead of **chez moi, chez lui, chez elle, chez vous,** etc.).

Je n'y peux rien. Le temps est trop abominable pour sortir.

Quand on ne peut rien à une chose, il faut l'endurer.

Qu'elle attende[1] jusqu'à demain. Elle n'y perdra rien.

---

**3. Il me faudra garder la maison toute la journée.**

Pourquoi (*donc*) vous faudra-t-il rester à la maison ?[2]

Pour surveiller les ouvriers qui vont venir.

À propos. Il nous faut faire refaire le plafond de la salle à manger, pendant que les ouvriers y sont.

Ne ferions[3]-nous pas mieux de faire badigeonner les murs de la cuisine.

Il est trop tard.

---

**4. Il fallait[4] dire cela hier, pendant que les badigeonneurs y étaient.[5]**

---

NOTES.

[1] Third person singular of the imperative of **attendre.**

[2] With no emphasis on the word *why* in English, it would be simply: **Pourquoi vous faudra-t-il,** etc.

[3] Conditional of **faire.**

[4] **Il fallait** (imperfect of **falloir**), *It was-necessary.*

[5] Could also say, **pendant que les badigeonneurs étaient ici.** But **y** is often used for *here*, as well as for *there*, when the place referred to has already been mentioned, or is self-evident.

| | |
|---|---|
| Zhnē pû rē-i*n*' . . . . . trò-pà-bò-mē-nà'-bl'. | I can't help it.[1] The weather is too wretchedly bad to go out. |
| Ka*n*-to*n* n'pû rē-i*n* nà . . . . la*n*-dü-rā'. | What can't be cured, must be endured.[2] |
| Zhüs-kàd-mi*n*'. | Let her wait[3] till to-morrow. She won't lose anything by it. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **3. Ēl mŭ fō-drà gàr-dā là mĕh-zo*n*'.** | **I'll have to stay at home all day.[4]** |
| Pōōr-kò-à sà. | *Why* will you have[5] to stay in? |
| Sür-vĕh-yā lĕh zōō-vrē-yā' kē vo*n* v'nēr'. | To keep watch over the workmen who are coming. |
| Plà-fo*n* dlà sàl à ma*n*-zhā', pa*n*-da*n* klĕh zōō-vrē-yā zē so*n*'. | By the way; we must have[6] the ceiling in the dining-room done while the workmen are here. |
| Bà-dē-zhò-nā lĕh mür dŭ là kü-ē-zēn'? | Had we not better have[7] the kitchen walls whitewashed too? |
| | It is too late. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **4. Ēl fà-lĕh dēr sŭ-là ē-yĕr, pa*n*-da*n* klĕh bà-dē-zhò-nür ē ā-tĕh'.** | **You should have mentioned it yesterday[8] while the whitewashers were here.** |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] I about-it (**y**) can nothing.
[2] When one *can't anything* to a thing, it-is-necessary it.
[3] That she may wait.
[4] It for-me will-be-necessary to keep the house.
[5] Why so, to-you will-it-be-necessary, etc.
[6] It for-us is-necessary to-make rebuild.
[7] Would we not do better.
[8] It was-necessary to-say that.

C'est égal. Il faudra faire nettoyer et badigeonner la cave.

D'ailleurs, à votre place, j'aurais fait remettre toute[1] la maison à neuf.

Vous plaisantez.
Vous devriez bien savoir que je n'ai pas les moyens de faire une dépense pareille.

Mais enfin ; combien faudrait-il ?

Il ne faudrait pas moins de[2] deux mille dollars.

En effet, c'est trop d'argent.
Il faut encore attendre.

---

## 5. Tiens! Voilà notre ami Bocage.

Vraiment, on ne vous voit plus.
Quel temps ! N'est-ce pas ?[3]
Tenez ! Il tonne.
Mais, il faut que je vous parle.
Je voudrais vous emprunter de l'argent.
Combien vous faut-il ?

---

### NOTES.

[1] *All* = **tout,** before nouns in the masculine singular, **toute** before nouns in the feminine singular ; **tous** and **toutes** before plural nouns.

[2] Not less *of.* Notice the use of **de** after **plus** and **moins** before a number.

[3] **N'est-ce pas,** lit. : *is it not?* is often used in French merely to strengthen the expression.

| | |
|---|---|
| Fair nĕh-tó-á-yā ā bá-dē-zhó-nā′ | No matter.[1] We will have to have the cellar cleaned and whitewashed.[2] |
| Dá-yŭr . . . . . fĕh r'mĕh′-tr'. | Anyway, if I had been in your place, I would have had the whole house gone over.[3] |
| Plĕh-za*n*-tā′. | You are joking, surely.[4] |
| Vōō dŭ-vrē-yā′ . . . . . lĕh mó-á-yi*n*′ . . . . . pá-rĕh′-y*ŭ*. | You ought to know that I have not the means to go to such an expense.[5] |
| Mĕh za*n*-fi*n*. | But now,[6] how much would be needed?[7] |
| Pä mó-i*nd* dû mēl. | I would not need less than two thousand dollars. |
| | Yes, it is too much money. |
| Ēl fō ta*n*-kor á-ta*n*′-dr'. | We must wait. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **5. Tē-i*n*′! Vó-á-lá nó-trá-mē′.** | **Why! Here is our friend Bocage!** |
| O*n* n'vōō vó-á plü′. | You are becoming a stranger.[8] |
| Nĕs pä′. | What weather! Eh? |
| Ēl tón′. | See! It is thundering. |
| Kŭzh vōō pár′-l'. | But I must speak to you. |
| Vōō za*n*-pru*n*-tā′. | I want to borrow some money. |
| | How much do you need?[9] |

---

**LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.**

[1] It is *equal* (*i. e.*, *indifferent*).
[2] It will-be-necessary to-make to-clean, etc.
[3] *At* your place, I would-have made to-*re*-put all the house *to* new.
[4] You jest. — [5] An expense *similar*. — [6] But *finally*.
[7] How much would-there-be-necessary?
[8] One sees you no more. — [9] How much to-you is-there-necessary.

## 6. Il faut.[1]

NOTE. — *The use of* **il faut** *being of some difficulty, and its presentation in the various text-books generally a confusing and bewildering one, the following directions have been introduced.*

### "IL FAUT" MAY BE USED IN THREE WAYS.*

***First Way.*** — **With the infinitive only.** — This is the case whenever the application is **general** or **self-evident.** Ex.:

**1. General.** { In order to prosper, we must work.
Pour prospérer, il faut travailler.[2]

**2. Self-evident;** *i. e.* when those spoken to must know from the circumstances that the order or injunction is meant for them. For instance:

*To an office-boy:*

You must post these letters.
Il faut mettre ces lettres à la poste.[3]

*Or, when giving any order of such evident application:*

We must close the store, Il faut fermer le magasin.

*Or, if speaking, for instance, to persons about to leave:*

We (*or,* you) must go = Il faut partir. — etc., etc.

---

***Second Way.*** — **With the infinitive and a pronoun.** — This takes place, when, the case not being a general

---

[1] **Il faut** (indicative present of **falloir,** *to-be-necessary*), *It* is-necessary. *Anglice,* I, thou, he, she, we, you *or* they must.

[2] It is-necessary to-work.

[3] It is-necessary to-put these letters in the post.

* The following rule, of course, applies to all the tenses of **falloir** (**il faudra,** etc. ) as well as to **il faut.**

one, the personality naturally needs to be represented. Ex.:

When must you leave?=Quand vous faut-il partir?†
I must go to-day.=Il me faut partir[1] aujourd'hui.
Must she not send?=Ne lui[2] faut-il pas envoyer?

***Third Way.*** — **With "que" and the subjunctive.** — This is used also when the personality naturally needs to be expressed, but when at the same time, more energy is required; or else, for the sake of euphony. Thus:

You must go there before 12 o'clock.
Il faut que vous y alliez[3] avant midi.

Must she not tell him so?
Ne faut-il pas qu'elle le lui dise?[4]

---

## WHEN THE SUBJECT IS A NOUN.

In all cases treated above, the subject has been a *pronoun.* When, instead, a *noun* is the subject, *only* the third form (subjunctive, with **que**) can ever be used. Ex.:

My brother must go.
Il faut que mon frère parte.

Mr. X must pay $1000 by the 15th.
Il faut que M. X paie 1000 dollars pour le quinze.[5]

Must not his partner tell him about it?[6]
Ne faut-il pas que son associé le lui dise?

---

[1] It for-me is-necessary to start.
[2] For-her is-it-not-necessary to-send?
[3] It is-necessary that you there go.
[4] Is-it-not-necessary that she it to-him say?
[5] It is-necessary that Mr. X pay $1000 *for* the 15th.
[6] Is-it-not-necessary that his partner it to-him say?
† When to-you is-it-necessary to-start?

**7. Combien vous faudrait-il[1] pour faire rebâtir la maison?**

Il ne me faudrait pas moins de cent mille francs.

Vous faudrait-il autant que cela?

Pas un sou de moins.
Mais Monsieur Mackay me disait qu'il ne lui faudrait pas plus de soixante-quinze mille francs pour faire rebâtir la sienne.

Monsieur Mackay a beau dire.[2]

Il ne me fera jamais croire que des vessies sont des lanternes.

---

**8. Si vous voulez que je vous mène[3] au spectacle ce soir, il faut que vous soyez ici à sept heures.**

Ne craignez[4] rien. Je serai ici à l'heure dite.

C'est ce qu'il faut.
Quel chapeau allez-vous mettre?

---

NOTES.

[1] Conditional of **falloir,** *to be-necessary.* — **Il faut, Il faudrait** are also used in the sense *to need.* **Il me faut** = *I need* (lit.: *There* to-me is-necessary); **Il me faudrait** = *I would need* (lit.: *There* to-me would-be-necessary).

[2] **Avoir beau dire,** *to talk in vain* (lit.: to-have (*a*) fine (*time*) talking). **Vous avez beau dire** = *You are talking in vain, or* (colloquially) *You may say what you please.*

[3] From **mener,** *to take* (*any one anywhere*), to lead.

[4] From **craindre,** *to fear.* Indicative present: **Je crains, tu crains, il craint, nous craignons, vous craignez, ils craignent;** *I fear, etc.*

| | |
|---|---|
| **7. Kon-bē-in voo fō-drĕh tĕl pōōr fair rŭ-bä-tĕr?** | **How much would you need for rebuilding the house?**[1] |
| Pä mó-in'. | I would not need[2] a cent less than 100000 francs. |
| Ō-tank s'lȧ'. | Would you need[3] as much as that? |
| Pä zun sōōd mó-in'. | Not a cent less. |
| Mȧ-kām-dē-zĕh .... plüd-só-ȧ-sant-kinz mĕl. | But Mr. Mackay was telling me that he would not need more than 75000 dollars to have his (house) rebuilt. |
| Ȧ bō dĕr'. | Mr. Mackay may say what he likes.[4] |
| Zhȧ-mĕh kró-ȧr kŭ dĕh vĕh-sē son dĕh lan-tĕr'-n'. | He never will make me believe that the moon is made of green cheese.[5] |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **8. Sē voo vōō-lā kŭzh voo mĕn ō spĕk-tȧ-kl' ..... só-ȧ-yā zē-sē ȧ sĕh-tŭr'.** | **If you want me to take you to the theater, this evening, you must be here[6] at seven o'clock.** |
| Nŭ krĕh-ñā rē-in'. Zhŭs-rā ē-sē ȧ lŭr dĕt'. | Don't be afraid.[7] I shall be here on time.[8] |
| Sĕh skĕl fō'. | That 's right.[9] |
| Kĕl shȧ-pō. | What bonnet are you going to put on?[10] |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] How much to-you would-it-be-necessary for to-have rebuilt the house?

[2] There to-me would-not-be-necessary.

[3] To you would there-be-necessary.

[4] Mr. Mackay *has fine* to-talk; *i. e.*, "has it fine, talking," *i. e.* is talking in vain.

[5] He will-make me never believe that bladders are lanterns.

[6] It is-necessary that you be here. — [7] Fear nothing.

[8] At the hour said.

[9] That is what (*strictly*, that which) is necessary.

[10] **mettre** = to put, *or* to put on.

Je vais mettre mon chapeau de satin blanc.
Il ne faut pas mettre celui-là.
Pourquoi pas?

Il ne me plaît pas du tout.[1]
Il est pourtant tout à fait à la mode.
C'est possible. Mais je ne le trouve pas du tout comme il faut.

---

## 9. À propos, ne nous faut il pas inviter Madame de X.?

Non. Il ne faut pas le faire.[2]
Pourquoi ne faut-il pas le faire?
Je trouve[3] qu'elle n'est pas du tout comme il faut.

Mais ne faut-il pas inviter Monsieur Basly?

C'est un homme très comme il faut, n'est-ce pas?

C'est ce qu'on dit. Il faudra que je l'invite.

---

### NOTES.

[1] Could also say, **je ne l'aime pas du tout.** But **aimer,** *to like, to love,* refers rather more especially to *settled* tastes or affections. When *to like* expresses merely an opinion or impression, the French prefer, whenever practicable, to use some indirect form like *That does not please me* (or *suit me*), instead of *I do not like it; Do you find it good?* instead of *Do you like it? etc.*

[2] Notice the tendency, in French, to complete a sentence. English: *We must not.* French: *We must not do it.*

[3] **Je trouve,** lit.: *I find;* here, *I think. To think* may be expressed by **penser, croire** or **trouver. Penser** refers rather to *thought,* **croire** to a *belief,* **trouver** to an *opinion.*

| | |
|---|---|
| Shȧ-pōd sȧ-tin blan′. | I am going to put on my white satin bonnet. |
| Sŭ-lü-ē-lȧ′. | You must not put on that one. |
| | Why not? |
| Plĕh pä dü tōō′. | I don't like it at all.[1] |
| Tōō-tȧ-fĕh-tȧ lā mȯd′. | But it's quite in the fashion.[2] |
| Zhŭn lŭ trōōv pä dü tōō kȯ-mēl-fō′. | That may be; but I do not think it is nice at all.[3] |

| | |
|---|---|
| **9. Á prȯ-pō, nŭ nōō fō-tēl pä zin-vē-tā mȧ-dȧm dŭ Ēks?** | **By the way, must we not invite Mrs. de X.?** |
| Päl fair′. | No. We must not.[4] |
| | Why must n't we?[5] |
| Kȯ-mēl fō′. | I think she is not at all a nice person.[6] |
| Mŭs-yû Bä-lē′? | But should we not invite[7] Mr Basly? |
| Sĕh tun nȯm′. | He[8] is a very nice man,[9] is he not? |
| Sĕh skon dē′. | That 's what they say. I must[10] invite him. |

---

**LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.**

[1] It pleases me not at all.
[2] But it is quite to the fashion.
[3] I find it not at all as it is-necessary (*i. e.* as it should be).
[4] It is-not-necessary it to-do.
[5] Why is-it-not-necessary it to do.
[6] That she is not at all as it is-necessary (*i. e.* as it should be).
[7] Why is-it-not-necessary to invite.
[8] Before a noun or pronoun, *he*, *she*, *it* (or *they*) are rendered by **ce** instead of **il.** *It is Mr. so and so* = **C'est Monsieur un tel;** *It is she* = **C'est elle.** — [9] A man very-much as should be.
[10] That's what *one* says. It will-be-necessary that I —.

Mais il faut que Jean fasse[1] venir la voiture.

Il faudra aussi que Jeanne m'apporte de l'encre, du papier et des plumes.

Pourquoi faire?

Il faut que j'écrive[2] à ma couturière de venir m'essayer ma robe.

---

**10. Qu'est-ce que vous allez faire?[3]**

Il faut que je sonne[4] la domestique.

Voulez-vous avoir l'obligeance de me passer la sonnette?

Bien certainement. La voici.

Ah! voici Jeannette.

Madame m'a fait demander?

Oui. Il me faut de l'encre.[5]

Celle de l'encrier est tout à fait séchée, madame.

Eh bien, il faut en aller[6] chercher.

Apportez-moi aussi des plumes et du papier à lettres.

Mais, madame, que faut-il que je fasse pour le dîner?

---

NOTES.

[1] Subjunctive present of **faire.** — [2] Subjunctive present of **écrire.**

[3] Two forms of questions with *What.* **Qu'est-ce que vous allez faire** (lit.: *What is it that you go to-do?*); and, **qu'allez-vous faire** (lit.: *What go you to-do?*).

[4] **Third form,** more energy in expression. Here it is used mainly for euphony.

[5] **Second form,** personality necessarily coming in.

[6] **First form,** self-evident application.

| | |
|---|---|
| Fȧs vŭ-nēr. | But John must order the carriage.[1] |
| Mȧ-por′-t′ dŭ la*n*′-kr′, dü pȧ-pē‿ā ā dĕh plüm′. | Jane will also have to bring me some ink, paper, and pens. |
| | What for? |
| Kŭ zhā-krē-vȧ mȧ kōō-tü-rē‿air′ dŭv-nēr mĕh-sā-yā... | I must write to my dressmaker to come and try on my dress.[2] |

| | |
|---|---|
| **10. Kĕs-kŭ vōō zȧ-lā....** | **What are you going to do?** |
| Kŭzh sȯn. | I must ring the servant. |
| Vōō-lā vōō zȧ-vȯ‿ȧr lȯ-blē-zha*n*′-s dŭm pä-sā lȧ sȯ-nĕt′? | Will you have the kindness to hand me[3] the bell? |
| Bē‿i*n* sĕr-tĕn-ma*n*′. | Certainly. Here it is. |
| Zhä-nĕt′. | Ah! Here is Jeanette. |
| Mȧ fĕd-ma*n*-dā′. | Madam has called for[4] me? |
| Dŭ lā*n*-kr′. | Yes. I must have some ink.[5] |
| La*n*-krē-yā. | That in the[6] inkstand is all dried up. |
| Fō-ta*n* nȧ-lā shĕr-shā′. | Well, then; you must go and get some.[7] |
| Dü pȧ-pē‿ā ȧ lĕh′-tr′. | Bring me also some pens and note paper. |
| Kŭ fō-tēl kŭzh fȧs. | But, what must I make[8] for dinner? |

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] It is-necessary that John *have* the carriage come.
[2] That I write to my dressmaker to come to-me to-try my dress.
[3] To pass me the bell.
[4] Madame me has made to-call.
[5] *There* to-me is-necessary some ink.
[6] That *of* the inkstand.
[7] It is-necessary some (**en**) to-go to-get.
[8] What is-it-necessary that I make for the dinner.

Le boucher a-t-il envoyé la viande?
Oui, Madame.
Très bien. Faites-la rôtir et mettez un poulet à la broche.

---

**Note. — Study the irregular verb "aller."**

---

**11. Maintenant, il faut que j'aille à mes affaires.**

Jean, avez-vous fait venir la voiture?

Oui, monsieur, elle est à la porte.

Mon ami, vous oubliez. Il me faut de l'argent.

Il faut que je fasse mes achats de Noël.

Combien vous faut-il?
Il me faut environ cent cinquante dollars.

C'est trop. Il faudra vous[1] contenter de cent.

Les affaires ne vont pas bien, à présent.

---

NOTES.

[1] When the verb following **il faut** is a reflexive verb and, hence, has a pronoun expressing the personality placed before it, no pronoun is used before **il faut. Il faudra vous contenter,** not **Il vous faudra vous contenter. Il faut vous lever** (*you must get up;* lit.: you must *raise* yourself), not **Il vous faut vous lever.**

| | |
|---|---|
| A*n*-vó-à-yā lá vē-a*n*′-d′ ? | Has the butcher sent the meat? |
| | Yes, ma'am. |
| Fĕt lá rō-tēr ā mĕh-tā zu*n* pōō-lĕh à lá brósh′. | Very well. Roast it, and put a chicken on to broil.[1] |

**page 514.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **11. Mi*n*t-na*n*, ēl fō k'zhá-yá-mĕh zá-fàir′.** | **Now, I must be off to business.[2]** |
| Fĕv-nēr lá vó-à-tür′. | John, did you order the carriage? |
| | Yes, sir. It is at the door. |
| Mo*n* ná-mē, vōō zōō-blē-yā′. | My dear, you forgot. I need money.[3] |
| Mĕh-zá-shá dŭ nó-ēl′. | I must make my purchases for Christmas. |
| | How much do you need? |
| Fō ta*n*-vē-ro*n* sa*n* si*n*-ka*n*t dó-lár′. | I need about a hundred and fifty dollars. |
| Sĕh trō . . . . . ko*n*-ta*n*-tād sa*n*′. | That 's too much. You will have to be satisfied with[4] a hundred, to-day. |
| Vo*n* pä bē-i*n*′. | Business is bad,[5] just now. |

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] Make it roast and put a chicken *to* the spit.
[2] It is-necessary that I go to my affairs.
[3] *There* to-me is-necessary some money.
[4] It will be necessary to content yourself *of*.
[5] Affairs go not well.

*The following vocabulary to be learned by heart.*

## VOCABULAIRE.

### I.—LA VILLE.

| | |
|---|---|
| La mairie (mĕh-rē'), | The mayor's office. |
| L'hôtel de ville, *m.* (lō-tĕl dŭ vēl'), | The city hall. |
| Le musée (mü-zā'), | The museum. |
| La bibliothèque (bē-blē-yȯ-tĕk'), | The library. |
| L'église, *fem.* (lā-glēz'), | The church. |
| La cathédrale (kȧ-tā-drȧl'), | The cathedral. |
| Une impasse (ü-nin-päs'), | A blind alley. |
| Une boutique (bōō-tēk'), | A shop.[1] |
| Le marché aux fleurs, | The flower-market. |
| Au bout de la rue (ō bōōd lȧ rü'), | At the end of the street. |
| Au haut[2] de la rue (ō ō dlȧ), | Up[2] the street. |
| Au bas[2] " " " (ō bä dlȧ), | Down the street. |
| Le trottoir (trȯ-tȯ-ȧr'), | The sidewalk. |
| La chaussée (shō-sā'), | The roadway. |
| Le pavé (pȧ-vā'), | The pavement. |
| L'asphalte, *m.* (lȧs-fȧl'-t'), | The asphaltum. |
| Le ruisseau[3] (rü-ē-sō'), | The gutter. |
| L'égout, *m.* (lā-gōō'), | The sewer. |
| Prenez la première à[4] droite, | Take the first turning to the right. |
| Tournez à gauche,[5] | Turn to the left. |
| Longez le quai, (lon-zhā l'kā'), | Keep along the wharf. |

---

[1] **Magasin** = store (but, ordinarily larger and finer than a **boutique**).

[2] Lit.: At the top of; at the bottom of.

[3] Also means *a rill.*

[4] **Prŭ-mē-ĕh-rȧ-drȯ-ȧt'.**— [5] **Tōōr-nā zȧ gōsh'.**

*The following sentences to be learned by heart.*

## VOCABULAIRE.

### COMMENT DIT-ON, ETC.

| | |
|---|---|
| Comment dit-on[1] *church* en français? | How do you say *church* in French? |
| On dit, église, | We say, église. |
| Comment l'écrit-on?[2] | How do you spell it? |
| On l'écrit ..... | They spell it ..... |
| Comment prononce-t-on cela?[3] | How do you pronounce it? |
| Ā-glēz', | Ā-glēz'. |
| Qu'est-ce que cela veut dire en espagnol?[4] | What does it mean in Spanish? |
| Cela veut dire ..... | It means ..... |
| Plaît-il?[5] | Beg pardon? |
| Qu'avez-vous dit? | What did you say? |
| Je ne vous ai pas compris, | I did n't understand you. |
| Ne parlez pas si vite, | Don't speak so fast. |
| Comment appelle-t-on[6] cela en allemand? | How do you call it in German? |
| On appelle cela[7] ..... | That is called ..... |

---

[1] **Kŏ-man dē-ton,** lit.: How says one?

[2] **Lā-krē-ton,** lit.: How does one *write* it? The word **épeler**, *to spell, to spell 'out,'* is not used as often as **écrire.**

[3] **Kŏ-man prŏ-non-ston slå';** How do they pronounce that?

[4] **An nĕs-på-ñŏl'.**

[5] **Plĕh tēl',** lit.: Please it? *i. e.* What does it please you to say? Only used for asking any one to repeat. Elsewhere, **Pardon;** etc.

[6] **Kŏ-man tå-pĕl-ton slå an nål-man'.**

[7] **On nå-pĕl slå'.**

*To be learned by heart and repeated aloud as a real conversation, whether for self-study or preparation for the class-room.*

## CONVERSATIONS.

### 1.—*DANS LA RUE.*

Pardon, monsieur, j'ai perdu mon chemin.[1] Voudriez-vous m'indiquer la rue de Rivoli?—Prenez la troisième à droite, puis la deuxième à gauche, et alors poursuivez tout droit jusqu'à[2] la place de l'Opéra. Une fois arrivé là,[3] suivez l'Avenue de l'Opéra, qui vous y conduira[4] tout droit.—J'ai bien peur de me perdre[5] en route.[6]—Si vous craignez[7] de vous perdre, vous pourriez prendre un fiacre.

### 2.—*EN VOITURE.*

Cocher, êtes-vous pris?[8]—Non, monsieur.—Eh bien, je vous prends à l'heure. Regardez à votre montre.—Il est trois heures vingt . . . . . Voici le tarif,[9] monsieur.—Ah, voyons. „*Voitures prises au*

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

[1] I have lost my way.— [2] Pursue, *i. e.* Keep straight on until.

[3] Once (lit.: one time) arrived there; *i. e.* When you get there.

[4] Which will take you there (**y**).

[5] I am very much afraid to get lost. Lit.: To lose myself.

[6] On (the) way.— [7] If you fear.

[8] Taken (past participle of **prendre**).

[9] The cabmen in Paris must always hand to their "fare" a paper with the tariff or rates.

*remisage,*[1] *la course, 1 franc 80 centimes; l'heure, 2 fr. 25. Voitures prises sur la voie publique,*[2] *la course, 1 fr. 50; l'heure 2 fr.„* — Où, monsieur? — Conduisez-moi[3] rue de Rivoli, 620.

### 3. — *EN ARRIVANT À DESTINATION ET POUR REPARTIR.*

Nous voici arrivés. Approchez-vous[4] du trottoir. J'ai peur de mettre le[5] pied dans le ruisseau ..... Puis-je laisser[6] mon parapluie et mon pardessus dans la voiture? — Oui, monsieur ..... Maintenant, au Grand Hôtel. Allez vite.

### 4. — *À PROPOS DE FRANÇAIS.*

Vous parlez français, n'est-ce pas, madame? — Je le parle bien peu. — Je suis sûr[7] que vous le parlez très bien. — Oh, je vous assure que non.[8] Il faut que je l'étudie[9] cet hiver. — Est-ce que vous le trouvez difficile? — Je trouve que la conjugaison[10] des verbes et les terminaisons[11] des adjectifs sont difficiles. Il faut beaucoup de pratique.[12] À propos, il faut que vous me disiez[13] comment on dit *fire* en français. — On dit, feu. — Plaît-il? — On dit, feu.

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

1 Taken at the livery. — 2 Public way, *i. e.*, street. — 3 Take me.

4 Go nearer to the (lit.: approach *yourself of-the*).

5 Put the (*i. e.* my). — 6 Leave. — 7 Sure.

8 I assure you I don't: lit.: *that not.* — 9 Study it.

10 **Ko*n*-zhü-gĕh-zo*n* dĕh vĕr'-b',** conjugation of verbs.

11 **Tĕr-mē-nĕh-zo*n*' dĕh zȧd-zhĕk-tēf',** terminations of adjectives. — 12 **Prȧ-tēk',** one needs a great deal of practice.

13 You must tell me (**dē-zē-ā'**).

*To be translated and written into English, but also to be treated orally in the class-room.*

## EXERCISES.

### 1.—*ABOUT THE TIME.**

What time is it, by[1] your watch?—I cannot tell you. I have not my watch with[2] me. Does not yours go?[3]—No, it's stopped.[4]—Did you forget to wind it?[5]—No. I wound it,[6] last night.[7] I think[8] the spring is broken.[8] I must take it[9] to a watch-maker.

### 2.—*TO ASK ONE'S WAY.*†

Beg pardon. Which is the way[10] to the National Library.—It is[11] very far from here. You must take[12] a 'bus or a cab.—How long[13] will it take me[14] to get there,[15] with the 'bus?—You would need

---

**Aids to Translation.**

[1] **Quelle heure est-il à.** — [2] **Sur.**

[3] **La vôtre ne va-t-elle pas?** — [4] **Elle s'est arrêtée.**

[5] **De la remonter.** — [6] I it have wound **(remontée).**

[7] **Hier soir.** — [8] **Je crois que le ressort est cassé (rŭ-sor ĕh kä-sā').**

[9] It is necessary that I it carry **(je la porte).**

[10] Which **(quel)** is the way to **(pour)** go to the—**(Nationale).**

[11] **C'est.**

[12] It is-necessary to-take **(prendre).** — [13] **Combien de temps.**

[14] To-me *will-there-be-necessary.* — [15] **Pour y arriver?**

* **De l'heure.**

† **Pour demander son chemin** (lit.: *his* (or *her*) way).

an hour at least.[1] — That's too long.[2] I see a cab station[3] at the end of the street. I'll take[3] a cab.

### 3. — *IN PARIS.*

Well! What are you going to do to-day? — To-day, I must go (and) see[4] the Invalides.[5] But to-morrow, I am going (to) see the sewers of Paris. — They say they are immense.[6] — Yes, Victor Hugo gives a fine description of them[7] in the Misérables.[8] Have you ever read[9] the book? — I read it[10] in English. — You must read it in French.[11] . . . . But I must go.[12] Come (and) see me to-morrow. — No; to-morrow I have to go (and) see the Catacombs[13] with some American friends.[14]

---

**Note. — Study the "List of Verbs in ir," page 503.**

---

#### Aids to Translation.

1 There (**il**) to-you would-be-necessary . . . . . **au moins.**
2 **Longtemps.**
3 A station (**station**) of cabs. — **Je prendrai.**
4 It is necessary that I go to-see.
5 **Les Invalides,** Old Soldiers' home in Paris.
6 One says *that* they are immense (**immenses**).
7 Of-them (**en**) gives a fine description (**belle description.**)
8 Pronounce **Mē-zā-rá′-bl'.**
9 **Jamais lu.**
10 I it have read.
11 It is-necessary it to-read.
12 It is-necessary that I go-*away* (**que je parte**).
13 Catacombes (**ká-tá-kon′-b'**).
14 Some friends Americans (**américains**).

*To be read by means of the literal translation opposite, then without it, in preparation for reading aloud and translating in class.*

## LECTURE.

### À L'OPÉRA.

— Oh! quelle splendeur! On se croirait dans un palais de fées. Combien la salle peut-elle contenir de personnes?

— En général, un peu plus de deux mille; mais les jours de représentations à bénéfice, on délivre[1] plus de trois mille billets. Ces jours-là toutes les entrées de faveur sont suspendues. Car le public payant[2] envahit jusqu'à l'orchestre.

— Mais alors, le régisseur doit faire fortune.

— Pas toujours. Mais écoutez l'ouverture.

— Vraiment, cet orchestre[3] est admirable.

— Songez que chacun des musiciens dont il se compose est un artiste à part.[4]

— Et quel corps de ballet![5] Heureux Parisiens![6]

— Dites plutôt: Heureux artistes![7] Tous ces premiers sujets du chant ou de la danse sont millionnaires.

— Millionnaires!

— Rappelez-vous[8] les sommes fabuleuses qu'ont touchées Taglioni, Elsler, Jenny Lind et tant d'autres. Mais silence. On va chanter.

---

[1] Lit.: delivers. — [2] **Pĕ-yan' an-vâ-ē'.** — [3] **Sĕh-tor-kĕs'-tr'.**
[4] **Un-nár-tēs-tâ-pár'.** — [5] **Kor dŭ bâ-lĕh'.** — [6] **Ŭ-rû Pâ-rē-zē-in'.**
[7] **Ŭ-rû zár-tēs'-t'.** — [8] Lit.: Recall *to-yourself.*

*For self-study, should be read by means of the literal translation, then without it, and when thoroughly understood, read aloud in French.*

## READING.

### AT THE OPERA.

— What splendor! One would-believe himself in a palace of fairies. How many the hall can (*it*) contain of persons?

— In general, a little more *of* two thousand; but (on) the days of benefits they deliver more *of* three thousand tickets. On those days, all free lists[1] are suspended. For the paying public invades even the orchestra-enclosure.

— But then, the manager must make (his) fortune.

— Not always. But listen to the overture.

— Really, this orchestra is admirable.

— Think (only) that each of-the musicians of-which it is composed[2] is an exceptional artist.

— And what a corps de ballet! Happy Parisians!

— Say rather: Happy artists! All these first artists[3] of-the singing or of the dancing are millionaires.

— Millionaires?

— Remember the fabulous sums which Taglioni, Elsler, Jenny Lind and so-many (*of*) others have received.[4] But silence. They are-going to-sing.

---

[1] Lit.: Entries by favor. — [2] Lit.: Composes itself. — [3] Lit.: Subjects.

[4] A very common inversion: *the fabulous sums which "touched" Taglioni and others*, instead of, *which Taglioni and others "touched."*

*Learn the French text of letter below by heart, and write it from book. If found too long to be easily memorized, it can be studied*

## CORRESPONDANCE.

### (COMMERCIALE.)

#### *ACCEPTATION D'OFFRES DE SERVICES, ET ORDRE.*

PARIS, le 20 avril, 1888.

Messieurs Robert et Cie, Courtiers à New York,

MESSIEURS,

Votre honorée du 29 mars dernier nous est parvenue. Nous vous remercions de vos obligeantes offres de service et nous saisissons la première occasion de les utiliser.

Au reçu de la présente, veuillez acheter pour notre compte, au mieux de nos intérêts, 50 tonnes même marchandise, et nous les expédier de suite par roulage ordinaire.[2]

Le cours de Lille, reçu ce jour, cote cette sorte de 108,50 à 109; nous avons lieu[3] de croire que vous l'obtiendrez au-dessous de 110.

Remboursez-vous sur nous à votre convenance, après avis.

Recevez, Messieurs, nos cordiales salutations,

Lachat et Legros.

---

**Pronunciation.** — Vò-trò-nor-ā dü v*in*t-nŭf màrs dĕr-nē-ā' nōō zĕh pàr-vŭ-nü'. . . . . Sā-zē-s*on*' . . . . .

---

[1] Lit.: To the best of our interests. — [2] By ordinary conveyance.

*memory some hour or two afterward, and without the aid of the and written in two sections.*

## CORRESPONDENCE.

(COMMERCIAL.)

### *ACCEPTANCE OF OFFERS OF SERVICE, AND ORDER.*

PARIS, the 20th of April, 1888.

Messrs Robert and Co., Brokers, New York City,

GENTLEMEN,

Your honored (favor) of March 29th is at hand. We thank you for your kind offers of service and seize the first opportunity to make use of them.

On receiving the present, please purchase on our account on the most favorable terms you can, 50 tuns of the same article, and forward them immediately by wagon.

The price current of Lille, just come to hand,[4] quotes this sort at 108,50 to 109; we have reason to think you will be able to get it under 110.

Draw upon us for the amount[5] at your convenience, after advice.

We remain, most cordially yours,

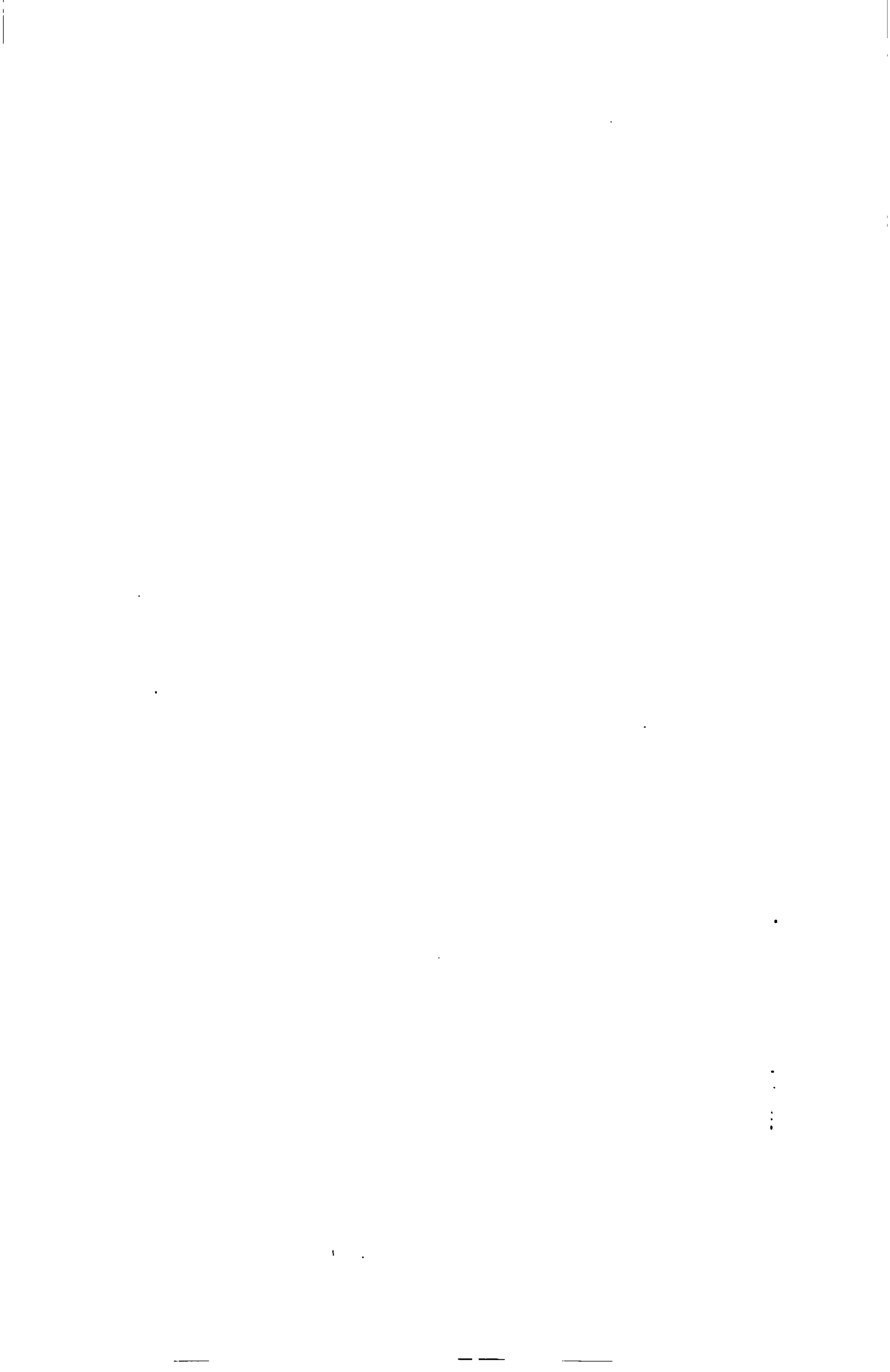
Lachat et Legros.

---

**Lŭ kōōr dŭ Lēl', rŭ-sü sŭ zhōōr, kòt sĕt sor-t dŭ san ü-ēt sin-kan-tà san nŭf'. . . . . san dĕs'. . . . . à-prĕh zà-vē'.**

---

[3] Lit.: place. — [4] Lit.: Received this day.
[5] Lit.: Reimburse yourself upon us.



# PART IV.

## THE PURCHASES.

## LES ACHATS.

### SECTION I.

1. AT THE TAILOR'S.
2. AT THE MILLINER'S.
3. GOODS AND SMALL ARTICLES.
4. IN A DRY GOODS STORE.
5. ABOUT 'FEU' AND 'FOU.'
6. INVITATION TO DINNER.
7. FORMS OF ACCEPTANCE.

## IV.

### LES‿ACHATS.

**Pour aller au devant de Frédéric, passer à la Belle Jardinière, et revenir à temps pour dîner, il faudra que nous partions[1] pour ainsi dire‿à la minute.**

#### PRONUNCIATION.

**Pōōr á-lā ōd-va*n* d'Frā-dā-rēk′, pä-sā á lá Bĕl Zhár-dē-nē‿air ā rŭv-nēr á ta*n* pōōr dē-nā′, ēl fō-drák[2] nōō pár-tē‿o*n*′ pōōr i*n*-sē dēr á lá mē-nüt'.**

---

[1] Subjunctive of **partir.** The subjunctive is always used after **il faut que.** Lit.: It will-be-necessary that we *may*-start.

[2] Remember that in the pronunciation, all consonants, whether final or otherwise, *are* to be sounded. Thus in **pōōr, Frā-dā-rēk, zhár-dē-nē‿air', rŭv-nēr, ēl, fō-drák, mē-nüt',** the **r, k, l,** and **t** are to be articulated, just as they would be in English.

# IV.

## THE PURCHASES.

**In order to go and meet[1] Frederick, call at the Belle Jardinière, and return in[3] time for dinner, we will have to start almost immediately.**

### LITERAL TRANSLATION.

**For to-go 'to-the meeting'[2] of Frederick, pass at the Belle Jardinière, and come-back at[3] time for dinner, it will-be-necessary that we may-start so-to-speak[4] at[3] the minute.**

---

[1] To meet (accidentally), **rencontrer.** *To go and meet,* **aller rencontrer** (or, **aller à la rencontre de**). But *to go and meet some one who is arriving,* **aller au devant de.**

[2] **Devant,** lit.: before.

[3] **A** is often used idiomatically for *on* or *in.*

[4] Strictly: for thus to-speak.

NOTE. — Let the learner now review the auxiliaries (**avoir** and **vendre**), reciting one of them with each of the following **gations,'** pages 504 to 509.

## I.

### FRENCH.

### 1. Pour aller au devant de Frédéric et passer à la Belle Jardinière,

Il nous faut partir sur-le-champ.

Je ne crois pas que moi, j'aurai le temps d'aller à sa rencontre.[1]

Pourquoi n'auriez-vous pas le temps?

Pour commencer, je dois[2] absolument passer chez mon tailleur.

Il faut que je lui paye deux cents francs que je lui dois.

Eh bien, soit! Passez chez votre tailleur.

Nous nous retrouverons à la Belle Jardinière.

---

**Note. — Study the Reflexive Verb**

---

NOTES.

[1] **À sa recontre (ran-kon'-tr'),** lit.: *to his meeting.*

[2] **Devoir** (strictly: *to owe, to have to*) expresses: (1) *A supposition.* Ex.: *You must be tired,* **Vous devez être fatigué;** *He was to come,* **Il devait venir;** — (2) *A moral, or a partial, obligation.* Ex.: *I must pay him, I have to go there,* **Je dois le payer, Je dois y aller. Falloir,** however, *could* be used for these last: *Il faut que je le paye; Il faut que j'y aille;* etc. But **devoir** gives more the idea of (*moral*) *obligation;* **falloir,** of a *physical or more absolute necessity.*

and **être**), and the three regular model verbs (**parler, finir,** five lessons. For this purpose let him use the '**full conju-**

## I.

| PRONUNCIATION. | TRANSLATION. |
| --- | --- |
| **1. Pōōr à-lā ōd-va*n*d Frā-dā-rēk′ . . . . ,** | **If we want to go and meet[1] Frederick and call at the Belle Jardinière,** |
| Sür lŭ sha*n*′. | We must start at once. |
| Zhŭn krò-à päk mò-à zhor-āl ta*n*′. | I don't think I'll have the[2] time to go and meet him. |
| Päl ta*n*′? | Why should n't you have the time? |
| Zhŭ dò-à zàb-sò-lü-ma*n*. | To begin (with), I must positively call at my tailor's. |
| Ēl fō kŭzh lü-ē pĕh′-y*ŭ* . . . . kŭzh lü-ē dò-à′. | I must pay him 200 francs I owe him. |
| Sò-à! Pä-sā shā vòt tä-yŭr′. | Very well, then, call at your tailor's. |
| Nōō nōōr-trōōv-ro*n* zà. | We will meet again at the Belle Jardiniére. |

---

**Se Dépêcher, To Hasten, page 510.**

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] To go 'to-the meeting' of Frederick.

[2] I do not *believe* that *me* I'll have. N. B.—Notice that to *think* in French is usually rendered either by **croire** (*to believe*) when it is a matter of belief; **trouver** (*to find*) when it is a matter of opinion; **penser** (*to think*) when it is a matter of thought. Yet this is not rigorous, or universal. For instance, What do you think of this action = Que *pensez*-vous de cette action? But I wish to guard the pupil against the insipid habit of using **penser** for everything.

**2. Monsieur Petit, je viens vous solder mon compte.**

A combien se monte-t-il?
Voici le mémoire. C'est 240 francs.

Comment! Cela ne se peut pas.
Il y a erreur.
Je ne vous dois que 200 francs.
Je puis me tromper, mais je le crois à peine.

---

NOTE. — Let the pupil distinguish between **il y a** and **voilà,**
*exists,* whatever is referred to; the second (**voilà**) is used in
*library* = **Il y a un livre dans ma bibliothèque** (**bē-blē-**
**Voilà un livre sur la table.** Or (*handing it to any one*):

---

**3. Voyons. Pour[1] couper court à tout cela, ne vous rappelez-vous pas que je vous ai payé trois cent quarante francs, il y a deux mois?**

Regardez à votre grand-livre.
En effet, monsieur, vous avez raison. Il y a 340 francs **de**[2] crédités sur le livre-journal.

---

NOTES.

[1] When *to* means *in order to,* it is rendered by **pour.** *I am going down town to buy some clothes,* **je vais au bas de la ville *pour* acheter des effets.** Let the learner be on the watch, and whenever *to* can be turned into *in order to,* translate it by **pour.**

[2] Remember that after numbers (*or* expressions of number, such as **plusieurs,** *several;* **beaucoup, quelque chose,** *something, many;* **rien,** *nothing;* **personne,** *nobody*), **de** is used before a following past participle.

| | |
|---|---|
| **2. Mòs-yû′ Pŭ-tē, zhŭ vē-in vōō sòl-dā mon kon′-t'.** | **Mr. Petit, I have come to settle my account with you.** |
| S'mon-t tēl′? | What is the amount?[1] |
| Vò-à-sēl mā-mò-àr'. | Here is the bill. It is 240 francs. |
| | What! That cannot be. |
| | There is a mistake. |
| | I only owe you 200 francs. |
| Mĕh zhŭl krò-à zà pĕn'. | I may be mistaken, but I hardly think so.[2] |

---

both meaning *there is.* The first, however, states that *there is* or *pointing to* or *handing* anything. Ex.: *There is a book in my* **yò-tĕk').** But: There is a book on the table (*pointing to it*) = *There is a book* = **Voilà un livre.**

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **3. Vò-à-yon′. Pōōr kōō-pā kōōr à tōō slà, nŭ vōō rà-plā-vōō pä kŭzh vōō zā pĕ-yā trò-à-san kà-ran-t fran, ĕl ē yà dû mò-ä′?** | **Well, now; to make a long story short,[3] do you not remember[4] that I paid you three hundred and forty francs two months ago?[5]** |
| Vòt gran lē′-vr'. | Look at your ledger.[6] |
| An nĕh-fĕh′. | That 's so, sir; you are right. There are 340 francs[7] to your credit on my day-book.[8] |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 To how much itself mounts it?
2 I may (lit.: can) myself deceive, but I believe it scarcely.
3 To cut short to all that.
4 (*To-yourself*) recall you not?
5 *There are* two months.
6 Great-book.
7 340 francs *of* credited.
8 *Or*, sur mon livre-journal.

C'est une erreur que mon teneur de livres aura faite[1] en[2] transcrivant. J'en[3] suis au désespoir, et je vous fais mille excuses.

Ne m'en[3] veuillez pas de mal.

Point du tout. Voici vos deux cents francs.

Voulez-vous avoir l'obligeance de m'en donner l'acquit?

Voici, monsieur. (*See Note.*)

Maintenant, je voudrais me faire faire un nouvel habit.

---

NOTE.—Distinguish between *here*, which *literally* is **ici** (*here*, handing anything. *He is here.* = **Il est ici.** But, *Here he thing*), simply, **Voici!** N. B.—*Here!* in the sense of *This*

---

## 4. Pour quand vous le faudrait-il?

Il me le faut pour vendredi. Je vais en soirée.

Soyez sûr que l'habit m'aille[4] bien.

Le dernier ne vous allait-il pas?

Oui, à l'exception des manches.

Qu'est-ce qui leur manquait?

Elles étaient un peu trop courtes.

---

NOTES.

[1] Past Participles conjugated with **avoir** agree with the *direct object* when that object *precedes*. Here the direct object is **que** (representing **erreur**, a feminine noun). Hence, we have **faite** instead of **fait.**

[2] **En** may be a preposition, as here, meaning *on*, *when*, *while*, *by*, etc.

[3] **En** may be a pronoun, as here, meaning *some*, *any*, *of it* or *of them*, *from it* or *from them*, *about it* (or *them*); *on account of it*, etc.

[4] Subjunctive of **aller,** *to go*, or *to fit*.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Tŭ-nŭr dŭ lē-vror-á fĕt an tran-skrē-van'. Zhan sü-ē zō dā-zĕs-pó-ár', ā zh'vōō fĕh mēl ĕks-küz'.** | It's a mistake my book-keeper must have made in transferring the accounts.[1] I am exceedingly sorry,[2] and hope you will excuse me.[3] |
| **Nŭ man vŭ-yā pä d'mál'.** | Please overlook it.[4] |
| **Pó-in'.** | Certainly.[5] Here are 200 francs. |
| **Ló-blē-zhan'-s dŭ man do-nā lá-kē'?** | Will you have the kindness to give me a receipt?[6] |
| | Here it is, sir. |
| **Zh'vōō-drĕm fair fair un nōō-vĕl á-bē'.** | Now, I'd like to have a (new) coat made. |

---

*at this place*), and **voici,** meaning *Here!* when pointing out or *is!* = **Le voici.** Or, sometimes (*especially when handing any-way!* = **Par ici** (lit.: *By here!*)

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **4. Pōōr kan vōōl fó-drĕh-tĕl'?** | **When must you have it?**[7] |
| **Zhŭ vĕh zan só-á-rā'.** | I must have it[8] for Friday. |
| **Má'-yŭ bē-in'.** | Be sure to have the coat fit. Did n't the last one fit you? |
| **Lĕk-sĕp-sē-on dĕh man'-sh'.** | Yes, excepting the sleeves. |
| **Mankĕh'.** | What did they lack?[9] |
| **Kōōr'-t'.** | They were a little too short. |

---

**LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.**

[1] Will (*i. e.* must) have made *when* transcribing.

[2] On account of it. — [3] I make you a thousand excuses.

[4] On account-of-it (**en**) wish me no evil. Also, **Ne m'en voulez pas de mal.** Or simply, **Ne m'en voulez pas; Ne m'en veuillez pas.** — [5] Not at all. — [6] To-me of-it (**en**) to-give the receipt.

[7] When to-you *it* would-there-be-necessary?

[8] There to-me (*it*) is-necessary.

[9] What is it that to-them lacked?

Très bien. Je ferai[1] celles-ci un peu plus longues.

Pour quand le costume sera-t-il[1] prêt?
Je vous le ferai pour samedi au plus tard.

Très bien. Quand viendrez-vous[1] me l'essayer?

Je viendrai[1] vous l'essayer mercredi matin .....

---

**Note.—Study the Possessive Pronouns,**

---

## 5. Je voudrais avoir un chapeau.

Comment madame le voudrait-elle?
Je le voudrais haut de forme et garni de rubans.

En voici un bien joli, madame.
Est-ce que ce n'est pas passé de mode?

Au contraire, madame; c'est tout ce qu'il y a **de** plus nouveau.
Comment me va-t-il?
Il vous va très bien. Il ne pourrait vraiment pas vous aller mieux.

---

NOTES.

[1] When "will" expresses *futurity* rather than *willingness* or *desire*, it is rendered in French by a termination only (**rai, ras, ra, rons, rez, ront**), *I will make it*, Je le fe**rai**; *Will you come*, Viendr**ez**-vous; *You will let me have it*, Vous me le laisse**rez**; *I'll select another*, J'en choisi**rai** un autre; etc. But when "will" expresses *desire* or *willingness* more especially than *futurity*, it is rendered by the independent verb **vouloir.** Thus, *Will you* go with me (*i. e.*, *Do you want*, etc.), **Voulez**-vous aller avec moi? Answer: *I will*, Je **veux** bien; etc. Let the learner distinguish between these two cases.

| | |
|---|---|
| Sĕl-sē un pû plü lon′-g′. | Very well. I'll make these a little longer. |
| Kŏs-tüm. | When will the suit be ready?[1] |
| | I'll make it for you for Saturday at latest. |
| Mŭ lĕh-sā-yā′? | Very well. When will you come to try it on?[2] |
| | I'll come on Wednesday morning . . . . . |

parags. 1 and 2, page 468.

| | |
|---|---|
| **6. Zhŭ vōō-drĕh zȧ-vŏ-ȧr un shȧ-pō′.** | **I would like to have a bonnet.** |
| | How would you desire it?[3] |
| Ōd for′-mā gȧr-nēd rü-ban′. | I want it high and trimmed with ribbons.[4] |
| Bē-in zhŏ-lē′. | Here is a very pretty one.[5] |
| Ĕs-kŭ-snĕh pä pä-sād-mŏd′? | Is n't it out of fashion?[6] |
| Tōō skēl yȧd plü. | On the contrary, madam; it's the newest thing out.[7] |
| Kŏ-man m'vȧ-tēl′? | How does it become me?[8] |
| Vōō zȧ-lā mē-û′. | It becomes you very well. It could not really become you better.[9] |

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 When the suit will it be ready?
2 Upon-me it to-try?
3 How madame it would she (have)?
4 High *of* form and trimmed *of* ribbons.
5 Of-them here-is one very nice.
6 *Passed of* fashion.
7 It is all (that which) there-is *of* most new.
8 How to-me goes it?
9 To-you it *goes* very well . . . . . to-you *go* better.

Quel est le prix de ce chapeau?
Il est de soixante-quinze francs.
Vous me le laisserez bien à moins.

Je voudrais bien; mais ça ne se pourrait pas.

Si je vous le laissais[1] à moins, j'y perdrais.

Eh bien, c'est trop cher. J'en choisirai un autre.

Montrez-moi un chapeau de paille.

---

**6. Quel est le prix de celui-là?[2]**

Il est de quarante-cinq francs. Faut-il l'envoyer à madame?
Non. Ce n'est pas assez bon marché.

Celui de ma tante,[3] qui est tout aussi beau, ne lui a pas coûté la moitié du prix.

Lequel[4] voulez-vous dire?
Celui qu'elle avait la dernière fois.

Enfin, puisque c'est vous, je vous laisserai celui-ci[5] à 40 francs.
Dans ce cas-là, envoyez-le moi. Voici ma nouvelle adresse.

---

NOTES.

1 Notice the imperfect after **si.**

2 Or **De combien est celui-là?**

3 The French, as already seen, have no possessive case. *My aunt's bonnet = the bonnet of my aunt. My aunt's = That* (**celui,** or **celle**) *of my aunt.*

4 **Lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles,** *which one, which ones.*

5 **Celui-ci, celle-ci,** *this one;* **Ceux-ci, celles-ci,** *these.* **Celui-là, celle-là,** *that one;* **ceux-là, celles-là,** *those.*

| | |
|---|---|
| Kĕl ĕl prēd sü shȧ-pō′. | What is the price of the hat? |
| Sȯ-ȧ-sant-kinz fran′. | Seventy-five francs. |
| Vōō mül lĕh-srā bē-in nȧ mȯ-in′. | You will surely let me have it for less.[1] |
| | I would like to, but it is not possible. |
| Sēzh vōōl lĕh-sĕh zȧ mȯ-in, zhē pĕr-drĕh′. | If I should sell it for less, I would lose by it.[2] |
| Zhan shȯ-ȧ-zē-rā un-nō′-tr′. | Well, it 's too dear. I 'll select another.[3] |
| Shȧ-pōd pä′-yŭ. | Show me a straw hat.[4] |

| | |
|---|---|
| **6. L'prē d'sü-lü-ē-lȧ′?** | **What is the price of that one?** |
| Lan-vȯ-ȧ-yā′. | Forty-five francs. — Shall I send it to you?[5] |
| | No. It is not cheap enough for a straw hat. |
| Tōō tō-sē bō′. | My aunt's, which is just as nice, did n't cost her half of that money.[6] |
| | Which one do you mean? |
| Dĕr-nē-air fȯ-ȧ′. | The one she had on the last time.[7] |
| Pü-ēs′-k′. | Well, as it is you,[8] I 'll let you have this one[9] at 40 francs. |
| Dan skä lȧ′. | In that case, send it to me. Here is my new address. |

## LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] Indeed *at* less.— [2] I by-it (**y**) would lose:
[3] I *of-then* (**en**) will choose another.— [4] A hat of straw.
[5] Is-it necessary it to-send to Madame?
[6] That of my aunt, which is *all* (*i. e. quite*) as pretty, to-her has not cost the half of the price.
[7] The one *that* she had.—*That* can never be omitted.
[8] Since it is you.
[9] I to-you will-*leave* this one.

Ne voulez-vous pas regarder à mon nouveau choix **de** tulles et **de** dentelles?

Nous avons aussi un nouvel assortiment **de** ceintures, **d'**éventails et **de**[1] mouchoirs.

Non. Il faut que j'aille retrouver mon mari à la Belle Jardinière.

Je reviendrai une autre fois.[2]

---

**Note. — Study the Demonstrative Pronouns,**

---

NOTES.

[1] Prepositions before consecutive nouns must be repeated.

[2] Never say: un autre *temps*, in this sense. **Temps** = *time*, in the sense of *duration* or *epoch*.

| | |
|---|---|
| Dŭ tül ăd dan-tĕl'? | Won't you look at my new assortment of tulles and laces?[1] |
| Nōō-vĕl ȧ-sor-tē-man dŭ sin-tür', dā-van-tȧ'-yād-mōō-shȯ-ȧr'. | We also have a new assortment of belts, fans, and handkerchiefs.[2] |
| Ēl fō k'zhȧ-y' rŭ-trōō-vā mon mȧ-rē'. | No. I must go and meet[3] my husband at the Belle Jardinière. |
| Zhŭr-vē-in-drā ü-n ō-t r ŭ fȯ-ȧ'. | I'll come back[4] some other time. |

parags. 1 to 3, page 469.

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] *Choice* (*i. e.* assortment) of tulles and *of* laces.
[2] Large assortment *of* belts, *of* fans, and *of* handkerchiefs.
[3] It is necessary that I may-go to-find-again. — [4] I will *re*-come.

*The following vocabulary to be learned by heart.*

## VOCABULARY.

### 1.—LES ÉTOFFES.[1]

| | |
|---|---|
| Du drap (drȧ), | Cloth. |
| De la laine (lĕn'), | Wool. |
| De la mousseline (mōō-slĕn'), | Muslin. |
| De la mousseline de laine, | Woolen muslin. |
| De la toile (tȯ-ȧl'), | Linen. |
| Du coton (kȯ-to*n*'), | Cotton cloth. |
| Du satin (sȧ-ti*n*'), | Satin. |
| De la soie brochée (sȯ-ȧ brȯ-shā'), | Brocaded silk. |
| " " " moirée (mȯ-ȧ-rā'), | Watered " |
| De la peluche (plüsh'), | Plush. |
| De la broderie (brȯ-drē'), | Embroidery. |
| De l'indienne (li*n*-dē-ĕn'), *f.*, | Printed calico. |
| Du coutil (kōō-tē'), | Ticking, drill. |
| De la doublure (dōō-blür'), | Lining. |
| De l'entre-deux (la*n*-trŭ-dû'), *m.*, | Insertion. |
| Des rideaux (rē-dō'), *m.*, | Curtains. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| Vendre au rabais,[2] | To sell at reduced prices. |
| Vendre au prix coûtant,[3] | To sell at cost. |
| Vendre à l'enchère (ȧ la*n*-shĕr'), | To sell at auction. |
| Vendre à perte (va*n*-drȧ pĕr'-t'), | To sell with loss. |
| Acheter d'occasion,[4] | To buy second-hand. |

---

[1] **Lĕh zā-tȯf',** Stuffs, *or* goods.— [2] **Va*n*-drō rȧ-bĕh'.**
[3] **Va*n*-drō prē kōō-ta*n*'.**
[4] **Ȧsh-tā dȯ-kä-zē-o*n*'.**

*The following vocabulary to be learned by heart.*

## VOCABULAIRE.

### 2. – PETITS ARTICLES.

| | |
|---|---|
| Des épingles (dĕh zā-pin′-gl′), | Pins. |
| Une épingle à cheveux (à sh′vû′), | A hair-pin. |
| Des aiguilles (dĕh zā-gü-ē′-yŭ), | Needles. |
| Une aiguille à tricoter,[1] | A knitting-needle. |
| Un étui (un nā-tü-ē′), | A needle-case. |
| Un dé (un-dā′), | A thimble. |
| Du fil (fēl), | Thread. |
| Une bobine de fil (bò-bēn′), | A spool of thread. |
| Un écheveau de soie,[2] | A skein of silk. |
| Une agrafe (ü nà-gràf′), | A hook. |
| Un œillet (un nŭ-yĕh′), | An eyelet. |
| Un passe-lacet (päs là-sĕh′), | A bodkin. |
| Un crochet (krò-shĕh′), | A (button) hook. |
| Les ciseaux (sē-zō′), *m.*, | The scissors. |
| La boîte à ouvrage (bò-à-tà-ōō-vràzh′), | The work box. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| Enfiler une aiguille, | To thread a needle. |
| Faire un point à —,[3] | To put a stitch in —. |
| Marchander, | To bargain. |
| Rabattre quelque chose,[4] | To take off something. |
| C'est le dernier prix, | It 's the lowest price. |
| C'est le juste prix,[5] | — the very lowest price. |

---

1 **Ü-nā-gü-ē-yà-trē-kò-tā′.** — 2 **Un nāsh-vōd-sò-à′.**
3 **Fair un pò-in′ à.** — 4 **Rà-bàt kĕl-kŭ-shōz′.**
5 **Sĕl zhüs′-t′ prē′.**

*To be learned by heart and repeated aloud, as a conversation, whether for self-study or preparation for the class-room.*
*(See* ***Directions*** *before* ***Part I.****)*

## CONVERSATIONS.

### 1.—*DANS UN MAGASIN DE NOUVEAUTÉS.*

Bonjour, madame. Que pourrais-je vous montrer, ce matin?—Je ne veux rien aujourd'hui. Mais je vous amène[1] une nouvelle pratique.—C'est bien aimable de votre part.[2] Qu'est-ce que madame voudrait bien voir?—Est-ce que vous avez de la peluche?—Mais, certainement, madame. En voici d'excellente.[3] —Ceci ne me plait pas. Il me faudrait quelque chose de meilleur.—Voici qui vous plaira,[4] j'en suis sûr.—Quel en est[5] le prix?—C'est deux francs le mètre.[6]—C'est énormément cher.—Combien de mètres vous en faudrait-il?[7]—Il m'en faudrait 50 mètres.[8]—Eh bien, je vous la laisserai à un franc soixante-quinze[9] le mètre.

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

[1] Bring.—[2] **Bē-in nā-mȧ′-bl' dŭ vó-tr' pȧr′,** very kind in you.

[3] **Dĕk-sĕh-lan′-t',** lit.: Of-it (**en**) here-is some excellent.

[4] Here is something you will like. Lit.: Here is which you will-please.

[5] What of-it is.—[6] **Lŭ mĕh′-tr',** lit.: *The* yard.

[7] Lit.: How many *of* yards to-you of-it (**en**) would-there-be-necessary?

[8] Lit.: *There* of-it to-me would-be necessary 50 y.

[9] One franc 75 *centimes.*

### 2.—*MÊME SUJET.*

Maintenant, il me faudrait de la soie moirée.—Voici une très belle pièce,[1] madame.—Oui, ceci me plaît assez.[2] Combien la vendez-vous?[3]—C'est 8 francs 50 le mètre.—Je ne veux pas vous marchander, mais cela me semble hors[4] de prix. Il m'en faudrait[5] 40 mètres. Ne pourriez-vous pas me rabattre quelque chose sur le prix?—Comme[6] vous êtes une nouvelle pratique, je vous ferai une diminution,[7] cette fois-ci.—Merci; veuillez m'en couper[8] 40 mètres.

---

**Note.—Study the irregular verb Envoyer, page 514.**

---

### 3.—*À L'OUVRAGE.**

Que faites-vous?[9]—Je tâche[10] d'enfiler mon aiguille; mais je ne peux pas y arriver.[11] Il fait si sombre. Et, d'ailleurs, j'ai la vue courte.[12] Ne voulez-vous pas l'enfiler pour moi?—Bien volontiers.—Tiens! moi non plus, je ne peux pas y arriver. Il ne fait pas assez clair. Jean, allumez le gaz.[13]

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

1 Piece of goods.— 2 I like this pretty well. Lit.: This pleases me enough.— 3 How do you sell it?

4 **Mŭ san-blor-dŭ-prē′,** seems to me, etc.

5 *There* to-me of-them (**en**) would be necessary.— 6 As; since.

7 **Dē-mē-nü-sē-on′.**— 8 Please to-me of-it to-cut.

9 **Fĕt-voo′.**— 10 **Zh'täsh,** I try, etc.

11 **Pä-zē à-rē-vä′,** I can't do it. Lit.: Arrive at-it.

12 **Là vü koor′-t',** short-sighted. Lit.: I have the sight short.

13 **Gäz.**— * **À loo-vràzh',** at work.

*To be translated and written into French, but also to be recited as a conversation in the class-room. (For Self-Study, see **Directions** before **Part I.**)*

## EXERCISES.

### 1.—*DANS UN MAGASIN DE NOUVEAUTÉS.**

What do you wish, madam?—I would like (to) see some[1] plush.—This way, please.[2]—Have you anything darker?[2]—Certainly, madam. Here is a darker shade.[3]—I like that better.[4] What is the price of it?[5]—That is 20 francs a[6] yard.—Is n't that[7] very dear?—Not[8] for the quality, madam.—I think it is[9] too dear. Can you not let me have it for less?[10] I would need ten yards of it.[11]—Well, in order to get your custom,[12] I will let you have it[13] at 18 francs a[6] yard.

### 2.—*MÊME SUJET.*

What else do you need,[14] madam?—Do you sell needles and pins?[15]—Certainly, madam. Please come[16]

---

**Aids to Translation.**

[1] Of the.— [2] **S'il vous plaît.** — Something *of* more dark (**plus foncé**). — [3] **Une nuance (nü-an'-s') plus foncée.**

[4] That pleases me better (**mieux**). — [5] What of-it (**en**) is the price?

[6] The (**le**). — [7] **N'est-ce pas?** — [8] **Pas.**

[9] I think that that is (**que c'est**). — [10] To-me (**me**) it leave *at* less?

[11] There to-me of-it would-be-necessary, **Il m'en faudrait** . . . . .

[12] **Eh bien, pour avoir votre pratique.** — [13] I to you it will-leave.

[14] **Que vous faut-il encore,** lit.: What to-you is-necessary still?

[15] Some (**des**) needles and *some* pins. — [16] **Donnez-vous la peine de passer.** — * In a dry-goods store. Lit.: In a 'novelty' store.

this way.—How[1] do you sell pins (by) the package? —Five cents a package.—Well, give me[2] five packages.

### 3.—*MÊME SUJET.*

What[3] is your lowest price for that evening wrap?[4] —One hundred (and) seventy-five francs.—That's[5] too dear. You will take something off.[6]—No, madam. It's the very lowest. We cannot sell with loss. You could not[7] buy it elsewhere[8] for less than[9] two hundred[10] francs.

### 4.—*À PROPOS D'UNE PENDULE.**

Did you see[11] the clock Mr. Morton bought[12] this morning?—Where did he buy it?[13]—He bought it[14] at auction, in a store on the[15] Boulevard St. Michel.—How much did he pay for it?[16]—(One) hundred francs.—But is it a good one?[17]—Yes, it keeps good time.[18]—Well, *I* never could buy anything second-hand.[19]

---

**Note.—Study the "List of Verbs in re", page 503.**

---

**Aids to Translation**

1 **Combien.**— 2 Give me of-them (**m'en**).— 3 **Quel.**
4 **Sortie de bal.**— 5 **C'est.**
6 You will take-off (**ôterez**) something.— 7 **Vous ne pourriez pas.**
8 **Ailleurs.**— 9 Less *of*.— 10 See page 180.— 11 Have you seen?
12 The clock *which* (**que**) Mr. Morton *has* bought.
13 Where it has he bought (**achetée**)?— 14 He it has bought.
15 **Du.**— 16 How-much it has he paid (**payée**)?
17 But is it (**elle**) good (**bonne**)?— 18 **Va bien,** lit.: Goes well.
19 Me, I have never nothing been-able (**pu**) to-buy second-hand.
* **Dün pa*n*-dül'.**

*To be read by means of literal translation in preparation for translating and reading aloud in the class-room.*

## LECTURE.

### À PROPOS DE FEU.—Nº I.

—Quelle est cette histoire que vous alliez me[1] raconter?

—C'est à propos de Tennyson.—Le poëte anglais était venu en France accompagné d'un[2] ami qui savait bien le français, ou du moins qui croyait bien le savoir.[3] Ils étaient installés dans leur hôtel. Un beau matin, comme l'ami se disposait à sortir, le poëte lui dit en anglais: "*Will you please tell the waiter not to let the fire go out?*"

—L'autre, bien aise de pouvoir se rendre utile, quitta la chambre et, voyant un domestique dans le corridor, l'appela et lui dit: „Garçon! Ne laissez pas sortir le feu!„

—Le malheur voulut qu'il prononcât mal le dernier mot et dît *fou* au lieu de *feu*. „Comment!„ s'écria le garçon, alarmé. „Il y a un fou dans cette chambre!„ „Oui,„ répondit l'interprète, charmé d'avoir été si bien compris, „et ne le laissez pas sortir!„—„Soyez tranquille,„[4] répliqua l'autre. „Il faudra qu'il me passe sur le corps avant de sortir de là!„

(*Continued on page 250.*)

---

[1] Notice that **me** means either *me* or *to-me*.— [2] *Of* a.
[3] Believed well it to-know.— [4] **Tran-kēl'.** See PRONUNCIATION.

*For self-study, to be read by means of translation, then without it, and when thoroughly understood, read aloud in French.*

## READING.

### ABOUT FIRE.—Nº I.

—What is that story you were-going to-relate to-me?

—It's about Tennyson.—The English poet had come to France accompanied by a friend who knew French, or at least who thought he knew it well. They were settled in their hotel. One fine morning, as the friend was about to[5] go-out, the poet said to him in English: "*Will you please tell the waiter not to let the fire go out?*"

—The other, very glad to-be able himself to make useful, left the room, and seeing a servant in the hall, called him and said to-him: „ *Garçon! Ne laissez pas sortir le feu!* „

—Misfortune would (have it) that he pronounced badly ..... and said *fou* instead of *feu.* "What!" exclaimed ..... "There is a *fou* (*a man insane*) in that room!"—"Yes," answered the interpreter, delighted to have been ..... "and do not let *him*[6] go out!"—"Be easy," replied the other. "He will have to pass me over the body before he goes out of there!"

(*Continued on page. 351*)

---

[4] **Rendre** = *render, make, give back.*

[5] Lit.: *disposed himself to.* — [6] **Le** means either *him* or *it.*

*The following French notes to be learned by heart, and written without looking at the book, some hour or two afterward.*

## CORRESPONDANCE.

### *BILLET D'INVITATION À DÎNER.—No 1.*

Monsieur et Madame A. présentent leurs respects à Monsieur et à Madame D., et les prient de vouloir bien les honorer de leur présence à dîner, mardi prochain, à six heures.

Ce 6 janvier 1888.

### *FORMULE D'ACCEPTATION.*

Monsieur et Madame D. présentent leurs hommages à Monsieur et à Madame A. Ils s'empresseront de se rendre à leur obligeante invitation.

Ce 7 janvier 1888.

---

### *TRANSLATION.*

#### *Letter of Invitation.*

Mr. and Mrs. A. present their respects to Mr. and Mrs. D., and beg they will have the kindness[1] to honor them with their company at dinner on Tuesday next at six o'clock.

January 6th, 1888.

#### *Form of Acceptance.*

Mr. and Mrs. D. present their compliments to Mr. and Mrs. A., and beg to say that they are happy to accept[2] their kind invitation.

January 7th, 1888.

---

[1] To be-willing indeed to honor them. — [2] They will-hasten to accept (*strictly*, to render, *i. e.* to *lend* themselves) to.

# PART IV.

## THE PURCHASES.

## LES ACHATS.

### SECTION II.

1. MAILING LETTERS.
2. IN A DRY GOODS STORE.
3. EN AND Y.
4. TERMS OF SEWING.
5. VOCABULARY: THE BODY.
6. AT THE HABERDASHER'S
7. AT THE HAIRDRESSER'S.
8. ABOUT 'FEU' AND 'FOU.'
9. INVITATION TO A PARTY.

## II.

### FRENCH.

**1. Pour revenir à temps pour le dîner —**

Il m'a fallu[1] quitter mon mari à la Belle Jardinière.

Pourquoi vous a-t-il fallu revenir si tôt?

Parce que j'ai rencontré Madame Thiérat.
Et je l'ai invitée **à**[1] dîner avec nous.

Mais je me demande si la couturière m'a attendue.
Joseph! La couturière ne m'a-t-elle pas attendue.

Je vous avais dit **de**[1] la faire attendre.

Oui, madame, mais elle n'est pas venue.

Allons, tant mieux. Je suis à temps.

---

NOTES.

[1] As will be remembered, the principal verbs requiring *no* preposition before an infinitive are **aller, envoyer, faire, falloir, pouvoir, savoir, venir** (*usually*), and **vouloir.** Of the others, *verbs of a favorable meaning*, generally require **à.** Thus: **aimer, s'appliquer** (*to apply one's self*), **apprendre** (*to learn*), **avoir, consentir, donner, inviter, penser, réussir** (*to succeed*), etc., etc. *Verbs of an unfavorable meaning*, generally take **de.** Such are, **s'abstenir** (*to abstain*), **craindre** (*to fear*), **détester, empêcher** (*to prevent*), **éviter** (*to avoid*), **refuser** (*to refuse*), etc., etc. N. B. — Verbs of *command, counsel*, or *entreaty*, take **de.** Such are, **dire, ordonner, conseiller, prier,** etc.

## II.

| PRONUNCIATION. | TRANSLATION. |
| --- | --- |
| **1. Pōōr rŭv-nĕr ȧ ta*n* pōōr lŭ dē-nā'—** | **In order to come back in time[1] for dinner—** |
| Kē-tā mo*n* mȧ-rē'. | I have been obliged to leave[2] my husband at the Belle Jardinière. |
| Sē tō. | Why did you have to return so early?[3] |
| Tē-ā-rȧ'. | Because I met Mrs. Thiérat. |
| | And I invited her to dine with us. |
| Kōō-tü-rē-air mȧ ȧ-ta*n*-dü'. | But I wonder[4] if the dressmaker waited for me.[5] |
| | Joseph! Did n't the dressmaker wait for me? |
| Dē dlȧ fair ȧ-ta*n*'-dr'. | I had told you to make her wait. |
| Nĕh päv-nü'. | Yes, madam, but she did n't come.[6] |
| Ta*n* mē-û'. Zhŭ sü-ē zȧ ta*n*'. | Well, that 's very good.[7] I am in time.[8] |

---

### LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] For to-come back *at* time.

[2] It to-me has been-necessary to-leave.

[3] Why to-you has it been-necessary . . . . . so soon (*or* early).

[4] I ask myself. To *wonder*, meaning *to have a query arise in one's mind* = **se demander.**

[5] If the dressmaker me has awaited.

[6] She *is* not come.

[7] *Come*, so-much (the) better. *So much* is always **tant** (or, *sometimes*, **autant**). *Never* say ***Si beaucoup,*** as so often done by learners.

[8] *At* time.

**Note.—Study the "Negative Forms of Question,"**

---

**2. Mais voici des lettres qui sont arrivées par le courrier de six heures.**

Donnez-les moi.
Voici, madame.
Merci.—Ah! Mettez ces lettres à la poste.

Il faudra les affranchir.
Voici un franc pour les timbres-poste.[1]
Attendez. Il faut faire recommander celle-là.

Combien en[2] coûte-t-il pour faire charger[3] les lettres?
Cela dépend, madame. Pour la France, c'est 50 centimes[4] en sus du port.
Mais pour l'étranger, c'est 75 centimes.

Eh bien, voici un franc de plus.[5]
Vous mettrez la monnaie dans votre poche.

---

**Note.—Study "the 12 neuter verbs conjugated**

---

**3. Décidément, cette couturière ne va pas venir.**

Et il faut absolument que j'aille faire mes emplettes.

---

NOTES.

[1] See plural compound nouns, page 528.
[2] Entirely idiomatic, here.
[3] **Charger** and **recommander** are synonimous, here.
[4] Or, **dix sous.** **Un centime** is the fifth part of a cent *or* **sou.**
[5] **De plus** = *another,* in the sense of *one more.*

**page 496.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **2. Mĕh vò-à-sē′ dĕh lĕh′-tr' kē so*n* tà-rē-vā′ pàr lŭ kōō-rē-ā . . . . .** | **But here are some letters which have come[1] by the six o'clock delivery.** |
| | Give them to me. |
| | Here, madam. |
| Sĕl-sē à là pòs′-t'. | Thank you.—Ah! Mail these letters.[2] |
| Lĕh zà-fra*n*-shēr′. | You must put stamps on them.[3] |
| Ti*n*′-br'-pòs′-t'. | Here is a franc for the stamps. |
| | But wait. This one must be registered. |
| Ko*n*-bē-i*n* na*n* kōōt-tēl′. | How much[4] does it cost to have a letter registered? |
| Sa*n*-tēm a*n* süs dü por′. | That depends. For France, it is ten cents beside the postage. |
| Lā-tra*n*-zhā′. | But for foreign countries,[5] it is 15 cents. |
| U*n* fra*n*d plüs′. | Well, here is another franc.[6] |
| Da*n* vòt* pòsh′. | Put the change in your pocket. |

**with Être," page 513.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **3. Dā-sē-dā-ma*n*, sĕt kōō-tü-rē-air nŭ và päv-nēr′.** | **Evidently, that dress-maker is not coming.[7]** |
| | And I must absolutely go and make my purchases. |

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] Which *are* arrived.— [2] Put these letters in the post.
[3] It will-be-necessary to-frank them.
[4] How much for-it (**en**) costs it?
[5] For *the foreign*, it's 75 centimes.— [6] One franc (*of*) more.
[7] Goes not (*i. e.* is not going) to come.— * See *, p. 337.

Jean, faites venir la voiture .....
Georges! Au magasin du Louvre .....

Arrêtez, Georges. Je veux‿entrer dans ce magasin.

Approchez-vous[1] du trottoir.
J'ai peur de mettre **le** pied dans le ruisseau .....

---

**Note.—Study the irregular verb S'en‿Aller,**

---

## 4. Qu'y a-t‿il pour votre service?

Je voudrais voir de la soie.
Par ici, s'il vous plaît, madame .....
Quel est le prix de cette soie?[2]
Celle-ci est **de** 15 francs **le**[3] mètre.
Quel est le prix de celle-là?[4]
Celle-là est **de** 10 francs **le** mètre.
La qualité ne me plaît pas.
Nous garantissons toutes nos marchandises.

Non. . . . . D'ailleurs, c'est trop foncé.
Je voudrais quelque chose de plus clair.

---

NOTES.

[1] From **s'approcher,** *to approach.* Lit.: To approach *one's self.*

[2] Or, **Combien coûte cette soie?** (Lit.: *How much costs this silk?*)

[3] When speaking of price, the French use the definite article (**le,** *or* **la**) instead of *a,* with expressions of measure or weight. Thus, How much *a* yard? = **Combien *le* mètre?** Two francs *a* dozen = **Deux francs *la* douzaine.**

[4] Or, **Combien coûte celle-là?** (Lit.: *How much costs that one?*)

| | |
|---|---|
| Vó-á-tür'. | John, order the carriage[1] . . . . . |
| Zhor'-zh'. | George! To the 'Magasin du Louvre' . . . . . |
| Zh'vû zan-trā'. | Stop, George. I want to go into that store. |
| Trô-tô-ár'. | Get nearer to[2] the sidewalk. |
| Mĕt * lŭ pē-ā'. | I am afraid[3] to step into the gutter . . . . . |

page 514.

| | |
|---|---|
| **4. Kē yá-tēl pōōr vòt * sĕr-vēs'?** | **What can I do for you?[4]** |
| | I would like to see some silk. |
| | This way,[5] madam. |
| Kĕl ĕl prē'. | How much is this silk?[6] |
| Kinz fran l'mĕh'-tr'. | This is 15 francs a yard.[7] |
| Prēd sĕl-là'? | What is the price of that? |
| Dē franl mĕh'-tr'. | That one is 10 francs[8] a yard. |
| Ká-lē-tā'. | I don't like the quality.[9] |
| Gá-ran-tē-son' . . . . . már-shan-dēz'. | We warrant all our goods. |
| | No . . . . . Any way, it is too dark. I would like something of a lighter color.[10] |

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] Make come the carriage. — [2] Approach (*yourself*) *of*.
[3] I have fear to put *the* foot. — [4] What is there, etc.
[5] By here, etc. — [6] What is the price of this silk?
[7] This one is *of* 15 francs *the* yard. — [8] Is *of* ten francs.
[9] The quality me pleases not. — [10] Of more clear.
* In ordinary utterance, the final *r* of such words as **votre, mettre,** is often omitted, when before a word beginning with a consonant.

**Note.—Study the Interrogative Pronouns,**

---

**5. Voici quelque chose qui vous conviendra,[1] madame.**

Non. Ça ne me plaît pas, non plus. Je n'achèterai pas de soie aujourd'hui.

Veuillez me dire où sont les‿articles de lingerie.

C'est là, madame, tout‿au fond du magasin .....

Quel est le prix de ces mouchoirs?[2]

Ils sont de vingt francs **la** douzaine.[3]

Très bien. J'en prendrai deux douzaines.

Combien coûtent ces‿épingles?

Elles coûtent dix sous **le** paquet.

Et ce démêloir; combien coûte-t‿il?

Celui-là coûte deux francs cinquante.

Ne vous faut‿il pas‿aussi un peigne fin?

Combien celui-là coûte-t‿il?

Celui-là est **d'**un franc vingt-cinq.

Très bien. Je prendrai deux paquets d'épingles, le démêloir et le peigne fin.

---

NOTES.

[1] Future of **convenir,** *to suit.* Also, **qui vous plaira** (future of **plaire,** *to please*).

[2] The price is most usually asked in one of the following four ways: (1) Quel est le prix de ces mouchoirs? (2) De quel prix est ce mouchoir (*or* sont ces mouchoirs)? (3) Combien coûte ce mouchoir (*or* coûtent ces mouchoirs)? (4) Combien vendez-vous ces mouchoirs (lit.: How do you sell these handkerchiefs)?

[3] Or, simply, **Vingt francs la douzaine.**

**page 470.**

| | |
|---|---|
| 5. **Ko*n*-vē-i*n*-drȧ′.** | **Here is something you will like,[1] madam.** |
| Sȧn mŭ plĕh pä no*n* plü′. | No. I don't like that either.[2] I shall not take any silk to-day. |
| Vŭ-yā m'dēr ..... lĕh zȧr-tē′-kl' dŭ li*n*-zh'rē′. | Please tell me where the linen goods are? |
| Tōō tō fo*n*. | Right there, madam. At the rear[3] of the store ..... |
| Mōō-shȯ-ȧr′. | How much are these handkerchiefs? |
| | Twenty francs a dozen.[4] |
| Dû dōō-zĕn'. | Very well. I'll take two dozen. |
| Ko*n*-bē-i*n*′ kōōt sĕh zā-pi*n*′-gl'? | How much are these pins?[5] |
| Dē sōōl pȧ-kĕh′. | Ten cents a package. |
| Dā-mĕh-lȯ-ȧr ..... kōōt tēl′? | And that large comb?[6] |
| | That one costs 2 francs and a half.[7] |
| Pĕh′-n̄' fi*n*′. | Do you not wish a fine comb, also? |
| | How much is that one? |
| | That one costs a franc and a quarter. |
| Dû pȧ-kĕh dā-pi*n*′-gl'. | Very well. I'll take two packages of pins, the large comb, and the fine one. |

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 Something that will please you.

2 That pleases me not, *neither*. Nor I either = **Ni moi *non plus*.** (Lit.: *Nor me no more.*)

3 *Quite* at the bottom.

4 They are of 20 francs *the* dozen.

5 How much cost —?

6 And that large-comb, how much costs it?

7 Two francs fifty (centimes).

**6.** SUPPLEMENTARY FORMS

In answering, the French do not employ the short forms he did n't; Yes, I am; No, he does not; but (for instance): *going there;* No, he does not *speak of it.* In other words, what-sentence in which it is again referred to (see Note 1). Hence, French, the learner must supply the pronouns and other words

**1. Question.** Do you have the book?

**Answer** { **English,** Yes, I have.
**French,** Yes, I have *it* (je *l'*ai).

**2. Question.** Did you tell him so?

**Answer** { **English,** I did.
**French,** I did *tell him it* (je *le lui ai dit*).

**3. Question.** Do you have bread?

**Answer** { **English,** Yes, I have.
**French,** Yes, I have *some* (j'*en* ai).

As seen here, **en** (meaning *of it, of them, from it, from them,* **y** (meaning *to it, to them, there,* etc.) are used as *pronoun-objects* in sentences like the above, where they are not present in before the verb.[3] The position of **y** is the same, except when

1. Did you speak to him about it? = *Lui* **en** *avez*-vous parlé? *Ans.:* I did = Je *lui* **en** *ai* parlé (lit.: I *of-it* to-him have spoken).

---

NOTES.

[1] This is not really restricted to answers, but holds wherever anything mentioned is again referred to. Thus, *If you ever want any paper, come to me, I have plenty.* French: I have plenty *of it* (**j'en ai beaucoup**).

[2] *Some* or *any* before *nouns* is **du, de la, de l', or des;** (*or* **de**); as already known to the pupil. *Some paper* = **du** papier, etc. But, *some* or *any* with *verbs* = **en.** Ex.: *Have you bread?* Ans., *Yes I have some* = Oui, j'**en** ai. *No, I have not any* = Non, je n'**en** ai pas.

[3] This is the case even if other pronoun-objects are present, **en**

**IN FRENCH.**

usual in English. That is, they will not say: Yes, I have; No, Yes, I have *seen him;* No, he did n't *give me any;* Yes, I am ever has already been mentioned *must be represented* in any when having such curtailed English sentences to render in necessary to complete the sentence. *Examples:*

**4. Question.** Did Mr. X give you some money?

**Answer** { **English,** No, he did n't.
**French,** No, he did n't *give me any*.
Non, il ne m'en a pas donné.

**5. Question.** Have you a pen?

**Answer** { **English,** Yes, I have one.
**French,** Yes, I have one *of them* (j'*en* ai une).

**6. Question.** Are you going there?

**Answer** { **English,** Yes, I am.
**French,** Yes, I *am going there* (oui, j'*y vais*).

*for it, for them, about it, about them, some, any,*[2] *from there*) and as well as **me, te, le,** etc., and, like them, must be supplied English. N. B.—The position of **en** is always *immediately* **en** is also present.[4] *Examples:*

2. He gave me some = Il *m'***en** *a* donné.
3. I sent him one = Je *lui* **en** *ai* envoyé un (lit.: I to-him *of-them* have sent one).

---

**NOTES.**

coming then *between* them and the verb. This is seen in the examples given, where **en** is between **lui** and **ai parlé** in the first sentence, between **m'** and **a donné** in the second, between **lui** and **ai envoyé** in the third; while **y** is between **l'** and **ai mené** in the fifth. Of course, when the verb is in the *imperative-affirmative*, **en** and **y** come *after the verb*, like all other pronoun-objects, according to the exception to the general rule (see page 241): *Give me some* = Donnez-m'**en**; *Go there* = ***Allez*-y.** (*But:* Do *not* give me any = Ne m'**en** ***donnez*** **pas.** Do *not* go there = N'**y** ***allez*** pas).— [4] This is rare.

4. Are you speaking of him to me = Me parlez-vous de lui?
*Ans.:* Yes, I am = Oui, je *vous* **en**[1] *parle* (lit.: Yes, I to-you *about-him* speak).

---

## 7. Ne vous faut-il pas aussi des aiguilles?

Non, j'en ai déjà.
Peut-être madame aurait-elle besoin de boutons?

Je crois que j'en ai. Mais faites-m'en toujours voir.

En voici de bien jolis,[2] madame.

Combien les vendez-vous?
Trois francs la douzaine.
Ce n'est pas bon marché.
Veuillez remarquer, madame, que **c'**est de bien belle marchandise.
Eh bien, donnez-m'en[3] une douzaine.
Envoyez tout cela chez moi.
Très bien. Tout **y** sera dans une heure.

---

**NOTES.**

[1] As seen here, **en** is also (but *rarely*) used of persons, in the sense of *about* (or *of*) *him*, *about* (or *of*) *her*, *about* (or *of*) *them*. **Y** is also (but *rarely*) used of persons, in the sense of *to him*, *to her*, *to them*.

[2] Notice that in sentences where the word *ones* comes in English, no corresponding word is used in French. *English:* Here are some very nice *ones*. *French:* Of-them (**en**) here-are some (**de**) very nice.

[3] As seen here, **m'** (and **t'**) are used instead of **moi** and **toi** after the imperative-*affirmative*, when **en** is present. Give me = Donnez-**moi**; Give me some = Donnez-***m'*en**.

5. I took him there = Je *l'y ai* mené (lit.: I him *there* have taken).
6. There is some = Il *y* **en** *a*.

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **7. Dĕh zā-gü-ē′-yŭ?** | **Do you not also need[1] some needles?** |
| | No. I have some already. |
| Bŭ-zȯ-i*n* d'bōō-to*n*′? | Are you not in need of buttons?[2] |
| Fĕt ma*n*. | I think I have some. But you might show me some, anyway.[3] |
| Dŭ bē-i*n* zhȯ-lē′, mȧ-dȧm′. | Here are some very nice ones,[4] madam. |
| | What is the price?[5] |
| | Three francs a dozen. |
| | That is dear.[6] |
| Vŭ-yā r'mȧr-kā ..... bĕl mȧr-sha*n*-dēz′. | But see the fine quality[7] of the goods, madam. |
| | Well, give me a dozen.[8] |
| A*n*-vȯ-ȧ-yā tōō slȧ′. | Send everything[9] home to me. |
| Tōō tēs-rȧ′. | Very well. Everything[10] will be there within an hour. |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 To you is-there-not necessary also?
2 Perhaps madam would she have need of some buttons?
3 But make me *some still* see.
4 Of-them here-are some very nice.
5 How them sell you? — 6 That is not cheap.
7 Please observe that *it is* very nice merchandise.
8 Give me a dozen *of-them.*
9 All that to my house.
10 All there will-be in, etc.

*The following vocabulary to be learned by heart.*

## VOCABULAIRE.

### TERMES DE COUTURE.*

| | |
|---|---|
| En biais [1] (*an* bē-ĕh′), | Bias. |
| En long (*an* lo*n*′), | Lengthwise. |
| En plis [2] (*an* plē′), | In pleats. |
| En franges (*an* fra*n*′-zh′), | In fringes. |
| Plié (plē-yā′), | Folded. |
| Plissé (plē-sā′), | Pleated. |
| Bordé (bor-dā′), | Bordered. |
| Froncé (fro*n*-sā′), | Shirred. |
| Tressé (trĕh-sa′), | Braided. |
| Un nœud (nû), | A knot. |
| Une ceinture (si*n*-tür′), | A belt. |
| Deux mètres de long,[3] | Two yards in length. |
| Deux centimètres de large,[4] | Two centimetres wide. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| Il a un mètre de long, | It is a yard long. |
| Cela a deux centimètres de large, | That is two centimetres wide. |
| Cette robe vous va bien, | This dress fits you. |
| Cette robe vous prend bien la taille,[5] | That dress fits you well in the waist. |
| Elle vous donne très bonne tournure,[6] | It gives you a very graceful shape. |

---

[1] **Coupez cela en biais,** cut that bias; **en long,** lengthwise.
[2] **Laissez cela tomber en plis.** — [3] **Dû mĕh′-tr′ dŭ lo*n*′.**
[4] **Dû sa*n*-tē-mĕh′-tr′ dŭ lâr′-zh′.** — [5] **Tă′-yŭ.** — [6] **Tōōr-nür′.**
* **Kōō-tür′,** sewing.

*The following vocabulary to be learned by heart.*

## VOCABULAIRE.

### LE CORPS.*

| | |
|---|---|
| Le front (fr*on*), | The forehead. |
| Le menton (ma*n*-to*n*′), | The chin. |
| La bouche (bōōsh'), | The mouth. |
| Les lèvres *f.* (lĕh′-vr'), | The lips. |
| La langue (la*ng*'), | The tongue. |
| Les joues *f.* (zhōō'), | The cheeks. |
| Le cou (kōō), | The neck. |
| L'épaule *f.* (lā-pōl'), | The shoulder. |
| Le bras (brȧ), | The arm. |
| Le coude (kōōd'), | The elbow. |
| Le poignet (pȯ‿ȧ-ñĕh′), | The wrist. |
| Les doigts *m.* (dȯ‿ȧ′), | The fingers. |
| Le pouce (pōōs'), | The thumb. |
| La poitrine (pȯ‿ȧ-trēn'), | The breast. |
| Le dos (dō), | The back. |
| Les côtés *m.* (kō-tā′), | The sides. |
| La jambe (zha*n*′-b'), | The leg. |
| Le genou (zh'nōō′), | The knee. |
| La cheville (sh'vē′-y*ŭ*), | The ankle. |
| Le talon (tȧ-lo*n*′), | The heel. |
| Se peigner,[1] | To comb one's self. |
| Me faire friser,[2] | To have my hair curled. |
| Vous faire couper les cheveux,[3] | To have your hair cut. |

[1] **Sŭ pĕh-ñā′.** — [2] **Frē-zā′.**
[3] **Kōō-pā lĕh sh'vû′,** to-yourself to-make to-cut the hairs.
* **Kor,** the body.

*To be studied by heart and then repeated aloud as a real conversation, whether for self-study or preparation for the class-room. (See also **Directions**, before **Part I.**)*

## CONVERSATIONS.

### 1.—À PROPOS DE ROBES.

Comment votre cousine veut‿elle faire couper cette soie?—Elle veut la faire couper en biais.—Ce sera joli[1] pour la jupe.[2]—Oui, avec une frange grenat[3] et deux nœuds de chaque[4] côté.—Que va-t‿elle choisir en fait de ceinture?—Une ceinture de cuir,[5] je crois.—On dit[6] que c'est tout‿à fait‿à la mode.[7] Oui, c'est ce qu'on dit.[8]

### 2.—VISITE DU TAILLEUR.

Bonjour, monsieur. Je viens vous‿essayer votre‿habit.—Je voulais justement sortir. Ne pourriez-vous pas revenir cet‿après-midi?—Cela ne se peut pas, monsieur. Ma clientèle est si nombreuse.[9]—Eh bien, dépêchons-nous . . . . . Comment me va-t-il?—Je trouve qu'il vous va très bien aux‿épaules et à la

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

[1] **Zhȯ-lē′**, pretty.—[2] **Zhüp'**, skirt.—[3] **Grŭ-nȧ′**, garnet color.
[4] **Shȧk**, each.—[5] **Kü‿ēr′**, leather.—[6] They say.
[7] **Tōō tȧ fĕh tȧ**, all the fashion. Lit.: All *in* the fashion.
[8] **Sĕh skon dē′**, that's what they say.
[9] **Mȧ klē-yan-tĕl ĕh sē non-brûz'**, I have so much to do. Lit.: My *patronage* (custom) is so *numerous* (*i. e.* large).

poitrine.—Ne me prend-il pas bien la taille?—Oui, mais il fait un pli[1] dans le dos. Attendez, je vais épingler[2] cela.—Les pans[3] sont trop longs. Ils me vont jusqu'aux[4] genoux. Et le pantalon va mal.[5] Voyez, il me couvre à peine[5] la cheville.—Ne vous inquiétez pas.[6] J'arrangerai tout cela.[7]

### 3.—*CHEZ UN COIFFEUR.*

Je voudrais me faire couper les cheveux. Coupez-les moi assez courts.[8]—Comme la dernière fois, monsieur?—Non. Ne me les coupez pas aussi courts que[9] la dernière fois.—Voilà, monsieur.[10]—Ne me mettez pas de pommade. Donnez-moi seulement un coup de peigne.[11]—Monsieur ne veut-il pas aussi se faire raser?[12]—Oui, rasez-moi, mais dépêchez-vous. Je suis pressé.[13] Il me faut être au Palais-Royal à midi moins dix, et il est déjà la demie.[14]

---

**Note—Study the irregular verbs Dormir and Ouvrir, page 514.**

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

[1] **Plē,** crease.—[2] To pin that (up).—[3] **Pan,** flaps.

[4] They reach as far as. Lit.: To-me go as-far-as.

[5] Fits badly..... *To-me* covers scarcely *the* ankle.

[6] **Nŭ vōō zin-kē-ā-tā pä',** do not be uneasy. Lit.: *Yourself disquiet not.*—[7] I'll have everything right. Lit.: Will-arrange all that.

[8] Cut them pretty short.—[9] Do not cut them as short as—.

[10] 'There you are,' sir.

[11] Only, comb my hair. Lit.: Give me only a *stroke of-comb.*

[12] Will you not also have a shave? Lit.: Mr. will he not *have* himself shaved (**rä-zā'**).—[13] *In a hurry.*—[14] The half, *i. e.* half-past.

*To be translated and written into French, but also to be recited orally in the class-room. (For Self-Study, see* ***Directions,*** *before* ***Part I.****)*

## EXERCISES.

### 1.—*CHEZ‿UN CHEMISIER.**

What can I do for you,[1] sir?—Have you any neckties?—Yes, sir. What kind of neckties do you wish?—I want a silk necktie.—Here are some very nice ones.[2]—They are not long enough.[3]—They are[4] a yard long, sir.—What is the price of this one?[5] Fifty cents.—I can buy a better necktie in America for[6] forty cents.—That is impossible. But to get your custom, I'll let you have this one for[6] 45 cents. But it is[7] very cheap.—Very well, I'll take it.[8]

Do you need[9] anything else?[10] Are you not in need of collars?—Yes. How[11] do you sell collars?[12] —That depends on[13] the quality.—These are[14] six

---

**Aids to Translation.**

1 What is there for your service?

2 Of them (**en**) here-are some (**d'**) excellent (**excellentes**).

3 **Assez longues.**— 4 They *have.*— 5 Of what price is this one (*fem.*)?— 6 **À.**— 7 It is (**c'est**).— 8 I take it (**la**).

9 Have you need (**besoin**) of. Or, also, To-you is-there necessary.

10 Lit.: *Other thing.*

11 How *much.* Let the pupil always distinguish between *How,* meaning *in what way* or *manner* (**comment**), and *How,* when meaning *How much* (**combien**).— 12 The collars.

13 *Of.*— 14 These (*masc.*) are *of.*— * **Shŭ-mē-zē-ā′,** Haberdasher.

francs *a*[1] dozen. Those[2] are 5 francs a[1] dozen. . . . . Which ones will you choose?—I 'll take these.[3]

### 2.—*CHEZ‿UN COIFFEUR DE DAMES.*

How do you wish (to) have your hair dressed,[4] this morning?—I want to have it curled.[5] Do not put on too much pomade.[6] . . . . You did not brush my hair.—I beg pardon. Look in this mirror.—I was wrong.[7]

### 3.—*VISITE DE LA COUTURIÈRE.*

Why did n't you pleat the skirt?—You did n't tell me to do it.[8]—Yes, I told you.[9]—At first, you said so;[10] but, afterward,[11] you said you would like it better shirred.[12]—You are right. I had forgotten.[13] But why did n't you put[14] a bow on[15] this side? . . . . . How does the dress fit me?[16]—It[17] fits you splendidly.[18] It[17] gives you a very graceful shape.

---

**Note.—Study the irregular verbs, Partir and Venir, page 516.**

---

**Aids to Translation.**

[1] *The.*— [2] Masculine.— [3] I take these.

[4] How wish you to-yourself (**vous**) to-make to-dress-the-hair (**coiffer**).— [5] I want to-myself (**me**) them to-make to-curl (**friser**).

[6] Put on not too-much (**trop**) of.— [7] I *had* wrong.

[8] You to-me (**m'**) *have* not told (**dit de**) it to-do.

[9] I to-you it *have* told.— [10] You *it* have said.— [11] **Après.**

[12] You *have* said *that* you it would like better (**aimeriez mieux**) shirred.— [13] I it had forgotten.— [14] **Mis.**— [15] *Of.*

[16] How the dress to-me *goes it* (**va-t-elle**)?

[17] *Feminine.*— [18] **À merveille, à mĕr-vĕh'-yŭ.**

*To be read by means of the literal translation opposite, then without it, in preparation for reading aloud and translating in class.*

## LECTURE.

### À PROPOS DE FEU.—N° 2.*

—M. Wilson, car tel était son nom, partit très satisfait, n'ayant saisi autre chose que les protestations chaleureuses du garçon, mais ne se doutant nullement de ce que ce dernier disait en réalité.

—Or, † l'après-midi, à trois heures, la colonie américaine donnait un grand dîner en l'honneur de M. Tennyson. Tous les convives s'y trouvaient, y compris M. Wilson. Seul, le poëte lauréat manquait à l'appel.

—On attendit une demi-heure, une heure, deux heures, lorsque l'alarme devenant irrésistible, les convives se rendirent en masse à l'hôtel.

—Arrivés là, leurs craintes furent loin d'être[1] calmées. En effet, l'hôtel semblait tout sens dessus dessous.[2] D'ailleurs, Monsieur Wilson n'eut pas plus tôt atteint[3] la marche du haut que le domestique auquel il avait parlé le matin lui cria: „Ah! Monsieur, vous aviez bien raison. C'est le fou le plus forcené que j'aie jamais vu de ma vie. Mais je vous avais dit qu'il ne sortirait pas de là, et, vous voyez, *il y est!*„

—De son côté, Monsieur Tennyson n'entendit pas

---

[1] Were far from *to-be*. After all prepositions, except **en,** the infinitive present is used.— [2] **Sand-süd-sōō',** topsy-turvy, upside down.
[3] **Å-tin'.**— * See page 328.— † **Or**=Now *then.*

*For Self-Study, should be read by means of the translation, then without it, and when thoroughly understood, read aloud in French.*

## READING.

### ABOUT FIRE.—N° 2.

—Mr. Wilson, for such was his name, went-away quite satisfied, having caught no other thing than the warm protestations of-the waiter, and suspecting † not-at-all (*of*) that which *this* latter was-saying in reality.

—Now, in the afternoon, at 3 o'clock, the American colony was giving a great dinner in honor of Mr. Tennyson. All the guests themselves there found,[1] therein *included*[2] Mr. Wilson. Alone, the poet laureate lacked at the roll-call.[3]

—They waited a half hour, an hour, two hours, when the alarm becoming irresistible, the guests themselves betook altogether to the hotel.

—Arrived there, their fears were far from being calmed. In fact, the hotel seemed to be topsy-turvy. And, Mr. Wilson had no sooner reached the step *at-the* top, than the servant to-whom he had spoken (in) the morning, to-him-cried-out: "Ah! sir. You *had* indeed right. He is the madman the most violent that I have ever seen *of* my life. But I had told you that he would not go out of there, and you see, *he is in there!*"[4]

—On his part,[5] Mr. Tennyson heard no sooner the

---

1 Were present.— 2 Including.
3 Was absent.— 4 Lit.: *He therein is!*
5 Lit.: *Of* his side.— † **Douter,** to doubt; **Se douter,** to suspect.

plus tôt la voix de ses amis qu'il ouvrit sa porte et s'écria: „Enfin! vous voilà. Vous me sauvez la vie! Je n'ai jamais vu des fous furieux comme ces Français. Voilà deux heures qu'ils cherchent à me tuer, simplement parce que j'ai voulu sortir!„

—Naturellement, tout s'expliqua, et M. Wilson apprit qu'au lieu de, „Ne laissez pas sortir le feu„ il aurait dû dire,[1] „Ne laissez pas éteindre le feu.„ Car alors même s'il eût prononcé *fou* au lieu de *feu*, il aurait été compris. Mais M. Wilson avait appris le français par une méthode dite grammaticale, et qui consiste, non pas à savoir la grammaire (car la plupart du temps ceux qui étudient de cette manière ne la savent pas), mais à menuiser des phrases au moyen de règles qu'on ne sait pas et qui, même si on les sait, nous font à tout bout de champ[2] dire des absurdités, comme dans le cas de M. Wilson. Ceux qui étudient ainsi me font l'effet de danseurs de corde qui voudraient danser sans corde.

—Mais enfin, la grammaire .....

—Est utile; je dirais même, en dépit de John Locke, presque indispensable. Mais la conversation au moyen de phrases idiomatiques et nécessaires, c'est là la corde. La grammaire n'est jamais que le balancier.

---

[1] Lit.: He should-have *ought-to* (**dû**) say. *Anglice:* He ought to have said.

[2] **À tōō bōōd sha*n*'.** Lit.: At every end of (the) field.

voice of his friends than he opened his door and exclaimed: "At last! There you are. You save my life![1] I have never seen such[2] furious madmen as these *French*. Here are two hours that they are-trying[3] to kill me, simply because I wanted to-go-out."

— Naturally, everything was explained, and Mr. Wilson learned that instead of "*Let not go-out* the fire," he ought to have said, "*Let not extinguish* the fire." For then, even if he had pronounced fōō instead of fû, he would have been understood. But, Mr. Wilson had learned the French by a method so-called[4] grammatical, and which consists not *in knowing* (*the*) grammar (for the most of-the time those who study *of* this manner, know it not), but *in carpentering*-together sentences by means of rules which one knows not, and which, even if one knows them, make us at every turn say absurdities, as in the case of Mr. Wilson. Those who study thus, appear to me as[5] rope-dancers who would want to dance without rope.

— But now, (*the*) grammar .....

— Is useful; I would-say even, in spite of John Locke, almost indispensable. But (*the*) conversation by means of idiomatic and necessary phrases, *that* is the rope. (*The*) grammar is never but the balancing-pole.

---

1 You *to-me* save *the* life. — 2 Any.
3 Seek. — 4 Lit.: *Said.*
5 Make (*i. e.* produce) the effect on-me (**me**) of.

*The French text of the following letters to be learned by heart, and written from memory some hour or two afterward. In the case of pupils studying with a teacher, this may be done either at home or in the class, as he may direct.*

## CORRESPONDANCE.

### *LETTRE D'INVITATION À UNE SOIRÉE.*

Monsieur et Madame A. prient Monsieur et Madame B. de vouloir bien[1] leur faire l'honneur de passer la soirée chez eux,[2] jeudi prochain.

Ce 23 janvier 1888.

### *TRANSLATION.*

Mr. and Mrs. A. request Mr. and Mrs. B. to honor them with their company for the evening on Thursday next.

January the 23d, 1888.

---

### *FORMULE D'ACCEPTATION.*

Monsieur et Madame B. acceptent avec empressement[3] l'invitation qu'ils ont‿eu l'honneur de recevoir de Monsieur et Madame A.,‿et les prient d'en agréer tous leurs remercîments.[4]

Ce 24 janvier 1888.

### *TRANSLATION.*

Mr. and Mrs. B. are most happy to accept the invitation which they have had the honor to receive from Mr. and Mrs. A., and beg them to accept their acknowledgments.

January 24th, 1888.

---

[1] To be willing. Strictly: to-will indeed.

[2] To do them the honor of spending the evening at their house.

[3] Accept with *eagerness*.

[4] And pray them to for-it accept all their thanks.

# PART IV.

## THE PURCHASES.

## LES ACHATS.

### SECTION III.

1. ON RISING.
2. TRYING SHOES ON.
3. SMALL ARTICLES.
4. THE COLORS.
5. AT A GLOVE-MAKER'S.
6. ABOUT JEWELS.
7. AT THE BELLE JARDINIÈRE.
8. A VISIT TO THE SALON.
9. DECLINING AN INVITATION.

# III.

## FRENCH.

### 1. Il faut que nous partions de bonne heure.

A quelle heure me faut-il être ici?
Soyez ici à huit heures.
Comment! De si bonne heure? Vous plaisantez.

Pas du tout. Songez qu'il nous faut faire un tour aux Champs-Elysées.

Ma femme ne les a pas encore vus.
Je vous assure que c'est vrai.
Depuis quand êtes-vous donc à Paris?

Depuis le mois dernier.[1]
Nous sommes arrivés le 15 juillet.

Mais il a fait si mauvais temps que nous n'avons été nulle part.[2]

---

NOTES.

[1] **Le mois dernier,** *last month;* **le mois prochain,** *next month;* **la semaine dernière (dĕr-nē-air'),** *last week;* **la semaine prochaine,** *next week.* Also, **l'été dernier,** *last summer;* **l'été prochain,** *next summer;* **l'hiver dernier,** *last winter;* **l'hiver prochain,** *next winter;* etc. These forms are more precise than **en été, en automne, en hiver, au printemps.** See page 88.

[2] The French cannot say, *not anybody, not any one, not any thing, not anywhere,* but only, *nobody, no one* (**personne**); *nothing* (**rien**); *nowhere* (**nulle part**). They have *not* seen *anybody,* Ils *n*'ont vu *personne,* etc.

## III.

| PRONUNCIATION. | TRANSLATION. |
|---|---|
| **1. Ēl fō k'nōō pȧr-tē-o*n* d'bȯ-nŭr'.** | **We must start early.[1]** |
| | At what time must I be here?[2] |
| Sȯ-ȧ-yā zē-sē. | Be here at eight. |
| Plā-za*n*-tā'. | What! So early. You don't mean it.[3] |
| So*n*-zhā. | Certainly.[4] Remember[4] we must take a turn in the Champs-Elysées. |
| Fȧm. | My wife has not seen them yet. |
| Zhŭ vōō zȧ-sür'. | I assure you it is so.[5] |
| Dŭ-pü-ē ka*n*. | How long have you been in Paris?[6] |
| Dĕr-nē-ā'. | Since last month. |
| Nōō sȯm zȧ-rē-vā. | We got here on the 15th of July.[7] |
| Nül pȧr'. | But the weather has been so bad[8] that we haven't been anywhere.[9] |

---

### LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 It is-necessary that we start *of good hour.*
2 At what hour to-me is-it-necessary to be here?
3 How! Of so good hour? You jest.
4 Not at all. Think that. **Songer** = to dream, to muse, to reflect.
5 I assure you that it is true.
6 Since when are you in Paris?
7 We *are* arrived the 15 July.
8 It has been so bad weather.
9 That we have been nowhere. Notice that **pas** is not used at all.

Eh bien, il faut que je vous quitte.
Comment! Déjà?
Oui. Je vous quitte à regret; mais il le faut. . . . . Ah! j'oubliais. Voici les renseignements que vous **m'**avez[1] demandés.

Je vous en fais tous mes remercîments.
Il n'y a pas de quoi. — Au revoir.

---

**Note. — Study "the agreement of the Past**

---

## 2. Monsieur, il faut vous lever!

Qui est-ce qui frappe à ma porte?
C'est le garçon à qui vous avez dit de vous réveiller de bonne heure. Il est six heures passées.
Quoi! Est-ce possible?
En êtes-vous bien sûr?
Il ne fait pas encore jour.
Ce que vous dites est vrai, monsieur. Mais songez que les jours diminuent. Regardez à votre montre.

Je ne trouve pas **d'**[2]allumettes. Ah! en voici.

---

NOTES.

[1] Do not forget that the pronoun-objects come before the verb (see page 236), even if the verb has *two* parts. That is, they come (as **m'** does here) *not* before the past participle (**demandés,** here), but before the *auxiliary* (**avoir,** or **être**).

[2] See page 59.

| | |
|---|---|
| Kēt'. | Well, I must leave you. |
| | What! Already? |
| Kē-tȧ rŭ-grĕh ..... zhōō-blē-yĕh' ..... ra*n*-sĕh-ñ'-ma*n*. | Yes. I am sorry to leave you;[1] but I must.[2] Ah! I was about to forget.[3] Here is the information you asked me (for). |
| Tōō mĕr-mĕr-sē-ma*n*'. | I thank you ever so much.[4] |
| Ēl nē yȧ päd kȯ-ȧ'. | Do n't mention it.[5] — Good-by. |

**Participle," page 499.**

| | |
|---|---|
| 2. **Mŭs-yû', ēl fō vōōl-vā'.** | **Sir! You must get up.**[6] |
| Kē ĕs-kē frȧ-pȧ mȧ. | Who is that, knocking? |
| Rā-vĕh-yā ..... pä-sā'. | I, sir, the waiter, whom you[7] told to call you early. It is past six o'clock. |
| | What! Is that possible? |
| A*n* nêt' ..... sür'? | Are you very sure of it? |
| | It is not daylight yet.[8] |
| Skŭ vōō dēt ..... dē-mē-nü'. | That's true, sir. But remember that the days are getting shorter.[9] Look at your watch. |
| Dȧ-lü-mĕt'. | I don't find any matches. Ah! here are some. |

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] I leave you *with* regret. — [2] But it is-necessary *to* (**le**).
[3] I was-forgetting. — [4] Make you all my thanks. — [5] There is not *of what* (i. e. *wherewith* to thank me). — [6] It is-necessary *yourself to-raise.*
[7] It is the waiter, to whom you said to wake you (up).
[8] It *makes* not day yet. — [9] The days diminish.

Eh bien, puisqu'il faut que je me lève, à la guerre comme à la guerre.
Attendez, un moment, garçon. Vous ne m'avez pas apporté **d'**[1]eau fraîche, hier soir.

Il me manque aussi des serviettes.
Apportez-moi tout cela au plus vite. Dépêchez-vous.

---

**3. Édouard! Il faut que vous vous dépêchiez.**
Habillez-vous[2] promptement.
Lavez-vous[3] les[4] mains et la[4] figure dans cette cuvette.
Ne vous essuyez[5] pas les mains à cette serviette.
Prenez cet essuie-mains.

Pourquoi ne vous dépêchez-vous pas davantage?
Faut-il que je me fâche?[6]

---

**4. Il faudra que le domestique porte des lettres à la poste.**
Est-ce à moi que vous parlez? Quelles lettres voulez-vous dire?
Les lettres dont je vous parlais, hier soir.

---

NOTES.

1 See page 59.
2 Imperative-affirmative of **s'habiller,** *to dress one's self.*
3 Imperative-affirmative of **se laver,** *to wash one's self.*
4 The French use the article instead of the possessive adjective (**mon, ma, mes**) with the parts of the body, wherever such use does not give rise to confusion.
5 From **s'essuyer (sĕh-sü-ē-yā'),** *to dry one's self.*
6 **Se fâcher,** *to get angry.*

| | |
|---|---|
| Pü-ēs-kēl fō kŭzh mŭ lĕv', à là gair kò-mà là gair'. | Well, I must get up, I must.[1] |
| À-tan-dā zun mò-man'. | Wait a moment, waiter. You did n't bring me fresh water last night. |
| Man-kō-sē. | And I have n't any napkins. |
| Tōō slà. | Bring me all that as quick as you can.[2] Hurry up. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **3. Ā-dōō-àr'! Ēl fō k'vōō vōō dā-pêh-shē-ā'.** | **Edward! You must hurry up.** |
| À-bē-yā vōō pron-t'man'. | Hurry up and dress.[3] |
| Min zā là fē-gür'. | Wash your hands and[4] face in that basin. |
| Nŭ vōō-zĕh-sü-ē-yā. | Do not wipe[5] your hands on this (fine) towel. |
| Sĕh-tĕh-sü-ē-min'. | Take this coarse towel. |
| Dà-van-tàzh'. | Why don't you make haste?[6] |
| Kŭ zhŭm făsh'? | Must I get angry?[7] |

| | |
|---|---|
| **4. Ēl fō-drà kŭl dò-mĕs-tĕk por-t.** | **The servant will have to mail some letters.[8]** |
| Ĕs à mò-àk vōō? | Are you speaking to *me?* What letters do you mean?[9] |
| Donzh vōō pàr-lĕh'. | The letters of which I spoke to you last night.[10] |

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 "At (*the*) war, as at (*the*) war." — 2 At-the most quick.
3 Dress yourself promptly. — 4 *Wash to-yourself the hands*, etc.
5 To-yourself wipe not the hands. — 6 *Yourself despatch you not more?*
7 Is it-necessary that I get angry (*myself anger*)?
8 It will-be necessary that the servant carry some letters, etc.
9 Is it to-me you speak? What letters *will you say?*
10 *Yesterday evening*. If the *night*, not the *evening*, is meant: **la nuit passée.**

Jean ! Mettez ces lettres à la poste.
N'oubliez pas de mettre un timbre-poste de 10 centimes sur celle-là.

---

**Note. — Study the irregular* verb**

---

## 5. Qu'avez-vous donc ?

Je n'ai rien. Seulement mes bottines[1] me vont mal.

Elles sont trop étroites.
Où vous gênent[2]-elles ?
Elles me serrent trop le cou-de-pied.

Et elles me font mal au talon.
Et puis, les semelles sont trop épaisses.

J'en suis au désespoir.
Car jamais je ne viendrai[3] à bout[3] de les mettre.

Et il me les fallait pour après-demain.

C'est fâcheux.[4] Combien les avez-vous payées ?[5]

---

NOTES.

[1] **Bottines,** *high* (*buttoned* or *laced*) *shoes*, ladies' shoes; **souliers** (**sōō-lē-ā'**), *shoes* or *boots* (used in general for all foot-gear); **bottes** (**bót'**), *boots*.

[2] **Gêner,** *to annoy*, or *to pinch*.

[3] Future of **venir.** **Je viendrai, tu viendras, il viendra, nous viendrons, vous viendrez, ils viendront.** *I shall* (or *will*) *come*, etc. — **Venir à bout de,** *to* (*finally*) *succeed in*, *to attain one's aim*.

[4] Or, **dommage** (*a pity*).

[5] The French do not say : to pay *for* a thing, but, simply, *to pay it*. English : *How much did you pay for them ?* French : *How much did you pay them*. — * See page 475.

| | |
|---|---|
| | John! Mail these letters. |
| Nōō-blē-yā päd mĕh-trun tin-br'-pós'-t dŭ dē san-tēm'. | Don't forget to put a two-cent stamp[1] on that one. |

---

**Recevoir, page 516.**

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **5. Ká-vā vōō don'?** | **What is the matter with you?[2]** |
| Zhŭ nā rĕ-in'. Sŭl-man mĕh bó-tēn mŭ von mál'. | Nothing is the matter with me.[3] Only my shoes don't fit me.[4] |
| Tró-pā-tró-át'. | They are too narrow. |
| Zhên tĕl'? | Where do they pinch you? |
| Sĕr tról kōōd-pē-ā'. | They are too tight in the instep.[5] |
| Fon mál ō tá-lon'. | And they hurt my heel.[6] |
| Lĕh smĕl son tró-pā-pĕs'. | And then, the soles are too thick. |
| Zhan sü-ē zō dā-zĕs-pó-ár'. | I am in despair about it.[7] |
| Zhŭn vē-in-drā á bōō dlĕh mĕh'-tr'. | For I'll never be able to wear them.[8] |
| Á-prĕd-min'. | And I had to have them for day after to-morrow.[9] |
| Fä-shû' . . . . . pĕ-yā'? | That's too bad.[10] What did you pay for them? |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 A stamp of 10 centimes.
2 What have you (*then*).
3 I have nothing.
4 To-me go badly.
5 They to-me squeeze too-much *the* instep.
6 To-me (*make*) *hurt* at-the heel. **Faire mal,** *to hurt.*
7 I on-account-of-it (**en**) am in despair.
8 I will never *come-to-an end* (i. e. *succeed in*, *be able*) to put them on. **Mettre,** *to put*, *put on*, or *wear*.
9 There to-me was-necessary *them*.
10 Annoying.

Je les ai payées cinquante francs.
Voyons. Essayez-les encore une fois.

Ce n'est pas la peine. Je vous assure qu'elles ne me vont pas.
C'est égal. Essayez-les toujours.[1]

Attendez, que je les boutonne.

---

**6. Je ne pourrai jamais porter ces bottines-là.**

Vous aurez beau dire. J'y suis comme dans un étau.

Ah! cela va mieux, maintenant.
Je suis un peu plus à l'aise.
Je vous conseille[2] de garder cette paire-là.
Votre pied s'y fera très aisément.

---

**Note.** — **Study the irregular verb**

---

NOTES.

[1] **Toujours** (*always*) is sometimes used in the sense of *still*, and (more rarely) *any way*. **Essayez-les toujours** = Try them *still*, or, rather, *any way*.

Although verbs of a favorable meaning generally take **à** before another verb in the infinitive, remember that *verbs of command*, *entreaty*, *counsel*, (like **dire, ordonner, charger, prier, conseiller,** etc.), take the preposition **de**.

| | |
|---|---|
| | I paid 50 francs (for them).[1] |
| An-kor ün fó-á'. | Well, now. Try them (on) again.[2] |
| S'nĕh pä lȧ pĕn'. | It 's no use.[3] I assure you they do not fit me. |
| Sĕh tā-gȧl. | Never mind. Try them on (any way).[4] |
| Kŭzh lĕh bōō-tȯn'. | Wait. I 'll button them up (for you).[5] |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **6. Zhŭn pōō-rēh zhȧ-mĕh' por-tā'-sĕh bó-tēn-lȧ'.** | **I never will be able to wear[6] these shoes.** |
| Dan zun nā-tō'. | You may say what you please. But my foot feels as in a vice.[7] |
| Mē-ü'. | Ah! it feels better.[8] |
| Plü zȧ lĕz'. | My foot is a little easier.[9] |
| Kon-sĕh'-y' dŭ. | I advise you to keep that pair. |
| Trĕh zĕh-zā-man'. | Your foot will get used to them very quickly.[10] |

---

**Devoir, page 516.**

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] I them have paid. — [2] Yet a time.
[3] It is not (worth) the trouble.
[4] Try them *still* (i. e. *any way*).
[5] Wait, that I may-button them. — [6] **Porter,** *to carry;* or, *to wear.*
[7] You will have (a) fine (time) talking. But in-them (**y**) am, etc.
[8] That goes better. — [9] I am a little more at ease.
[10] Will *make-itself* (*i. e.* get used) to them very easily.

*The following vocabulary to be learned by heart.*

## VOCABULAIRE.

### PETITS‿OBJETS.

| | |
|---|---|
| Des gants de peau (ga*n* d'pō'), | Kid gloves. |
| Des gants de laine (dlĕn'), | Woolen gloves. |
| Une canne (kȧn'), | A cane. |
| Une chaîne (shên'), | A chain. |
| Une bague (bȧg'), | A finger-ring. |
| Des boucles d'oreilles (bōō-kl' dor‿ĕh'yŭ), | Earrings. |
| Un bracelet (brȧs-lĕh'), | A bracelet. |
| Un diamant (dē‿ȧ-ma*n*'), | A diamond. |
| Un collier de perles (kȯ-lē‿ād pĕr'-l'), | A pearl necklace. |
| Une parure [1] (pȧ-rür'), | A set of jewels. |
| Une lorgnette (lor-ñĕt'), | An opera-glass. |
| Un lorgnon (lor-ño*n*'), | An eye-glass. |
| Des lunettes (lü-nĕt'), | Spectacles. |
| Un porte-monnaie (por-t-mȯ-nĕh'), | Pocket-book. |
| Un flacon (flȧ-ko*n*'), | Flask. |
| Un cabaret (kȧ-bȧ-rĕh'), | Tea (*or* liquor) tray. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| Combien cela coûte‿t-il? | How much does that cost? |
| Combien cela? | How much is that? |
| Combien‿est-ce? [2] | How much is it? |
| Combien demandez vous de [3] . . . . .? | How much do you want for . . . . .? |
| Qui est-ce? (kē ĕs'), | Who is it? |
| Où est-ce? (ōō ĕs'), | Where is it? |

---

[1] **Une parure de diamants; une parure de rubis (rü-bē').**
[2] **Ko*n*-bē‿i*n* nĕs'?** — [3] Lit.: Do you ask *of*.

*The following vocabulary to be studied by heart.*

## VOCABULAIRE.

### LES COULEURS.

(ADJECTIVES.)*

| | |
|---|---|
| Blanc[1] (bla*n*), | White. |
| Noir[2] (nȯ‿ȧr′), | Black. |
| Bleu[2] (blû), | Blue. |
| Brun[2] (bru*n*), | Brown. |
| Châtain[3] (shä-ti*n*′), | Chestnut. |
| Rouge[4] (rōōzh′), | Red. |
| Roux[5] (rōō′), | Reddish. |
| Cramoisi[2] (krȧ-mȯ‿ȧ-zē′), | Crimson. |
| Pourpre[4] (pōōr-pr′), | Purple. |
| Écarlate[4] (ā-kȧr-lȧt′), | Scarlet. |
| Incarnat[2] (i*n*-kȧr-nȧ′), | Carnation. |
| Violet[6] (vē‿ȯ-lĕh′), | Violet. |
| Azur[3] (ȧ-zür′), | Azure. |
| Vert[2] (vĕr′), | Green. |
| Jaune[4] (zhōn′), | Yellow. |
| Olive[4] (ȯ-lēv′), | Olive. |
| Salissant[2] (sȧ-lē-sa*n*′), | Easily soiled. |
| Bon teint[8] (bo*n* ti*n*′), | Fast color. |

---

[1] Fem.: **Blanche.** — [2] Feminine regular (by adding **e**).
[3] No feminine form. — [4] Feminine same as masculine.
[5] Fem.: **Rousse (rōōs′).** — [6] Fem.: **Violette (vē‿ȯ-lĕt′).**
[7] **Une couleur salissante,** *a color that shows the dirt.* **Cela n'est pas salissant,** *that does not show the dirt.*
[8] Not an adjective, though used adjectively. **Une couleur bon teint,** *a fast color.* Lit.: A color *good dye.*
* *White, blue,* etc., as nouns, are, **Le blanc, le bleu,** etc.

*To be studied by heart and then repeated aloud as a real conversation, whether for self-study or preparation for the classroom. (See also* **Directions,** *before* **Part I.***)*

## CONVERSATIONS.

### 1.—*CHEZ UN GANTIER.*

Édouard, il faut que vous achetiez des gants. Ceux-là sont tout usés.[1]—Je ne sais pas où il y a un bon magasin.—Tenez! En voilà un[2] de l'autre côté de la rue.—Traversons[3] la rue et entrons-y.[4]

Qu'y a-t-il pour votre service, messieurs?—Mon ami voudrait une paire de gants.—Quel numéro portez-vous, monsieur?—Je ne sais plus.[5] J'oublie toujours le numéro.—Très bien. Je vais vous prendre la mesure.[6] Sont-ce[7] des gants de peau que vous voulez? ..... En voici une paire qui vous ira.—Je les trouve un peu[8] longs. Ils sont trop étroits. J'ai peur de les faire craquer.[9]—Attendez. Je vais y mettre un peu de poudre.[10] Maintenant, essayez-les.—De quel prix sont-ils?—Ils sont de dix francs la

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

1 **Tōō tü-zā',** all worn out.
2 There is one. Lit.: Of-them there-is one.
3 **Trå-vĕr-son',** let us cross.— 4 Let us go in **(y)**; **an-tron-zē'.**
5 I don't know *any-more.*— 6 Lit.: I go to-you to-take the measure.
7 **Son'-s'.** Lit.: Are *they?* plural of **est-ce (ĕs').** *Angl.:* Is it?
8 **Un pû,** a little, rather.
9 To split them. Lit.: To-make them crack **(krå-kā').**
10 I am going to put a little powder in-them **(y).**

paire. — C'est trop cher. Est-ce là[1] votre dernier prix?[1] — Oui, monsieur. C'est tout au juste.[2]

### 2.—*À PROPOS DE BIJOUX.*

Vous n'avez pas vu ma parure? — Non. Si vous voulez tirer[3] ce petit tiroir-là, vous allez trouver la boîte où elle est. — Oh! le beau peigne! Quel magnifique collier![4] — Mais que dites-vous des[5] boucles d'oreilles et des bracelets? — Ils sont superbes. Ces diamants sont d'un feu![6] — À propos, vous savez que les anciens alchimistes[7] avaient consacré le diamant ainsi que[8] l'or et le saphir[9] au soleil? — Non, je ne savais pas[10] cela. — Oui. Ils avaient aussi consacré la turquoise[9] et le plomb[9] à Saturne,[11] la cornaline[9] et l'étain[9] à Jupiter, l'émeraude[9] et le fer[9] à Mars; l'améthyste[9] et le cuivre[9] à Vénus; le vif-argent[9] à Mercure, et le cristal et l'argent à la lune.

---

**Note. — Study the irregular verb Pouvoir, page 516.**

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

[1] **Ĕs là,** etc. Is it your lowest price? Lit.: Is it there your *last* price?
[2] **Tōō tō zhüs'-t',** the very last price. Lit.: Quite at-the *exact* (price).
[3] Pull out. — [4] What (a) magnificent collar!
[5] About the. — [6] Are of a brilliancy! Lit.: *Fire.*
[7] **Lĕh zan-sē-in zàl-shē-mēs'-t',** the old alchemists. — [8] As well as.
[9] **Sà-fēr'. — Tür-kò-àz'. — Plon** (lead). — **Kor-nà-lēn'** (cornelian stone). — **Lā-tin'** (pewter). — **Lām-rōd'** (emerald). — **Fĕr** (iron). — **À-mā-tēs'-t'. — Kü-ē'-vr'** (copper). — **Vēf àr-zhan'** (quicksilver).
[10] I did not know it. Lit.: Knew it not.
[11] **Sà-tür'-n'. — Zhü-pē-tĕr'. — Màr-s. — Vā-nüs'. — Mĕr-kür'** (Mercury). — **Lün'** (moon).

*To be translated and written into French, but also to be recited orally in the class-room. (For Self-Study, see* ***Directions*** *before* ***Part I.****)*

## EXERCISES.

### 1.—*DANS UNE BOUTIQUE.*

What do you wish, gentlemen?—Let me see[1] a good opera-glass.—Here is one of the best quality.[2]—I can*not* see *anything* with (it).[3] What is the price of it?[4]—Twenty-five francs.[4]—Is n't that[5] very dear?—Not for an opera-glass of that grade.[6]—Is that[7] your lowest price?—Yes, sir. It's the very lowest.

Now, my friend would like to see a pair of spectacles.—Is the gentleman long or short-sighted?[8]—I am short-sighted.[9]—Please read this.[10]—I cannot.—Can you read that?[11]—Yes, I can read this.—Well, then, here is a pair of spectacles that will suit you.[12]

### 2.—*À LA BELLE JARDINIÈRE.*

What can I do for you, madam?—I would like

---

**Aids to Translation.**

[1] Make me see, **Faites-moi voir.**

[2] Of-them **(en)** here-is one **(une).**— [3] I can see *nothing* **with.**

[4] What of it **(en)** is the price?—It is **(c'est)** 25 francs.

[5] **N'est-ce pas.**— [6] **Qualité.**— [7] **Est-ce là.**

[8] **Monsieur a-t-il la vue longue ou la vue courte?** Lit.: Mister has he the sight long, or the sight short?

[9] I have the sight short.— [10] **Ceci.**— [11] **Cela.**

[12] To-you will-go.

to have[1] a suit[1] for my little boy.[1] — Please pass this way,[2] madam. Here is a very fine suit. — It is[3] too light. It would show[4] the dirt too easily.[5] — Here is something darker.[6] — I do not like[7] blue.[8] Show me something in[9] gray. — Here is a dark gray.[10] — It is too dark. I want something lighter. . . . . Is this[11] fast color. — Yes, madam. We warrant it. — How much is[12] the suit. — Fifty francs.[13] . . . . We have only one price.[14]

---

**Note. — Study the irregular verb Savoir, page 516.**

---

**Remark.**

*It would show* = **Ça montrerait.** Observe that *would* is rendered here by the conditional termination **(rait)**, and not by **voudrait.** Thus, *would* is rendered by one of the conditional terminations **(rais, rait, rions, riez, raient)** whenever it expresses a *condition* whether understood or stated. Here *If I were to buy it,* is the condition *understood.* N. B. This applies also to *should* and *could.*

On the other hand, whenever *would* expresses *desire* or willingness, rather than *condition,* it is rendered by **voudrais, voudrait, voudrions,** etc.

---

**Aids to Translation.**

1 **Je voudrais** (see *Remark*) or, **je voudrais avoir . . . . .** costume (*masc.*) . . . . . **petit garçon.** — 2 **Par ici.** — 3 **C'est.**

4 **Montrerait** (conditional of **montrer**). See *Remark.*

5 **Trop la poussière.** (Also, **Ce serait trop salissant**).

6 Something *of* more dark. — 7 **Je n'aime pas.**

8 *The* blue (*blue* being a noun here). — 9 Something *of.*

10 A costume gray dark. — 11 **Est-ce.** — 12 Of how-much is.

13 It is 50 fr.

14 We have only **(qu')** one price. N. B. — Don't forget **n'** before *have.*

*To be read with the aid of the notes, then without it, whether for self-study or preparation for reading aloud and translating in class. (See also* ***Directions,*** *before* ***Part I.****)*

## LECTURE.

### UNE VISITE AU SALON.

— Entrons d'abord dans la salle des paysages.[1] Vous savez que le paysage s'est élevé chez nous à une hauteur[2] qui donne à l'école française le pas sur les autres.[3] Claude le Lorrain[4] et le Poussin[5] ne sont-ils pas les deux plus grands paysagistes[6] qui aient jamais paru?[7]

— En quoi diffèrent[8]-ils donc?

— Ah! Il y a deux manières de peindre[9] la nature dans le paysage. L'une n'en est que[10] la reproduction exacte et naturelle, une sorte de fac-simile;[11] c'est celle[12] des peintres naturalistes,[12] c'est celle de Claude le Lorrain. L'autre manière tend sans cesse[13] à embellir[14] la nature, à l'ennoblir,[15] à *l'idéaliser;*[15] c'est celle de l'école idéaliste,[16] c'est celle de Poussin.

---

1 **Pĕ-ē-zȧzh',** landscapes. — 2 **Ü-nŭ ō-tŭr'.**

3 Has arisen (lit.: itself *has* raised) *with* us to a height which gives to the French school the precedence (lit.: the *step*) over.

4 **Klōd lŭ Lor-in',** Claude Lorraine (1600-1682).

5 **Lŭ Pōō-sin'** (1594-1665).

6 **Pĕ-ē-zȧ-zhēs'-t',** landscape painters.

7 Ever appeared (from **paraître**). — 8 Differ.

9 Of painting. Lit.: to paint.

10 Of-it (*i. e.* of nature) is only **(que).** — 11 **Fȧk-sē-mē-lā'.**

12 The one of (*i. e.* the manner of). . . . . Naturalistic.

13 Tends constantly (lit.: without ceasing). — 14 Embellish.

15 Ennoble, idealize. — 16 Idealistic.

Vous n'avez qu'[1] à voir, au Louvre, la Fête du Village[2] de Claude le Lorrain et le Triomphe de Flore[3] de Poussin, pour comprendre ce qui[4] les distingue.

—Mais nous voici arrivés devant les marines.[5]

—Je ne vois rien ici de bien supérieur, si ce n'est[6] cette Vue de Naples. Mais comme ce ciel est bien réussi![7] Voyez la surface de la mer[8] fouettée[9] par le vent. Y a-t-il rien de plus vrai[10] que ces vagues[11] qui blanchissent[12] au loin?

—En effet, c'est un bien joli tableau.

—C'est mon avis. Mais passons maintenant à la peinture[13] historique. Que pensez-vous de ce Detaille?[14]

—C'est très correct et bien exécuté. Mais voyez comme cela est pâle[15] à côté de[16] ce de Neuville![14]

—En effet! Quelle admirable toile![17] Quelle composition! Quelle vérité! Cela respire.[18] Cela vit.[19] Quel est le nom du tableau?

---

**Note.—Study the "Impersonal Verbs," page 524.**

---

1 Only.— 2 Village feast (*or* fair).— 3 Flora.
4 What (*strictly*, that which).— 5 Marine paintings.
6 Unless it be (lit.: If it be not).
7 **Rā-ü-sē',** executed. Lit.: *Succeeded* (*i. e.* a success).
8 **Mĕr,** the sea.— 9 **Fōō-ĕh-tā,** *whipped* (up).
10 Anything more true (lit.: *Of* more true) than.— 11 Waves **(våg').**
12 Whiten. *Ang.:* Break into white caps. . . . . In the distance (lit.: At-the far.)
13 Painting **(pin-tü-rēs-tor-ēk').**
14 Modern historical painter.— 15 *Pale*, commonplace.
16 By the side of.— 17 Canvass.— 18 Breathes.— 19 Lives.

*The French text of the following notes should be learned by heart, and the notes written from memory some hour or two afterward.*

## CORRESPONDANCE.

### *LETTRES DE REFUS.**

1.

Une indisposition subite prive Monsieur K. de l'honneur de passer la soirée chez Madame N. Il la prie d'agréer l'expression de tous ses regrets.

Ce 3 février 1888.

2.

Monsieur et Madame D. regrettent que des engagements antérieurs les empêchent d'accepter l'aimable invitation de Monsieur et Madame A., pour mardi.

Ce 5 janvier 1888.

---

### *TRANSLATION.*

1.

Sudden indisposition deprives Mr. K. of the honor of passing the evening at Mrs. N's., and he begs her to accept the expression of his great regret.

2.

Mr. and Mrs. D. much regret that previous engagements prevent them from accepting the flattering invitation of Mr. and Mrs. A., for Tuesday.

---

* **Rŭ-fü'.** Letters of Refusal.

# PART IV.

## THE PURCHASES.

## LES ACHATS.

### SECTION IV.

## IV.

### FRENCH.

**1. Il faut que nous partions[1] à la minute.**

Je ne peux pas. Il faut que je fasse mon courrier.
À qui faut-il que vous écriviez?
À mon agent d'affaires à New York.

Pourquoi ne lui avez-vous pas écrit la semaine dernière?
Je lui ai écrit il y a un mois, mais il ne m'a pas répondu.
Avez-vous jamais rien[2] vu de[3] pareil?

Mais, qu'y a-t-il?
Je vois ma femme qui vient par ici.

Elle a l'air toute bouleversée.[4] Je me demande ce qu'elle a.
Qu'y a-t-il donc, ma chère?[5]

---

NOTES.

[1] Subjunctive present of **partir.** — [2] Subjunctive present of **écrire.**

[2] As seen here, **jamais** and **rien** are sometimes used in the sense of *ever* and *anything.* In that case, **ne** is not found before the verb.

[3] After **rien, quelque chose, personne, quelqu'un,** or any other indefinite expression of quantity, **de** is used before an adjective or participle. See page 525.

[4] Lit.: She has the air all upset.

[5] Lit.: I ask myself *what* (strictly, *that which*) *she has.*

## IV.

| PRONUNCIATION. | TRANSLATION. |
| --- | --- |
| **1. Ēl fō k'nōō pȧr-tē-on' zȧ lȧ mē-nüt'.** | **We must go at once.**[1] |
| Zhŭn pû pä . . . . . kŭzh fȧs mon kōō-rē-ā'. | I can't (do it). I must write my letters.[2] |
| Kŭ vōō zā-krē-vē-ā'? | *Whom*[3] must you write *to?* |
| Ȧ mon nȧ-zhan' . . . . . ȧ nŭ-yórk. | To my business agent[4] in New York. |
| S'mĕn dĕr-nē-air'? | Why did n't you write him last week?[5] |
| | I wrote him a month[6] ago, but he has not answered. |
| Rē-in vüd pȧ-rĕh'-yŭ? | Did you ever see anything like it?[7] |
| Kē-yȧ-tēl'? | Why, what 's the matter?[8] |
| Mȧ fȧm kē vē-in' pȧr ē-sē'. | I see my wife coming[9] this way. |
| Tōōt bōōl-vĕr-sā'. Zhŭm dŭ-mand skĕl ȧ'. | She looks all upset. I wonder what is the matter with her. |
| Mȧ shair'? | What is the matter, my dear? |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] It is-necessary that we go *at* the minute.

[2] It is-necessary that I *make* my correspondance.

[3] To whom, etc. — [4] To my agent of business. — [5] *The* week last.

[6] There is a month. — [7] Have you *ever anything* seen *(of)* similar?

[8] What is there? (Strictly, *What there has it?*).

[9] My wife *who comes by here.* After a noun, the French avoid using a present participle. *I saw him working*, **Je l'ai vu qui travaillait** (*I saw him who was-working*); or, **au travail** (*at work*).

Je viens de[1] renverser l'étagère.

Et par-dessus le marché, j'ai déchiré ma robe.

Il y a un grand accroc dedans.
Il faudra que j'y mette un volant de plus, pour cacher ça.
Que voulez-vous? Un malheur ne vient jamais seul.
Eh bien, il faut que j'aille changer de robe.

---

**Note. — Study the irregular verbs Voir and**

---

**2. À propos, avez-vous vu le monsieur dont vous vouliez acheter la propriété?[2]**

Comment? Celui à l'agent duquel j'ai écrit avant-hier?

Non. Je veux dire le monsieur dont la propriété[2] est à Versailles.

---

NOTES.

1 **Venir de** (*to come from*), is used idiomatically for *To have just done* a thing. English, *I have just upset the what-not.* French, *I come from upsetting* (lit.: *To-upset*) the what-not. — [2] *To* whose = **à . . . . . duquel; à . . . . . de laquelle** etc., according to number and gender.

[2] **Dont** (*or* **de qui**) = *of whom, whose.* Notice that **dont** comes exactly in the same place as in English, but the word following it in English is placed farther on, *i. e.* after the verb, if it happens to be the *object* of this verb. Ex.: Le monsieur dont **la propriété** est à Versailles (**propriété** being just after **dont,** because it is the *subject* of est). But: le monsieur dont vous vouliez acheter la **propriété** (**propriété** being last because it is the *object* of **acheter**).

| | |
|---|---|
| Zhŭ vē-ind ran-vĕr-sā lā-tȧ-zhair'. | I have just upset[1] the *étagère.* |
| Pȧr-dŭ-sül mȧr-shā'. | And beside that,[2] I have torn my dress. |
| Gran tȧ-krōd-dan'. | I have made a great hole in it.[3] |
| Ēl fō-drȧk zhē mĕt un vȯ-land plüs'. | I shall have to put on another flounce[4] to hide that. |
| Un mȧ-lür' nŭ vē-in zhȧ-mĕh sŭl'. | Well, you know, misfortunes never come singly.[5] |
| Ēl fō k'zhȧ'-y' shan-zhād rȯb'. | Well, I must go and change my dress.[6] |

## Vouloir, page 516–18.

| | |
|---|---|
| **2. À prȯ-pō', ȧ-vā-vōō vül müs-yû don vōō vōō-lē-ā zȧsh-tā lȧ prȯ-prē-yā-tā'?** | **By the way, have you seen the gentleman whose property you wanted to buy?[7]** |
| À-van-tē-ĕr'? | What? The one to whose agent[8] I wrote day before yesterday? |
| Ĕh tȧ Vĕr-sä'-yŭ. | No. I mean[9] the gentleman whose property is in Versailles. |

### LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] I come from upsetting.

[2] (Over and) *above the market.*

[3] There is a great tear *in-it.*

[4] It will be necessary that I on-it (y) put a flounce (*of*) more.

[5] What will you (i. e. *do about it*)? A misfortune never comes alone.

[6] Change *of dress.*

[7] Of-whom you wished to-buy the property?

[8] The one to the agent of-whom.

[9] I wish to say the gentleman of-whom the property is in Versailles.

Celui au fils duquel[1] vous aviez donné rendez-vous, il y a huit jours.

Ah! celui-là. L'affaire est manquée.

On m'a donné de mauvais renseignements sur la propriété.
Il y a plusieurs hypothèques dessus.[2]

Mais enfin, êtes-vous prête?
À l'instant.

---

**Note.—Study the Relative Pronouns,**

---

## 3. Cocher, à la gare Saint-Lazare!

Il faut que vous y soyez à huit heures, au plus tard.
Sinon, vous nous ferez manquer le train.

Ne craignez rien, bourgeois.

Comme ce cocher nous secoue!

---

NOTES.

[1] **Duquel** (compound of **de** and **lequel**), **de laquelle, desquels desquelles,** *of whom, whose, of which.* They are used for *whose,* instead of **dont** (or, **de qui**) whenever *whose* is preceded in English by a preposition. Ex.: *The gentleman whose son,* etc., = **Le monsieur *dont* le fils,** etc.; but, *the gentleman 'to' whose son,* etc., = **Le monsieur au fils duquel.** Notice that **duquel,** etc., do not follow the first noun as **dont,** but the second, instead. English, *To whose son.* French, *To the son of-whom.*

[2] *On it* (*or,* upon it), *under it, in it,* are often rendered by the adverbs **dessus, dessous,** and **dedans.** Lit.: *On, underneath, inside.*

| | |
|---|---|
| Ō fēs dü-kĕl ..... ran-dā-vōō, ĕl ē yȧ ü-ē zhōōr'. | The one with whose son you had an appointment,[1] a week ago.[2] |
| Lȧ-fair ĕh man-kā'. | Ah! That one. The thing has fallen through.[3] |
| Mȯ-vĕh ran-sĕñ'-man' sür lȧ prȯ-prē-yā-tā'. | I have had some unfavorable reports about[4] the property. |
| Plü-zē-ür zē-pȯ-tĕk' dü-sü'. | There are several mortgages on (it). |
| Prêt'. | But *now*, are you ready? |
| Ȧ lin-stan'. | In a minute.[5] |

---

page 471.

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **3. Kȯ-shā, ȧ lȧ gär Sin-Lȧ-zȧr'!** | **Driver, to the Saint-Lazare depot![6]** |
| Vōō zē sȯ-ȧ-yā zȧ ü-ē-tür ō plü tȧr'. | You must be there at eight o'clock,[7] at latest.[8] |
| Nōō frā man-kāl trin'. | Otherwise,[9] you will make us miss the train. |
| Nü krĕh-ñā rē-in', bōōr-zhȯ-ȧ'. | We'll get there all right, *boss*.[10] |
| Nōō s'kōō'! | How this coachman is shaking us! |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] To the son of-whom you had given (a) **rendez-vous.**

[2] There are *eight days.* — [3] Is missed.

[4] *Some* bad informations on.

[5] At the instant.

[6] Or, **Conduisez-nous à la gare Saint-Lazare (kon-dü-ē'-zā-nōō,** etc.). *Take us to,* etc.

[7] It is-necessary that you *be* there. Remember that the subjunctive is always used after **il faut que.**

[8] At-the most late. — [9] If not.

[10] Fear nothing, '*burgher*.'

Que voulez-vous? À la guerre comme à la guerre.

À propos! Est-ce que vous êtes allé[1] voir Madame Dumas?

Oui, j'ai été la voir, avant-hier; mais je ne l'ai pas trouvée chez elle.

Tenez! Nous voilà arrivés.

Donnez-moi de l'argent pour le cocher.

Je n'ai pas de monnaie *sur* moi.

Cocher! voici votre course, et dix sous de pourboire.

---

## 4. Auriez-vous l'obligeance de me dire où l'on prend[3] les billets pour Asnières?

Oui, monsieur; de l'autre côté, au troisième guichet.

Mille remercîments.

Deux premières,[4] pour Asnières, s'il vous plait.

Mais vous ne me rendez **que** dix sous de monnaie.

C'est juste.

---

NOTES.

[1] *Are* (i. e. *have*) you gone. **Aller** is one of the 12 neuter verbs which take **être** as an auxiliary instead of **avoir.**

[2] *Some* or *any* (before nouns) = **du, de la, de l',** or **des.** But, *Not any* (or, *no*) = **pas de.** *Some bread* = **du pain;** *Some money* = **de l'argent.** But, *No bread* = **pas de pain;** *Not any money* = **pas d'argent.**

[3] Remember that the French prefer the *active* to the passive voice. *Where one takes the tickets*, instead of, *where the tickets are taken.*

[4] Or, **Deux billets de première classe.**

| | |
|---|---|
| Å la gĕr kȯm ȧ lȧ gĕr'. | It can't be helped. We 'll have to stand it.[1] |
| Ĕs-kŭ vōō zêt zȧ-lā. | By the way, did you call[2] on Mrs. Dumas? |
| Zhŭn lā pä. | Yes, I went to see her day before yesterday; but I did n't find her in. |
| | Here we are![3] |
| D'lȧr-zha*n*'. | Give me money for the driver. |
| | I have no change *with* me. |
| Dē sōōd pōōr-bȯ-ȧr'. | Cab! here is your fare, and 10 cents for you.[4] |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **4. Or-ē-ā'-vōō lȯ-blē-zha*n*s dŭm dĕr' ōō lo*n* pra*n* lĕh bē-yĕh' pōōr Å-nē-air'?** | **Would you have the kindness[5] to tell me where the tickets for Asnières are taken?[6]** |
| Trȯ-ä-zē-ĕm gē-shĕh'. | Yes, sir; on the other side, at the 3d wicket. |
| Mēl rŭ-mĕr-sē-ma*n*'. | Many thanks. |
| | Two first-class tickets[7] for Asnières, please. |
| Vōōn mŭ ra*n*-dāk dē sōōd-mȯ-nĕh'. | But you 're giving[8] me only ten cents change. |
| Sĕh zhüs'-t'. | That 's right.[9] |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 *What will you? In the war as in*, etc.

2 Is it that you *have* gone to-see? — 3 There! *There* we *are* arrived.

4 Ten cents of tip. — 5 Or, **la bonté (bo*n*-tā')**.

6 Where one takes the tickets for Asnières (a popular resort near Paris). — 7 Two first. — 8 You to-me give-back only **(que)**.

9 The French never say **raison** for *right*, except when speaking of *persons*. *You* are right = **vous avez *raison*;** but, *It's* right = **C'est *juste*** (or, **bien**).

## 5. Fourth Cardinal

*This being one of the five "cardinal," or almost indispensable,*

**He, She, It,** or **They,**

are rendered by **ce** instead of **il** (*or*, **ils**), when before a **possessive, demonstrative,** or **superlative.** Examples:

1. Before a noun: He is my brother =
2. " a pronoun: It is he =
3. " a *single*[3] adjective: It is right =

Also,

4. Before a possessive: It is mine =
5. " a demonstrative: It is that one =
6. " a superlative: It is the finest =

EXCEPTIONS.

**He, She, It,** or **They,**

1. With expressions of the **weather,**

**1. Il fait beau.**
**2. Il fait chaud ici.**

2. With a **noun,** *if this noun is not preceded by an* **article** etc.; **mon, ma,** etc.). **Ex.:**

***C'est un* Français,** but:
***C'est mon* médecin,** but:

3. With a ***single*** **adjective,** whenever in English, we

---

NOTES.

[1] Or, *they are* my *brothers*, ***Ce* sont mes frères.**
[2] Or, **C'était juste, Ce sera juste, Ce serait juste;** *It was right, It will be right, It would be right.*
[3] By a *single* adjective, I mean, one *not* followed by a verb in the same clause. Thus: *It is just*, **C'est juste;** but, *It is just to do that,*

## Rule.

*rules in French, the pupil should learn and master it completely.*

**before the verb Être,**

**noun, pronoun,** or ***single*** **adjective.** Also before a

**C'est[1] mon frère.**
**C'est lui.**
**C'est juste.[2]**

**C'est le mien.[4]**
**C'est celui-là.[4]**
**C'est le plus beau.**

EXCEPTIONS.

however, are rendered by **il** (*or*, **ils**),

**temperature,** or **time.** Ex.:

**3. Il est dix heures.**
**4. Il est tard.**

(**le,** etc.; **un,** or **une**) or **determining adjective (ce, cet,**

***Il*** **est Français.**
***Il*** **est médecin.**

could not turn *it* into *that*. Thus:

---

NOTES.

***Il*** **est juste de faire cela.** *It is easy*, **C'est facile;** but, *It is easy to do good*, **Il est facile de faire le bien.** N. B. — This does not hold, however, if the verb, following the adjective, depends on the preposition **à, pour,** or **sans.** Thus: That's easy to do = **C'est facile à faire,** etc. — [4] Or, **Ce sont les miens; Ce sont ceux-là,** etc.

*Speaking of a man:* He is tall; *We cannot say,*
*Speaking of a table:* It is round; *We could not say,*

---

**6. Je croyais que les places n'étaient que de vingt sous.**

Ce sont les secondes[1] qui ne coûtent que vingt sous.

Combien coûtent les billets d'aller et retour?

Deux francs vingt-cinq, en première.[2]

Eh bien, donnez m'en[3] deux.

Les voyageurs pour Asnières en voiture!

Ayez la bonté de[4] me donner mes billets.

Voilà le train qui va partir!

Pas‿encore. Vous‿avez le temps de monter en wagon.

---

**Note. — Study the use of Prepositions**

---

NOTES.

[1] Or, **les billets de seconde classe.**

[2] Or, **en première classe.** — [3] See page 340.

[4] Nouns with **avoir** govern the preposition **de** after them, if they have the definite article. They govern the preposition **à,** if they have the partitive article. *I have not the time to do that* = **Je n'ai pas *le* temps *de* faire cela.** But, *I have no time to lose* = **Je n'ai pas *de* temps à perdre.**

* At least, *ordinarily.* Speaking in a general way, however, we might say, *here:* "*That's* round," and, hence, in French also: **C'est rond.** Likewise, referring to a picture, we could say, **Oui, il est bien beau**; or, **Oui, c'est bien beau** (meaning, in the latter case, "*That's* beautiful").

*That* is tall. Hence, *French;* **Il est grand.**
*That's** round. Hence, *French;* **Elle est ronde.**

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **6. Zhŭ krȯ-ȧ-yĕh klĕh plȧs nā-tĕk dŭ. . . . .** | **I thought the tickets were only twenty cents.**[1] |
| Lĕs-gond kēn kōōt. | It's the second-class tickets.[2] |
| Dȧ-lā ār-tōōr'? | How much is an excursion[3] ticket? |
| Vint sin-k an prŭ-mē-air'. | Forty-five cents,[4] first class. |
| Dȯ-nā man dû'. | Well, give me two.[5] |
| Vȯ-ȧ-yȧ-zhŭr'. | All aboard for Asnières![6] |
| Dŭm dȯ-nā'. | Please[7] give me my tickets. |
| Vȯ-ȧ-lȧl trin'. | The train is going to start! |
| Pä zan-kor' † . . . . . vȧ-gon'. | Not yet. You have (plenty) time to get on the train. |

---

**between Nouns, page 525.**

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 *Of* (i. e. *with*) twenty cents.
2 It *are* the 'seconds' which cost only 20 cents.
3 The tickets *of going and return.*
4 Two francs twenty-five (*centimes*).
5 Give me of-them two.
6 Travelers for Asnières in waggon!
7 Have the kindness to give me.

† **Pä zan-kor'.** **S,** carried over from one word to the other, has the sound of *z.* Also, in the body of words, *if between two vowels.* Ex.: **Musique, mü-zēk'.** Otherwise it has the sound of *s.* Ex.: **Dépense = dā-pan'-s'; Missionnaire = mē-sē-ȯ-nair'; Santé = San-tā'.** See PRONUNCIATION.

*The following vocabulary to be learned by heart.*

## VOCABULAIRE.

### OBJETS DIVERS.*

| | |
|---|---|
| Du papier buvard (bü-vȧr′), | Blotting paper. |
| Un cahier (kȧ-yā′), | A copy-book. |
| Des plumes (plüm'), | Pens. |
| Un porte-plume (por′-t'-plüm'), | Pen-holder. |
| Un crayon (krĕh-yon′), | Pencil. |
| De l'encre (dŭ lan′-kr'), | Ink. |
| Un encrier (un nan-krē-yā′), | An inkstand. |
| Une gravure (grȧ-vür'), | An engraving. |
| Une eau-forte[1] (ü nō for′-t'), | An etching. |
| Un tableau, | A picture. |
| Une peinture à l'huile,[2] | An oil painting. |
| Une palette (pȧ-lĕt'), | A palette. |
| Un pinceau (pin-sō′), | A brush. |
| Un chevalet (shŭ-vȧ-lĕh′), | An easel. |
| Un cadre (kä′-dr'), | A frame. |
| Un tabouret (tȧ-bōō-rĕh′), | A stool. |
| Un canif (kȧ-nēf′), | A penknife. |
| Une brochure (brȯ-shür'), | A paper-bound book. |
| Un livre relié (lē-vr' rŭ-lē-ā′), | A bound book. |
| Faire encadrer une gravure,[3] | To have an engraving framed. |
| Faire peindre un tableau,[3] | To have a picture painted. |
| Faire relier un livre, | To have a book bound. |

[1] In full, **une gravure à l'eau forte,** an engraving (*made*) with *aqua-fortis.* — [2] **À lü-ēl'.**

[3] **Fair an-kä-drā′; fair pin′-dr'.** — * **Dē-vĕr′,** Various articles.

*The following vocabulary to be learned by heart.*

## VOCABULAIRE.

### I.—DE BONNE HEURE.

| | |
|---|---|
| De très bonne heure, | Very early. |
| De plus bonne heure,[1] | Earlier. |
| De trop bonne heure, | Too early. |
| Pas assez de bonne heure, | Not early enough. |
| Tout à l'heure,[2] | In a moment. |
| À la bonne heure,[3] | Very good!—That 's it. |

**II.—The following words conjugated in English with *to be*, are conjugated with avoir, in French.**

| | |
|---|---|
| Avoir faim (*or*, soif),[4] | To be hungry (*or*, thirsty). |
| Avez-vous chaud? (*or*, froid?) | Are you warm? (*or*, cold?) |
| Ont-elles sommeil? | Are they sleepy? |
| Avez-vous peur? | Are you afraid? |
| J'ai honte, | I am ashamed. |
| J'avais raison (*or*, tort),[4] | I was right (*or*, wrong). |

**Likewise, the following:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Quel âge avez-vous?[5] | How old are you? |
| J'ai trente ans, | I am thirty years of age. |
| Quel âge votre fils a-t-il?<br>Quel âge a votre fils? | How old is your son? |
| Il a vingt-huit-ans, | He is 28 years old. |
| Quel âge cette dame a-t-elle?<br>Quel âge a cette dame? | How old is this lady? |
| Elle a vingt-six-ans, | She is 26 years old. |

---

[1] Also, **de meilleure heure (mĕh-yŭr-ŭr').** — [2] *Also*, a moment ago. — [3] Lit.: "To the good *hour*, or *hap*."

[4] Lit.: To *have* hunger, To *have* thirst. . . . . *I had* right (*or*, wrong).

[5] Lit.: What age have you? etc.

*To be learned by heart and repeated aloud as a real conversation, whether for self-study or preparation for the class-room.*
*(See also* **Directions** *before* **Part I.**)

## CONVERSATIONS.

### 1.—*CHEZ UN PAPETIER.**

Que désirez-vous, monsieur? — Veuillez me faire voir du papier à lettres. — En voici de très beau,[1] monsieur. — Cela ne me convient[2] pas. Le format[3] est trop petit. — En voici d'un plus grand format.[4] — Cela me convient mieux.[5] Combien coûte-t-il? — C'est un franc la main et un sou la feuille. — N'avez-vous rien de meilleur marché? — Oui, monsieur. Voici du papier que je puis vous vendre à soixante centimes la main. — A la bonne heure..... Combien coûtent les enveloppes?[6] — Elles sont de cinquante centimes le paquet. — Eh bien, donnez-moi une main de ce papier et un paquet d'enveloppes..... Combien est-ce? — Cela fait un franc cinquante. — Est-ce que vous avez du papier buvard? — Oui, monsieur. — Combien la feuille? — C'est deux sous la feuille. —

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

1 Here is some very fine paper. Lit.: Of-it here-is some (**de**) very fine.
2 **Kon-vē-in** (from **convenir**), to suit.
3 **For-mà',** size (*used only of paper or books*).
4 Here is some of a, etc.
5 I like that better. Lit.: That suits me better.
6 **Lĕh zan-v'lòp'.**
* **Pàp-tē-ā',** stationer. **Papeterie** *fem.* (**pàp-trē'**), stationery store.

Donnez m'en cinq feuilles. . . . . Ah, combien cet encrier? — Lequel voulez-vous dire, celui-ci? — Non, celui-là. — Celui-là est de dix francs.

### 2. — *CHEZ GOUPIL.*

Voici le magasin de Goupil. Ne voulez-vous pas y entrer[1] un moment? — Il est de trop bonne heure. Ils ne sont pas encore ouverts. — Mais si.[2] — Eh bien, entrons-y. — Regardez-moi[3] cette gravure. — Laquelle voulez-vous dire? — Celle qui est dans le coin, là, à gauche. Mais venez par ici. Je vais vous montrer le dernier tableau de Millet.[4] . . . . Comment trouvez-vous cela?[5] — A dire vrai,[6] je trouve que cela manque de perspective.[7] — Quant à ça,[8] Millet s'inquiète fort peu de[9] la perspective. C'est le sujet,[10] c'est l'âme[11] qui domine[12] tout chez lui.[13] Voyez ce paysan.[14] Quelle expression! Quelle vigueur![15]

---

**Note. — Study the irregular verb Boire, page 518.**

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

1 Go in. Lit.: *Therein go.*

2 **Si** = *Yes* (in replying affirmatively to a negative proposition).

3 Just look at that engraving! Lit.: *Look me* that engraving!

4 **Mē-lĕh'.** — 5 What do you *think* of that? Lit.: How find you that?

6 To *say* the truth. Lit.: To say true. — 7 Lacks in perspective.

8 **Ka*n* tȧ sȧ',** as to that.

9 **Si*n*-kē-ĕt',** trouble himself very little about. — 10 Subject.

11 **Läm',** the soul. — 12 Dominates.

13 *In* him. **Chez** is often used for *in*, in this way. Ex.: I don t like that *in* him, **Je n'aime pas cela *chez* lui.**

14 **Pĕ-ē-za*n*',** countryman. — 15 **Vē-gŭr',** vigor.

*To be translated and written into French, but also to be recited orally in the class-room. (For Self-Study, see **Directions** before **Part I.**)*

## EXERCISES.

### 1.—*CHEZ UN‿ORFÈVRE.**

Have[1] the kindness to show me that liquor-tray.—Which one do you mean, sir?—The one[2] you showed me day before yesterday.—Here it is, sir. It is[3] a very beautiful thing.—What is the price of it?[4]—One hundred (and) seventy-five francs.—That is impossible!—But see how fine the workmanship is,[5] sir.—Can you not let me have it[6] a little[7] cheaper?—I think not.[8]—Come. Tell me your lowest price.—Well, are you ready to[9] buy?—Certainly.—Then, I'll let you have[10] it at one hundred and fifty francs.—Very well. You may[11] send it. Here is my address.[12]

### 2.—*CHEZ‿UN PAPETIER.*

Let us go into that stationery store.[13] I want to buy a penknife and a blue pencil.[14] .... Please show

**Aids to Translation.**

[1] **Ayez.**— [2] The-one which.— [3] It is **(c'est)** something *of* very beautiful.— [4] What of-it is the price?— [5] **Comme le travail est beau.**— [6] To-me **(me)** it leave.— [7] **Un peu.**

[8] I *believe that not* **(non).**— [9] **Prêt‿à (prête‿à,** if to a lady).

[10] Future of **laisser.**— [11] Can.— [12] Adresse.

[13] **Papeterie (påp-trē'),** *feminine.*— [14] Pencil blue.

* **Or-fĕh'-vr',** silversmith.

me a good penknife. — Here is a four-bladed one.[1] — Two blades would do.[2] How[3] do you sell these? — Three francs. — That is rather[4] dear. — The steel[5] is of the best quality. — Very well, I'll take this one.

Why! That's too bad! I left[6] my pocket-book on my bureau, and I have no change with me. George, lend me[7] three francs till[8] this evening.

### 3.—*EN SE COUCHANT.**

John, put on another cover.[9] I was cold[10] last night. Did you put clean sheets[11] (on), too? — Yes, sir. — Very well. Will you give me my gown[12] and[13] slippers? . . . . Thank you. Now, before you go,[14] light the lamp.[15] You will come (and) call me very early, to-morrow morning. . . . . By the way, you know[16] Mr. Floquet, who comes to see me sometimes? Well, if he comes to-morrow, tell him[17] I shall be back[18] at 5 o'clock, precisely.

---

**Note.— Study the irregular verb Connaître, page 518.**

---

**Aids to Translation.**

1 Of-them here-is one *with* (lit.: *At*, **à**) four blades **(lames).**

2 *Would-suffice.* Conditional (3d person, plural) of **suffire,** to suffice.

3 How-much.— 4 A little **(un peu).** — 5 **L'acier (lâ-sē-ā').**

6 *Have* left **(laissé).** — 7 Imperative *affirmative.* — 8 **Jusqu'à.**

9 A cover (*of*) more **(de plus, dŭ plüs').** — 10 I have had **(eu)** cold.

11 **Des draps blancs** (lit.: *White*). — 12 **Robe de chambre.**

13 And my. — 14 **Avant de partir.** — 15 **Lampe (lan'-p').**

16 **Connaissez.** — 17 Tell *to*-him **(lui)** *that.* See page 240, Note 3.

18 *Shall-come-in-again.* Future of **rentrer,** to come in again.

* On retiring (lit.: On *couching one's self*).

*To be read by means of the notes in preparation for translating and reading aloud in class. For self-study, to be translated, and when thoroughly understood, read aloud in French.*

## LECTURE.

### UN CONCERT.

— D'où venez-vous donc comme ça?

— Je viens de la salle Herz où j'ai entendu le célèbre Rubinstein, dont les succès[1] ont retenti[2] dans l'Europe entière.[3]

— Y avait-il beaucoup de monde.[4]

— Oui. Un monde fou! Quand nous sommes entrés,[5] la salle était comble.[6] Nous avons dû[7] rester debout.

— C'était bien dommage.

— Oui. Mais quel virtuose! Il sait interpréter Mozart et Chopin[8] avec une légèreté,[9] une sensibilité inexprimables,[10] comme il sait rendre[11] la profondeur[12] de Beethoven d'[13]une main passionnée et maîtrisante.[14]

— Comment l'a-t-on reçu![15]

— Il a été accueilli[16] avec des trépignements d'en-

---

[1] **Sük-sĕh'.** — [2] Resounded. — [3] **Lŭ-rô-pan-tē-air'.**

[4] **E á-vĕh-tēl' bō-kōōd mon'-d',** many people.

[5] ***Un* mon'-d fōō,** an enormous crowd. Lit.: A crowd *crazy.*

[5] When we entered. — [6] **Kon'-bl',** *packed.* — [7] Had to. Lit.: Have had-to (**dû**). — [8] **Mô-zár ā Shô-pin'.** — [9] Lightness (of touch).

[10] **E-nĕx-prē-mâ'-bl'** (see PRONUNCIATION, page ).

[11] (How) to-render. — [12] Profoundness, depth. — [13] *With.*

[14] Impassioned and overpowering.

[15] How was he revceived. Lit.: *How him has one,* or, *have they,* etc.

[16] **Â-kŭ-yĕ',** received, greeted.

thousiasme.[1] D'ailleurs, ce n'est pas étonnant,[2] car il est parvenu[3] à faire chanter le piano à l'égal du[4] violoncelle.

—Son toucher, son agilité surprennent,[5] me dit-on.

—Oui. Et au milieu[6] des broderies[7] de l'accompagnement le motif se détache[8] toujours net,[9] vibrant, suave. Connaissez-vous son grand concert en *la* mineur?[10]

—Oui, mais sa symphonie de l'Océan[11] est d'un style plus large et plus élevé. Enfin, le concert vous a plu?[12]

—À merveille. D'autant plus, que[13] le maestro a joué[14] un morceau de Rossini.

—Ah! cela me fait penser à une histoire.

—Racontez-moi donc cela?[15]

—On dit qu'à une représentation du *Don Giovanni*[16] de Mozart aux Italiens, un jeune fat[17] fredonnait[18] si haut[19] certain air de cet opéra, qu'il incommodait[20] tous ses voisins.[21] Un amateur impatienté,[22] se mit[23] à dire, „Quel animal!„[24] — „Est-ce que c'est de[25] moi que vous parlez?„ lui dit le fâcheux.[26] — „Non, monsieur,„ répondit le dilettante, „c'est de[25] Mozart; qui m'empêche de[27] vous entendre.„

---

[1] **Trā-pē-ñ'-man dan-tōō-zē-ås'-m',** a storm of applause. Lit.: *Stampings of enthusiasm.* — [2] Astonishing, surprising.

[3] *Has* (lit.: *Is*) succeeded *in making.* — [4] Equally with-the, *i. e.* in a way to equal. — [5] Surprise. — [6] In the midst of the.

[7] Variations. Lit.: *Embroideries.* — [8] Is detached, comes out.

[9] **Nĕt,** clear. — [10] *A* minor. — [11] **Sin-fò-nē dŭ lò-sā-an'.**

[12] Pleased you? — [13] So much the more that. — [14] Played.

[15] Relate. — [16] **Don zhē-ò-vá-nē'.** — [17] **Fåt,** coxcomb.

[18] Was humming. — [19] So loud. — [20] Annoyed. — [21] **Vò-å-zin',** neighbors, those about him. — [22] **In-på-sē-an-tā',** driven out of patience. — [23] *Began.* From **se mettre,** to begin. Lit.: *To put one's self* ...

[24] What (a) dolt! — [25] *About.* — [26] The boor. — [27] Prevents me f...

*Learn the French text of the following letter by heart, and write it two sections. For pupils under a teacher, the letter may be written*

## LA CORRESPONDANCE.

PARIS, le 20 juin, 1888.

MA CHÈRE AMIE,

Voici deux semaines que nous sommes à Paris.[1] Après nous être reposés un jour, nous avons commencé à en visiter les mille et une merveilles. Inutile[2] de vous décrire, à vous qui avez si longtemps demeuré dans cette ville unique,[3] toutes les beautés sur lesquelles nous avons dû nous extasier.[4] Les Champs-Élysées, L'Arc de Triomphe,[5] le Bois de Boulogne, le nouvel Opéra, Cluny, le Luxembourg,[6] le Louvre, et tout le reste. Demain, nous irons voir les Catacombes.[7] Après-demain, nous prendrons le rapide pour Nice.[8]

Monsieur et Madame Morgan vous font bien des compliments.

Pensez à nous.[9] Malgré le plaisir que nous avons ici, nous n'oublions ni les amis, ni le pays.[10] *Home, Sweet Home*, vous savez.

Écrivez-nous à Rome.

Votre bien affectionnée,

Emily Smith.

---

1 **Sòm zà Pà-rē′.** — 2 **Ē-nü-tēl′.**
3 **Ü-nēk′.** — 4 **Nōō zĕk-stä-zē-ā′.**
5 **Làrk dŭ Trē-yon′-ph′.** — 6 **Lük-san-bōōr′.**
7 **Kà-tà-kon′-b′.** — 8 **Nēs′.**
9 **Pan-sā zà nōō′.** — 10 **Pĕ-ē′.**

*from memory afterward. If found too long, this can be done in either at home or in class, as he may direct.*

## CORRESPONDENCE.

PARIS, June 20th, 1888.

MY DEAR FRIEND,

We have now been two weeks in Paris. After resting[1] (for) a day, we began to visit the thousand and one marvels in it. It would be useless to describe to you, who have lived so long in this unique city, all the beauties before which we have been obliged[2] to go into raptures. The Champs-Elysées, the Arc de Triomphe, the Bois de Boulogne, the new Opera, Cluny, the Luxembourg, the Louvre, and the rest. To-morrow, we are going to visit[3] the Catacombs. Day after to-morrow, we take[4] the lightning express for Nice.

Mr. and Mrs. Morgan send you their high regards.[5]

Think about us.[6] Notwithstanding the pleasure we have here, we forget neither friends nor fatherland. *Home, sweet Home*, you know.

Write us to Rome.

Yours very affectionately,[7]

Emily Smith.

---

1 Lit.: After ourselves *to-have* (i. e. *having*) reposed.
2 We have had-to (**dû**, past participle of **devoir**).
3 Lit.: We will-go (and) see. — 4 We will-take.
5 Make you many compliments.
6 Think *to* us. — 7 Your *well affectionate*.

# PART V.

## PLEASURES AND HEALTH.

## PLAISIRS ET SANTE.

### SECTION I.

## V.

### PLAISIRS‿ET SANTÉ.*

**Il y a au moins quinze jours que je n'ai vu Madame Carrière, et je me demande si elle serait malade.**

**N'en croyez‿absolument rien; car je viens de la rencontrer sur les boulevards, de l'autre côté du Gymnase.**

### PRONUNCIATION.[1]

**Ēl ē yȧ ō mȯ‿i*n* ki*n*′-z zhōōr′ kŭzh nā vü mȧ-dȧm Kä-rē‿air', ā zhŭm dŭ-ma*n*′-d sē ĕl s'rĕh mȧ-lȧd'.**

**Na*n* krȯ‿ȧ-yā zȧb-sȯ-lü-ma*n* rē‿i*n*′; kȧr zhŭ vē‿i*n* dlȧ ra*n*-ko*n*-trā sür lĕh bōōl-vȧr′, dŭ lō′-tr' kō-tā dü Zhēm-näz'.**

---

[1] Remember, (1) That the accents in the pronunciation denote only a slight emphasis, and are intended especially to guard the pupil against the English habit of accentuating syllables in the body of words. (2) That *all* consonants are to be sounded, and exactly as they are in English. (3) That the nasal sounds are short, hard, and inelastic, and that the organs of speech are *not* to close upon them; the *n* sound being thus arrested midway.

* **Plĕ-zēr zā Sa*n*-tā′.**

## V.

### PLEASURES AND HEALTH.

**I have not seen anything of Mrs. Carrière for the last two weeks, and I wonder if† she is ill.[1]**

**Don't you believe it; for I have just met her on the Boulevards, on the other side of the Gymnase (theater).**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

**There-are at least fifteen days that I have *not* seen Mrs. Carrière, and I ask myself if she could-be ill.**

**Of-it believe absolutely nothing; for I *come from*[2] meeting[3] her on the Boulevards, *of*[4] the other side of the Gymnase.**

---

[1] Could also say, **si elle est malade.**

[2] **Venir *de***, *to come from*, is employed idiomatically in the sense of *having just done* the thing in question. *I have just arrived* = **Je viens d'arriver** (lit.: *I come from arriving*). *He had just gone out* = **Il venait *de* sortir** (lit.: *He came from going-out*). Never forget the ***de***.

[3] *Strictly:* From *to-meet* her. All prepositions, except **en**, govern the infinitive present.— [4] *Anglice*, on.

† **Si** = *whether*, here. Hence, the *conditional* **(serait)**. See page 234.

# I.

## FRENCH.

**1. Il y a au moins quinze jours que je n'ai vu madame Carrière.**

Croyez-vous qu'elle soit indisposée?
Allons donc! Elle fait semblant d'être malade.
Que voulez-vous dire?
Je l'ai vue hier, en revenant du club.

Elle ne paraissait[1] nullement[2] malade.
En êtes-vous bien sûr?[3]
J'en suis positif.
D'ailleurs, je la vois presque tous les jours.

De sorte[4] que je le sais.

---

**Note. — Study the uses of the Past Indefinite,**

---

NOTES.

[1] **Paraissait,** imperfect of **paraître.**

[2] Lit.: *She seemed in-no-wise ill.* Remember that **pas** *is never present* in any sentence in which figures any other negation.

[3] If speaking to a lady, **sûre.**

[4] *So,* meaning *thus,* = **ainsi;** but, meaning *so that* = **de sorte que.** *So I told him* = **De sorte que je lui ai dit.** Remember, also, that *so,* in such sentences as *I said so, I thought so,* is rendered by **le,** or **cela. Je l'ai dit, Je pensais cela.** Note that *so* before an adjective = **si.** *You look so pale,* **Vous avez l'air si pâle. Si** also means *as* (in comparisons). *He is not as tall as I,* **Il n'est pas si grand que moi.**

## I.

| PRONUNCIATION. | TRANSLATION. |
| --- | --- |
| **1. Ēl ē yȧ ō mȯ-i*n* ki*n*-z zhōōr kŭzh nā vü.** | **It is at least two weeks since I saw Mrs. Carrière.**[1] |
| Sȯ-ȧ ti*n*-dēs-pō-zā'? | Do you think she is ill?[2] |
| Fĕh sa*n*-bla*n*'. | Fudge![3] She *pretends* to be.[4] |
| | What do you mean? |
| Dü klüb'. | I saw her yesterday, on my way from the club.[5] |
| Pȧ-rĕh-sĕh nül-ma*n*'. | She did n't seem to be ill at all.[6] |
| A*n* nêt-vōō bē-i*n* sür'? | Are you very sure of it?[7] |
| Pō-zē-tēf'. | I am positive about it. |
| Prĕs'-k' tōō lĕh zhōōr'. | Besides, I see her almost every day.[8] |
| Dŭ sȯr'-t' kŭ zhŭl sĕh'. | So[9] I know it. |

**Preterit and Imperfect, page 497.**

### LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] There are at-the least 15 days that I (n') have seen, etc.

[2] That she *be* ill? — [3] *Come now;* strictly, *Let-us go-then.*

[4] She makes pretence (*strictly*, seeming) to be ill.

[5] While returning from the club.

[6] She seemed in-no-wise ill. Also, **aucunement malade (ō-kün-ma*n*')**. — [7] Of-it are you very sure?

[8] *Almost every day*, **presque tous les jours,** or, **à peu près** (*about*. Lit.: *To little near*) **tous les jours. Tous les soirs,** *every evening.* **Tous les deux jours,** *every other day.* **Tous les deux soirs,** *every other evening.* — [9] *In* (*such*) *sort that.*

NOTE.—1. After **il y a,** the French use **ne** (or, **n'**) when-
during the time mentioned. This is the case in the sentence,
transposed into, *I have not seen Mrs. Carrière for at least two*
*n*'ai vu madame Carrière. (Notice here, that the past indefi-
2. If, however, the action referred to *has been* taking place
*imperfect*, takes the place of the *past indefinite*).* Ex.:

*Have you had these books for a long time?* =
*I had had these books for a long time* =

---

## 2. Jean, est-il venu quelqu'un pour me voir?

Non, madame, personne[1] n'est venu.
On a sonné. Peut-être que c'est elle.

C'est Monsieur d'Argenton qui voudrait vous voir.

Faites-le entrer au salon, et dites-lui que j'y serai dans quelques instants.

Voulez-vous que j'allume le feu?[2]

Oui, allumez le feu. Voici des allumettes . . . . .

Ah! Monsieur, vous vous faites rare.

---

NOTES.

[1] Whether **personne** and **rien** are *subjects* or *objects* of a verb, **ne** has to be used. **Personne *n*'est venu; Rien *n*'est venu; Je *n*'ai vu personne; Je *n*'ai rien vu.**

[2] With verbs expressing *desire* or *will*, a second verb is placed in the subjunctive, *if its subject is different from that of the first.* Do you want to light the fire = **Voulez-vous allumer le feu.** But: Do *you* want *me* to light the fire = **Voulez-vous que j'allume le feu** (lit.: *That I light*, etc.).

* We would also say: **Il n'y a pas longtemps que je l'ai vu** (no **ne**), It is *not long* since I saw him; because here we are not trying to state that we did n't see him, but, on the contrary, to fix the time when we *did*.

ever the action is really referred to as *not* having taken place *It is at least two weeks since I saw Mrs. Carrière*, since it could be *weeks*. Hence, *French:* Il y a au moins quinze jours que je nite (*have seen*) is used).
during the time mentioned, **ne** is not used (and the *present*, or

Y a-t-il longtemps que vous *avez* ces livres? †
Il y avait longtemps que j'*avais* ces livres.††

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **2. Zhan', ĕh-tēl vŭ-nü kēl-kun pōōr mŭ vȯ-ȧr'?** | **John, did somebody call to see me?**[1] |
| Pĕr-sȯn nĕh v'nü'. | No, ma'am. Nobody came.[2] |
| On nȧ sȯ-nā'. | Some one[3] has rung. May be it is she.[4] |
| Dȧr-zhan-ton'. | No, ma'am. It is Mr. d'A. who would like to see you. |
| Fĕt-lŭ an-trā . . . . . dēt-lü-ē' . . . . . kēl-kŭ-zins-tan'. | Show him into the parlor, and tell him[5] I will be there in a few moments. |
| Zhȧ-lüm. | Do you want me to light a fire?[6] |
| Ȧ-lü-māl-fū' . . . . . dĕh zȧ-lü-mĕh'-t'. | Yes, light the fire. Here are some matches. . . . . |
| Fĕt rär'. | Well! you are getting to be a stranger.[7] |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] Is *there* (**il**) come somebody *for* (see p. 312) to-see me? Could also say: **Quelqu'un est-il venu?**

[2] Nobody (**n'**) *is* come.

[3] **On** = *They, we, some one, people*, etc. Lit.: *One* has rung.

[4] Perhaps *that* it is *her*. **Elle** = *she* or *her*, but here means *her*.

[5] When *him* (or *her*) really means *to him* (or *to-her*), translate by **lui.** The French really say: Tell *to* a person. Ex.: **Dites à mon frère,** Tell my brother.

[6] Will you *that I light* the fire? — [7] You make yourself rare.

† Is there (a) long-time *that* you have these books? Notice that the French never say "*a* long time," but only, "*long-time*," **longtemps.**

†† There-was (a) long time *that* I had these books.

Il y a tout un temps qu'on ne vous a vu.

J'ai été à la campagne.

Puis-je m'informer de votre santé et de celle de toute votre famille?

Merci. Nous sommes tous bien portants, en ce moment.

Je suis bien aise[1] de vous entendre dire cela.[2]

Et chez vous?

Tout le monde se porte bien, merci.

Quand avez-vous reçu des nouvelles de monsieur votre fils?

Il y a fort longtemps que nous n'avons eu de ses nouvelles.

Nous attendons de ses nouvelles de jour en jour.

---

**Note. — Study the Indefinite and Composite**

---

**3. Que faites-vous? Vous allez déjà me quitter?**

Je vous quitte bien à regret;[3] mais il le faut.

---

NOTES.

[1] Adjectives of feeling take the preposition **de** after them. *I am glad to see you*, **Je suis content *de* vous voir.**

[2] **Entendre,** alone, means simply, *to hear* (*some one speaking, a sound, music*, etc.). *To hear*, meaning, to hear anything *told* = **entendre *dire*.** *To hear*, meaning, *to hear anything talked about* = **entendre parler de.** Ex.: *Have you heard that Mr. X is here?* = Avez-vous entendu *dire* que M. X est ici? *Have you heard about it?* = En avez-vous entendu *parler?* — [3] Lit.: I leave you much to (my) regret.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Tōō tun tan kon n'vōō zà vü'.** | We have not seen you for a long time.[1] |
| | I was in the country. |
| **Min-for-mā.** | May I inquire about[2] your health and that of your family? |
| **Tōōs bē-in por-tan'.** | Thank you. We are all in good health,[3] just now. |
| **Bē-in nĕz' dŭ vōō zan-tan'-dr' dēr sŭ-là'.** | I am very glad to hear it.[4] |
| | And at your house? |
| | Everybody is well, thank you.[5] |
| **Kan tà-vā-vōōr-sü . . . . . fēs?** | When did you have news from your son? |
| **For lon-tan'.** | We have not had any news for a long time.[6] |
| | We are daily expecting news from him.[7] |

---

**Pronouns, page 472.**

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **3. Kŭ fĕt vōō? Vōō zà-lā dā-zhà m'kē-tā'?** | **What are you doing? You are going to leave already?**[8] |
| **Bē-in nà rŭ-grĕh'.** | I am very sorry to leave you, but I must. |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] There is quite a time *that* we **(n')** have seen you.

[2] Inform myself of? — [3] *Well carrying.*

[4] Very glad to hear you say so. — [5] Everybody *carries himself* well.

[6] There is (a) very long-time *that* we had any *of his news.* Notice, that while **depuis** (*since*) must *never* be used after **il y a,** (but **que,** instead), **depuis** would be used if **il y a** were not there. One *could* say, **Nous n'avons pas reçu de ses nouvelles depuis longtemps.**

[7] We expect *of his news* from day *to* day. — [8] To leave me.

Ma femme m'attend alors.

Nous allons à une conférence de M. About.

Il faut que je sois de retour à la maison avant deux heures.

Alors, je ne vous retiens pas.

Entre l'arbre et l'écorce, il ne faut pas mettre le doigt.

Vous plaisantez toujours.

Eh bien, quand nous ferez-vous l'honneur de renouveler votre visite?

Je reviendrai sous peu, je vous le promets.

N'y manquez pas.

Ne vous dérangez pas, je vous prie.

Je vous accompagnerai jusqu'à[1] la porte.

Faites mes compliments à monsieur.

Je n'y manquerai pas. Bien[2] des amitiés à votre dame.

Madame, j'ai l'honneur de vous saluer.

Adieu, Monsieur d'Argenton.

---

**Note.—Study the irregular verbs Craindre**

---

NOTES.

[1] There are three ways of saying *until:* (1) **Jusque,** before an adverb. Ex.: **Jusque là,** *as far as that* (lit.: *Until there*). (2) **Jusqu'à Paris,** *as far as Paris* (lit.: *Until-to Paris*). (3) **Jusqu'à ce que,** before a verb. Ex.: **Jusqu'à ce que je revienne,** Until I *return* (lit.: *Until to this, that I return*).

[2] **Bien** is sometimes used in the sense of *many.* **Des** (not **de**) is used after it, because it is not really an adverb of *quantity.*

| | |
|---|---|
| Fåm. | My wife is expecting me then. |
| Mŭs-yû. | We are going to a lecture by Mr. About. |
| | I must be (back) home[1] before two o'clock. |
| Zhŭn vōōr-tē-in pä'. | Then, I will not keep you.[2] |
| An-tr' lår-brā lā-kor'-s' ēl nŭ fō pä mĕh'-tr' lŭ dò-å'. | Between man and wife, one must not interfere.[3] |
| Plĕ-zan-tā. | You are always jesting. |
| Nōōf-rā-vōō . . . . . dŭr-nōō-v' lā. | When will you do us the pleasure to come and see us again.[4] |
| Sōō pû'. Zhŭ vōōl prò-mĕh'. | I shall call again soon,[5] I promise you. |
| Nē man-kā pä'. | Be sure and do so.[6] |
| Dā-ran-zhā . . . . . prē'. | Don't disturb yourself, pray. |
| Vōō zå-kon-påñ-rā' zhŭs-kå . . . . . | I will see you to the door.[7] |
| Kon-plē-man. | My regards[8] to your husband. |
| Dĕh zå-mē-tē-ā' zå vòt då'-m'. | Thank you. My kind regards[9] to your wife. |
| Må-dåm' . . . . . så-lŭ-ā'. | I wish you good-day.[10] |
| Å-dē-û'. | Good-by, Mr. Argenton. |

and Croire, page 518.

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] It is necessary that I be *of return.* — [2] I *retain* you not.
[3] Between the tree and the bark, you must not put your finger.
[4] When will you do us the honor to renew, etc.
[5] I will-*re*-come *under little;* also, **bientôt,** *soon,* or *very soon.*
[6] To-it fail not. — [7] I will-accompany you as far as the door.
[8] Make my compliments. — [9] Many *friendships.*
[10] The honor to salute you.

*The following vocabulary to be learned by heart.*

## VOCABULAIRE.

### I. — FLEURS.[1]

| | |
|---|---|
| La rose (rōz'), | The rose. |
| Les camélias (kȧ-mā-lē-ȧ'), m., | Camelias. |
| La tulipe (tü-līp'), | The tulip. |
| La violette (vē-ȯ-lĕt'), | The violet. |
| Le lis (lē), | The lily. |
| Les lilas (lē-lä'), *m.*, | The lilacs.[2] |
| L'herbe (lĕr'-b'), *f.*, | The grass.[2] |
| Les feuilles (fŭ'-yŭ), *f.*, | The leaves.[2] |
| Le feuillage (fŭ-yȧzh'), | The foliage. |
| Les arbres (lĕh zȧr'-br'), m., | The trees.[2] |

### II. — ANIMAUX.[3]

| | |
|---|---|
| Le chien (shē-*in'*), | The dog. |
| Le chat (shȧ), | The cat. |
| Le cheval (sh'vȧl'), | The horse. |
| Le bœuf (bŭf); Les bœux (bû), | The ox; oxen. |
| Le mouton; la chèvre (shĕh'-vr'), | The sheep; the goat. |
| Les oiseaux (lĕh zȯ-ȧ-zō'), | The birds.[2] |
| Un oiseau (u*n* nȯ-ȧ-zō'), | A bird. |
| Les moineaux (mȯ-ȧ-nō'), *m.*, | The sparrows.[2] |
| Les poulets (pōō-lēh'), *m.*, | The chickens.[2] |
| La poule (pōō'-l'), | The hen. |
| Le coq (kȯk'), | The rooster. |
| La chasse au renard (shȧs ō rŭ-nȧr'), | Fox-hunting.[4] |
| Aller à la chasse (ȧ lȧ shȧs'), | To go hunting. |

---

[1] **Flŭr.** — [2] Or, simply: Lilacs; grass; leaves; trees; birds; sparrows; chickens. — [3] **À-nē-mō'.** — [4] Lit.: *The hunt to-the fox.*

*The same directions as heretofore to be followed.*

## CONVERSATIONS.

### 1.—À *PARIS.*

Tiens![1] C'est vous? Je ne savais pas que vous étiez à Paris. Y a-t-il longtemps que vous êtes ici?[2]—Non, je viens d'arriver. Mais vous, combien de temps y a-t-il que vous êtes[3] à Paris? —Il n'y a que deux mois.—A propos, y a-t-il longtemps que vous n'avez eu de nouvelles de M. Ferry? —Non, j'ai eu de ses nouvelles, avant hier; et de mauvaises nouvelles.—Qu'est-ce qu'il a donc?—Il y a un mois qu'il est gravement malade.[4]

### 2.—*SUR LES BOULEVARDS.*

D'où venez-vous comme cela?—J'arrive de la campagne.[5] Vous devriez[6] y aller. Il y fait magnifique. Tout est en fleur.[7] Les violettes embaument[8] les bois. C'est une seconde édition[9] du paradis terrestre.[10] Mais vous, où avez-vous été?—Je viens d'assister[11] à

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

[1] What! (*Hello!*)— [2] Have you been here long? Lit.: Is there a long time that you are here?

[3] How long have you been? Lit.: How-much *of* time is there *that*, etc.— [4] He has been seriously ill for a month.

[5] **Kan-pà'-ñŭ,** country.— [6] Ought.— [7] In blossom.

[8] **An-bōm',** perfume; fill with perfume.

[9] **Sŭ-gon-dā-dē-sē-on.**— [10] Eden. Lit.: Earthly paradise.

[11] **Assister,** to be present; to be at (*a lecture*, etc.).

une conférence sur Victor Hugo.—Était-ce intéressant?—Excessivement. Entre[1] autres jolies choses, le conférencier[2] a raconté ceci: Une fois[3] il[4] était arrivé à Paris une lettre adressée „Au plus grand poète de la France.„ Le facteur la remit d'abord à Victor Hugo. Celui-ci l'envoya immédiatement à Lamartine, qui, de[5] sa part, la renvoya à Alfred de Musset. Ce dernier la fit reporter[6] à Victor Hugo, qui enfin la garda pour lui.[7]

### 3.—*AU BAL.*

Quelle charmante réunion![8] Quel joli coup d'œil![9] —N'est-ce pas? C'est un très beau bal. . . . . Madame, m'accorderez-vous la faveur de danser cette contredanse[10] avec vous?—Monsieur, je suis invitée.— Alors, puis-je me promettre ce plaisir pour la suivante?[11]—Certainement, Monsieur. . . . .

Monsieur Logerot, voulez-vous me faire le plaisir de danser cette valse-là avec cette jeune personne? Elle n'a pas encore dansé.—Certainement, Madame, avec beaucoup de plaisir.[12] . . . Mademoiselle, voulezvous me faire l'honneur de valser avec moi?

---

**Note.—Study the irregular verb Dire, page 518.**

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

1 Between; among.— 2 **Kon-fā-ran-sē-ā′,** lecturer.
3 Once (upon a time).— 4 *There.*
5 *On.*— 6 *Had* it carried-back. Lit.: *Made to-re-carry it.*
7 Him (*self*).— 8 **Rā-ü-nē-on′,** party. Also, *meeting.*
9 **Kōō dŭ′-yŭ,** glance; sight.
10 **Kon-tr'-dan′-s',** a quadrille. Also, **ce quadrille (kȧ-drē′-yŭ).**
11 **Sü-ē-van′-t',** next (one).— 12 **Bō-kōōd-plĕ-zĕr′.**

*To be written out into French, but to be also treated orally in the class-room. (For Self-Study, see **Directions** before **Part I.**)*

## EXERCISE.

### *UN CHAPITRE D'EXPLICATIONS.**

How do you say[1] *Never mind,* in French? — *N'importe.*[2] — Well, how do you translate[3] that? — Let me see it.[4] Ah, *Vous mettez la charrue devant les bœufs.*[5] — Well, what does it mean?[6] — It[7] means, *You are putting the cart before the horse.* — How do you pronounce[8] the last word? — What word[9] do you mean? — *Bœufs.* — That is pronounced[10] bû. — But how do you say *Is that right,* in French? — They say, *Est-ce bien?* or, *Est-ce juste?* Never say, *Est-ce raison?*[11] — And, *Is that wrong?* — *Est-ce mal?* Never say, *Est-ce tort?*[11] — But, how do you say, *On the floor?* — *Par terre.* — And, *On the carpet?* — Generally,[12] *par terre.*[13] — And, *Up stairs?* — *En haut.*[14] — And, *Down stairs?* — *En bas.* — Many thanks.

---

**Note. — Study the irregular verb Écrire, page 518.**

---

**Aids to Translation.**

[1] See page 297. — [2] **Nin-por'-t'.** — [3] **Traduit-on** (from **traduire**). [4] *Let-us-see,* or, *Let-us-see it.* — [5] **Voo mĕh-tā lȧ shȧ-rü dŭ-van lĕh bû'.** — [6] What is it that **(que cela)** means (*strictly,* wishes to-say)? [7] That. — [8] How pronounces one? — [9] **Mot (mō),** *masc.*

[10] One pronounces that. — [11] **Raison** and **tort** are *never* used *except of persons.* — [12] **Généralement.** — [13] On the carpet, literally is, **sur le tapis,** but is only occasionally used. — [14] **An ō'.** Be sure *not* to pronounce, **an nō'.** — * **Shȧ-pē'-tr' dĕx-plē-kä-sē-on'** (*explanations*).

*The directions heretofore given for the readings are still to be followed. But, wherever possible, teachers are advised to question their pupils in French, concerning the points involved in this and subsequent readings. For Self-Study, let the learner write out questions for himself,* and subsequently answer them in French, from memory.*

## LECTURE.

### UN MOT DE LITTÉRATURE.

— Vous êtes fatigué, n'est-ce pas?

— Je crois bien. Je n'en peux plus.[1] Je viens du Musée de Cluny, où j'ai vu une superbe collection d'armes. Celle du XVI^e^ siècle,[2] surtout, m'a vivement intéressé. Quelle époque, tout de même,[3] que ce XVI^e^ siècle![4] Un âge de renouvellement[5] artistique et littéraire; l'âge de Ronsard,[6] de Rabelais,[6] de Montaigne,[6] les précurseurs immédiats de Malherbe,[7] ce poéte et grammairien qui réduisit[8] la langue française à des règles sévères, et dont[9] Boileau[10] a dit plus tard:

> Enfin, Malherbe vint[11] et, le premier en France,
> Fit sentir[12] dans ses vers[13] une juste cadence.[14]

---

1 **Zhŭ nan pû plü'**, I am exhausted. Lit.: *I about-it can no-more.*
2 **Sē-ĕh'-kl'.** — 3 Any way. Lit.: All *of* same.
4 That 16th century is! Lit.: *That this sixteenth century!*
5 Renovation. — 6 **Ron-sår'; Rå-blĕh'; Mon-tĕh'-nŭ.**
7 **Må-lĕr'-b'.** — 8 Reduced (from **réduire**). — 9 Of-whom.
10 **Bó-å-lō'**, a famous poet of the age of Louis XIV. — 11 Came.
12 Made felt. Lit.: *Made to feel.* — 13 Lines (of poetry).
14 **An-fin Må-lĕr-bŭ vin', ā lŭ prŭ-mē-ā-ran Fran'-s'.**
**Fē san-tēr dan sĕh vĕr ü-nŭ zhüs-tŭ kå-dan'-s'.**

* For instance: *In what manner was the sixteenth century a remarkable age? Who were the most illustrious French writers of that period? What did Boileau say of Malherbe? From what languages was the Romance language formed? Into what dialects was it divided?* etc., etc.

Mais me voilà parti encore une fois,[1] et tout cela vous ennuie.

— Non; bien au contraire. J'aime à vous entendre parler[2] littérature. D'ailleurs, je n'ai jamais bien su[3] distinguer les grandes périodes de la littérature française. Ne pourriez-vous pas m'en dire quelques mots?

— Peut-être. Mais, par où commencer?[4]

— Commencez par le commencement. Ce sera plus simple.

— Eh bien; vous savez que du mélange[5] de la langue latine et de celle des Gaulois[6] sortit[7] enfin la *langue romane.*[8] Cette dernière[9] se divisa en deux grands dialectes: le dialecte du sud, ou langue d'oc,[10] et le dialecte du nord, ou langue d'oïl.[11] La première était la langue des Troubadours,[12] ces aventureux[13] poëtes qui erraient[14] en chantant les tournois,[15] la beauté et l'amour. La langue d'oïl, au contraire, fut celle des Trouvères, qui se plaisaient[16] dans les récits guerriers[17] et dans les fabliaux[18] malins et grivois.[19] C'est aux Trouvères que nous devons[20] la Chanson de Roland,[21] et Lancelot du Lac.[22] C'est de[23] la langue

---

1 Started again. Lit.: Yet a time.
2 Speak (*about*). **Parler chiffons,** to discuss dresses (lit.: rags)
3 Known well *how.* — 4 Where (shall I) begin. Lit.: *To-begin.*
5 From the mingling. — 6 The Gauls. — 7 Sprung. Lit.: *Came-out.*
8 The Romance tongue. — 9 The latter.
10 Language of **oc.** *Oc* meant *yes*, in that dialect.
11 **Dô-â'-yŭ. Oïl** meant *yes* in the dialect of northern France.
12 **Trōō-bâ-dōōr'** and **Trōō-vĕr',** both mean *finders*, i. e. *improvisers.*
13 Adventurous. — 14 Wandered. — 15 Tournaments.
16 Delighted in. Lit.: *Pleased themselves in.* — 17 Warlike recitals.
18 Fables, tales. — 19 Mischievous and jolly.
20 It is the T. who gave us. Lit.: It is to-the T. we owe.
21 **Lâ shan-son dŭ Rô-lan'.** Roland, famous warrior, nephew of Charlemagne. — 22 **Lan-s'-lō dü Lâk',** one of the knights of the Round Table, whose name is used as a title to the poem. — 23 From.

d'oïl, devenue[1] le dialecte dominant après la défaite des Albigeois[2] et la subordination de la France du sud[3] à la France du nord,[4] que, vers le commencement du XIII^e siècle, naquit[5] enfin la langue française proprement dite.

— N'est-ce pas aussi à cette époque que le théâtre fit son apparition[6] en France?

— Non. Ce fut bien[7] avant cela. C'est au[8] XI^e siècle que le clergé fit donner,[9] sous le nom de Miracles ou de Mystères, des pièces où l'on reproduisait principalement des scènes tirées[10] du[11] Nouveau Testament ou des[11] traditions. Ces pièces étaient parfois[12] d'une longueur si démesurée,[13] qu'il fallait des journées pour en[14] représenter une seule.[15] Le Mystère de la Passion,[16] reproduit de nos jours[17] à Oberammergau, ne durait pas moins de vingt-cinq jours!

Comme le privilège exclusif de représenter les Mystères avait été accordé à une corporation (*les Confrères de la Passion*), d'autres confréries[18] se formèrent et s'adonnèrent,[19] les unes à la représentation de *Soties*,[20] les autres à la représentation de *Moralités*, d'autres en-

---

1 Lit.: Become. *Angl.:* Which had become.

2 **Àl-bē-zhò-à',** a sect which had its center and stronghold in the south of France, and after whose defeat, in 1229, both the princes and the dialect of northern France obtained the preponderance.

3 **Süd,** southern France. Lit.: Of the south. — 4 Pron., **nor.**

5 **Nà-kē',** sprung. Lit.: Was-born (preterit of **naître**).

6 **Son nà-pà-rē-sē-on',** its appearance. — 7 Much. — 8 *In* the.

9 Had performed. Lit.: *Made to-give.*

10 Pieces in-which were principally represented scenes drawn, etc. Lit.: *Some* pieces *where* one reproduced *some* scenes, etc.

11 From the. Lit.: *Of*-the. — 12 Sometimes.

13 **Dā-mŭ-zü-rā',** excessive. — 14 Of-them.

15 One alone; *i. e.* a single one. — 16 **Pä-sē-on'.**

17 In our day. — 18 Fraternities, brotherhoods.

19 Gave themselves up to; devoted themselves to. — 20 **Sò-tē',** Follies.

core à celle de *Farces*. Les Soties étaient des allégories[1] morales et politiques d'une hardiesse[2] excessive. Les Moralités représentaient des sujets édifiants. Les Farces étaient des pièces bouffonnes,[3] qui pourtant,[4] vers la fin du XV[e] siècle, donnèrent à la France la vraie comédie, sous la forme d'un chef-d'œuvre,[5] la *Farce de l'Avocat Pathelin*.[6]

Pendant ce temps-là (c'est-à-dire du[7] XIII[e] au XVI[e] siècle) la langue, sans s'être encore débarrassée[8] des langes[9] de la barbarie, s'était lentement[10] développée, épurée,[11] et se fixait.[12] Les idées s'éveillaient,[13] et lorsque l'imprimerie[14] parut, vers la fin du XV[e] siècle, non seulement la civilization s'accéléra[15] de toutes parts,[16] mais la langue française se perfectionna[17] rapidement ..... Mais voyez quelle heure il est! Il faut que je vous quitte.

—Pour aller où donc?

—J'ai donné rendez-vous aujourd'hui à midi à F. K. M. Rehn. Le[18] connaissez-vous?

—Je le crois bien. C'est un de nos plus jolis[19] peintres[20] de marines. Est-ce qu'il est à Paris, maintenant? Je ne le[21] savais pas. .... Mais, quand me finirez-vous votre intéressant aperçu[22] de la littérature française?

—Demain, si cela vous va.[23]

---

1 Were allegories. — 2 **Dü-nŭ år-dē-ĕs** (*boldness*).
3 Facetious. — 4 However. — 5 **Shĕh dŭ'-vr',** masterpiece.
6 **Lå-vò-kå På-t'-lin'.** Patelin (*modern French*) = wheedler.
7 From-the. — 8 Without having rid itself. — 9 Swaddling-clothes.
10 Slowly. — 11 Purified. — 12 Was becoming fixed.
13 Were-awakening (*themselves*). — 14 **Lin-prēm-rē',** (the art of) printing. — 15 Was accelerated. — 16 Everywhere. — 17 **Sŭ pĕr-fĕk-sē-ò-nå',** perfected itself. — 18 *Him*. — 19 Finest. — 20 **Pin'-tr'.** — 21 *It*.
22 **In-tā-rĕh-san-tå-pĕr-sü',** sketch; outline. — 23 Suits.

*The following letter to be learned by heart and written some hour or two afterward. This can be done in two sections, if too long.*

## CORRESPONDANCE.

BOSTON, le 1er juillet.

MA CHÈRE LOUISE,

Votre bonne lettre du 22 dernier m'est parvenue[1] hier. Nous avons tous été très heureux de savoir que vous vous plaisiez si bien[2] à Paris. Mais comme vous y restez peu de temps![3]

À Rome, abstenez-vous[4] de fruits et de mets indigestibles,[5] aussi bien que d'eau glacée, cette boisson pourtant[6] si chère au cœur américain. Je n'ai pas besoin de vous recommander d'éviter[7] les excursions nocturnes à la Daisy Miller, mais je voudrais vous conseiller de ne pas vous fatiguer, de ne pas rester trop longtemps dans les églises froides et humides, et de ne pas vous promener le soir dans les rues et dans les faubourgs[8] de la ville immortelle. Avec ces précautions, il n'y a pas plus de danger à Rome qu'à Boston; peut-être[9] pas autant.[10]

Nous jouissons tous d'une[11] bonne santé. Nous comptons[12] partir à la campagne la semaine prochaine. Écrivez-nous à Newport.

Votre bien fidèle amie,

Catherine Fuller.

---

1 Reached. — 2 Liked it so much. Lit.: You yourself pleased so well. — 3 What a short stay you are making! Lit.: How you there remain little (*of*) time. — 4 Abstain (*yourself*).

5 **Mĕh-zin-dē-zhĕs-tē'-bl'. Mets,** foods. — 6 Yet. — 7 To avoid.

8 Suburbs. — 9 **Pŭ-tê'-tr',** perhaps. — 10 As much.

11 Lit.: We enjoy all *of*. — 12 Expect. Lit.: Count, reckon.

# PART V.

# PLEASURES AND HEALTH.

# PLAISIRS ET SANTÉ.

## SECTION II.

## II.

### FRENCH.

1. **Je me demande s'il serait malade.**

De qui parlez-vous?

Je parle de mon petit garçon.
Qu'a-t-il donc?
Quelquefois, il se plaint tant[1] de maux de tête.

On lui donne trop[2] à faire à l'école.

Oui, il étudie beaucoup,[3] cette année.

La semaine dernière, il avait l'air si pâle.
Je crains bien qu'il ne devienne malade.
Je crois que je ferai[4] venir le médecin.
Je ne crois pas qu'il soit[5] en ville.
J'y suis allé avant-hièr, mais il venait de partir.

Il est allé à la campagne pour quelques jours.

---

NOTES.

[1] **Tant** = *so much*, or *so many*. Be careful *never* to say **si tant,** nor **tant beaucoup,** (nor **si beaucoup**), as often done. **Tant** is *always* used alone.

[2] **Trop** = *too much*, or *too many*. Never say **trop beaucoup,** as frequently done. **Beaucoup** is *always used alone*.

[3] Never say **très beaucoup** for *very much*. **Beaucoup** means either *much* (*many*), or *very much* (*very many*), and is *always used alone*.

[4] *Indic.* (*future*). See page 432.

[5] *Subj.* See page 430.

## II.

| PRONUNCIATION. | TRANSLATION. |
|---|---|
| **1. Zhŭm dŭ-mand sēl s'rĕh mȧ-lȧd'.** | **I wonder if he is ill.**[1] |
| Pȧr-lā. | Whom are you speaking about?[2] |
| Pȧr'-l. | About my little boy. |
| | What is the matter with him?[3] |
| Kĕl-kŭ-fȯ-ȧ', ēl sŭ plin tan' dŭ mōd têt'. | Sometimes, he complains[4] so much of headaches.[5] |
| Trȯ-pȧ fair ȧ lā-kȯl'. | They give him too much to do at school. |
| Sĕh-tȧ-nā'. | Yes, he studies very much this year. |
| Sē päl'. | Last week, he looked so pale. |
| Krin . . . . . dŭ-vē-ĕn. | I fear he will get ill.[6] |
| Mād-sin'. | I think I'll send for the doctor.[7] |
| Sȯ-ȧ tan vēl'. | I don't think he is in[8] the city. |
| | I went there day before yesterday, but he had just gone away. |
| Kĕl-kŭ zhōōr'. | He has gone to[9] the country for a few days. |

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 I ask myself if he *would* (i. e. *might*) be ill. Also, **s'il est.**

2 Of whom, etc. — 3 What has he?

4 Complains (**se plaindre,** *to complain*).

5 **Mal de tête,** headache. **Maux de tête,** headaches.

6 I fear that he *may*-become. See page 431, par. 2.

7 Will-*have* the doctor come. — 8 That he *be* in. **En** is more vague and general than **dans.** The latter is usually followed by the article (unless **un** or **une, ce** or **cet,** etc., be present).

9 He *came from* starting.

C'est bien mal de sa part, quand il y a tant de maladies.
Mais qu'est-ce que c'est que ça?
Il y a quelqu'un à la porte.
Julie, allez vite ouvrir. Je crois que c'est Paul.

Oui. C'est lui.

---

**Note — Study the irregular verbs Faire and Mettre,**

---

## 2. Qu'y a t-il donc, mon enfant?

Pourquoi pleurez-vous?
Jules se moque toujours de moi, à l'école.

Calmez-vous. À quoi bon pleurer comme ça? . . . .

À quoi pensez-vous?
Je pense à[1] quelque chose. Je ne veux pas dire.

Voyons donc. Qu'est-ce que c'est?
La dernière semaine[2] de l'école, je vais lui jouer un tour.

---

NOTES.

[1] **Penser à,** *to think* (i. e. *to be thinking*) *about.* **Penser de,** *to think* (*to have an opinion*) *about. Why do you think of him?* Pourquoi pensez-vous **à** lui? *What do you think of him?* Que pensez-vous *de* lui?

[2] Notice that **dernier** (*fem.* **dernière**) when *before* the noun = the last *of a series.* Ex.: *The last year we were there,* **La dernière année que nous y étions.** But, *I was there last year,* **J'y étais l'année dernière.** Likewise, *The last week of school,* **La dernière semaine d'école** (or, **de l'école**). But, *last week,* in the ordinary sense, **la semaine dernière.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Pȧr', ka*n*-tĕl.** | It is very mean of him,[1] when there is so much sickness.[2] |
| **Mĕh kĕs kŭ sĕk sȧ'?** | But, what is that? |
| **Kĕl-ku*n*' ȧ lȧ por'-t'.** | There is some one at the door. |
| **Zhŭ krȯ-ȧk sĕh Pȯl'.** | Julie, go and open the door, quick. I think it is Paul. |
| | Yes. It is he.[3] |

---

**page 520.**

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **2. Kē-yȧ-tēl do*n* mo*n* na*n*-fa*n*'?** | **What is the matter,[4] (my) child?** |
| **Plŭ-rā.** | What are you crying for?[5] |
| **Zhŭl sŭ mȯk.** | Julius is alway making fun[6] of me, at school. |
| **Kȧl-mā-vōō'. Ȧ kȯ-ȧ bo*n*' plŭ-rā?** | Quiet yourself down. What is the use of[7] crying like that?.. |
| | What are you thinking about?[8] |
| | I am thinking about something. I don't want to say. |
| **Kĕs-kŭ sĕh'.** | Well, now, what is it? |
| **Lā-kȯl' . . . . . zhōō-ā u*n* tōōr'.** | I am going to play him a (good) trick, the last week of school. |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] Bad *on* his part — [2] So-many *sicknesses* (or, *diseases*).

[3] It is *him.* **Lui** = *him* (or *her*), when they really mean *to-him* (or *to-her*); as: Send *him* this, **Envoyez-lui ceci.** But with **c'est,** or alone, **lui** = *he.* **Qui l'a fait?** Ans.: **Lui!** Anglice, *He!* (*She!* = **Elle!**)

[4] What *is there?* — [5] Or, *familiarly,* **pleures-tu?**

[6] **Se moquer,** *to deride, to make fun of.*

[7] *To what good?*

[8] *To what* think you? (also, familiarly, **penses-tu?**). — *Whom are you thinking about?* **À qui pensez-vous?**

Rira bien qui rira le dernier.

Ce n'est pas bien.

---

**3. Je crains bien que vous ne soyez malade.**

Je vous disais que vous étudiez trop.

Vous avez si mauvaise mine!
Il faut que je fasse venir le médecin.
Julie, allez chercher le médecin.
Et vous, mon enfant, allez vous coucher tout de suite.
Mettez-vous au lit. Je vous couvrirai.

---

**4. Eh bien, comment vous sentez-vous,[1] maintenant?**

Je me sens bien mal à mon aise.
Qu'est-ce que vous sentez?
Je sens des douleurs par tout le corps.

Quelquefois, la tête me tourne.

Ah! voici le médecin . . . . .
Eh bien, qu'y a-t-il donc?

---

NOTES.

[1] Or, **te sens-tu.** I rarely introduce the familiar form in this book, and advise learners not to use it, for two reasons. First, it is always readily understood in reading. Secondly, it *need never be used* at all in speaking. Thus, by keeping to the ordinary form **(vous)**, many annoying mistakes are avoided by students, who will find they will always know *when* to use the familiar form by the time they have had sufficient intercourse with French people to warrant such use.

| | |
|---|---|
| Rē-rȧ bē-in kē rē-rȧl dĕr-nē-ā'. | He who laughs last, laughs best.[1] |
| | That is not right. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **3. Zhŭ kri*n* bē-i*n* kŭ vōōn sȯ-ȧ-yȧ mȧ-lȧd'.** | **I am afraid you are[2] ill.[3]** |
| Dē-zĕh. | I told you you were studying too much.[4] |
| Mȯ-vĕz mēn'! | You look so bad! |
| Kŭzh fȧs. | I must send for the doctor. |
| Zhü-lē'. | Julia, go for the doctor. |
| Vōō kōō-shā'. | And you, my child, go to bed at once. |
| Mĕh-tā-vōō zō lē'. | Get into[5] bed. I'll cover you up. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **4. Ā bē-i*n*, kȯ-ma*n* vōō sa*n*-tā-vōō, mi*n*-t-na*n*'?** | **Well! How do you feel,[6] now?** |
| Mo*n* nĕz'. | I feel very poorly.[7] |
| | *What* do you feel?[8] |
| Sa*n* dĕh dōō-lŭr par tōōl kor'. | I feel[8] pains all over my body. |
| Kĕl-kŭ-fȯ-ȧ . . . . . mŭ tōōr'-n'. | Sometimes, my head swims.[9] |
| | Ah! Here is the doctor . . . . . |
| | Well, what is the matter? |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

1 *Will laugh well who will laugh* (*the*) *last.* — 2 Also, **que tu ne sois.**

3 See page 431. — 4 Also, familiarly, **je te disais que tu étudiais trop.** — 5 Put yourself *into-the.* From **se mettre à.**

6 *How* (*yourself*) *feel you?* From **se sentir.** ***Se* sentir** refers to our general feeling (*of health*, etc.).

7 I feel (*myself*) very badly at my ease.

8 **Sentir,** *to feel* (also, *to smell*). — 9 *The head to-me turns.*

Quand êtes-vous devenu malade?
Avant-hier soir,[1] j'ai eu mal à la tête.

Hier soir,[2] j'ai eu mal au cœur.

Ce matin, je pouvais à peine respirer.

Il y a une heure, j'ai dû[3] quitter l'école et revenir à la maison.
Faites-moi voir votre langue.
Elle est assez chargée.
Est-ce que vous avez de l'appétit?
Non, docteur. Il y a plus d'un mois que je n'ai eu bon appétit.
Pardon. Je vais vous tâter le[4] pouls.

Il n'est pas très vif.
Avez-vous chaud aux pieds?
Non, docteur, j'ai froid aux pieds et[5] aux mains.

---

**Note. — Study "the position of adverbs,"**

---

**5. Qu'est-ce qu'il y a?**
Qu'est-ce qui vous fait sauter?[6]

---

NOTES.

[1] Also, **la nuit d'avant-hier** (see note 2).

[2] Also, **la nuit passée, la nuit dernière.** But, **soir** refers to night in the sense of *evening*, and **nuit** in the real sense of *night*.

[3] Also, **j'ai été obligé de.**

[4] *The* pulse, not *your* pulse. Remember that with the parts of the body, the French use the article (**le,** etc.) preferably to the possessive adjective (**mon,** etc.), wherever such use will not lead to confusion.

[5] **Ā ō min'.** Notice that the **t** of **et** is never carried forward.

[6] **Sauter,** *to jump*, or *skip* (*a page, a line*, etc.).

| | |
|---|---|
| | When did you get sick?[1] |
| **Å-van-tē-air sȯ-ȧr′.** | Night before last, I had[2] a headache. |
| **Mȧl ō kŭr′.** | Last night, I felt[2] sick (at my stomach).[3] |
| **Å pĕn rĕs-pē-rā′.** | This morning, I could hardly breathe. |
| **Kē-tā lā-kȯl′.** | An hour ago, I was obliged[4] to leave school and come home. |
| **Lan′-g′.** | Show me[5] your tongue. |
| **Shȧr-zhā′.** | It 's pretty well coated.[6] |
| | Have you any appetite? |
| **Bȯ-nȧ-pā-tē′.** | No, doctor. It 's more than a month since I had a good appetite.[7] |
| **Tä-tāl pōō′.** | Excuse me. I am going to feel your pulse. |
| **Vēf′.** | It is not very rapid. |
| **Shō ō pē-ā′?** | Are your feet warm?[8] |
| **Frȯ-ȧ . . . . . ā ō min′.** | No, doctor, my hands and feet are cold.[9] |

page 525.

| | |
|---|---|
| **5. Kĕs kēl ē-yȧ′?** | **What is the matter?**[10] |
| **Sō-tā′.** | What makes you jump (like that)? |

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] When *are* you become. — [2] *Conversational tense.*

[3] Ill (*ness*) at the *heart.* **Mal de cœur,** *heartache;* **la maladie de cœur,** *heart disease.*

[4] I have *had-to.* Also, **il m'a fallu.** Observe that **il faut** and **devoir** can very often be used interchangeably. See p. 445, note 6.

[5] Or, **montrez-moi.** — [6] It is rather (*strictly,* enough) *loaded.*

[7] There is more of a month that I **(n')** have had . . . . .

[8] Have you warmth to-the feet? — [9] I have cold to-the feet, etc.

[10] What is it that there is?

C'est un point de côté qui m'a pris.
Eh bien, respirez fortement.
Oh! ça me fait mal![1]
Encore une fois.
Maintenant, parlez haut.[2]
Plus haut![2] . . . . .

---

**6. Qu'est-ce qu'il y aura à faire?**

Faites exécuter cette ordonnance chez un bon pharmacien.
Il lui faudra prendre deux pilules trois fois par jour.
Demain, je reviendrai le voir.

Croyez-vous[3] qu'il guérisse, docteur?

Mais oui, il guérira. Cela va sans dire.
Je suis bien aise de vous entendre dire cela.
Seulement, ayez soin qu'il prenne sa médecine régulièrement.

---

**Note. — Study the "use of prepositions after**

---

NOTES.

[1] **Faire mal,** *to hurt*, i. e. *to pain;* **vous me faites mal,** *you hurt me!*

[2] *Speak low* = **parlez bas (pȧr-lā bä').**

[3] Remember that *to think* is better rendered by **croire,** in the case of a *belief;* by **trouver,** in the case of an *opinion;* **compter,** of an *intention;* **penser,** of *thought.* Ex.: *Do you think it will rain?* = **Croyez-vous qu'il pleuve?** *Do you think this is good?* = **Trouvez-vous cela bon?** *Do you think you will go soon?* = **Comptez-vous bientôt partir?** *What are you thinking about?* = **À quoi pensez-vous?** — In all the above cases, **penser** *could* be used; but its constant recurrence would be insipid. Let the pupil discriminate. N. B. — With **que,** however, *generally* use **penser.** *What do you think of him?* **Que pensez-vous de lui?** . . . . . *of that,* **Qu'en pensez-vous?**

| | |
|---|---|
| Pȯ-*in*-d-kō-tā′. | It was a stitch in *my* side.[1] |
| For-tĕ-man′. | Now breathe heavily.[2] |
| Ō! sȧm fĕh mȧl′. | Oh! it hurts me! |
| A*n*-kor ün fȯ-ȧ′. | Once more.[3] |
| Pȧr-lā ō′. | Now, speak aloud.[4] |
| Plü ō′. | Louder.[5] . . . . . |

| | |
|---|---|
| **6. Kĕs-kēl ē or-ȧ′ ȧ fair′?** | **What will we have to do?**[6] |
| Fĕt zĕg-zā-kü-tā sĕh-tor-dȯ-nan′-s . . . . . fȧr-mȧ-sē-*in*′. | Have this prescription filled out[7] at a good druggist's. |
| Dû pē-lül′. | He will have to take two pills three times a day. |
| | To-morrow, I shall return to see him. |
| Gā-rĕs′. | Do you think he will recover,[8] doctor? |
| | Why, of course, he 'll get well. |
| | That goes without saying.[9] |
| Ĕh-yā sȯ-*in* kēl prĕn sȧ mād-sĕn rā-gü-lē-air-man′. | Only, take care and have him take[10] his medicine regularly. |

**adjectives," page 526.**

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] Stitch *of* side that took me (*conversat. tense*). — [2] Forcibly. — [3] Yet one time. — [4] *High.* — [5] *Higher!* — [6] What is it that there *will-be* . . . .

[7] Make to-execute. *To have anything done* or *made* = **faire,** *not* **avoir. Avoir,** to = *to have*, meaning *to possess*, or, *to have already done anything*, or, *to have anything to do.* — [8] Subj. of **guérir.** See p. 430.

[9] That goes without *to-say* (i. e. *saying*). In English, all prepositions (except *to* and its compounds) govern the present participle. In French, all prepositions (except **en**) govern the infinitive present. ENGLISH: *Before sleeping*, *after running*, *for writing*, etc. FRENCH: *Before sleeping* **(avant de dormir)**; *After to-have run* **(après avoir couru)**; *For to-write* **(pour écrire)**. But, **en écrivant** (*when*, *while*, *by*, or *through writing*). — [10] Have care that he *take*. Subj. of **prendre.**

## Fifth Cardinal Rule.

### USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.[1]

The subjunctive (from the Latin *subjunctivus, subjoined*) is used only in *subordinate* or *secondary clauses.*[2] It expresses the *uncertainty* or *emotion* existing *in the mind of the speaker* as to the action referred to. Hence:

FIRST GENERAL RULE.

**The subjunctive is used after que,* qui,** or **dont,**† **whenever doubt** (or **negation) is implied.** Thus, we will say:

I know he will come = Je sais *qu'*il *viendra.*

*The Indicative,*[3] *because no doubt is entertained by the speaker.* But:

Do you think he will come = Croyez-vous *qu'*il *vienne.*

*The Subjunctive, because there is doubt implied in the very question.*

I don't think he will come = Je ne crois pas *qu'*il *vienne.*

*The Subjunctive, because there is negation and uncertainty implied.*

N. B. — The proper application of this first rule, would solve almost every case of subjunctive; but, in order to illustrate and place the case more fully before the student, I subjoin the following subordinate rules which all spring, more or less directly, from the above general principle:

---

[1] The subjunctive mood has four tenses (*present, past, imperfect, pluperfect*), and (practically) is always preceded by **que, qui,** or **dont** (see page 528). It is therefore a dependent mood, used in clauses united to others by **qui, que,** or **dont.** See note †, this page.

[2] Example: *Je doute qu'il vienne.* Principal clause, *Je doute;* subordinate clause, *Il vienne;* word uniting the two, *qu'* (for **que**). Or, *C'est le seul qui puisse le faire.* Principal clause, *C'est le seul;* subordinate clause, *Puisse le faire;* word uniting the two, *qui.*

[3] The indicative mood, as known, is made up of the following tenses: *Present, imperfect, preterit, future,* (and their compounds, *Past indefinite,* etc.).

* And many conjunctions compounded with **que,** as: **afin que, à moins que, quoique,** etc. For list, see page 527.

† Also, *sometimes,* **où;** or **lequel, laquelle,** etc., (with a prepos.).

SUBORDINATE RULES.

**The Subjunctive is used:**

1. **After interrogative or negative sentences.** Ex.:

What do you want me to do? Que voulez-vous *que* je *fasse?*
I don't want you to speak, Je ne veux pas *que* vous *parliez.*

2. **After verbs (or, sentences) expressing *pleasure, wonder, surprise, will, desire, command, doubt, fear:***

I am glad you saw him = Je suis content *que* vous l'*ayez* vu.[1]
I am sorry you are ill = Je suis fâché *que* vous *soyez* malade.[2]
I doubt if he 'll come = Je doute[3] *qu*'il *vienne.**

3. **After impersonal verbs:**[4]

Il est temps *que* nous *partions.*

4. **After a relative clause† *into which enters one of the following:*** *le plus, le moins, le mieux, le meilleur, le pire, le moindre, le seul, le premier, le dernier,* or *peu;* or, *any superlative.* Example:

The only one who can do it = Le seul *qui puisse* le faire.
It is the first I heard about = C'est le premier *dont j'aie* entendu parler.
The best horse I know = Le meilleur cheval *que* je *connaisse.*[5]

---

EXCEPTIONS.

**The subjunctive is not used:**

1. **After interrogative or negative sentences,** or *any*

---

[1] Lit.: That you him *have* seen (**ayez,** subj. pres., 2d pers. plural of **avoir**). — [2] Lit.: . . . . . that you *be* ill (**soyez,** subj. pres., 2d person plural of **être**). — [3] Lit.: I doubt *that* he *come* (**vienne,** subj. pres. of **venir**). — [4] For list of impersonal verbs, see page 524.

[5] For exceptions, see page 528.

* Notice that in order to have the subjunctive in the second clause, the two verbs must (generally) be of *different* subjects. Thus, **je** and **vous** are the subjects in the first and second sentences, **je** and **il** in the third. When the two verbs have the *same* subject, the second is (generally) put in the infinitive: [I am glad to see you = *Je* suis content de vous voir (*I* being the subject both of *to be glad* and *to see*)].

† *I. e.* a clause united to the one following it by *who, which* (*what, that*), *whose* (*of which*), *where, in which,* etc., (**qui, que, dont, où,** etc.).

verb, *if the speaker is certain about the fact advanced.* **Ex.:**

*Do you know your brother is ill?* = Savez-vous que votre frère *est* malade?

*He does not know he is ill* = Il ne sait pas qu'il *est* malade.

2. **Nor, after the verbs *croire, espérer, penser,*** used *affirmatively.* Ex.: Croyez-vous qu'il le *fasse.* (Lit.: *May*-do it.)

*Subjunctive, because* **croire** *is used interrogatively.*

But: "Je crois qu'il le *fera.*"

*Indicative (future), because* **croire** *is used affirmatively.*

3. **Nor, after the impersonal verbs *il y a, il paraît, il me semble,*[1] *il est certain, il est vrai,*** (and a few others *which express a positive fact*), if, however, they are used *affirmatively.* **Ex.:**

*It seems to me she is wrong* = Il me semble qu'elle *a* tort. **But:** *It does not,* etc. = Il ne me semble pas qu'elle *ait* tort.*

### *Ne* before the Subjunctive.

The following verbs and locutions of a *restrictive* nature require **ne** before a following verb in the subjunctive:

(1) **Empêcher,** *to prevent;* **prendre garde, craindre avoir peur,** and **trembler;** *if used affirmatively.* **Ex.:**

Prenez garde qu'il *ne* tombe.[1]
Je crains qu'il *ne* devienne malade.

But not if they are *negative* or *interrogative:*

Je ne crains pas qu'il vienne[2] (*no* **ne**).
Craignez-vous qu'il le dise (*no* **ne**)?

(2) ***A moins que, de peur que, de crainte que.*** **Ex.:**
À moins qu'il *n'*écrive bientôt, je vais partir.

---

[1] Take *care he does not fall.* Lit.: Take care that he may-*not*-fall. Notice that a few verbs (such as **empêcher, ordonner, prendre garde**) may have either the subjunctive with *que* after them, or the *infinitive.* Ex.: *Prevent him from doing it* = **Empêchez *qu'il* ne *fasse* cela;** or, **Empêchez-le *de* le *faire.*** *Take care not to fall* = **Prenez garde *que* vous ne *tombiez;*** or, (*much more common*), **Prenez garde de tomber.** — [2] I don't fear he will (lit.: *may*) come.

* For special cases of the Subjunctive, see page .

*The following vocabulary to be learned by heart.*

## VOCABULAIRE.

| | |
|---|---|
| Comment ça va-t-il?[1] | *How d'ye do?* |
| Je me porte très bien,[2] merci; et vous-même? | I am very well, thank you; and yourself? |
| Je ne me porte pas bien, | I am not very well. |
| Comment se porte monsieur votre frère?[3] | How is your brother? |
| Il ne se porte pas du tout bien, | He is not at all well. |
| Comment va la santé? | How is your health? |
| Cela va assez bien,[4] merci, | Pretty good, thank you. |
| Ça va mieux[5] (mē-û'), | Better. |
| Dans un courant d'air (kōō-ran dair'),[6] | In a draught. |
| Un rhume, | A cold. |
| Un rhume de cerveau,[7] | A cold in the head. |
| Je tousse,[8] | I have a cough. |
| Je suis enrhumé[9] (sü-ē zan-rü-mā'), | I have a cold. |
| Je me suis enrhumé, | I took a cold. |
| J'ai attrapé un rhume, | I caught a cold. |
| Je me suis brûlé,[10] | I burnt myself. |
| J'ai la figure enflée. | My face is swollen. |
| Vous allez vous enrhumer, | You are going to take cold. |

---

1 Very familiar. Lit.: *How* (*that*) goes it? — 2 Or, **assez bien**; or, **mal.** — 3 **Monsieur, madame, mademoiselle** are used when mentioning *other people's* relatives, unless a certain degree of acquaintance and familiarity exists. But *never* use them in speaking of your own relatives. Never say, *Madame ma* mère, etc.

4 Lit.: *That* goes *enough well.* — 5 Or, **beaucoup mieux (bō-kōō mē-û').** — 6 A current of air. — 7 **Cerveau (sĕr-vō').** Lit.: *Brain.*

8 Strictly, *I cough.* — 9 Also, **J'ai un rhume.** — *I have a cold in the head,* **J'ai un rhume de cerveau.** — 10 *Fem.:* **enrhumée, brûlée',**

*To be studied aloud and repeated as a real conversation, in preparation for the class-room or for self-study. (See also* ***Directions,*** *before* ***Part I.****)*

## CONVERSATIONS.

Monsieur, je suis venu pour vous consulter.—Qu'est-ce que vous avez?—Il y a deux mois que je tousse.[1] —J'ai pris toutes sortes de médecines, sans pouvoir me guérir.[2]—Comment cela a-t-il commencé?—Tout d'abord, je me suis enrhumé, en prenant un bain.—Après cela, j'ai eu la fièvre, pendant une semaine. —J'ai aussi eu des frissons,[3] toute la semaine dernière.—Il y a un médecin qui a cru[4] que j'avais les fièvres tremblantes.[5]—Il s'est trompé.[6]—Ne craignez-vous pas que ce soit la maladie de poitrine?[7]—Combien y a-t-il de temps que vous toussez?—Il n'y a pas plus[8] de deux mois.—Très bien. Je vois ce que[9] c'est.—Est-ce qu'il y a quelque chose[10] de sérieux à ma maladie?—Non. Ce n'est qu'un vilain[11]

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

[1] I have had a cough for (the last) two months.

[2] **Guérir,** to cure; **se guérir,** to get cured.

[3] **Frĕ-so*n*',** chills.— [4] Thought, (**cru,** past part. of **croire**).

[5] **Fē-ĕh'-vr' tra*n*-bla*n*'-t',** chills and fever. Lit.: *Trembling fevers.*

[6] He was mistaken. Lit.: He himself *has* deceived.— [7] Consumption.

[8] **Pas** and **plus** are found together here, but **plus** is really affirmative in this sentence, which is divided into (1) *There is not;* (2) *More than two months.*— [9] What (lit.: *That which*).

[10] **Quelque chose** = something, anything.— [11] Ugly; bad.

rhume. Je puis vous‿assurer que cela ne sera rien. Vous prendrez ces poudres. — Combien [1] faudra-t‿il en prendre par jour? Prenez‿en trois.

**2.—*À PROPOS DE JEUX.****

Pourquoi ne voulez-vous pas jouer aux cartes,[2] à présent? — A quoi bon jouer avec vous. Je ne gagne[3] jamais. — Eh bien, jouons‿à la balle.[4] — Non, j'ai joué à la balle‿toute l'après-midi.[5] D'ailleurs, je n'ai pas le temps. Nous avons du monde‿à dîner,[6] et il faut que je m'habille.[7]

**3.—*OURS‿OU TAUREAU?*†**

Pourquoi avez-vous l'air de si mauvaise‿humeur?[8] — Je ne savais pas que j'avais l'air de mauvaise‿humeur. Je suis de très bonne‿humeur, au contraire. — Pourtant on me dit que vous‿avez beaucoup perdu à la Bourse. Étiez-vous‿*ours*[9] ou *taureau?*[10] — Je n'étais ni l'un ni l'autre, mon cher. J'étais‿un‿âne.[11]

---

**Note.—Study the irreg. v. Plaire and Prendre, page .**

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

[1] **Combien** = *how much* or *how many.* — [2] **Zhōō-ā ō kår'-t'** (cards). Lit.: *To-the* cards. — [3] **Gä'-ñ',** *win, earn.* — [4] Lit.: *To the* ball **(bål).**

[5] **Après-midi** is *masculine* as **cet‿après-midi**; but *feminine* as **toute l'après-midi, une belle‿après-midi.** — [6] **Mon-då-dē-nā',** company to dinner. — [7] Or, **je dois m'habiller.**

[8] **Sē mô-vĕz ü-mŭr',** *in such* (*a*) *bad humor.*

[9] En Amérique, les courtiers qui jouent à la hausse s'appellent **taureaux (tor‿ō'),** *bulls;* et ceux qui jouent à la baisse s'appellent **ours (ōōr'-s),** *bears.* — [10] **Ā-tē‿ā vōō zōōr-sōō tor‿ō'.** A bear, **un‿ours (un nōōr-s).** — [11] **Zhā‿tĕh zun nä'-n',** an ass.

* **Zhû,** games. — † **ŌŌr-sōō-tor‿ō'?** Bull or bear?

*To be written into French, but also treated orally in the class-room. (For Self-Study, see* **Directions,** *before* **Part I.**)

## EXERCISES.

### 1.—*MÉLANGES.**

What is the matter with you? You look[1] so pale! I fear you are[2] ill.—No, nothing is the matter with me.—But you *will* get[3] ill, unless you take[4] better care[5] of yourself.[6]

I think I will go[7] (and) buy some theatre tickets for to-night.[8]—I don't think the office is[9] open.[10] —No matter.[11] I must try[12] to get some.

Well, I got[13] tickets.—I am very glad you did.[14] What[15] did you pay (for) them?—Two francs a piece.—Are they good (ones)?—The seventh row,[16] on (the) right.

### 2.—*INVITATION ET DÉPART.*

I have invited your cousin to[17] come (and) dine with us (day) after to-morrow. Do you think he will

---

**Aids to Translation.**

1 You *have the air.*— 2 I fear that you *may-be.* Remember that *that* is never omitted.— 3 Future of **devenir.**— 4 Subj. of **prendre.**

5 **Soin.**— 6 You.— 7 Future of *to-go.*— 8 *This evening.*

9 Subj. of *to be.*— 10 Past part. of **ouvrir.** Remember verbs in **frir** and **vrir** end in **ert** in the past participle.— 11 **N'importe.**

12 It is-necessary that I try (subj. of **tâcher**).— 13 Have had.

14 That you of-them have (*subj.*) had.— 15 How-much.

16 **Rang (ran).**— 17 Verbs of favorable meaning. See page 332.

* **Mā-lan'-zh',** miscellanies.

come?—I know he will come if he can. But he has a great deal to[1] do.....

Well, I must start, unless he comes within a few minutes.[2]—But you cannot go without him. He is the only one[3] who knows[4] the road.—No matter, I am going.[5]—Are you sure you can[6] manage[7] the horses?—I am sure I can.[8]—Very well. Good luck[9] (to you)!

### 3.—*À PROPOS D'UN AMI.*

I have just met our friend Achard.—He[10] is your friend, perhaps, but not mine.[11]—Do you not think he is[12] a good man?—I know he is not.[13] He played me a mean trick,[14] the other day.—There must be[15] some mistake. I hope[16] you will change (your) opinion.[17]—I know I will not,[18] unless he acts[19] differently.—Well, in order that[20] you may become[21] friends again,[22] I'll invite you both[23] to dinner with me, and we'll tàlk the thing (over).[24]

---

**Aids to Translation.**

1 **À.**— 2 *From here a-few* minutes.— 3 Only one = **Seul.**

4 See page 431, parag. 4.— 5 I am going *away.* Notice that you cannot say "*I am going*" without naming the place, or representing it by **en,** or **y,** etc.— 6 See page 431, *First subordinate rule.*

7 **Mener,** or **contrôler.**— 8 See page 431, *Exception.*

9 **Bonne chance (bòn shan'-s').**— 10 See page 384, *Exception.*

11 *The* mine.— 12 That *it* **(ce)** *be.*— 13 That *it* is not a *good man.*

14 **Méchant.**— 15 There **(il)** owes *to be* **(y avoir).**

16 *That* never omitted.— 17 *Of* opinion.— 18 Will not *do it.*

19 Subjunctive of **agir.**— 20 **Afin** (or, **pour**) **que.**— 21 May-become.

22 **De retour.**— 23 **Tous les deux** (*all the two*).

24 We will talk (future of **causer**) of the thing.

*To be translated by means of the notes, and then read aloud in French. Questions can then be asked in French by the teacher. Self learners can draught questions for themselves, and answer them, as already indicated on page 414.*

## UN MOT DE LITTÉRATURE.—2.

Nous en étions donc arrivés au XVI[e] siècle, dont je vous ai déjà dit un mot. C'est le siècle de François 1[er],[1] et de la renaissance des arts et des lettres en France aussi bien qu'en Allemagne[2] et en Italie. En France, la langue continue à se perfectionner. Les ouvrages d'orthographe,[3] de grammaire, de rhétorique, se succèdent rapidement. Les romans, contes et facéties[4] s'accumulent.[5] Rabelais écrit Gargantua,[6] cette satire si puissante[7] et pourtant si fine[8] de François 1[er] et de son siècle, cette plaisanterie[9] qui se prolonge à travers[10] cinq volumes et qui cependant,[11] d'un bout à l'autre,[12] ne cesse de divertir.[13] La philosophie,[14] elle aussi,[15] prospère, et Montaigne écrit ses Essais.[16] Des tragédies[17] traduites et imitées des[18] auteurs classiques, remplacent les Mystères. Ronsard les inaugure[18] par une traduction[19] du Plutus d'Aristophanes,[20]

---

[1] **Fran-sò-à prŭ-mē-ā'.** — [2] **An nàl-mà'-ñŭ.** — [3] **Or-tò-gràf',** *orthography.* Notice that in French **th** is always pronounced **t.**

[4] **Rò-man', kon'-t', fà-sā-sē'** (see PRONUNCIATION, about **tie, tié,** etc.); *Novels, tales,* and *facetious writings.* — [5] Accumulate.

[6] **Gàr-gan-tü-à',** a fabulous character, meant as a caricature of Francis I. — [7] Powerful. — [8] Yet so ingenious. — [9] This jest.

[10] Through. — [11] Yet. — [12] From end to end. Lit.: *From one end to the other.* — [13] Ceases not to amuse. — [14] **Fē-lò-zò-fē'.**

[15] Also, lit.: *it* **(elle)** *also.* — [16] Essays. — [17] From-the.

[18] Inaugurates them. — [19] **Trà-dük-sē-on'.**

[20] **Plü-tüs',** a comedy. . . . **A-rēs-tò-fàn'.**

qu'il[1] joue avec ses condisciples[2] au collège de Coqueret.[3] Régnier[4] et d'autres suivent son exemple. La tragédie française[5] n'est pas encore créée, mais la voie se traçait déjà[6] pour l'immortel Corneille et son émule,[7] Jean Racine. L'auteur inconnu[8] de l'Avocat Pathelin, comme nous l'avons vu,[9] avait déjà préparé le terrain de la comédie[10] pour l'inimitable Molière. Mais il manquait à[11] la langue un dernier poli.[12] Malherbe, et plus tard, Balzac, se chargent[13] de cette tâche.[14] Louis XIV apparaît. Le XVII[e] siècle est là.[15]

Corneille, après des tâtonnements[16] dans lesquels se révélaient pourtant des qualités nouvelles — le bon sens et l'esprit,[17] fait jouer le Cid;[18] et la tragédie nationale,[19] grande et immortelle, est trouvée. Les Horaces, puis Cinna, puis Polyeucte,[20] suivent de près[21] le Cid, et ne font qu'ajouter à la gloire du grand poète.

En 1659, vingt ans après la création[22] du Cid,

---

1 Which he. — 2 School-mates. — 3 A town in France.
4 **Rā-ñā'.** — 5 French tragedy.
6 The path was already being made (lit.: *Itself traced*).
7 Emulator; rival. — 8 Unknown
9 As we have already seen; (French: *As we it have seen*).
10 Lit.: *Had already prepared the soil of comedy;* Angl.: the *way*, etc.
11 *There* lacked to. — 12 Polish.
13 Undertake. Lit.: *Charge themselves with.*
14 **Täsh',** task. — 15 Here. Lit.: *There.* — 16 Gropings. — 17 Wit.
18 Has the Cid played. The Cid **(sēd),** one of Corneille's greatest tragedies.
19 **Trȧ-zhā-dē Nä-sē-ȯ-nȧl'.**
20 **Lĕh zor-ȧ'-s',** the Horatii. . . . . **Sēn-nȧ'.** . . . . **Pȯ-lē-ûk'-t';** three tragedies of Corneille.
21 Follow close upon (lit.: *Of near*).
22 Creation, appearance.

Molière produit[1] sur la scène,[2] les Précieuses Ridicules.[3] C'est à la première représentation de cette pièce qu'un spectateur s'écrie,[4] „Courage! Molière. Voilà la bonne comédie!„ Après les Précieuses Ridicules, Molière fournit au théâtre le Bourgeois Gentilhomme, l'Avare, le Misanthrope, le Tartufe, les Femmes Savantes, le Malade Imaginaire.[5] Œuvres[6] immortelles! Vraiment, si l'on doit dire qu'il n'y eut jamais au monde de génie aussi universel que[7] Shakespeare, il faut, je le crois, accorder la palme à[8] Molière comme au plus parfait de tous les écrivains[9] comiques.

---

[1] Produces; places.— [2] **Sĕn',** stage.

[3] **Prā-sē-ûz Rē-dē-kül',** *The Ridiculous* **Précieuses,** one of Molière's best comedies. (Ladies of literary and critical taste gathered then in coteries, half learned, half ridiculous, and were called Précieuses, *i. e. precious*, or, rather, *affected, finical ones*).— [4] Cries out.

[5] **Bōōr-zhô-â Zhan-tē-yòm', Lâ-vâr'** (*the Miser*); **Mē-zan-tròp'** (*Misanthrophist*); **Târ-tüf'** (a type of hypocrisy); **Fâm Sâ-van'-t'** (*Learned women*); *The imaginary sick man*. Comedies of Molière.

[6] Works.— [7] **Aussi ..... que** = as ..... as.— [8] **Pâl'-mâ,** etc.

[9] **Ā-krē-vin',** writers.

# PART V.

## PLEASURES AND HEALTH.

## PLAISIRS ET SANTÉ.

### SECTION III.

1. LES ABSENTS ONT TOUJOURS TORT.
2. LA LECON.
3. APRÈS LE DÉPART D'UN AMI.
4. À L'OUVRAGE.
5. QU'Y A-T-IL DE NOUVEAU?
6. CHEZ UN AMI.
7. LE MATIN.
8. UN MOT DE LITTÉRATURE.

## III.

### FRENCH.

**1. N'en croyez rien, car je viens de la rencontrer, de l'autre côté du Gymnase.**

Je me promenais avec un de mes amis.[1]

De quel côté allait-elle?

D'abord, elle venait de ce côté-ci, et alors elle est retournée du côté de la Madeleine.

Il n'y a plus à en douter. Elle est allée autre part.

Pourquoi riez-vous? Moi, je n'ai pas envie de rire.

Je compte lui[2] demander les raisons d'une telle conduite quand elle viendra.

Elle devient de plus en plus indifférente envers moi.

Eh bien, à demain. Je vous quitte. J'ai envie d'aller au spectacle, ce soir . . . . .

---

NOTES.

[1] The French *never* say *a friend of mine*, **un ami de moi,** but *always*, one of my friends, **un de mes amis.**

[2] When one verb is *immediately* followed by another *in the infinitive*, the pronoun-objects are (habitually) placed before the second. Ex.: **Je veux le voir; je vais le faire; il veut le leur dire; Il est allé les voir.** Exception: If the two verbs form one single expression, as **faire faire,** *to order*, *to have made;* **faire voir,** *to show*, etc., the pronouns come before both. Ex.: **Je vous le ferai voir.**

* The **t** of the conjunction **et** is never carried forward.

## III.

| PRONUNCIATION. | TRANSLATION. |
|---|---|
| **1. Na*n* kró-à-yā rē-i*n*′, kár *z*hŭ vē-i*n* dlá ra*n*-ko*n*-trā.** | **Don't believe it.[1] For I have just met her on the other side, etc.** |
| Zhŭm próm-nĕh . . . . . u*n* d'mĕh. | I was taking a stroll with a friend of mine. |
| | Which way was she going? |
| Ā* à-lor ĕl ĕr-tōōr-*n*ā′. | First, she was coming this way, and then she turned back toward[2] the Madeleine. |
| Ō-trŭ pár′. | There is no (more) doubt of it. She is going somewhere else.[3] |
| Rē-ā-vōō? Mó-à, zh'nā pä za*n*-vĕd-rĕr′. | Why do you laugh? *I* don't feel like laughing.[4] |
| Rĕh-zo*n* dün tĕl ko*n*-dü-ĕt', ka*n*-tĕl. | I intend to ask her the reason of such a conduct, when she comes.[5] |
| Dŭ-vē-i*n*′ . . . . . a*n*-vĕr. | She is getting to be more and more[6] indifferent toward me. |
| Àd-mi*n*′ . . . . spĕk-tà′-kl'. | Well, good-by.[7] I am going. I feel like going to the theatre, to-night.[8] . . . . |

---

### LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] *Of-it* believe nothing. For I come *from to-meet* her.

[2] *Of* the side. *Towards*, literally, is **vers** (*physical direction*), or, **envers** (*moral meaning*). — [3] *Other part. Somewhere* = **quelque part.**

[4] I have no desire to laugh. — [5] When she *will*-come. When a *future* action is meant, the future is always used after **quand.**

[6] *More and more* = **de plus en plus;** *less and less* = **de moins en moins;** *worse and worse* = **de pire en pire;** *better and better* = **de mieux en mieux (dŭ mē-û zan mē-û′).** — [7] Abbrev. of **Jusqu'à demain.** Very frequent. — [8] When the *night* is meant, **cette nuit.**

**Note. — Study the irregular verbs Rire and Suivre.**

---

**2. Je pourrais[1] apprendre cela; mais ceci, jamais.**

Je veux bien apprendre autre chose.

Pourtant, hier, vous pouviez[1] l'apprendre.

Oui, mais je ne le ferai plus. C'est trop difficile.

Voyons, écoutez-moi. Lisez-le encore une fois. Ensuite, nous verrons.

---

**3. Qu'est-ce qui vous rend si triste?**

Est-ce que j'ai l'air triste? Un de mes amis vient de partir pour les États-Unis.

Je ne savais pas que ce monsieur fût[2] parti. Je croyais que vous deviez y aller avec lui.

Pas encore. Mais j'irai[3] bientôt.

Comment ce monsieur s'appelle-t-il?[4]

---

NOTES.

[1] Observe that *could* is rendered by the conditional (**rais, rait,** etc.) when it refers to the *present* or *future*, that is, when it expresses a condition. But it is rendered by the imperfect, when it refers to the *past*: *Formerly I could,* **Autrefois je pouv*ais*.** N. B. — After **si** (unless meaning *whether*), the *imperfect* (or *present*) is always used.

[2] Imperfect subjunctive of **être.** When a verb, governing the subjunctive after it is *in a past tense,* the *imperfect* of the subjunctive is used after **que.** — [3] Before **irai, iras,** etc., **y** (*there*) is not used.

[4] From **s'appeler,** *to be called.* Lit.: *To call one's self.* **Comment vous appelez-vous?** *What is your name?* **Je m'appelle Henri (a*n*-rē').**

page .

| | |
|---|---|
| **2. Zhŭ pōō-rĕh zȧ-pra*n*′-dr' slȧ′.** | **I could learn *that;* but *this,* never.** |
| Ȧ-pra*n*-drō-tr' shōz'. | I am willing to learn something else.[1] |
| | Yet, *yesterday,* you could learn it. |
| Zhŭn lŭ frā plü′ . . . . . dē-fē-sēl'. | Yes, but I won't do it any more.[2] It is too hard. |
| Ā-kōō-tā-mȯ-ȧ′. Lē-zā-lŭ a*n*-kor ün fȯ-ă′. A*n*-sü-ēt'. | Now, listen to me. Read it once more. After that, we will see. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **3. Kĕs-kē vōō ra*n* sē trēs′-t'?** | **What makes[3] you so sad?** |
| Lēh zā-tȧ zü-nē′. | Do I look sad?[4] A friend of mine has just left for America. |
| Krȯ-ȧ-yĕh . . . . . dŭ-vē-ā zē. | I did not know the gentleman had gone.[5] I thought you were to go[6] with him. |
| | Not yet. But I will go soon. |
| Sȧ-pĕl-tēl′? | What is the gentleman's name?[7] |

### LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] Other thing.

[2] I it will do *no* more. (*Never:* Je ne le ferai *pas encore.*) *Not any more,* cannot be said in French, but only *no more.* Likewise: Have*n't* you seen *anybody?* = **N'avez-vous vu *personne*?** (lit.: Have you seen *nobody*)? Did*n't* he say *anything?* = **N'a-t-il *rien* dit?** (has he *nothing* said?—Do not use **pas** with any of these.— [3] *To make,* meaning *to render* or *change* (*anybody* or *anything*) = **rendre.**— [4] Is it that I have the air sad?— [5] That *that* gentleman *might-be* gone.

[6] That you *owed* to go. When *must,* or *to have to,* or *to be to,* refer to a *supposition* or a *duty,* they are translated by **devoir.**

[7] How this gentleman himself **(s')** calls he?

Il s'appelle Armand d'Elséghem.

C'est un joli nom, n'est-ce pas?
Très *joli* (see Note 1).

---

**Note.—Study the "Use of the Tenses of the**

---

**3. Eh bien, mettons-nous à l'ouvrage.**

J'ai beaucoup à faire.
J'ai laissé ma plume quelque part.
Prenez une des miennes.
Merci beaucoup. . Vous êtes bien aimable . . . . .

Il fait bien chaud, n'est-ce pas?
Oui, bien chaud! Mais il ne fait pas si chaud qu'hier.
Pas tout à fait.[2] . . . .
Vos plumes sont plus grosses que les miennes. Je ne peux pas écrire avec.

Pardon. Elles ne sont pas aussi grosses que les vôtres. Voulez-vous que j'aille[3] en chercher une? . . . .

---

NOTES.

[1] Never say **très** alone. Always, **Très *joli;* Très *mal.*** Or, **Oui, c'est très joli; oui, c'est très mal,** etc.

[2] Be careful never to say, **Pas *du tout*** (*not at all*), when meaning **Pas tout à fait** (*not quite*). A frequent mistake.

[3] When verbs expressing *will* or *desire* (as **vouloir, désirer, exiger** (**ĕg-zē-zhā'**), *to exact, to demand;* **défendre,** *to forbid,* etc.) are followed by another verb *with a different subject,* they *generally* govern the subjunctive. Ex.: *Do you want me to go?* = **Voulez-vous *que j'aille*** (lit.: *Do you want that I go*)? As already known, if the subject is the same for both verbs, the second is in the infinitive: **Je veux y aller, je désire voir cela,** etc.

| | |
|---|---|
| Ar-man dĕl-sā-gĕm'.* | His name is[1] Armand d'Elsé-ghem. |
| Non'. (*Do not say* nòm.) † | It 's a pretty name, is n't it? |
| | *Very* (see Note 1, page 446). |

---

**Subjunctive," page .**

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **3. Mĕh-ton-nōō zá lōō-vrázh'.** | **Well, let us go to work.**[2] |
| Bō-kōō á fair'. | I have a great deal[3] to do. |
| Má plüm kĕl-kŭ pár'. | I left my pen, somewhere.[4] |
| Mē-ĕn'. | Take one of mine. |
| Bē-in nā-má'-bl'. | Many thanks. You are very kind . . . . . |
| | It 's very warm to-day, is it not? |
| Kē-yĕr'. | Yes, *very.* But not as warm as yesterday. |
| Pä tōō tá fĕh'. | Not quite . . . . . |
| Grōs'. | Your pens are coarser than[5] mine. I can 't write with (them). |
| Vō-tr' . . . . . †† | Pardon me. They are not as coarse as[5] yours. Do you want me to go and get one?[6] |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.

[1] *He himself calls.*

[2] (*Let us*) *put ourselves* . . . . . **Se mettre à,** *to go at, to begin.*

[3] **Beaucoup** = *much* (or, *very much*), *many* (or, *very many*), *a great deal.* — [4] **Quelque part,** somewhere; **autre part,** somewhere else.

[5] More . . . . . than = **plus . . . . . que;** less . . . . . than = **moins . . . . . que;** as . . . . . as = **aussi . . . . . que;** as much . . . . . as = **autant que.** — [6] Will you that I go of-them to-get one?

* **G** is always hard in the *pronunciation.* — † Remember that the teeth and lips do *not* close upon the nasal sounds. — †† Pronounced **vō'-tr',** *because of the circumflex accent.* But, the adjective **votre** (as, **votre ami**), *having no accent,* is pronounced **vò'-tr'.**

Vous aviez raison. Je ne croyais pas que les miennes fussent aussi grosses.

Mais qu'est-ce que c'est que ça? N'avez-vous rien entendu?

Pas[1] moi. Je n'ai entendu personne.

Ni moi non plus.

Ne parlez pas si haut. J'entends quelqu'un.

Moi aussi . . . . .

---

## 4. Vous avez soif, n'est-ce pas?

Oui, j'ai bien soif.

Voulez-vous que je fasse venir un verre de vin et quelque chose à manger?

Non, merci. J'avais grand' faim, il y a une heure.

Mais à présent, je n'ai plus faim. Donnez-moi un peu d'eau, seulement.

Comme vous avez l'air fatigué! . . . .

Eh bien, qu'est-ce qu'il y a de nouveau?

Savez-vous quelle nouvelle je viens d'apprendre?

Connaissez-vous[2] Monsieur Legros?

---

NOTES.

[1] When used without a verb, do *not* say **ne** with **Pas, Rien, Personne,** etc.

[2] *To know* is rendered by **savoir,** or **connaître** (*to know, to be acquainted with*). The best guide is to translate *to know* by **connaître,** whenever the English verb can be turned into *To be acquainted with.* Ex.: *Do you know this man* (or, *this town*)*?* We *could* say: *Are you acquainted with* this man (or, *this town*)*?* Hence, French: **Connaissez-vous,** etc. But, *Do you know your lesson?* We could not well say, *Are you acquainted with your lesson?* Hence, **Savez-vous,** etc.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Füs-tō-sē grōs'.** | You were right. I did n't think mine were so coarse. |
| **Kĕs kŭ sĕk sȧ' . . . . . rē-in nan-tan-dü'?** | But what is that? Did n't you hear anything?[1] |
| **Pĕr-sȯn'.** (*Do not say,* **Pĕr-sȯn'.**) | Not I. I have not heard anybody.[2] |
| | Nor I, *either.*[3] |
| **Sē ō' . . . . . kĕl-kun'.** | Don't talk so loud.[4] I hear somebody. |
| | So do I. |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| **4. Vōō zȧ-vā sȯ-ȧf', nĕs-pä'?** | **You are very thirsty, are you not?** |
| | Yes, I *am* very thirsty.[5] |
| **Fȧs.** | Shall I have a glass of wine and something to eat brought to you? |
| **Gran fin'.** (*Do not say,* **fȧm.**) **Plü fin'.** | No thank you. I was very hungry,[6] an hour ago. |
| **Sŭl-man'.** | But now, I am not hungry any more.[7] Give me a little water only. |
| **Fȧ-tē-gā'.** | How tired you look! . . . . |
| **Kĕs kēl ē yȧ d'nōō-vō'.** | Well, what 's the news? |
| **Nōō-vĕl zhŭ vē-in dȧ-pran'-dr'?** | Do you know what news I have just heard? |
| **Kȯ-nĕh-sā-vōō.** | Do you know Mr. Legros? |

---

LITERAL TRANSLATIONS

[1] Having you *nothing* heard? *Adverbs* in French are (usually) placed *between* the two parts of the verb (auxil. and past part.), when the verb is in a compound tense. See page .

[2] I have heard *no one.* — No **pas.**

[3] Nor me *neither* (lit.: no more).

[4] So *high.* — **Parlez haut (pȧr-lā ō),** *speak loud;* **Parlez bas (bä'),** *speak low.*

[5] I *have much* thirst. **Bien** is generally used instead of **très,** with these expressions. — [6] Great hunger. — [7] I have *no more* hunger.

Je le connaissais il y a quelques années.
Il vient de faire faillite.
C'est bien dommage!
Quant à moi, ça m'est égal. C'était un homme désagréable.
Il n'était aimé **de**[1] personne.
Croyez-vous qu'il puisse surnager?
Dame. . . . . Ce n'est pas facile **à**[2] dire.
Il y a du pour et du contre.

---

**Note.—Study "list of Conjunctions and Interjections,**

---

**5. On dit que vous allez vous faire[3] médecin.**

Je suis médecin.[4]
Comment! Vous êtes déjà médecin!

Oui, je le suis.[5]
Je vous en félicite.
Mais il est temps que nous nous en allions.
Il pleuvra, peut-être. Le temps est si variable.[6] Prêtez-moi votre parapluie. J'ai égaré le mien.

---

NOTES.

1 See page 525.— 2 Adjectives of *means* or *adaptability* take the preposition **à** (see page 525). EXCEPTION.—After **Il est,** however, **de** is used. C'est facile à faire. *But:* Il est facile **de** faire cela.

3 **Se faire,** *to turn, i. e. to become* (*anything*). Lit.: *To* make one's self (**se**). **Il s'est fait soldat,** He became (a) soldier.

4 The definite article (**un, une**) is not used before names of profession or nationality. For exception with **c'est,** see page 384.

5 Lit.: I *it* am. *I am* cannot be said alone (see p. 340. Also, p. 530).

6 Notice that **temps** (meaning *weather*) *can* be used as the subject, but *always* with **est** (*never* **fait**) as the verb. It is best, however, to use **il fait** with **temps** *following:* **Il fait un temps (si) variable; Il fait beau temps; Il fait bien beau temps.** See page 268.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Kĕl-kŭ zȧ-nā'.** | I knew him a few years[1] ago. |
| **Fȧ-yēt'.** | He has just failed. |
| **Dȯ-mȧzh'!** | That 's too bad! |
| **Kan-tȧ mȯ-ȧ', sȧ mĕh-tā-gȧl'. Sā-tĕh tun nȯm'.**[3] | For my part, I don't care.[2] He was an unpleasant man. |
| **Pĕr-sȯn'.** | He was not liked by anybody.[4] |
| **Sür-nȧ-zhā'?** | Do you think he 'll weather it?[5] |
| | Well. . . . . That is hard to say. |
| **Dü pōōr ā dü kon'-tr'.** | It 's six of one, and half a dozen of the other.[6] |

**page 527.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **5. On dē k'vōō zȧ-lā vōō fair mād-sin'.** | **They say you are going to become (a) doctor.**[7] |
| **Mād-sin'.** (*Not:* **mād-sēn'.**) | I *am* (a) physician. |
| | *What!* You are already (a) physician! |
| | Yes, *I am.* |
| **Zhŭ vōō zan fā-lē-sēt'.** | I congratulate you. |
| **K'nōō nōō zan nȧ-lē-on'.** | But it is time to be going.[8] |
| **Pŭ-tê'-tr'. Lŭ tan ĕh sē vȧ-rē-ȧ'-bl' . . . . . ā-gȧ-rā'.** | Perhaps it will rain. . . . . I have mislaid mine. |

---

**LITERAL TRANSLATIONS.**

[1] When number (and not *quality* or *duration*) is referred to, the short forms **jour, matin, soir, an** are used (see p. 266). But with **quelques** and **plusieurs,** use **année (s)** (*not*, **an**). *Never* say, **plusieurs ans.**

[2] As *to* me, that to-me is *equal* (i. e. *indifferent*). — [3] *Do not say,* **non'.**

[4] Loved *of* no-one. *By,* following verbs expressing a *feeling, an inward action of the soul,* = **de.** After verbs expressing a *physical action, by* = **par.** Ex.: **Il n'est aimé *de* personne**; but, **Il a été battu *par* son maître.**—[5] That he may *float* (i. e. *survive*).

[6] Some for and some against. — [7] To make yourself **(vous)** doctor.

[8] **Aller** (practically) is never used without mentioning, or representing by a word (like **en, y,** etc.), the place we go *to* or *from.* Good-by, I am going = **Au revoir, je m'*en* vais.** Never, **Je vais,** alone.

*The same directions as heretofore to be followed.*

## CONVERSATIONS.

### 1.—*CHEZ UN AMI.*

Est-ce ici[1] chez Monsieur Moreau?—Oui, monsieur. Dites-lui qu'un de ses amis voudrait le voir..... Ah! C'est vous. Donnez-vous la peine d'entrer. C'est un vrai plaisir de vous voir. D'où venez-vous donc?—En ce moment, je viens du théâtre.[2] Il y avait matinée à la Porte St. Martin. Madame Sarah Bernhardt a admirablement bien joué, comme toujours.—Quelle existence facile et heureuse,[3] tout de même!—Celle des acteurs?[4] N'en croyez rien. Je vais vous en citer[5] un exemple.[6] Une fois, à Londres, Sarah voulait prendre des leçons d'anglais. Une maîtresse[7] se présente. „Quelles heures pourriez-vous me donner?„ lui demande l'inimitable Sarah.—„Celles que madame préfère,„ répond la maîtresse.—„Eh bien, à une heure du matin, alors,„ répond l'artiste, „car c'est la seule heure que j'aie[8] de disponible.[9]

---

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

1 **Ĕs-ē-sē′.** Is this Mr. Moreau's? Lit.: Is it here at-the-house-of Mr. M.? Also, **M. Moreau demeure-t-il ici (dŭ-mŭr)?** Does Mr. M. live here? **Demeurer** = to live, i. e. *to dwell.* To live (to exist) = **vivre.**— 2 **Tā-ä′-tr'.** Remember the French cannot say *th*, but always pronounce it like *t*.

3 **Ŭ-rûz'.**— 4 Actors; actress = **actrice.**— 5 Quote.— 6 **Un nĕg-zan′-pl'.**— 7 Teacher.— 8 See p. 431, par. 4.— 9 Disposable; free.

**Note.—Study the irregular verb Vivre, page 524.**

2.—*LE MATIN.**

Comment! Vous n'êtes pas encore levé![1] À quelle heure vous levez-vous[2] (donc), le matin?[3]—D'habitude,[4] je me lève à sept heures; mais hier soir, nous avions de la société,[4] et je me suis couché très tard.[5] À quelle heure vous êtes-vous levé, ce matin?—Je me suis levé à sept heures et demie, je crois.—À propos, combien y a-t-il de temps que vous n'avez vu monsieur Taine?—Je viens de le rencontrer. Mais je ne sais pas ce qu'il a.[6] Il ne m'a même[7] pas salué.—Ces hommes de lettres sont tous distraits.[8] Ne vous rappelez-vous pas[7] les distractions du bon La Fontaine.—Sans doute. Je me souviens[9] qu'une fois, en soirée, il s'avisa[10] de demander le nom d'un certain jeune homme qu'il avait remarqué? „Mais,„ lui dit-on, „c'est votre fils.„—„Mon fils!„ répond[11] le fabuliste; „Vraiment, c'est un charmant jeune homme!„

**Pronunciation and Translations.**

1 Not up yet? Lit.: You *have* (strictly, *are*) not yet *raised* yourself?

2 Do you get up?— 3 (*In*) the morning. *Never* say, ***Dans* le matin, *Dans* le soir**; but only, **le matin, le soir.**

4 **Dȧ-bē-tüd',** ordinarily. . . . . **Sȯ-sē-ā-tā',** company.

5 Went to bed. Lit.: I myself *have couched*. . . . . **tȧr'.**

6 What is the matter with him. Lit.: What **(ce que)** he **has.**

7 **Même,** alone, = even; **lui-même** = him*self*; **le même** = the same; **le même soir** = the same evening; **le soir même** = that very evening.

8 **Dēs-trĕh',** absent-minded.— 9 **Se rappeler quelque chose; Se souvenir *de* quelque chose,** to remember something.

10 **Sȧ-vē-zȧ,** took it into his head.— 11 Historical present. *Frequent.*

* The morning; or, *In* the morning.

*To be translated and then read aloud in French, whether for self-study, or preparation for the class-room. Questions can then be asked by the teacher, or written out by the self-learner, and answered as already indicated.*

## UN MOT DE LITTÉRATURE.

Je ne puis quitter le XVII^e[1] siècle sans nommer les triomphes[2] dramatiques de Racine:[3]—*Andromaque*[4] (1667);[5] *Britannicus* (1669); *Iphigénie* (1674); *Phèdre* (1677); *Esther* (1689); *Athalie*[4] (1690). Il faut aussi que je vous rappelle[6] le bon La Fontaine, qui aimait peu les enfants, mais dont pourtant les fables font les délices[7] de cet âge. Qui n'a lu *Le Corbeau et le Renard,*[8] *Le Chêne et le Roseau,*[8] et, surtout, *Les deux Pigeons?*[8]

Mais il faut que je me hâte.[9] Il suffit, parmi les innombrables illustrations de ce siècle de grandeur monarchique et littéraire, que je vous cite les noms de Descartes,[10] de Pascal,[10] de Bossuet[10] et de Fénélon,[10] pour que vous sachiez[11] que ni la philosophie ni[12] l'éloquence de la chaire[13] ne[12] restèrent en arrière[14] dans cette course grandiose[15] à travers l'arène de la littérature.

---

1 **Dēs-sĕh-tē-ĕm′.**— 2 **Trē-yon′-ph'.**— 3 **Rå-sēn'.**

4 **An-drò-måk'. Brē-tå-nē-küs′. Ē-fē-zhā-nē'. Fĕh′-dr'. Ĕs-tĕr′. Å-tå-lē'.**

5 Pron.: **Mēl sēh san sò-å-sant-sĕt**; or, **Sĕh′-zŭ san,** etc.

6 Recall to-you.— 7 Delight. Lit.: Delights.

8 Raven. Fox. **Shên',** oak. **Rō-zō,** reed. **Pē-zhon′,** doves, or pigeons.— 9 **Mŭ ä′-t'.**

10 **Dĕh-kår′-t', Pås-kål′,** famous philosophers. . . . . . **Bò-sü-ĕh′, Fā-nā-lon′,** celebrated divines and preachers of the 17th century.

11 In order that you may-know (subj. pres. of **savoir**). Notice the expression: **Pas que je sache (pä kŭzh så′-sh'),** *Not that I know.*

12 **Ni . . . . . ni,** neither . . . . . nor. **Ne** before the verb, because of the negation **ni . . . . . ni.**— 13 **Shair',** pulpit.

14 Back.— 15 **Gran-dē-ōz',** grand; magnificent; imposing.

Il[1] ne me reste plus[2] à présent qu'[3] à vous dire un mot de la cinquième période littéraire de la France, c'est-à-dire du XVIII[e] siècle. Imitateur[4] du siècle de Louis XIV pour le style, cette époque voit surgir[5] une multitude d'idées nouvelles et révolutionnaires. Montesquieu,[6] Voltaire, Rousseau,[6] Beaumarchais,[7] Mirabeau[8] travaillent tous[9] plus ou moins directement à la destruction des vieilles traditions monarchiques et philosophiques. Mais tandis que[10] les pensées nouvelles bouillonnent[11] et se forcent[12] jusqu'à la surface, le style conserve la simplicité qui le distinguait au XVII[e] siècle, quoiqu' en en perdant graduellement la noblesse et l'ampleur.[13]

Après 93[14] et la destruction du vieux régime, le besoin d'un style plus souple, plus varié, plus imagé, plus propre à exprimer l'énergie des idées nouvelles, se fait sentir. Chateaubriand, dans son *Génie du Christianisme*,[15] est le premier qui donne le moule[16] que cherchait l'esprit contemporain.[17] Il est secondé dans sa tâche par l'auteur de *Corinne*, M[me] de Staël.[18] Enfin son œuvre[19] est complétée par cette pléiade[20] romantique, dont Victor Hugo, Lamartine et Alfred de Musset sont les plus brillantes constellations.

---

1 *There* (see p. 142). — 2 Nothing more. Lit.: No more. — 3 Except. Lit.: Than. — 4 The imitator. — 5 Rising up. Lit.: *To rise up.*

6 **Mon-tĕs-kē-û′, Vòl-tair′, Rōō-sō′,** philosophers.

7 **Bō-màr-shĕh′,** dramatist, author of *Figaro.*

8 **Mē-rà-bō′,** famous statesman and orator. — 9 **Trà-và′-y′ tōōs.**

10 **Ta*n*-dēs-kŭ,** while. — 11 **Bōō-yòn′,** are *seething.*

12 Are forcing themselves. — 13 While gradually losing its dignity and ampleness. Lit.: Although while (**en,** *prep.*) of-it (**en,** *pron.*) losing gradually the dignity, etc. — 14 1793.

15 **Zhā-nē dü krēs-tē-à-nēs′-m′.** — 16 Mould.

17 Which (*the*) contemporary thought was seeking. Lit.: *Which was-seeking contemporary thought.* A frequent inversion. —**Esprit, ĕs-prē′,** = wit, mind, thought, etc. — 18 **Stàl.** — 19 **So*n* nŭ′-vr′,** his work.

20 **Plā-yàd′,** Pleiad, *or*, group. The so-called 'romantic' school of French literature led by Victor Hugo, in opposition to the 'classic' school, which upheld the style of the 17th and 18th centuries.

# GRAMMAR.

---

## I.—THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

has 3 forms, and agrees in **gender** and **number** with its **noun:**[1]

1st **Form** (*before masculine nouns*), ***Le*** billet = *The ticket.*
2d " ( " *feminine* " ), ***La*** poste = *The mail.*
3d " (*all plural nouns*), ***Les*** billets; ***Les*** postes.

The article *the* (***le, la, les***) is the same in form as the pronoun-objects, ***le, la, les,*** meaning *him, her, it,* and *them.*

N. B.—Before singular nouns beginning with a vowel or *silent* h,[2] ***le*** and ***la*** become ***l'*:**

***L'***ami; ***l'***amie;[3] ***l'***habit (*masc.*); ***l'***heure (*fem.*).

### *Par. 2.*—THE ARTICLE IS VERY GENERALLY USED.

The article is not only used before nouns used in a ***definite,*** but also before nouns used in a ***general*** sense.

*The house is ready* = ***La*** maison est prête.
*Virtue is lovable* = ***La*** vertu est‿aimable.
*Men are selfish* = ***Les***‿hommes sont‿égoïstes.

---

[1] The French have no neuter gender, so that inanimate objects are classified either as masculine or feminine.

[2] As a matter of fact, although there is a so-called *aspirate*, there is *no* aspiration such as in English. The only difference between the silent and aspirate **h,** is, that before the latter, the particles *le, la, me, ce, que,* etc., do *not* lose their *a* or *e,* while before a silent *h,* they become *l', l', m', c', qu',* etc.

[3] The (*male*) friend; the (*female*) friend.

Also, before titles: ***Le*** président Tyler; ***Le*** docteur Ox; Au revoir, Monsieur ***le*** docteur.[1]

**But it is omitted,**

in **rapid enumerations**; also, in **proverbial expressions:**

**1st case:** Promesses, prières, menaces, rien n'y fit = *Promises, entreaties, threats, nothing availed.*
**2d case:** Pauvreté n'est pas vice = *Poverty is no crime.*

**Le, la, l', les are also omitted**

before nouns used adjectively, and with numerals of *titles.*

*A gold ring* = une bague d'*or; not,* de l'or.
*Louis the fifteenth* = Louis quinze; not, *le*·quinze.

Or, when a noun depends closely on another, as:

*A glass of water* = Un verre ***d'***eau; (*not,* de *l'*eau).

***Par. 3.*** **— THE ARTICLE IS REPEATED**

before *each noun of a series:*

*French and English;* ***Le*** français et ***l'***anglais.
*The coat, pants, and vest;* ***L'***habit, ***le*** pantalon et ***le*** gilet.

## Contractions of the Article.

With the 1st form of the article (***le***) and the 3d form (***les***), the prepositions ***de*** and ***à*** combine. ***De le, de les; à le, à les,*** are never used, but become ***du, des; au, aux.*** So that:

**Of the,** before *masculine singular* nouns, beginning with a consonant (or *aspirate* h) = ***du.***

**Of the,** before *feminine singular* nouns, beginning with a consonant (or *aspirate* h) = ***de la.***

**Of the,** before *mas.* or *fem.* nouns, beginning with a vowel (or *silent* h) = ***de l'.***

**Of the,** before *all plural nouns* = ***des.***

**1st case:** ***Du*** mari; *of the husband.* — ***Du*** hangar.[2]
**2d case:** ***De la*** femme; *Of the woman.* — ***De la*** halle.[2]
**3d case:** ***De l'***ami; ***de l'***amie; ***de l'***honneur.[3]
**4th case:** ***Des*** maris, ***des*** femmes, ***des*** ‿amis, ***des*** ‿honneurs.

---

[1] In addressing, if Monsieur (or, Madame) is not used, the article is omitted. — [2] *Of the shed; of the* (*market*) *hall.* Aspirate *h.*

[3] Of the (*male*) friend; of the (*female*) friend; of the honor.

Likewise:

**To the,** before *masculine singular* nouns, beginning with a consonant (or *aspir.* h) = ***au.***

**To the,** before *masculine* or *feminine* nouns, beginning with a consonant (or *aspirate* h) = ***à la.***

**To the,** before *masculine* or *feminine* nouns, beginning with a vowel (or *silent* o) = ***à l'.***

**To the,** before all *plural* nouns = ***aux.***

**1st case:** ***Au*** mari = *To the husband.* — ***Au*** hangar.[1]
**2d case:** ***A la*** femme = *To the wife.*
**3d case:** ***A l'***ami, ***à l'***amie, ***à l'***honneur; ***à la*** halle.
**4th case:** ***Aux*** maris, ***aux*** femmes, ***aux*** amis; ***aux*** honneurs.

For the "**Partitive Article**" (**Du,** etc. = *Some* or *any*), see page 59.

## THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

**Un (un),** *masc.;* **une (ün'),** *fem.;* = **a** (*or* one).

Ex.: ***Un*** homme; ***un*** bateau (*boat*); ***une*** femme, etc.

*Par. 1.*—**THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE IS OMITTED** in exclamations; also, before names of nationality:

*What a beautiful landscape!* Quel beau paysage (**pĕh-ē-zâzh'**)!
*He is a Frenchman,* Il est Français.[2]

*Par. 2.*—**THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE IS NOT USED** before nouns of *weight* or *measure;* but, ***le, la, l'*** instead. Ex.:

Ten francs *a* pound = Dix francs ***la*** livre.
How much *a* yard? = Combien ***le*** mètre?

---

## II.—THE NOUN.

### I.—No Adjective use of Nouns.

A noun (Lat.: *nomen*) is the *name* of a creature or thing.

*Par. 1.* The French cannot say, *a gold pen, a dining room, the water pitcher, the steam-engine,* (thus using one noun as an adjective to the other) but, only, *a pen of gold, a room for*[3] *dining, the pitcher for*[3] *(the) water, the engine with*[3] *steam.*

---

[1] *To the shed; to the (market) hall.*— [2] For except. with *c'est*, see p. 384.
[3] *For* and *with* in this connection, are both rendered by **à.**

Une plume **d'**or; une salle **à** manger.
Le pot **à** l'eau; la machine **à** vapeur.

*Par. 2.*—**NO POSSESSIVE CASE IN FRENCH.**

The French cannot say, *my father's coat, my brother's clerk, my friend's carriage,* but must say:

*The coat of my father,* L'habit **de** mon père.
*The clerk of my brother,* Le commis **de** mon frère.

## II.—The Plural of Nouns

is formed by adding ***s*** to the singular:

L'homme; les homme***s;*** l'ami, les ami***s.*** But:

*Par. 2.* Nouns ending in ***s, x,*** or ***z,*** in the singular, remain the same in the plural:

Le bras, *the arm;* les bras, *the arms;* **(brȧ').**
La voix, *the voice;* les voix, *the voices;* **(vȯ-ȧ').**
Le nez, *the nose;* les nez, *the noses;* **(nā).**

*Par. 3.*—**NOUNS IN *AU* OR *EU***

add ***x*** to the singular:

Le couteau, les couteau***x;*** un cheveu, des cheveu***x.***[1]

*Par. 4.*—**NOUNS IN *AL,*[1] AND A FEW NOUNS IN *AIL,***

change ***al*** **(ȧl)** and ***ail*** **(ȧ'-yŭ)** into ***aux*** **(ō)**:[2]
Le chev***al;*** les chev***aux;*** le cor***ail*** *(coral);* les cor***aux.***[3]

*Par. 5.*—**SEVEN NOUNS IN *OU***

take ***x*** in the plural. They are:

Bijou, *jewel;* caillou, *pebble;* chou, *cabbage;* genou, *knee;* hibou, *owl;* joujou, *plaything, toy;* pou, *louse.*

Plural: Bijoux, cailloux **(kȧ-yōō'),** etc.

*Par. 6.*—**IRREGULAR PLURALS.**

Le ciel **(sē-ĕl'),** *the sky;* Les cieux **(sē-û'),** *the skies.*
L'œil, **(lŭ'-yŭ),** *the eye;* Les yeux **(lĕh zē-û'),** *the eyes.*
L'aïeul **(lȧ-yŭl'),** *the ancestor; Plur.:* Les aïeux **(lĕh zȧ-yû').**
Le bétail **(bā-tȧ'-yŭ),** *cattle; Plur.:* Les bestiaux **(bĕs-tē-ō').**

---

[1] **Un cheveu** = *one hair. Hair (a head of hair)* = **Les cheveux.**

[2] The following nouns in **al** take **s:** Bal, *ball;* carnaval, *carnival;* cal, *callosity;* chacal, *jackal;* régal, *a treat;* pal, *a pale.*

[3] But, éventail, *a fan,* éventails; and so, *most* nouns in **ail.**

### III.—The Feminine of Nouns.

*Par. 1.* Nouns which are susceptible of having both a masculine and a feminine form generally add ***e*** to the masculine form:

Le marchand, *storekeeper;* la marchand**e**, *storekeeper.*

***Par. 2.*—NOUNS IN *ER***

change ***er*** into **ère:**

Le boulang***er*,**[1] la boulang**ère;**[1] *the baker.*

***Par. 3.*—NOUNS IN *IEN* AND *ON***

add ***ne*** to the masculine:

Un chrétien,[3] *a christian (man);* une chrétien***ne***.[3]
Un lion,[2] *a lion;* une lion***ne***,[2] *a lioness.*

***Par. 3.*—NOUNS IN *EUR***

change ***eur*** into ***euse:***

Une dans***eur***, *a dancer.* *Fem.:* Une dans***euse***, *a dancer.*
Un chant***eur***, *a singer.* *Fem.:* Une chant***euse***,[4] *a singer.*
But: Un acteur = *an actor*; une actrice = *an actress.*

***Par. 4.*—NOUNS WITHOUT FEMININE.**

Auteur, *author;* connaisseur, *expert;* docteur, *doctor;* peintre, *painter.* Thus: *Une femme auteur; une femme peintre.*

### IV.—How to tell the Gender of Nouns.

***Par. 1.*—BY THEIR NATURE.**

MASCULINE (generally): *Days, months, seasons, metals, trees, mountains.*

FEMININE (generally): *flowers, fruits, sciences, virtues, vices.*

***Par. 2.*—BY THEIR ENDING.**

MASCULINE (generally): Nouns ending in *aire, age, al, ant, asme, at, au, aume;* or, in *er, ège, ent, et;* or, in *ime, isme, iste;* or, in *ol, ome, ôme;* or, in *b, c, d, g, l, m, n, p, q, z.* Ex.:

Dictionnaire (**dēk-sē-ō-nair'**); courage; animal; ruban; etc.

FEMININE (generally): Nouns ending in *ade, ance, ée, ence, esse, eur;* or, *ie, iê, ion, ise;* or, in *oire, ude, ure;* or, in *té.* Ex.:

Promenade; espérance; sagesse, *wisdom;* valeur, *value;* etc.

---

[1] **Bōō-la*n*-zhā', bōō-la*n*-zhair'.** — [2] **Lē-o*n*', lē-ōn'.** — [3] **Krā-tē-i*n*', krā-tē-ĕn'.** — [4] Also, **cantatrice,** a *professional* singer. **Chasseur,** *a hunter;* also has two fem. forms, **chasseuse, chasseresse.**

## III.—THE ADJECTIVE.

*All adjectives agree in gender and number with the nouns they "determine" or "qualify."* They are divided into two great classes: Determining and qualifying adjectives.*

### I.—The Determining Adjectives.

#### I. POSSESSIVE.

*Par. 1.*—

| SING. MASC. | SING. FEM. | PLURAL.[1] | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Mon, | Ma, | Mes | = *My.* |
| Ton, | Ta, | Tes | = *Thy.* |
| Son, | Sa, | Ses | = *His* or *Her.* |
| Notre,[2] | Notre, | Nos | = *Our.* |
| Votre, | Vôtre, | Vos | = *Your.* |
| Leur,[3] | Leur, | Leurs[3] | = *Their.* |

N. B.—The possessive adjectives agree in gender and number with the *possessed* object; *not* with the possessor, as in English.

Thus, a man and woman will say alike:

***Ma*** mère; ***mon*** père; ***mon*** livre; ***ma*** lettre.

*Par. 2.*—THEY ARE NOT USED WITH PARTS OF THE BODY, but ***le, la, les*** instead, whenever there is no danger of confusion of meaning, thereby. Thus:

*He lost his arm* = Il a perdu ***le*** (*the*) bras (**brå**).

*I have a pain in my foot* = J'ai mal ***au*** (*to-the*) pied (**pē-ā′**).

*Par. 3.* ***Mon, ton, son*** are used instead of *ma, ta, sa,* before feminine nouns beginning with a vowel or *silent* ***h:***

***Mon*** encre = *My ink* (instead of ***ma*** encre).

***Mon*** amie = *My friend* (instead of ***ma*** amie).

*Par. 4.*—WITH *MAL, FROID,* AND *CHAUD* the article is used instead of the possessive adjective:

Mal ***au*** bras; *not,* à mon (*or* son, votre, etc.), bras.

Froid ***aux*** mains; *not,* à mes (*or* ses, vos, etc.), mains.

---

[1] For *both* genders: *Mes oncles, mes tantes.*

[2] **Nô′-tr’, vô′-tr’.**— [3] **Lŭr.**

* Notice, however, that one adjective qualifying two nouns becomes masculine plural (*i. e.* takes **s** only) even if only one of those is masculine. Thus, **Une fille et un garçon polis.** If both nouns are feminine, the adjective takes **es: Une rose et une pensée charmantes.** For special cases, see Appendix, page 528.

## 2. DEMONSTRATIVE.

Singular { Ce (*masc.*), Cet[1] (*masc.*), Cette (*fem.*), Plural, ***Ces.***

***Ce*** monsieur; ***cet*** ami; ***cet*** homme; ***cette*** dame.[2]
***Ces*** messieurs; ***ces*** amis; ***ces*** hommes; ***ces*** demoiselles.

***Par. 2.—CE, CET, CETTE, AND CES WITH CI AND LÀ.***

Wherever it is necessary to *bring out* the distinction between *this* and *that*, *ci* and *là* are added to the *noun* of *ce*, *cet*, etc.:

| | |
|---|---|
| Bring *this* book | = Apportez ***ce*** livre-***ci.*** |
| I said *this* lamp | = J'ai dit ***cette*** lampe-***ci.*** |
| Not *that* lamp | = Pas ***cette*** lampe-***là.*** |
| Look at *these* papers | = Regardez ***ces*** papiers-***ci.*** |
| Read *those* letters | = Lisez † ***ces*** lettres-***là.*** |

## 3. INTERROGATIVE.

| | SING. | PLUR. | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Masculine: | Quel? | quels? | } = Which, *or* what? |
| Feminine: | Quelle? | quelles? | |

*Quel* mari? *Quels* maris? *Quelle* femme? *Quelles* femmes?

N. B.—In exclamations, ***quel,*** etc., means *what a!* or, in the plural, *what!*

*Quel homme!* = What a man! *Quels chevaux!* = What horses!

## 4. INDEFINITE.

Aucun, aucune, *no, not any.*
Pas un, pas une, *no, not a.*
Nul, nulle, *no.*
Autre, *other.*
Même, *same.*
Chaque, *each, every.*
Maint, mainte, *many a.*
Certain, *certain.*
Tout, toute, tous, toutes, *all.*
Plusieurs, *several.*
Quel, quelle, etc., *what.*
Quelque, *some.*
Quelconque, *whatever.*
Tel, telle, *such, many a.*

***Aucun*** égard (**ō-kun nā-gâr'**), *No consideration.*
***Chaque*** personne est venue, *Every person came;* etc.

For the **Numeral Adjectives,** see pages 176–181.

---

[1] Used before masculine nouns beginning with a vowel or *silent* **h.** Thus: **cet ami, cet honneur;** but, **ce monsieur, ce héros** (**sŭ ā-rō'**).

[2] *Never* say: cette *ma*dame, cette *ma*demoiselle. Always, *cette dame, cette demoiselle* (**sĕt dŭ-mô-â-zĕl'**).— † **Lē-zā.**

## II.—The Qualifying Adjectives.

### I. THE FEMININE OF QUALIFYING ADJECTIVES.

*Par 1.* They form it by adding *e* to the masculine:

Un petit homme; une petit*e* femme.

*Par 2.*—**ADJECTIVES ALREADY ENDING IN *E***

in the masculine, do not change, of course:

*Un* chapeau ros*e* = *a pink bonnet.*
*Une* robe ros*e* = *a " dress.*

*Par. 3.*—**ADJECTIVES IN *F* AND *X***

change *f* into *ve,* and *x* into *se,* in the feminine:

Un chapeau neu*f* (**nŭf**), une robe neu*ve* (*new*); **nŭv'.**
Un temps affreu*x*,[1] une pluie affreu*se*[1] (**à-frûz'**).

*But:* dou*x* (*soft, sweet*), becomes dou*ce;* fau*x* (*false*), fau*sse;* rou*x* (*reddish*), rou*sse.* Pron.: **dōō, dōōs'; fō, fōs'; rōō, rōōs'.**

*Par. 4.*—**ADJECTIVES IN *EL, EIL, IEN, ON,* AND *ET***

double the *l, n,* or *t,* and add *e:*

Éternel, éternel*le;* pareil, pareil*le.*[2]
Ancien,* ancien*ne;*[3] bon, bon*ne;* cadet,[5] cadet*te.*[6]

*Par. 5.*—**SIX ADJECTIVES IN *ET,***

however, do not double the *t,* but change *et* into **ète.** They are:

Complet, concret, discret, inquiet, replet, secret.
*Fem.:* Complète, concrète, discrète, inquiète, replète, secrète.

*Par. 6,*—**ADJECTIVES IN *ER***

change *er* into **ère:**

Léger (*light*), lég**ère**; entier (*whole*), enti**ère.**

*Par. 7.*—**ADJECTIVES IN *EUR***

change *eur* into *euse* (*generally*):

Parl*eur* (*talkative*), parl*euse.* Travaill*eur* (*industrious*), travaill*euse.*

N.B.—Adjectives in "**érieur,**" however, simply add *e:* Ext*érieur*, ext*érieure.* Likewise: majeur,[7] mineur,[7] and meilleur;[7] *fem.:* majeur*e*, mineur*e*, meilleur*e*.

---

1 Frightful weather, frightful rain.— 2 *Similar.*— 3 *Former, ancient.*
4 *Good.*— 5 *Younger* (*son* or *brother*).— 6 *Younger* (*daughter* or *sister*).
7 *Of age; minor; better.*— * **An-sē-in'; an-sē-ĕn'.**

*Par. 8.*—**ADJECTIVES IN *TEUR***

change ***teur*** into ***trice***, in the feminine:

Protec***teur***, protec***trice***; accusa***teur***,[1] accusa***trice***.

*But:* enchan*teur becomes* enchan*teresse*; veng*eur*, veng*eresse*.

*Par. 9.*—**MORE ADJECTIVES WHICH DOUBLE THEIR CONSONANT.**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Nul (*null, no one*); | épais (*thick*); | gros (*big*); | gentil (*pretty*).[2] | |
| *Fem.:* | Nulle " | " épaisse " | grosse " | gentille " | |
| Also: | Bas[3] (*low*); | gras (*fat*); | las (*tired*); | sot (*foolish*); | exprès.[3] |
| *Fem.:* | Basse " | grasse " | lasse " | sotte " | expresse.[4] |

*Par. 10.*—**ADJECTIVES WITH IRREGULAR FEMININE.**

Blanc, *white;* blanche.[5]
Franc, *frank;* franche.[5]
Sec, *dry;* sèche.[5]
Long, *long;* longue.[5]
Malin,[1] *sharp;* maligne.[5]
Public, *public;* publique.
Caduc, *decrepit;* caduque.
Grec, *Greek;* grecque.[6]
Aigu, *sharp-pointed;* aiguë.[6]
Ambigu, *ambiguous;* ambiguë.

*Par. 11.*—**ADJECTIVES IN *EAU* AND *OU*.**

Beau, *beautiful;* belle.
Nouveau, *new;* nouvelle.*
Jumeau, *twin;* jumelle.
Mou, *soft;* molle.
Fou, *foolish;* folle.
Vieux, *old;* vieille.[7]

They owe this to their old masculine forms: bel, nouvel, jumel, vieil, fol, mol, which are *still* used *before masculine nouns beginning with a vowel or silent **h***. Thus:

Un nouvel opéra; un bel‿homme (**bĕl òm'**), *a fine man.*
*But:* Un nouveau théâtre; un beau garçon.

**2. THE PLURAL OF QUALIFYING ADJECTIVES.**[8]

*Par. 1.* They form their plural by adding ***s*** to the singular, *unless already ending* in ***s***, ***x***, or ***z***:

*Un* joli paysage.[7]
De joli***s*** paysages.[7]
*Une* jolie demoiselle.[8]
De jolie***s*** demoiselles.[8]

*Par. 2.* **Adjectives** in ***eau***, however, add ***x***.

---

[1] **À-kü-zà-tŭr'.** — [2] **Ā-pĕh'. Ā-pĕs'. Zhan-tē'. Zhan-tē'-yŭ.**
[3] **Bä, grä, lä, sō, ĕk-sprĕh'.** — [4] **Bäs', gräs', läs', sòt', ĕk-sprĕs'.**
[5] **Blan, blan'-sh'. Fran, fran'-sh'. Sĕk. Lon, lon'-g'. Mà-lin', mà-lē-ñŭ.** — [6] **Grĕk, grĕk'; ā-gü, ā-gü'.** — [7] **Vē-û', vē-ĕh'-yŭ.**
[7] *A pretty landscape; pretty landscapes. A pretty young lady; pretty young ladies.* — [8] For past participles, see page 499. — * Neuf, *new (which has never been used;)* Nouveau, *new (newly obtained; recent).*

Un beau paysage; de beaux paysages.[1]

*Par. 3.* **Adjectives in *al*, generally change *al* into *aux*:**

Un homme loy*al*; des hommes loy*aux*.

But a few, little used in the plural, add *s* to the singular. Such are: amical, *amicable*; fatal; initial (ē-nē-sē-ȧl'); etc. Ex.:

Un garçon bancal = A lame boy.
Des garçons bancal*s* = Lame boys.

### 3. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

*Par. 1.*—IS REGULARLY MADE

by prefixing ***plus*** (*more*), or ***moins*** (*less*), to the adjective for the *comparative*; and ***le plus*** (*the most*), ***le moins*** (*the least*), for the superlative:

*Fine*, beau; *finer*, ***plus*** beau; *finest*, ***le***[2] ***plus*** beau.
" " *less fine*, ***moins*** beau; *the least fine*, ***le moins*** beau.

*Par. 2.*—IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

The following adjectives have irregular comparative forms:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Bon, *good.* | Meilleur, *better.*[3] | Le meilleur, *the best.* |
| Mauvais, *bad.*[3] | Pire, *worse.*[3] | Le pire, *the worst.* |
| Petit, *small.* | Moindre, *less.*[3] | Le moindre, *the smallest.*[4] |

N. B.—We also say: *plus mauvais, plus petit; le plus mauvais;* etc.

### 4. THE POSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

*Par. 1.*—GENERALLY AFTER THE NOUN:

*A rare man* = un homme exceptionnel.[5]
*An amiable person* = une personne aimable.

*Par. 2.*—A FEW, HOWEVER, GENERALLY GO BEFORE

the noun. They are:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Bon, *good.* | Grand, *large.* | Vilain, *homely.* |
| Mauvais, *bad.* | Petit, *small.* | Jeune, *young.* |
| Méchant, " | Beau, *fine.* | Vieux, *old.* |
| Meilleur, *better.* | Joli, *pretty.* | Saint, *holy.* |

---

1 *A beautiful landscape; beautiful landscapes.*
2 *Fem.:* la plus belle. *Plur.:* les plus beaux, les plus belles.
3 **Mĕh-yŭr'. mō-vĕh'. Pēr'. Mō-in'-dr'.**
4 Or, *the least.*— 5 **Ĕk-sĕp-sē-ō-nĕl'.**

*Par. 3.*—**TWO ADJECTIVES TOGETHER USUALLY GO AFTER** the noun, however. Thus:

A *lame old* horse = Un cheval *vieux* et *bancal.*

*Par. 4.*—**SOME WHICH *ALWAYS* GO AFTER,** *with rare exceptions.* They are:

All adjectives of ***color, form, taste,*** or ***nationality.*** Also, participles used adjectively:

La Maison *Blanche* = *The White House.*
La Table *Ronde* = *The Round Table.*
Du fruit *sur* = *Sour fruit.*
Un garçon *français* = *A French boy.*
Un endroit *fréquenté* = *A frequented place.*
Un homme *souffrant* = *A suffering man.*

*Par. 5.*—***LONG* ADJECTIVES GO AFTER** the noun. When an adjective has more syllables than its noun, it is *apt* to follow it:

*An accommodating fellow* = Un garçon *complaisant.*

*Par. 6.*—**EUPHONY OFTEN DETERMINES THE POSITION,** *irrespectively of the foregoing rules; the same adjective going sometimes* ***before,*** *sometimes* ***after*** *the noun. For this, the ear is the only guide.*

*Par. 7.*—**A FEW ADJECTIVES ARE PLACED ACCORDING TO MEANING.**

Un *brave* homme (**brà-vòm'**) = *A good sort* of *a* man.
Un homme *brave* (**un nòm** ) = A *brave* man.
Un *grand* homme (**gran tòm'**) = A *great* man.
Un homme *grand* (**gran**) = A *tall* man.
Mon *cher* père = My *dear* father.
Un tableau *cher* = A *dear* picture.
La *dernière* année = The *last* year (of a series).
L'année *dernière* = *Last* year (just expired).
Un *pauvre* homme (**pō-vròm'**) = A '*poor* fellow.'
Un homme *pauvre* = A *poor* man (in purse).
Un *vrai* conte = A *downright* story.
Un conte *vrai* = A *true* story.

## THE PRONOUN.

The pronoun (lit.: *for noun*) is a word used instead of a noun. *He* sold *it*, instead of, *Albert* sold *his horse and mine*, has three pronouns; *he*, used for *Albert*; *it*, used instead of *his horse;* and *mine*, instead of *my horse*.

### I.—Personal Pronouns.

(Conjunctive and Disjunctive).

They are either **pronoun-*subjects*,** *i. e.* used as *subjects* to the verb (*I* say it, *we* told him, etc.), or, **pronoun-*objects*,** *i. e.* used as *objects* to the verb (I say *it*, we told *him*).

**Pronoun-*subjects*:** Je, tu, il, elle, nous (*we*), vous (*you*), ils, elles.
**Pronoun-*objects*:** Me, moi, te, toi, le, la,[1] lui, nous (*us*, or *to us*), vous (*you*, or *to you*), les,[2] leur.[3]

The Personal Pronouns are also divided into ***Conjunctives*** and ***Disjunctives*:**

The ***Conjunctives*** can only be used in *direct* connection with the verb, (*i. e.* neither separated from it, nor united to it by a preposition). They are: *Je, tu, il, me, te, le, la, ils, les,* and *leur.*

Ex.: *I did it*=***Je*** l'ai fait. But, *Who did it?* Ans.: *I*, ***Moi*** (never, *Je*).

The ***Disjunctives*** may be used either with or away from the verb. They are: *Moi, toi, elle, lui, nous, vous, eux, elles.*

Ex.: *Send me*, envoyez-***moi*;** *Come with me*, venez avec ***moi*;** *I!* ***Moi!***

For the position of ***pronoun-subjects*** in the sentence, see page 494. For place of ***pronoun-objects***, see page 236.

### II.—Possessive Pronouns.

| SING. MASC. | SING. FEM. | PL. MASC. | PL. FEM. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Le mien, | La mienne, | Les miens, | Les miennes | = *Mine.* |
| Le tien, | La tienne, | Les tiens, | Les tiennes | = *Thine.* |
| Le sien, | La sienne, | Les siens, | Les siennes | = *His* or *hers.* |
| Le nôtre, | La nôtre, | Les nôtres, | Les nôtres | = *Ours.* |
| Le vôtre, | La vôtre, | Les vôtres, | Les vôtres | = *Yours.* |
| Le leur, | La leur, | Les leurs, | Les leurs | = *Theirs.* |

[1] Also, **elle** (*her*).— [2] Also, **eux** (*them*, masc.), and **elles** (*them*, fem.).
[3] **En** (*of it, of them*, etc.), and **y** (*to it, to them*, etc.), are also pronoun-objects.— [4] Pron.: **Lŭ mē-in′, lȧ mē-ĕn', lĕh mē-in′, lĕh mē-ĕn'. Lŭ sē-in,** etc. **Lŭ nō′-tr',** etc. **Lŭ (lȧ,** or **lĕh) lŭr′,**

These agree in gender and number with the *possessed* object, *not* with the possessor. *Mine*, referring to (1) a *book*, (2) a *table*, (3) to *books*, (4) to *tables* = (1) *le mien*, (2) *la mienne*, (3) *les miens*, (4) *les miennes*, whether the possessor be man or woman. Also: I kept my books and *hers* = J'ai gardé mes livres et *les siens* (not, *les siennes*); *les siens* agreeing with *books*, which is masculine plural.

Remark.—The article (**le, la, les**) of these pronouns combines with the prepositions **de** and **à** in the usual way:

*Du* mien, *de la* mienne, *des* miens, *des* miennes = *of mine.*
*Du* sien, *de la* sienne, *des* siens, *des* siennes = *of his*, etc. And:
*Au* mien, *à la* mienne, *aux* miens, *aux* miennes = *to mine.*
*Au* leur, *à* la leur, *aux* leurs, *aux* leurs = *to theirs.*

*Par. 2. Mine, his, hers*, etc., are also rendered by **à moi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux, à elles.**[1] For instance, in answer to the question: *Whose book is this* (à qui est ce livre)? (*It's mine;* or, *it's his;* or, *it's hers*), the answer may be either:

Ce livre est ***le mien;*** *or*, Ce livre est à ***moi.***
" " " ***le sien;*** *or*, " " est à ***lui.***
" " " ***le sien;*** *or*, " " est à ***elle.***

Translate and Write out the following: (1) Her father is richer than yours. (2) His aunt is richer than ours. (3) My watch (*fem.*) is prettier than his. (4) My dog (*chien*) is larger than hers. (5) My garden (*jardin*, masc.) is smaller than yours. (6) Your house (*f.*) is larger than mine. (7) Your nephew is taller than mine.

Also: (1) I have lost your letters (*f.*) and mine. (2) Your pencils (*m.*) are better than ours. (3) These needles (*f.*) are longer than theirs. (4) Your eggs (*m.*) are better (*mieux*) cooked than hers. (5) Those horses (*m.*) are not so tall (*aussi grands*) as yours. (6) My flowers (*f.*) are not so beautiful as his. (7) Our tickets (*m.*) are better than theirs.

### III.—Demonstrative Pronouns.

*Par. 1.* ***Ce,*** *this* or *that;* ***Ceci,*** *this;* ***Cela,*** *that.*

*Do you mean this* (i. e. *this thing*)? = Voulez-vous dire ***ceci?***[2]
*Bring me that* (i. e. *that thing*) = Apportez-moi ***cela.***[2]

---

[1] Lit.: *To me, to him, to her, to us*, etc.

[2] Lit.: Whenever *this* or *that* mean *this one* or *that one*, they are rendered by **celui-ci** (or, **celle-ci**), **celui-là** (or, **celle-là**).

*Par 2.*

| MASCULINE. | FEMININE. |
|---|---|
| Celui-ci = *This one.* | Celle-ci = *This one.* |
| Celui-là = *That one.* | Celle-là = *That one.* |
| Ceux-ci = *These.* | Celles-ci = *These.* |
| Ceux-là = *Those.* | Celles-là = *Those.* |

**Celui-ci, celle-ci,** also mean, *the latter.* **Celui-là, celle-là,** also mean, *the former.*

*Sylla and Pompey were two great generals; but the former was cruel, and the latter was generous* = Sylla et Pompée étaient deux grands capitaines; mais ***celui-ci*** (*the latter*) était bon, et ***celui-là*** était cruel.

*Par. 3.* **Celui, celle** (*that, the one*), **ceux, celles** (*those, the ones*), are also used without **ci** or **là.**

But then, they must be followed either by ***de,*** or by ***qui, à qui, de qui*** (or ***auquel,*** etc., ***duquel,*** etc.), ***que,*** or ***dont.***

***Celui de*** mon frère, *My brother's.*[1]
***Ceux de*** mon père, *My father's.*[1]
***Celui que*** j'ai vu, *The one I saw.*[2]
***Ceux que*** j'ai vus, *Those I saw.*[2]
***Celle qui*** m'a parlé, *The one who spoke to me.*
***Celle à qui*** j'ai parlé, *The one to whom I spoke.*
***Celle dont*** j'ai parlé, *The one of whom I spoke.*

### IV.—Interrogative Pronouns.

*Used either for persons or things.*

SINGULAR.

| MASCULINE. | FEMININE. | |
|---|---|---|
| Lequel? | Laquelle? | = *Which one?* |
| Duquel? | De laquelle? | = *Of which one?* |
| Auquel? | À laquelle? | = *To* " " |

PLURAL.

| MASCULINE. | FEMININE. | |
|---|---|---|
| Lesquels? | Lesquelles? | = *Which ones?* |
| Desquels? | Desquelles? | = *Of which ones?* |
| Auxquels? | Auxquelles? | = *To* " " |

---

1 Lit.: *The one of my brother; the one of my father.* — 2 Lit.: The one *which* I saw; the ones *which* I saw. Notice that *that* and *which* are never omitted.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Used for persons only.* | Qui? | *Who?* or *whom?* |
| | De qui? | *Of*, or *from*, or *about*, *whom?* |
| | À qui? | *To whom?* or *whose?* |

*Used for things only.* { Que? *what?* Quoi?[1] *what?* De quoi? À quoi? *Of*, or *about*, *what? To what?*

*Which one*[2] *have you seen?* ***Lequel***[3] avez-vous vu?
*To which one do you speak?* ***Auquel***[4] parlez-vous?
*Whom do you want?* ***Qui*** voulez-vous?
*About whom are you speaking?* ***De qui*** parlez-vous?
*To whom are you speaking?* ***A qui*** parlez-vous?
*What are you thinking about?* ***A quoi*** pensez-vous?

### V.—Relative Pronouns.

Qui = *Who, whom, which*, or *that.*
Que = *Whom, which*, or *that.*
De qui (*or* Dont) = *Of whom, from whom.*
À qui = *to whom, whose.*
Quoi = *what;* De quoi = *of what, the wherewith.*
Lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles = *whom, which, which one, which ones.*
Duquel, de laquelle, desquels, desquelles = *of whom, of which, of which one, of which ones.*
Auquel, à laquelle, auxquels, auxquelles = *to whom*, etc.

1. **Qui** is used as *subject* to the verb, and refers either to ***persons*** or ***things:*** The *woman who* sings, La *femme* ***qui*** chante; The *birds which* sing, Les *oiseaux* ***qui*** chantent.

2. N. B.—**Lequel, laquelle,** etc., are used instead of ***qui,*** wherever the use of ***qui*** would lead to confusion. Thus:

*I saw your sister's husband, who sends you his compliments* = J'ai vu le *mari* de votre sœur, ***lequel*** vous fait ses compliments (not: *qui* vous fait, etc., because *qui* would refer indifferently either to sister or husband).

3. **Que** (*or*, **qu'**) is used as *object* to the verb:

The gentleman I saw = Le monsieur ***que*** (lit.: *whom*) j'ai vu.
The letter he wrote = La lettre ***qu'***il a écrite (lit.: *which*, etc.).

---

[1] Not used, except when expressing sudden and great astonishment.
[2] *Which person*, or *which thing.*— [3] *Or*, Laquelle.— [4] *Or*, À laquelle.

N. B.—When *what* means *that which*, it is rendered, in French, by **ce qui** (*as subject*), or **ce que** (*as object*). Ex.: ***What astonishes me, is***, etc. = ***Ce qui*** m'étonne, c'est que, etc.—***I hear what you say*** = J'entends ***ce que*** vous dites.

**4. Dont** is often used instead of **de qui and duquel**;[1]
The gentleman *of whom* I speak = Le monsieur ***dont*** je parle.

N. B.—Notice that in phrases like: *The gentleman whose portrait I painted*, ***dont*** occupies the same place as ***whose***, but the noun following *whose* in English, is placed at *the end of the sentence*, in French: Le monsieur ***dont*** j'ai peint le *portrait*.

REMARK.—**De qui** (*or*, **duquel**) is used, however, and not **dont**, whenever, in English, *whose* is preceded by a preposition. Thus: *That's the gentleman* ***in whose*** *yacht I was* = *That's the gentleman* ***in*** *the yacht* ***of whom*** *I was* = C'est le monsieur *dans* le yacht ***duquel*** j'ai été.

Other examples:

***Ce à quoi*** il fait allusion = *What* he alludes *to*.
***Il a de quoi*** = He has *means* (i. e. *the wherewith*).

Remember, that: 1. ***Que*** is never omitted:

The things I said = Les choses ***que*** j'ai dites.

2. *Which*, referring to a whole clause, is rendered by ***ce que:***
He consented, *which* surprised me.
Il a consenti, ***ce qui*** m'a surpris.

## VI.—Indefinite Pronouns.

### *Par. 1.*—SIMPLE.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| On | *One, they, we.* / *you, people.* | Aucun, aucune / Nul, nulle | *No one.* / *Not any one.* |

Quelqu'un, quelqu'une; *some one, somebody.*
Quelques-uns, quelques-unes; *some, a few.*
Quiconque; *any one who, whoever.*
Chacun(e); *every one, each (one).*
Personne; *Nobody*, not *any body.*
Autrui; *one's neighbor, other people, others.*
Plusieurs; *several.* Tout; *everything.*
Tout le monde; *every body.*
La plupart; *most, the greatest number.* Le même, *the same.*

---

[1] Also, of course, instead of **de laquelle, desquels, desquelles.**

Examples:

***On*** dit que la terre est ronde, *they* say the earth is round.
***Aucun*** ne me plaît, I do *not* like *any of them.*
***Quelqu'un*** frappe, *somebody* is knocking.
***Quelques-uns*** le disent, *some* say so.
***Quiconque*** le voit . . . . , *Whoever* sees him . . . . .
***Chacun*** son goût, *each one* to his taste.
***Personne*** n'est venu, *nobody* came.
Ne faites pas de tort à † ***autrui,*** Do not injure *others.*
***Tout le monde*** le sait, *everybody* knows it.
***Plusieurs*** sont venus, *several* came.
***La plupart*** sont partis, *most of them* went away.
***Les mêmes*** sont revenus, the *same* (*ones*) came back.
Monsieur ***un tel,*** Mr. *so and so.*
Madame ***une telle,*** Mrs. *so and so.*

*Par.* 2. — **COMPOSITE.**

| | |
|---|---|
| L'un . . . . . l'autre | = *the former . . . . . the latter.*‡ |
| L'un l'autre | = *one another* (sing.). |
| Les uns les autres | = *one another* (plur.). |
| L'un et l'autre | = *the one and the other, both.* |
| Les uns et les autres | = *the ones and the others, all.* |
| L'un à l'autre | = *one to the other, to one another.* |
| L'un de l'autre | = *from one another.* |
| Les uns aux autres | = *to one another* (plur.). |
| Les uns des autres | = *from one another* (plur.). |
| Ni l'un ni l'autre | = *neither.* |

Examples:

***L'un*** partit, ***l'autre*** resta; *the former* went, *the latter* stayed.
Aidons-nous ***les uns les autres;*** Let us help *one another.*
Vous vous nuisez ***l'un à l'autre*** = You hurt[1] *one another.*
***Ni l'un ni l'autre*** n'est venu = *Neither* came.[2]
Je n'ai vu ni ***l'un ni l'autre*** = I did not see *either* (of them).[2]

---

[1] Lit.: You to-yourselves are-hurtful (from **nuire,** *to be hurtful, to harm*) *one to the other.*

[2] Notice **n'** (for **ne**) before the verb, when **ni** . . . . . **ni** is present.

† **Tor à.** — ‡ Or, simply, *the one . . . . . the other.*

## THE VERB.

### General Remarks.*

1. The ***verb*** (Latin, *verbum, word*) is *the* word which expresses *action* or *state*. In, *I walk, he told me,* the verbs are *walk* and *told.*

2. A ***verb*** has a *subject* (or *subjects*), and an *object* (or *objects*).

(1) The **subject** is *that person or thing of which anything is affirmed or denied.* Thus: in, *My father spoke to him, My sister and I read the papers every day, Alfred was dangerously wounded in that battle;* ***my father, my sister and I,*** and ***Alfred,*** are the *subjects.*

(2) The **object** is that person or thing through which the action *or* state expressed by the verb is transmitted. Thus, in the above sentences, *him, the papers,* and *that battle,* are the *objects.*

**Objects** are divided into *direct* and *indirect.* ***Direct*** **objects** are these which need no preposition (**de, à, pour,** etc.) to connect them with the verb; ***indirect*** **objects** are those that do. Thus, in the above sentences, *the paper,* is a *direct* object; but, (*to*) *him,* and (*in*) *that battle,* are *indirect* objects.

Note.—The preposition may be understood, as in the case of the ***pronoun***-objects **me** (me, or *to* me; sometimes even *of* or *from* me), **te** (thee, or *to* thee, etc.), **lui** (*to* him, *to* her, etc.), **nous** (us, or *to* us, etc.), **vous** (you, or *to* you, etc.), and **leur** (to them, etc.). Thus, in **Il m'écrit,** ***m'*** (for ***me***) really means *to me,* and is an indirect object. Likewise, in *I sent him a letter; him,* meaning really *to* him, is an *indirect* object.

### MOODS AND TENSES.

**Verbs** are divided into **moods** (to express the *mode* of the *action* or *state*). There are five moods in French. See p. 506.

**Moods** are subdivided into **tenses** (Latin, *tempus, time*), to express the *time* of the *action* or *state.* See page 506.

### SIMPLE AND COMPOUND TENSES.

**Simple tenses** are those which are simply made up of a *stem* and a *termination.* As, **parl-*er*, fin-*ir*, vend-*re*, recev-*oir*.** **Parl, fin,** etc., are stems, and, in regular verbs, never vary.

---

* To many pupils, these will be needless; but many others will be materially aided by them.

**Er, ir, re,** and **oir** are endings, and vary to indicate various persons and tenses. Thus: *To speak* = **Parl** ***er;*** but, *I speak,* = **Je parl** ***e;*** *He was speaking* = **il parl** ***ait.***

**Compound tenses** are made up of one of the *auxiliary* or *helper verbs,* **avoir** and **être,*** coupled with the *past participle* of any verb being conjugated. Thus: with *spoken, finished, sold, wounded,* we form such compound tenses as *To have spoken* (**avoir parlé**), *I have spoken* (**j'ai parlé**), etc., *I have finished* (**j'ai fini**), etc., *I have sold* (**j'ai vendu**), etc., *I am wounded;* or, *I had spoken, I had finished, I had sold,* etc.

### THE THREE REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.†

There are, in French, **three regular conjugations** or classes of verbs distinguished from each other by the termination of the *infinitive present* (English, *to speak, to finish,* etc.). These terminations are **er, ir,** and **re.** Hence,

**All regular verbs ending in er** take the same terminations in the various tenses and persons. See p. 506.

**All regular verbs ending in ir** take the same terminations in the various tenses and persons. See p. 506.

**All regular verbs ending in re** take the same terminations in the various moods and tenses. See p. 506.

## THE "SIX NECESSARY TENSES."

I give first, on pages 476–494, what I call the "**six necessary tenses**" (that is, those which occur most frequently in ordinary conversation) of the two auxiliaries and three model regular verbs.

The four forms of each verb (*affirmative, interrogative, negative,* and *negative-interrogative*) are given. When the pupil has mastered these, he will find no such difficulty and confusion as is usually experienced in learning the full conjugations, on pages 504–509.

### *THE EUPHONIC T.*

A **t** is inserted between the verb and the subject pronoun **il** or **elle,** in the 3d pers. singular, of the interrogative form, whenever the verb ends in a vowel. Thus: **A-t-il,** *has he?* **A-t-elle,** *has she?* **Parle-t-il? Parle-t-elle?** instead of **a-il, a-elle,** etc.

---

* These are the only two auxiliaries in French.

† Grammarians generally give four conjugations, calling verbs in **oir,** the third. But, as there are only a few primitive verbs in *oir* conjugated like the model (*recevoir*), and these really old verbs in **re,** some grammarians very properly treat them as irregular verbs.

**AVOIR, *to have*** (*first auxiliary*).—**Affirmatively.**

**Present Participle:** Ayant (**ĕh-yan′**), *having.*
**Past Participle:** Eu (**ü**), *had.*
**Imperative:** Ayons (**ĕh-yon′**), *let us have;* ayez (**ĕh-yā′**), *have.*†

## THE "SIX NECESSARY TENSES."

**INDICATIVE MOOD.—1. Present Tense.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **J' ai,**[1] | **zhā,** | ***I have.*** |
| **Tu as,** | **tü á′,** | ***Thou hast.*** |
| **Il** (*or* **elle**) **a,**[2] | **ĕl** (*or* **ĕl**) **á′,** | ***He*** (**or *she***) ***has.*** |
| **Nous avons,** | **nōō zá-von′,** | ***We have.*** |
| **Vous avez,** | **vōō zá-vā′,** | ***You have.*** |
| **Ils** (*or* **elles**) **ont,**[3] | **ĕl** (*or* **ĕl**) **zon′,** | ***They have.*** |

**2. Past Indefinite** (*Conversational Tense.*)

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **J' ai eu,** | **zhā ü′,** | ***I had,* or *have had.*** |
| **Tu as eu,** | **tü á zü′,** | ***Thou hadst,* or *hast had.*** |
| **Il** (*or* **elle**) **a eu,**[4] | **ĕl** (*or* **ĕl**) **á ü′,** | ***He* (or *she*) *had,* or *has had.*** |
| **Nous avons eu,** | **nōō zá-von zü′,** | ***We had,* or *have had.*** |
| **Vous avez eu,** | **vōō zá-vā zü′,** | ***You had,* or " "** |
| **Ils** (*or* **elles**) **ont eu,**[4] | **ĕl** (*or* **ĕl**) **zon tü′,** | ***They had,* or " "** |

**3. Imperfect Tense.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **J' avais,** | **zhá-vĕh′,** | ***I had,* or *used to have.*** |
| **Tu avais,** | **tü á-vĕh′,** | ***Thou hadst,* etc.** |
| **Il** (*or* **elle**) **avait,**[4] | **ĕl** (*or* **ĕl**) **á-vĕh′,** | ***He had,* or *used to have.*** |
| **Nous avions,** | **nōō zá-vē-on′,** | ***We had,* or " " "** |
| **Vous aviez,** | **vōō zá-vē-ā′,** | ***You had,* or " " "** |
| **Ils** (*or* **elles**) **avai*ent*,*** | **ĕl** (*or* **ĕl**) **zá-vĕh′,** | ***They* " " " " "** |

**4. Future Tense.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **J' aurai,** | **zhor-ā′,** | ***I shall* or *will have.*** |
| **Tu auras,** | **tü or-á′,** | ***Thou wilt* or *shalt have.*** |
| **Il aura,** | **ĕl or-á′,** | ***He shall* or *will have.*** |
| **Nous aurons,** | **nōō zor-*on*′,** | ***We* " " " "** |
| **Vous aurez,** | **vōō zor-ā′,** | ***You* " " " "** |
| **Ils auront,** | **ĕl zor-*on*′,** | ***They* " " " "** |

---

[1] **Je** before a vowel becomes **J'.**— [2] **Il**=*he* or *it.* **Elle**=*she* or *it.* Il a, *he* (or, *it*) *has;* elle a, *she* (or, *it*) *has.* — [3] **Ils**=they, *masc.* **Elles** =they, *fem.*— [4] **Elle** and **Elles** will be omitted in other tenses. Learners may supply them.

* **Ent,** 3d pers. plural of verbs, is *silent.*

† Have (*you*); *usual* form.

**CONDITIONAL MOOD.—Present Tense.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **J' aurais,** | **zhor-ĕh′,** | ***I would*** or ***should have.*** |
| **Tu aurais,** | **tü or-ĕh′,** | ***Thou shouldst*** or ***wou'dst have.*** |
| **Il aurait,** | **ēl "** | ***He would*** or ***should have.*** |
| **Nous aurions,** | **nōō-zor-ē-on′,** | ***We*** " " " " |
| **Vous auriez,** | **vōō zor-ē-ā′,** | ***You*** " " " " |
| **Ils auraient,** | **ēl zor-ĕh′,** | ***They*** " " " " |

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—Present Tense.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Que j' aie,** | **kü zhĕh',** | ***That I may have.*** |
| **Que tu aies,** | **kü tü ĕh',** | ***That thou mayest have.*** |
| **Qu' il (*or* qu'elle) ait,** | **kēl (*or* kĕl) ĕh′,** | ***That he*** (or ***she***) ***may*** " |
| **Que nous ayons,** | **kü nōō zĕh-yon′,** | ***That we*** " " |
| **Que vous ayez,** | **kü vōō zĕh-yā′,** | ***That you*** " " |
| **Qu' ils (*or* qu'elles) aient,** | **kēl zĕh' (*or* kĕl zĕh'),** | ***That they may*** " |

## AVOIR.—Interrogatively.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.—1. Present Tense.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Ai-je?** | **ā′-zh',** | ***Have I?*** |
| **As-tu?** | **ȧ-tü′,** | ***Hast thou?*** |
| **A-t-il (*or* elle)?** | **ȧ-tēl′,** | ***Has he*** (or ***she***)? |
| **Avons-nous?** | **ȧ-von-nōō′,** | ***Have we?*** |
| **Avez-vous?** | **ȧ-vā-vōō′,** | ***Have you?*** |
| **Ont-ils (*or* elles)?** | **on-tēl′,** | ***Have they?*** |

**2. Past Indefinite.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Ai-je eu?**[1] | **ā-zhü,** |
| **As-tu eu?** | **ȧ-tü ü,** |
| **A-t-il eu?** | **ȧ-tēl ü,** |
| **Avons-nous eu?** | **ȧ-von-nōō zü′,** |
| **Avez-vous eu?** | **ȧ vā-vōō zü′,** |
| **Ont-ils eu?*** | **on-tēl zü′,** |

**3. Imperfect.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Avais-je?**[2] | **ȧ-vĕzh',** |
| **Avais-tu?** | **ȧ-vĕh-tü′,** |
| **Avait-il?** | **ȧ-vĕh-tēl′,** |
| **Avions-nous?** | **ȧ-vē-on-nōō′,** |
| **Aviez-vous?** | **ȧ-vē-ā-vōō′,** |
| **Avaient-ils?** | **ȧ-vĕh-tēl′,** |

**4. Future.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Aurai-je?**[3] | **or-āzh',** |
| **Auras-tu?** | **or-ȧ-tü′,** |
| **Aura-t-il?** | **or-ȧ-tēl′,** |
| **Aurons-nous?** | **or-on-nōō′,** |
| **Aurez-vous?** | **or-ā-vōō′,** |
| **Auront-ils?** | **or-on-tēl′,** |

**CONDITIONAL.—Present.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Aurais-je?**[4] | **or-ĕzh',** |
| **Aurais-tu?** | **or-ĕh-tü′,** |
| **Aurait-il?** | **or-ĕh-tēl′,** |
| **Aurions-nous?** | **or-ē-on-nōō′,** |
| **Auriez-vous?** | **or-ē-ā-vōō′,** |
| **Auraient-ils?** | **or-ĕh-tēl′,** |

---

[1] *Have I had?* or *Did I have?* etc. — [2] *Had I*, or *did I use to have?* etc.
[3] *Shall I have?* etc. — [4] *Would I have?* etc. — * **Eu** is variable *Plur.:* **eus**; *Fem.:* **eue**; *Fem. Plur.:* **eues**. See p. 499.

## AVOIR.—Negatively.

**Ne pas avoir,* *not to have.***

**Pres. Part.:** N'ayant pas, (**nĕh-yan pä′**), *not having.*
**Imper.:** N'ayons pas, *let us not have;* † N'ayez pas, *have not.* ‡

## THE "SIX NECESSARY TENSES."

### INDICATIVE MOOD.—1. Present Tense.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je n'ai pas,**[1] | **zhŭ nā pä′,** | *I have not.* |
| **Tu n'as pas,** | **tü nȧ pä′,** | *Thou hast not.* |
| **Il (*or* elle) n'a pas,**[2] | **ĕl (*or* ĕl) nȧ pä′,** | *He* (or *she*) *has not.* |
| **Nous n'avons pas,** | **nōō nȧ-von pä′,** | *We have not.* |
| **Vous n'avez pas,** | **vōō nȧ-vā pä′,** | *You* " " |
| **Ils (*or* elles) n'ont pas,**[2] | **ĕl (*or* ĕl) non pä′,** | *They* " " |

### 2. Past Indefinite.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je n'ai pas eu,** | **nā pä zü′,** | *I had not* or *have not had.*[3] |
| **Tu n'as pas eu,** | **nȧ pä zü′,** | *Thou hadst not,* etc. |
| **Il n'a pas eu,** | **nȧ pä zü′,** | *He had not* or *has not had.* |
| **Nous n'avons pas eu,** | **nȧ-von pä zü′,** | *We* " " or *have* " " |
| **Vous n'avez pas eu,** | **nȧ-vā pä zü′,** | *You* " " or " " " |
| **Ils n'ont pas eu,** | **non pä zü′,** | *They* " " or " " " |

### 3. Imperfect.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je n'avais pas,** | **nȧ-vĕh pä′,** | *I had not* or *did n't use to have.*[4] |
| **Tu n'avais pas,** | " " " | *Thou hadst not,* etc. |
| **Il n'avait pas,** | " " " | *He had not* or *did n't use to have.* |
| **Nous n'avions pas,** | **nȧ-vē-on pä′,** | *We had not* or *did n't use to have.* |
| **Vous n'aviez pas,** | **nȧ-vē-ā pä′,** | *You had not* or *did n't use to have.* |
| **Ils n'avaient pas,** | **nȧ-vĕh pä′,** | *They had not* or *did n't use to have.* |

### 4. Future.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je n'aurai pas,** | **nor-ā pä′,** | *I shall not* or *will not have.*[4] |
| **Tu n'auras pas,** | **nor-ȧ pä′,** | *Thou wilt not* or *shalt not have.* |
| **Il n'aura pas,** | " " | *He shall not* or *will not have.* |
| **Nous n'aurons pas,** | **nor-on pä′,** | *We* " " " " " " |
| **Vous n'aurez pas,** | **nor-ā pä′,** | *You* " " " " " " |
| **Ils n'auront pas,** | **nor-on pä′,** | *They* " " " " " " |

---

[1] Also, *I did n't* (*with another verb*). Thus: *I did n't speak,* Je n'ai pas parlé. — [2] **Elle** and **elles** to be supplied in other tenses.

[3] Also, *I did n't have,* etc. — [4] For, *I had not had,* etc., *I shall not have had,* etc., *I should not have had,* etc., see full conjugations.

* Although **pas** is always after the verb in other tenses, it is generally placed *before* the infinitive present, as here.

† **Nĕh-yon pä′.** — ‡ **Nĕh-yā pä′,** have (*you*) not. *Usual* form.

**CONDITIONAL MOOD. — Present Tense.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je n'aurais pas,** | nor-ĕh pä', | *I should* or *would not have.* |
| **Tu n'aurais pas,** | " " " | *Thou shouldst* or *wouldst,* etc. |
| **Il n'aurait pas,** | " " " | *He should* or *would not have.* |
| **Nous n'aurions pas,** | nor-ē-*on* pä', | *We* " " " " " |
| **Vous n'auriez pas,** | nor-ē-ā pä', | *You* " " " " " |
| **Ils n'auraient pas,** | nor-ĕh pä', | *They* " " " " " |

**6. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. — Present Tense.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Que je n'aie pas,** | kŭzh nĕh' pä', | *That I (may) not have.* |
| **Que tu n'aies pas,** | kŭ tü nĕh' pä', | *That thou (mayest) not have.* |
| **Qu' il n'ait pas,** | kēl nĕh' pä', | *That he (may) not have.* |
| **Que nous n'ayons pas,** | kŭ nōō nĕh-yo*n* pä', | *That we* " " " |
| **Que vous n'ayez pas,** | kŭ vōō nĕh-yā pä', | *That you* " " " |
| **Qu' ils n'aient pas,** | kēl nĕh' pä', | *That they* " " " |

## AVOIR. — Negatively-Interrogatively.

**INDICATIVE. — 1. Present.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **N'ai-je pas?** [5] | nāzh-pä', | *Have I not?* |
| **N'as-tu pas?** | nȧ-tü pä', | *Hast thou not?* |
| **N'a-t-il pas?** | nȧ-tēl pä', | *Has he not?* |
| **N'avons-nous pas?** | nȧ-vo*n*-nōō pä', | *Have we not?* |
| **N'avez-vous pas?** | nȧ-vā-vōō pä', | *Have you not?* |
| **N'ont-ils pas?** | no*n* tēl pä', | *Have they not?* |

**2. Past Indefinite.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **N'ai-je pas eu?** [1] | pä zü'. |
| **N'as-tu pas eu?** | pä zü'. |
| **N'a-t-il pas eu?** | pä zü'. |
| **N'avons-n. pas eu?** | pä zü'. |
| **N'avez-v. pas eu?** | pä zü'. |
| **N'ont-ils pas eu?** | pä zü'. |

**3. Imperfect.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **N'avais-je pas?** [2] | nȧ-vĕzh' pä'. |
| **N'avais-tu pas?** | nȧ-vĕh-tü pä'. |
| **N'avait-il pas?** | nȧ-vĕh-tēl pä'. |
| **N'avions-n. pas?** | nȧ-vē-o*n*-nōō pä'. |
| **N'aviez-v. pas?** | nȧ-vē-ā-vōō " |
| **N'avaient-ils pas?** [6] | nȧ-vĕh-tēl " |

**4. Future.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **N'aurai-je pas?** [3] | nor-āzh pä'. |
| **N'auras-tu pas?** | nor-ȧ-tü pä'. |
| **N'aura-t-il pas?** | nor-ȧ-tēl pä'. |
| **N'aurons-n. pas?** | nor-o*n*-nōō pä'. |
| **N'aurez-v. pas?** | nor-ā-vōō " |
| **N'auront-ils pas?** [7] | nor-o*n*-tēl " |

**5. CONDITIONAL. — Present.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **N'aurais-je pas?** [4] | nor-ĕzh pä'. |
| **N'aurais-tu pas?** | nor-ĕh-tü pä'. |
| **N'aurait-il pas?** | nor-ĕh-tēl pä'. |
| **N'aurions-n. pas?** | nor-ē-o*n*-nōō pä'. |
| **N'auriez-v. pas?** | nor-ē-ā-vōō " |
| **N'auraient-ils pas?** [8] | nor-ĕh-tēl " |

---

[1] *Have I not had?* or *Did n't I have?*

[2] *Had I not?* or *Did n't I use to have?* — [3] *Shall* or *will I not have?* etc.

[4] *Would* or *should I not have?* etc.

[5] Or, *Did n't I?* etc. (*with another verb*). Thus: *Did n't I speak?* N'ai-je pas parlé? — [6] *Had I not had?* etc., would be: N'avais-je pas eu? etc.

[7] *Shall I not have had?* would be: N'aurai-je pas eu? etc.

[8] *Would I not have had?* etc., would be: N'aurais-je pas eu? etc.

### **ÊTRE, *to be*** (*second auxiliary*).—**Affirmatively.**

**Present Participle:** Étant (**ā-tan′**), *being*.
**Past Participle:** Été (**ā-tā′**), *been*.
**Imperative:** Soyons,* *let us be*. Soyez,† *be*.

## THE "SIX NECESSARY TENSES."

**INDICATIVE MOOD.—1. Present Tense.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je suis,** | **zhŭ süi-ĕ′,** | *I am.* |
| **Tu es,** | **tü ĕh′,** | *Thou art.* |
| **Il (*or* elle) est,**[1] | **ĕl (*or* ĕl) ĕh′,** | *He* (or *she*) *is.* |
| **Nous sommes,** | **nōō sŏm′,** | *We are.* |
| **Vous êtes,** | **vōō zĕt′,** | *You are.* |
| **Ils (*or* elles) sont,**[1] | **ĕl (*or* ĕl) son′,** | *They are.* |

**2. Past Indefinite** (*Conversational Tense*).

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **J' ai été,** | **zhā ā-tā′,** | *I was* or *have been.* |
| **Tu as été,** | **tü á zā-tā′,** | *Thou wast* or *hast been.* |
| **Il a été,** | **ĕl á ā-tā′,** | *He was* or *has been.* |
| **Nous avons été,** | **nōō zá-von zā-tā′,** | *We were* or *have been.* |
| **Vous avez été,** | **vōō zá-vā zā-tā′,** | *You were* or *have been.* |
| **Ils ont été,** | **ĕl zon tā-tā′,** | *They were* or *have been.*[2] |

**3. Imperfect.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **J' étais,** | **zhā-tĕh′,** | *I was* or *used to be.* |
| **Tu étais,** | **tü ā-tĕh′,** | *Thou wast,* etc. |
| **Il était,** | **ĕl "** | *He was* or *used to be.* |
| **Nous étions,** | **nōō zā-tē-on′,** | *We were* or *used to be.* |
| **Vous étiez,** | **vōō zā-tē-ā′,** | *You were* or *used to be.* |
| **Ils étaient,** | **ĕl zā-tĕh′,**[3] | *They were* or *used to be.* |

**4. Future.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je serai,** | **zhŭ s'rā′,** | *I shall* or *will be.* |
| **Tu seras,** | **tü s'rá′,** | *Thou shalt* or *wilt be.* |
| **Il sera.** | **ĕl s'rá′,** | *He shall* or *will be.* |
| **Nous serons** | **nōō s'ron′,** | *We shall* or *will be.* |
| **Vous serez,** | **vōō s'rā′,** | *You shall* or *will be.* |
| **Ils seront,** | **ĕl s'ron′,** | *They shall* or *will be.*[4] |

---

[1] **Il**=*he* or *it*. **Elle**=*she* or *it*. **Elles**=*They*, feminine. Let the learner supply **elle** and **elles,** throughout.

[2] *I had been;* etc.=**J'avais été;** etc.—**Été** *is invariable.*

[3] **Ent** of the third pers. plural of verbs is not sounded.

[4] *I shall have been;* etc.=**J'aurai été;** etc.

* **Sō-á-yon′.**—† **Sō-á-yā′,** be (*you*). *Usual* form.

**CONDITIONAL.—Present.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je serais,** | **zhŭ s'rĕh',** | *I would* or *should be.* |
| **Tu serais,** | **tü s'rĕh',** | *Thou wouldst* or *shouldst be.* |
| **Il serait** | **ēl s'rĕh',** | *He would* or *should be.* |
| **Nous serions,** | **nōō sŭ-rē-on',** | *We* " " " " |
| **Vous seriez,** | **vōō sŭ-rē-ā'** | *You* " " " " |
| **Ils seraient,**[5] | **ēl s'rĕh',**[5] | *They* " " " "[5] |

**SUBJUNCTIVE.—Present.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Que je sois,** | **kŭ zh' sŏ-å',** | *That I (may) be.* |
| **Que tu sois,** | **kŭ tü sŏ-å',** | *That thou (mayest) be.* |
| **Qu' il soit,** | **kēl sŏ-å',** | *That he (may) be.* |
| **Que nous soyons,** | **kŭ nōō sŏ-å-yon',** | *That we (may) be.* |
| **Que vous soyez,** | **kŭ vōō sŏ-å-yā',** | *That you (may) be.* |
| **Qu' ils soient,** | **kēl sŏ-å',** | *That they (may) be.* |

## ÊTRE.—Interrogatively.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.—1. Present.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Suis-je?** | **süē-zh',** | *Am I?* |
| **Es-tu?** | **ĕh-tü',** | *Art thou?* |
| **Est-il?** | **ĕh-tēl',** | *Is he?* |
| **Sommes-nous?** | **sŏm-nōō',** | *Are we?* |
| **Êtes-vous?** | **èt-vōō',** | *Are you?* |
| **Sont-ils?** | **son tēl',** | *Are they?* |

**2. Past Indefinite.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Ai-je été?**[1] | **ā-zhā-tā'.** |
| **As-tu été?** | **å-tü ā-tā'.** |
| **A-t-il été?** | **å-tēl ā-tā'.** |
| **Avons-nous été?** | **zā-tā'.** |
| **Avez-vous été.** | **zā-tā'.** |
| **Ont-ils été?** | **zā-tā'.** |

**3. Pluperfect.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Étais-je?**[2] | **ā-tĕzh'.** |
| **Étais-tu?** | **ā-tĕh-tü'** |
| **Était-il?** | **ā tĕh-tēl'.** |
| **Étions-nous?** | **ā-tē-on-nōō'.** |
| **Étiez-vous?** | **ā-tē-ā-vōō'.** |
| **Étaient-ils?**[6] | **ā-tĕh-tēl'.** |

**4. Future.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Serai-je?**[3] | **sŭ-rāzh'.** |
| **Seras-tu?** | **sŭ-rå-tü'.** |
| **Sera-t-il?** | **sŭ-rå-tēl'.** |
| **Serons-nous?** | **sŭ-ron-nōō'.** |
| **Serez-vous?** | **sŭ-rā-vōō'.** |
| **Seront-ils?**[7] | **sŭ-ron-tēl'.** |

**CONDITIONAL.—Present.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Serais-je?**[4] | **sŭ-rĕzh'.** |
| **Serais-tu?** | **sŭ-rĕh-tü'.** |
| **Serait-il?** | **sŭ-rĕh-tēl'.** |
| **Serions-nous?** | **sŭ-rē-on-nōō'.** |
| **Seriez-vous?** | **sŭ-rē-ā-vōō'.** |
| **Seraient-ils?**[8] | **sŭ-rĕh-tēl'.** |

---

[1] *Was I?* or *Have I been?* etc.— [2] *Was I?* or *Did I used to be?* etc.
[3] *Shall* or *will I be?* etc.— [4] *Would* or *should I be?* etc.
[5] *I would have been*, etc.=**J'aurais été.** See full conjugations.
[6] *Had I been?* etc., would be: **Avais-je été?** etc.
[7] *Shall I have been?* etc., would be: **Aurai-je été?** etc.
[8] *Should I have been?* etc., would be: **Aurais-je été?** etc.

## ÊTRE. — Negatively.

**Present Participle:** **N'étant pas** (**nā-tan pä'**), *not being.*

**Imperative:** **Ne soyons pas**, *let us not be.** **Ne soyez pas**, *be not.*†

## THE "SIX NECESSARY TENSES."

### INDICATIVE MOOD. — 1. Present.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je ne suis pas,** | **zhŭn sũē pä',** | *I am not.* |
| **Tu n'es pas,** | **tü nâ pä',** | *Thou art not.* |
| **Il n'est pas,** | **ēl nâ pä',** | *He is not.* |
| **Nous ne sommes pas,** | **nōōn sŏm pä',** | *We are not.* |
| **Vous n'êtes pas,** | **vōō nĕt pä',** | *You are not.* |
| **Ils ne sont pas,** | **ēl nŭ son pä',** | *They are not.* |

### 2. Conversational Past Tense.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je n'ai pas été,** | **nā pä zā-tā',** | *I was not or have not been.* |
| **Tu n'as pas été,** | **nā pä zā-tā',** | *Thou wast not or hast not been.* |
| **Il n'a pas été,** | **nä pä zā-tā',** | *He was not or has* " " |
| **N. n'avons pas été,** | **nä-von pä zā-tā',** | *We were not or have* " " |
| **V. n'avez pas été,** | **nä-vā pä zā-tā',** | *You* " " " " " " |
| **Ils n'ont pas été,** | **non pä zā-tā',** | *They* " " " " " " |

### 3. Imperfect.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je n'étais pas,** | **nā-tĕh pä',** | *I was not or did n't use to be.* |
| **Tu n'étais pas,** | " " | *Thou wast not or did n't use to be.* |
| **Il n'était pas,** | " " | *He was* " " " " " " |
| **Nous n'étions pas,** | **nā-tē-on pä',** | *We were* " " " " " " |
| **Vous n'étiez pas,** | **nā-tē-ā-pä',** | *You* " " " " " " " |
| **Ils n'étaient pas,**[1] | **nā-tĕh pä',** | *They* " " " " " " " |

### 4. Future.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je ne serai pas,** | **zhŭn s'rā pä',** | *I shall* or *will not be.* |
| **Tu ne seras pas,** | **tün s'rä pä',** | *Thou shalt* or *wilt not be.* |
| **Il ne sera pas,** | **ēl nŭ s'rä pä',** | *He shall* or *will* " " |
| **Nous ne serons pas,** | **nōōn s'ron pä',** | *We* " " " " " |
| **Vous ne serez pas,** | **vōōn s'rā pä',** | *You* " " " " " |
| **Ils ne seront pas,**[2] | **ēl nŭ s'ron pä',** | *They* " " " " " |

---

[1] *I had not been,* etc., = **Je n'avais pas été,** etc. See full conjugations, page 504.

[2] *I shall not have been,* etc., = **Je n'aurai pas été,** etc.

* **Nŭ sò-â-yon pä'.** — † **Nŭ sò-â-yā pä,** be (*you*) not; *usual* form. The *familiar* form (2d pers. sing.) is **Ne sois pas (sò-â),** be (*thou*) not.

**CONDITIONAL MOOD. — Present.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je ne serais pas,** | **zhŭn s'rĕh pä',** | ***I should* or *would not be.*** |
| **Tu ne serais pas,** | **tün s'rĕh pä',** | ***Thou shouldst* or *wouldst not be.*** |
| **Il ne serait pas;** | **ēl nŭ s'rĕh pä',** | ***He should* or *would not be.*** |
| **Nous ne serions pas,** | **nōōn sŭ-rē-*on* pä',** | ***We* " " " " "** |
| **Vous ne seriez pas,** | **vōōn sŭ-rē-ā pä',** | ***You* " " " " "** |
| **Ils ne seraient pas,[5]** | **ēl nŭ s'rĕh pä',** | ***They* " " " " " [5]** |

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. — Present.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Que je ne sois pas,** | **kŭ zhŭn sò-á pä',** | ***That I (may) not be.*** |
| **Que tu ne sois pas,** | **kŭ tün sò-á pä',** | ***That thou (mayest) not be.*** |
| **Qu'il ne soit pas,** | **kēl nŭ sò-á pä',** | ***That he (may) not be.*** |
| **Que nous ne soyons pas,** | **kŭ nōōn sò-á-y*on* pä',** | ***That we* " " "** |
| **Que vous ne soyez pas,** | **kŭ vōōn sò-á-yā pä',** | ***That you* " " "** |
| **Qu'ils ne soient pas,** | **kēl nŭ sò-á pä',** | ***That they* " " "** |

## ÊTRE. — Negatively-Interrogatively.

**1. INDICATIVE. — Present.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Ne suis-je pas?** | **nŭ sü-ēzh pä',** | ***Am I not?*** |
| **N'es-tu pas?** | **nĕh-tü pä',** | ***Art thou not?*** |
| **N'est-il pas?** | **nĕh-tēl pä',** | ***Is he not?*** |
| **Ne sommes-nous pas?** | **nŭ sòm-nōō pä',** | ***Are we not?*** |
| **N'êtes-vous pas?** | **nèt-vōō pä',** | ***Are you not?*** |
| **Ne sont-ils pas?** | **nŭ s*on*-tēl pä',** | ***Are they not?*** |

**2. Past Indefinite.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **N'ai-je pas été?[1]** | **pä zā-tā'.** |
| **N'as-tu pas été?** | **pä zā-tā'.** |
| **N'a-t-il pas été?** | **pä zā-tā'.** |
| **N'avons-n. pas été?** | **" "** |
| **N'avez-v. pas été?** | **" "** |
| **N'ont-ils pas été?** | **" "** |

**3. Imperfect.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **N'étais-je pas?[2]** | **nā-tĕzh pä.** |
| **N'étais-tu pas?** | **nā-tĕh-tü pä'.** |
| **N'était-il pas?** | **nā-tĕh-tēl pä'.** |
| **N'étions-n. pas?** | **nā-tē-*on*, etc.** |
| **N'étiez-v. pas?** | **nā-tē-ā, "** |
| **N'étaient-ils pas?[6]** | **nā-tĕh, "** |

**4. Future.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Ne serai-je pas?[3]** | **s'rāzh.** |
| **Ne seras-tu pas?** | **s'rá-tü.** |
| **Ne sera-t-il pas?** | **s'rá.** |
| **Ne serons-n. pas?** | **s'r*on*.** |
| **Ne serez-v. pas?** | **s'rā.** |
| **Ne seront-ils pas?[7]** | **s'r*on*.** |

**CONDITIONAL. — Present.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Ne serais-je pas?[4]** | **s'rĕzh.** |
| **Ne serais-tu pas?** | **s'rĕh-tü.** |
| **Ne serait-il pas?** | **s'rĕh-tēl.** |
| **Ne serions-n. pas?** | **sŭ-rē-*on*.** |
| **Ne seriez-v. pas?** | **sŭ-rē-ā.** |
| **Ne seraient-ils pas?** | **s'rĕh.[8]** |

---

[1] *Was I not?* or *Have I not been?* — [2] *Was I not?* or *Did n't I use to be?*
[3] *Shall* or *will I not be?* — [4] *Would* or *should I not be?* etc.
[5] *I would not have been*, etc.: **Je n'aurais pas été,** etc.
[6] *Had I not been?* etc. = **N'avais-je pas été?** etc.
[7] *Shall I not have been?* etc. = **N'aurai-je pas été?** etc.
[8] *Should I not have been?* etc. = **N'aurais-je pas été?** etc.

## FIRST CONJUGATION. — Verbs in *er*.

MODEL. — **Parl er (pår-lā')†**, ***to speak.***

**Present Participle:** Parl ant **(pår-lan')**, *speaking.*
**Past Participle:** Parl é **(pår-lā') ‡**, *spoken.*
**Imperative:** Parl ons, *let us speak.* Parl ez, *speak.*

## THE "SIX NECESSARY TENSES."

### INDICATIVE MOOD. — 1. Present Tense.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je parl e,** | **zhŭ pår'-l',** | ***I speak*** or ***am speaking.***[1] |
| **Tu parl es,** | **tü pår'-l',** | ***Thou speakest,*** etc. |
| **Il parl e,**[2] | **ēl pår'-l',** | ***He speaks*** or ***is speaking.*** |
| **Nous parl ons,** | **nōō pår-lon',** | ***We speak*** or ***are speaking.*** |
| **Vous parl ez,** | **vōō pår-lā',** | ***You*** " " " " |
| **Ils parl ent,**[3] | **ēl pår'-l',** | ***They*** " " " " |

### 2. Past Indefinite (*Conversational Tense*).

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **J'ai parlé,** | **zhā pår-lā',** | ***I spoke*** or ***have spoken.***[4] |
| **Tu as parlé,** | **tü å** " | ***Thou didst speak,*** etc. |
| **Il a parlé,** | **ēl å** " | ***He spoke*** or ***has spoken.*** |
| **Nous avons parlé,** | **zå-von pår-lā',** | ***We spoke*** or ***have spoken.*** |
| **Vous avez parlé,** | **zå-vā** " " | ***You*** " " " " |
| **Ils ont parlé,**[2] | **zon** " " | ***They*** " " " " |

### 3. Imperfect.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je parl ais,** | **zhŭ pår-lēh',** | ***I spoke*** or ***was speaking.*** |
| **Tu parl ais,** | **tü** " | ***Thou spokest,*** etc. |
| **Il parl ait,** | **ēl** " | ***He spoke*** or ***was speaking.*** |
| **N. parl ions,** | **pår-lē-on',** | ***We spoke*** or ***were speaking.*** |
| **V. parl iez,** | **pår-lē-ā',** | ***You*** " " " " |
| **Ils parl aient,**[3] | **pår-lēh',**[6] | ***They*** " " " "[5] |

### 4. Future.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je parl *e* rai,*** | **zhŭ pår-l'-rā',** | ***I shall*** or ***will speak.*** |
| **Tu parl *e* ras,** | **tü pår-l'-rå',** | ***Thou shalt*** or ***wilt speak.*** |
| **Il parl *e* ra,** | **ēl** " | ***He shall*** or ***will speak.*** |
| **N. parl *e* rons,** | **pår-l'-ron',** | ***We*** " " " " |
| **V. parl *e* rez,** | **pår-l'-rā',** | ***You*** " " " " |
| **Ils parl *e* ront,** | **pår-l'-ron',** | ***They*** " " " " |

---

[1] Or, *I do speak;* etc. — [2] **Elle** and **elles** to be supplied throughout.
[3] **Ent,** in 3d pers. plural of verbs, is *silent.* — [4] Also, *I did speak;* etc.
[5] Also, *I used to speak;* etc. — [6] *I had spoken;* etc., **j'avais parlé;** etc.
* Regular verbs in **er** introduce an **e,** in the future and conditional, between the verb and termination. — † Be careful not to pronounce **pär'-lā, pär'-l',** etc., but say: **pår-lā', pår'-l'.** — ‡ For past participle, see page 499.

### CONDITIONAL. — Present.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je parl** *e* **rais,*** | **zhŭ pár-l'-rĕh',** | ***I should* or *would speak.*** |
| **Tu parl** *e* **rais,** | **tü " "** | ***Thou shouldst* or *wouldst speak.*** |
| **Il parl** *e* **rait,** | **ēl " "** | ***He should* or *would speak.*** |
| **N. parl** *e* **rions,** | **nōō pár-l'-rē-*on*',** | ***We* " or " "** |
| **V. parl** *e* **riez,** | **vōō pár-l'-rē-ā',** | ***You* " or " "** |
| **Ils parl** *e* **raient,**[5] | **ēl pár-l'-rĕh',*** | ***They* " or " "** |

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. — Present Tense.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Que je parl e,** | **küzh' pár'-l',** | ***That I (may) speak.*** |
| **Que tu parl es,** | **kü tü pár'-l',** | ***That thou (mayest) speak.*** |
| **Qu' il parl e,** | **kēl pár'-l',** | ***That he (may) speak.*** |
| **Que n. parl ions,** | **kü nōō pár-lē-*on*',** | ***That we (may) speak.*** |
| **Que v. parl iez,** | **kü vōō pár-lē-ā',** | ***That you (may) speak.*** |
| **Qu' ils parl ent,*** | **kēl pár'-l',** | ***That they (may) speak.*** |

## PARLER. — Interrogatively.

### INDICATIVE MOOD. — 1. Present.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Est-ce que je parle?**[6] | **ĕs-küzh pár'-l',** | ***Am I speaking?***[5] |
| **Parles-tu?** | **pár-l'-tü',** | ***Art thou speaking?*** |
| **Parle-t-il?** | **pár-l'-tēl',** | ***Is he* "** |
| **Parlons-nous?** | **pár-lon-nōō',** | ***Are we* "** |
| **Parlez-vous?** | **pár-lā-vōō',** | ***Are you* "** |
| **Parlent-ils?** | **pár-l'-tēl',** | ***Are they* "** |

#### 2. Past Indefinite

| | |
|---|---|
| **Ai-je parlé?**[1] | **pár-lā',** |
| **As-tu parlé?** | **" "** |
| **A-t-il parlé?** | **" "** |
| **Avons-nous parlé?** | **pár-lā',** |
| **Avez-vous parlé?** | **pár-lā',** |
| **Ont-ils parlé?**[7] | **pár-lā',** |

#### 3. Imperfect.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Parlais-je?**[2] | **pár-lĕh'-zh'.** |
| **Parlais-tu?** | **pár-lĕh-tü'.** |
| **Parlait-il?** | **pár-lĕh-tēl.'** |
| **Parlions-nous?** | **pár-lē-*on*-nōō'.** |
| **Parliez-vous?** | **pár-lē-ā-vōō'.** |
| **Parlaient-ils?** | **pár-lĕh-tēl'.** |

#### 4. Future.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Parlerai-je?**[3] | **pár-l'-rā.** |
| **Parleras-tu?** | **pár-l'-rá.** |
| **Parlera-t-il?** | **pár-l'-rá.** |
| **Parlerons-nous?** | **pár-l'-ron.** |
| **Parlerez-vous?** | **pár-l'rā.** |
| **Parleront-ils?** | **pár-l'-ron.** |

#### CONDITIONAL. — Present.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Parlerais-je?**[4] | **pár-l'-rĕh.** |
| **Parlerais-tu?** | **pár-l'-rĕh.** |
| **Parlerait-il?** | **pár-l'-rĕh.** |
| **Parlerions-nous?** | **pár-l'-rē-*on*.** |
| **Parleriez-vous?** | **pár-l'-rē-ā.** |
| **Parleraient-ils?**[8] | **pár-l' rĕh.** |

---

1 *Did I speak?* or *Have I spoken?* etc. — 2 *Was I speaking?* or *Did I use to speak?* etc. — 3 *Shall* or *will I speak?* etc. — 4 *Would I speak?* etc.

5 *I would have spoken*, etc. = **J'aurais parlé**; etc.

6 Lit.: *Is it that I speak?* Also, **Parlé-je?** *Practically* never used. See page 496. — 7 *Had I spoken?* etc. = **Avais-je parlé?** etc.

8 *Should I have spoken?* etc. = **Aurais-je parlé?** etc.

## PARLER. — Negatively.

**Ne pas parler, *not to speak.****

**Present Participle :** Ne parlant pas,† *not speaking.*

**Imperative :** Ne parlons pas,‡ *let us not be;* Ne parlez pas.

## THE "SIX NECESSARY TENSES."

### INDICATIVE MOOD. — 1. Present.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je ne parle pas,** | **zhŭn pȧr′-l pä′,** | *I am not speaking.* |
| **Tu ne parles pas,** | **tün pȧr′-l pä′,** | *Thou art not speaking.* |
| **Il ne parle pas,** | **ēl nŭ pȧr′-l pä,** | *He is not speaking.* |
| **Nous ne parlons pas,** | **nōōn pȧr-lon pä′,** | *We are not speaking.* |
| **Vous ne parlez pas,** | **vōōn pȧr-lā pä′,** | *You are not speaking.* |
| **Ils ne parlent pas,** | **ēl nŭ pȧr′-l pä′,** | *They are not speaking.* |

### 2. Past Indefinite (*Conversational Tense*).

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je n'ai pas parlé,** | **pȧr-lā′,** | *I did not speak* or *have not spoken.* |
| **Tu n'as pas parlé,** | **pȧr-lā′,** | *Thou didst not speak*, etc. |
| **Il n'a pas parlé,** | **pȧr-lā′,** | *He did not speak* or *has not spoken.* |
| **Nous n'avons pas parlé,** | **pȧr-lā′,** | *We did not speak* or *have not spoken.* |
| **Vous n'avez pas parlé,** | **pȧr-lā′,** | *You* " " " or " " " |
| **Ils n'ont pas parlé,**[1] | **pȧr-lā′,** | *They* " " " or " " " |

### 3. Imperfect.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je ne parlais pas,** | **zhŭn pȧr-lĕh pä′,** | *I was not speaking.* |
| **Tu ne parlais pas,** | **tün pȧr-lĕh pä′,** | *Thou wast not speaking.* |
| **Il ne parlait pas,** | **ēl nŭ pȧr-lĕh pä′,** | *He was not speaking.* |
| **Nous ne parlions pas,** | **nōōn pȧr-lē-on pä′,** | *We were not speaking.* |
| **Vous ne parliez pas,** | **vōōn pȧr-lē-ā pä′,** | *You* " " " |
| **Ils ne parlaient pas,** | **ēl nŭ pȧr-lĕh pä′,** | *They* " " " |

### 4. Future.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je ne parlerai pas,** | **pȧr-l'-rā,** | *I shall* or *will not speak.* |
| **Tu ne parleras pas,** | **pȧr-l'-rȧ,** | *Thou wilt* or *shalt not speak.* |
| **Il ne parlera pas,** | **pȧr-l'-rȧ,** | *He shall* or *will not speak.* |
| **Nous ne parlerons pas,** | **pȧr-l'-ron,** | *We* " or " " " |
| **Vous ne parlerez pas,** | **pȧr-l'-rā,** | *You* " or " " " |
| **Ils ne parleront pas,**[2] | **pȧr-l'-ron,** | *They* " or " " " |

---

[1] *I had not spoken*, etc. = **Je n'avais pas parlé,** etc.

[2] *I shall not have spoken* = **Je n'aurai pas parlé.**

* **Nŭ pä pȧr-lā′.** — Notice that while **pas** is always after the verb in other tenses, in the infinitive present it is generally *before* it, as above.

† **Nŭ pȧr-lan pä′.** — ‡ **Nŭ pȧr-lon pä′.**

**5. CONDITIONAL MOOD. — Present.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je ne parlerais pas,** | **par-l'-rĕh,** | ***I would* or *should not speak.*** |
| **Tu ne parlerais pas,** | **pȧr-l'-rĕh,** | ***Thou wouldst* or *shouldst not speak.*** |
| **Il ne parlerait pas,** | **pȧr-l'-rĕh,** | ***He would* or *should not speak.*** |
| **Nous ne parlerions pas,** | **pȧr-l'-rē-*on*,** | ***We* " or " " "** |
| **Vous ne parleriez pas,** | **pȧr-l'-rē-ā,** | ***You* " or " " "** |
| **Ils ne parleraient pas,**[5] | **pȧr-l'-rĕh,** | ***They* " or " " "** |

**6. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. — Present.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Que je ne parle pas,** | **ku zhŭn pȧr-l pä,** | ***That I (may) not speak.*** |
| **Que tu ne parles pas,** | **pȧr'-l,** | ***That thou (mayest) not speak.*** |
| **Qu' il ne parle pas,** | **pȧr'-l,** | ***That he (may) not speak.*** |
| **Que nous ne parlions pas,** | **pȧr-lē-*on*',** | ***That we (may) not speak.*** |
| **Que vous ne parliez pas,** | **pȧr-lē-ā',** | ***That you (may) not speak.*** |
| **Qu' ils ne parlent pas,** | **pȧr'-l,** | ***That they (may) not speak.*** |

## PARLER. — Negatively-Interrogatively.

**INDICATIVE MOOD. — 1. Present.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Est-ce que je ne parle pas?**[6] | | ***Am I not speaking?*** |
| **Ne parles-tu pas?** | **pȧr'-l-tü,** | ***Art thou not speaking?*** |
| **Ne parle-t-il pas?** | **pȧr'-l-tēl,** | ***Is he* " "** |
| **Ne parlons-nous pas?** | **pȧr-lo*n*,** | ***Are we* " "** |
| **Ne parlez-vous pas?** | **pȧr-lā,** | ***Are you* " "** |
| **Ne parlent-ils pas?** | **pȧr-l-tēl,** | ***Are they* " "** |

**2. Past Indefinite.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **N'ai-je pas parlé?**[7] | **pȧr-lā',**[1] |
| **N'as-tu pas parlé?** | " |
| **N'a-t-il pas parlé?** | " |
| **N'avons-nous pas parlé?** | " |
| **N'avez-vous pas parlé?** | " |
| **N'ont-ils pas parlé?** | " |

**3. Imperfect.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Ne parlais-je pas?** | **pȧr-lĕh.**[2] |
| **Ne parlais-tu pas?** | " |
| **Ne parlait-il pas?** | " |
| **Ne parlions-nous pas?** | **pȧr-lē-o*n*'.** |
| **Ne parliez-vous pas?** | **pȧr-lē-ā'.** |
| **Ne parlaient-ils pas?** | **pȧr-lĕh'.** |

**4. Future.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Ne parlerai-je pas?** | **pȧr-l'-rāzh,**[3] |
| **Ne parleras-tu pas?** | **pȧr-l'-rȧ,** |
| **Ne parlera-t-il pas?** | **pȧr-l'-rȧ,** |
| **Ne parlerons-nous pas?** | **pȧr-l'-ro*n*,** |
| **Ne parlerez-vous pas?** | **pȧr-l'-rā,** |
| **Ne parleront-ils pas?**[8] | **pȧr-l'-ro*n*,** |

**5. CONDITIONAL. — Present.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Ne parlerais-je pas?** | **pȧr-l'-rĕzh.**[4] |
| **Ne parlerais-tu pas?** | **pȧr-l'-rĕh,** |
| **Ne parlerait-il pas?** | **pȧr-l'-rĕh,** |
| **Ne parlerions-nous pas?** | **pȧr-l'-rē-*on*,** |
| **Ne parleriez-vous pas?** | **pȧr-l'-rē-ā,** |
| **Ne parleraient-ils pas?**[8] | **pȧr-l'-rĕh,** |

---

1 *Did I not speak?* or *Have I not spoken?* — 2 *Was I not speaking?*
3 *Shall* or *will I not speak?* — 4 *Should* or *would I not speak?*
5 *I would not have spoken*, etc. = **Je n'aurais pas parlé,** etc.
6 **Ĕs kŭ zhŭn** . . . . instead of: **Ne parlé-je pas,** *practically not used.*
7 Also, **Est-ce que je n'ai pas parlé,** etc. **Ĕs kŭzh nā . . . .**
8 Also, **Est-ce que je ne parlerai pas;** etc.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.—Verbs in *ir*.

### MODEL.—Fin ir, *to finish*.

**Present Participle:** Finissant, *finishing* (**fē-nē-san′**).
**Past Participle:** Fini, *finished* (**Fē-nē′**).
**Imperative:** Finissons,* *let us finish*. Finissez, *finish*.†

## THE "SIX NECESSARY TENSES."

### INDICATIVE MOOD.—1. Present Tense.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je fin *is*,** | **zhü fē-nē′,** | ***I finish* or *am finishing*.**[1] |
| **Tu fin *is*,** | **tü "** | ***Thou dost finish*, etc.** |
| **Il fin *it*,** | **ēl "** | ***He finishes* or *is finishing*.** |
| **N. fin *iss* ons,** ‡ | **fē-nē-son′,** | ***We finish* or *are finishing*.** |
| **V. fin *iss* ez,** | **fē-nē-sā.** | ***You* " or " "** |
| **Ils fin *iss* ent,** | **fē-nēs′,** | ***We* " or " "** |

### 2. Past Indefinite (*Conversational Tense*).

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **J' ai fini,** | **fē-nē′,** | ***I finished* or *have finished*.**[2] |
| **Tu as fini,** | " | ***Thou didst finish*, etc.** |
| **Il a fini,** | ". | ***He finished* or *has finished*.** |
| **N. avons fini,** | " | ***We finished* or *have finished*.** |
| **V. avez fini,** | " | ***You* " or " "** |
| **Ils ont fini,**[4] | " | ***They* " or " "** |

### 3. Imperfect.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je fin *iss* ais,** ‡ | **fē-nē-sĕh′,** | ***I finished* or *was finishing*.**[3] |
| **Tu fin *iss* ais,** | " | ***They wast finishing*.** |
| **Il fin *iss* ait,** | " | ***He finished* or *was finishing*.** |
| **N. fin *iss* ions,** | **fē-nē-sē-on′,** | ***We finished* or *were finishing*.** |
| **V. fin *iss* iez,** | **fē-nē-sē-ā′,** | ***You* " or " "** |
| **Ils fin *iss* aient,** | **fē-nē-sĕh′,** | ***They* " or " "** |

### 4. Future.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je fin *i* rai,** ‡ | **fē-nē-rā′,** | ***I shall* or *will finish*.** |
| **Tu fin *i* ras,** | **fē-nē-rā′,** | ***Thou shalt* or *wilt finish*.** |
| **Il fin *i* ra,** | **fē-nē-rā′,** | ***He shall* or *will finish*** |
| **N. fin *i* rons,** | **fē-nē-ron′,** | ***We* " or " "** |
| **V. fin *i* rez,** | **fē-nē-rā′,** | ***You* " or " "** |
| **Ils fin *i* ront,**[5] | **fē-nē-ron′,** | ***They* " or " "** |

---

[1] Also, *I do finish*.— [2] Also, *I did finish*.— [3] Also, *I used to finish*.
[4] *I had finished*, etc. = **J'avais fini,** etc.— [5] *I shall have finished*, etc. = **J'aurai fini,** etc.— * **Fē-nē-son′.**— † **Fē-nē-sā′.**

‡ All *regular* verbs in **ir** introduce *iss* between the root and termination, in the present (*plural only*) and imperfect indicative, and in the present subjunctive. They also introduce *i* between root and termination, in the future. and conditional.

**CONDITIONAL MOOD.—Present Tense.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je fin *i* rais,** ‡ | **fĕ-nĕ-rĕh′,** | ***I should* or *would finish.*** |
| **Tu fin *i* rais,** | " | ***Thou shouldst* or *wouldst finish.*** |
| **Il fin *i* rait,** | " | ***He should* or *would finish.*** |
| **N. fin *i* rions,** | **fĕ-nĕ-rĕ-*on*′,** | ***We* " or " "** |
| **V. fin *i* riez,** | **fĕ-nĕ-rĕ-ā′,** | ***You* " or " "** |
| **Ils fin *i* raient,** [5] | **fĕ-nĕ-rĕh′,** | ***They* " or " "** |

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—Present Tense.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Que je fin *iss* e,** ‡ | **kŭzh fĕ-nĕs′,** | ***That I (may) finish.*** |
| **Que tu fin *iss* es,** | **kŭ tü fĕ-nĕs′,** | ***That thou (mayest) finish.*** |
| **Qu' il fin *iss* e,** | **kĕl fĕ-nĕs′,** | ***That he (may) finish.*** |
| **Que n. fin *iss* ions,** | **kŭ nōō fĕ-nĕ-sĕ-*on*′,** | ***That we* " "** |
| **Que v. fin *iss* iez,** | **kŭ vōō fĕ-nĕ-sĕ-ā′,** | ***That you* " "** |
| **Qu' ils fin *iss* ent,** | **kĕl fĕ-nĕs′,** | ***That they* " "** |

## FINIR.—Interrogatively.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.—1. Present.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Est-ce que je finis?** [6] | **ĕs kŭzh fĕ-nĕ′,** | ***Am I finishing?*** |
| **Finis-tu?** | **fĕ-nĕ-tü′,** | ***Art thou finishing?*** |
| **Finit-il?** | **fĕ-nĕ-tĕl′,** | ***Is he* "** |
| **Finissons-nous?** | **fĕ-nĕ-s*on*-nōō′,** | ***Are we* "** |
| **Finissez-vous?** | **fĕ-nĕ-sā-vōō′,** | ***Are you* "** |
| **Finissent-ils?** | **fĕ-nĕs-tĕl′,** | ***Are they* "** |

**2. Past Indefinite.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Ai-je fini?** [1] | **fĕ-nĕ′.** [7] |
| **As-tu fini?** | " |
| **A-t-il fini?** | " |
| **Avons-nous fini?** | " |
| **Avez-vous fini?** | " |
| **Ont-ils fini?** | " |

**3. Imperfect.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Finissais-je?** [2] | **fĕ-nĕ-sĕzh′.** [7] |
| **Finissais-tu?** | **fĕ-nĕ-sĕh-tü′.** |
| **Finissait-il?** | **fĕ-nĕ-sĕh-tĕl′.** |
| **Finissions-nous?** | **fĕ-nĕ-sĕ-*on*-nōō′.** |
| **Finissiez-vous?** | **fĕ-nĕ-sĕ-ā-vōō′.** |
| **Finissaient-ils?** | **fĕ-nĕ-sĕh-tĕl′.** |

**4. Future.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Fin*i*rai-je?** [3] | **fĕ-nĕ-rā-zh′.** |
| **Fin*i*ras-tu?** | **fĕ-nĕ-rȧ-tü′.** |
| **Fin*i*ra-t-il?** | **fĕ-nĕ-rȧ-tĕl′.** |
| **Fin*i*rons-nous?** | **fĕ-nĕ-r*on*-nōō′.** |
| **Fin*i*rez-vous?** | **fĕ-nĕ-rā-vōō′.** |
| **Fin*i*ront-ils?** | **fĕ-nĕ-r*on*-tĕl′.** |

**CONDITIONAL.—Present.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Fin*i*rais-je?** [4] | **fĕ-nĕ-rĕh-zh′.** [7] |
| **Fin*i*rais-tu?** | **fĕ-nĕ-rĕh-tü′.** |
| **Fin*i*rait-il?** | **fĕ-nĕ-rĕh-tĕl′.** |
| **Fin*i*rions-nous?** | **fĕ-nĕ-rĕ-*on*-nōō′.** |
| **Fin*i*riez-vous?** | **fĕ-nĕ-rĕ-ā-vōō′.** |
| **Fin*i*raient-ils?** | **fĕ-nĕ-rĕh-tĕl′.** |

---

[1] *Did I finish?* or *Have I finished?*

[2] *Was I finishing?* or *Did I use to finish?*

[3] *Shall* or *will I finish?* — [4] *Would* or *should I finish:*

[5] *I would have finished* = **J'aurais fini.**

[6] Instead of **Finis-je?** *not used.* — [7] Also, **Est-ce que j'ai fini? Est-ce que je finissais? Est-ce que je finirais?**

## THIRD CONJUGATION.—Verbs in *re.*

MODEL.—**Vend re,** ***to sell.***

**Present Participle:** Vend ant,* *selling.*
**Past Participle:** Vend u,* *sold.*
**Imperative:** Vend ons,* *let us sell;* Vend ez, *sell.*†

### THE "SIX NECESSARY TENSES."

**INDICATIVE MOOD.—Present Tense.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je vend s,** | **van,** | ***I sell*** **or** ***am selling.***[1] |
| **Tu vend s,** | **van,** | ***Thou sellest*** **or** ***art selling.*** |
| **Il vend,** | **van,** | ***He sells*** **or** ***is selling.*** |
| **N. vend ons,** | **van-don′,** | ***We sell*** **or** ***are selling.*** |
| **V. vend ez,** | **van-dā′,** | ***You*** " or " " |
| **Ils vend ent,** | **van′-d',** | ***They*** " or " " |

**2. Past Indefinite** (***Conversational Tense.***)

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **J'ai vendu,** | **van-dü′,** | ***I sold*** **or** ***have sold.***[2] |
| **Tu as vendu,** | " | ***Thou didst sell*** **or** ***hast sold.*** |
| **Il a vendu,** | " | ***He sold*** **or** ***has sold.*** |
| **Nous avons vendu,** | " | ***We sold*** **or** ***have sold.*** |
| **Vous avez vendu,** | " | ***You*** " or " " |
| **Ils ont vendu,**[3] | " | ***They*** " or " "[3] |

**3. Imperfect.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je vend ais,** | **van-dĕh′.** | ***I sold*** **or** ***was selling.***[4] |
| **Tu vend ais,** | " | ***Thou soldest*** **or** ***wast selling.*** |
| **Il vend ait,** | " | ***He sold*** **or** ***was selling.*** |
| **N. vend ions,** | **van-dē-on′,** | ***We sold*** **or** ***were selling.*** |
| **V. vend iez,** | **van-dē-ā′,** | ***You*** " or " " |
| **Ils vend aient,** | **van-dĕh',** | ***They*** " or " " |

**4. Future.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je vend rai,** | **van-drā′,** | ***I shall*** **or** ***will sell.*** |
| **Tu vend ras,** | **van-drȧ′,** | ***Thou shalt*** **or** ***wilt sell.*** |
| **Il vend ra,** | **van-drȧ′,** | ***He shall*** **or** ***will sell.*** |
| **N. vend rons,** | **van-dron′,** | ***We*** " or " " |
| **V. vend rez,** | **van-drā′,** | ***You*** " or " " |
| **Ils vend ront,**[5] | **van-dron′,** | ***They*** " or " " |

---

[1] Also, *I do sell*, etc.—[2] Also, *I did sell*, etc.
[3] *I had sold*, etc. = **J'avais vendu,** etc.—[4] Also, *I used to sell*, etc.
[5] *I shall have finished*, etc. = **J'aurai vendu,** etc.
* **Van′-dr', Van-dan′, Van-dü′, Van-don′.**
† **Van-dā′.** Sell (*you*); *usual* form. **Vends (van),** Sell (*thou*); *familiar*. See p. 506.

**CONDITIONAL MOOD. — Present.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je vend rais,** | **van-drĕh′,** | ***I should* or *would sell.*[5]** |
| **Tu vend rais,** | " | ***Thou shouldst* or *wouldst sell.*** |
| **Il vend rait,** | " | ***He should* or *would sell.*** |
| **N. vend rions,** | **van-drĕ-yon′,** | ***We* " or " "** |
| **V. vend riez,** | **van-drĕ-yá′,** | ***You* " or " "** |
| **Ils vend raient,[6]** | **van-drĕh′,** | ***They* " or " "** |

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. — Present Tense.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Que je vend e,** | **küzh van′-d′,** | ***That I (may) sell.*** |
| **Que tu vend es,** | **kü tü van′-d′,** | ***That thou (mayest) sell.*** |
| **Qu' il vend e,** | **kēl van′-d′,** | ***That he (may) sell.*** |
| **Que n. vend ions,** | **kü nōō van-dē-on′,** | ***That we (may) sell.*** |
| **Que v. vend iez,** | **kü vōō van-dē-ā′,** | ***That you (may) sell.*** |
| **Qu' ils vend ent,** | **kēl van′-d′,** | ***That they (may) sell.*** |

## VENDRE. — Interrogatively.

**INDICATIVE MOOD. — 1. Present.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Est-ce que je vends?[6]** | **ĕs küzh van′,** | ***Do I sell?* or *Am I selling?*** |
| **Vends-tu?** | **van-tü′,** | ***Dost thou sell?* or *Art thou selling?*** |
| **Vend-il?** | **van-tēl′,** | ***Does he sell?* or *Is he* "** |
| **Vendons-nous?** | **van-don-nōō′,** | ***Do we sell?* or *Are we* "** |
| **Vendez-vous?** | **van-dā-vōō′,** | ***Do you* " or " *you* "** |
| **Vendent-ils?** | **van-d tēl′,** | ***Do they* " or " *they* "** |

**2. Past Indefinite.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Ai-je vendu?[7]** | **van-dü′.[1]** |
| **As-tu vendu?** | **van-dü′.** |
| **A-t-il vendu?** | **van-dü′.** |
| **Avons-nous vendu?** | **van-dü′.** |
| **Avez-vous vendu?** | **van-dü′.** |
| **Ont-ils vendu?** | **van-dü′.** |

**3. Imperfect.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Vendais-je?[7]** | **van-dĕzh′.[2]** |
| **Vendais-tu?** | **van-dĕh-tü′.** |
| **Vendait-il?** | **van-dĕh-tēl′.** |
| **Vendions-nous?** | **van-dē-on-nōō′.** |
| **Vendiez-vous?** | **van-dē-ā-vōō′.** |
| **Vendaient-ils?** | **van-dĕh-tēl′.** |

**4. Future.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Vendrai-je?[7]** | **van-drā.[3]** |
| **Vendras-tu?** | **van-drá.** |
| **Vendra-t-il?** | **van-drá.** |
| **Vendrons-nous?** | **van-dron.** |
| **Vendrez-vous?** | **van-drā.** |
| **Vendront-ils?[5]** | **van-dron.** |

**CONDITIONAL. — Present.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Vendrais-je?[7]** | **van-drĕh.[4]** |
| **Vendrais-tu?** | **van-drĕh.** |
| **Vendrait-il?** | **van-drĕh.** |
| **Vendrions-nous?** | **van-drĕ-yon.** |
| **Vendriez-vous?** | **van-drĕ-yā.** |
| **Vendraient-ils?** | **van-drĕh.** |

---

[1] *Did I sell?* or *Have I sold?* — [2] *Was I selling?* or *Did I use to sell?*

[3] *Shall* or *will I sell?* — [4] *Would* or *should I sell?*

[5] *I would have sold* = **J'aurais vendu.**

[6] Instead of **Vends-je?** *not used.* See p.

[7] Also, **Est-ce que j'ai vendu?** etc.; **Est-ce que je vendais?** etc.; **Est-ce que je vendrai?** etc.; **Est-ce que je vendrais?** etc.; See p. 496.

### FINIR.—Negatively.

**Ne pas finir,** ***not to finish.***

**Present Participle:** Ne finissant pas.
**Imperative:** Ne finissons pas; Ne finissez pas.

## THE "SIX NECESSARY TENSES."

### INDICATIVE MOOD.—1. Present Tense.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je ne finis pas,** | zhŭn fē-nē pä', | *I do not finish.*[1] |
| **Tu ne finis pas,** | tün fē-nē pä', | *Thou dost not finish.* |
| **Il ne finis pas,** | ēl nŭ fē-nē pä', | *He does* " " |
| **N. ne finissons pas,** | nōōn fē-nē-so*n* pä', | *We do* " " |
| **V. ne finissez pas,** | vōōn fē-nē-sā pä', | *You do* " " |
| **Ils ne finissent pas,** | ēl nŭ fē-nēs pä, | *They do* " " |

**2. Past Indefinite** (*Conversational Tense*).

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je n'ai pas fini, etc.,** | zh' nā pä', | *I have not finished,* etc.[2] |

**3. Imperfect.**

**Je ne finissais pas, etc.,** — *I was not finishing,* etc.[3]

**4. Future.**

**Je ne finirai pas,** — *I shall* or *will not finish.*
**Tu ne finiras pas, etc.,** — *Thou wilt* or *shalt not finish,* etc.

### CONDITIONAL MOOD.

**Je ne finirais pas,** — *I would* or *should not finish.*
**Tu ne finirais pas, etc.,** — *Thou wouldst* or *shouldst not finish,* etc.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

**Que je ne finisse pas, etc.,** — *That I (may) not finish,* etc.

### FINIR.—Interrogatively-Negatively.

**INDICATIVE.—1. Present.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Est-ce que je ne finis pas?** | *Do I not finish?* |
| **Ne finis-tu pas?** | *Dost thou not finish?* |
| **Ne finit-il pas?** | *Does he* " " |
| **Ne finissons-nous pas?** | *Do we* " " |
| **Ne finissez-vous pas?** | *Do you* " " |
| **Ne finissent-ils pas?** | *Do they* " " |

**2. Past Indefinite.**

**N'ai-je pas fini? etc.**[4]

**3. Imperfect.**

**Ne finissais-je pas? etc.**[5]

**4. Future.**

**Ne finirai-je pas? etc.**[6]

**CONDITIONAL.—Present.**

**Ne finirais-je pas? etc.**[7]

---

[1] Or, *I am not finishing,* etc.— [2] Or, *I did not finish,* etc.
[3] Or, *I did n't use to finish,* etc.— [4] *Did I not finish?* etc.
[5] Or, *am I not finishing?* etc.— [6] *Was I not finishing?* or *Did n't I use to finish?*— [7] *Will I not finish?*— [8] *Would I not finish?*

## VENDRE.—Negatively.

**Ne pas vendre, *not to sell.***

**Present Participle:** Ne vendant pas.
**Imperative:** Ne vendons pas. Ne vendez pas.

### THE "SIX NECESSARY TENSES."

**INDICATIVE MOOD.—1. Present.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je ne vends pas,** | **zhŭn van pä′,** | ***I do not sell.***[1] |
| **Tu ne vends pas,** | **tŭn " "** | ***Thou dost not sell.*** |
| **Il ne vend pas,** | **ēl nŭ " "** | ***He does " "*** |
| **N. ne vendons pas,** | **nōōn van-don pä′,** | ***We do " "*** |
| **V. ne vendez pas,** | **vōōn van-dā pä′,** | ***They do " "*** |
| **Ils ne vendent pas,** | **ēl nŭ van′-d' pä′,** | ***You do " "*** |

**2. Past Indefinite (*Conversational Tense.*)**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Je n'ai pas vendu, etc.,** | **zh' nā pä′—,** | ***I have not sold,* etc.**[2] |

**3. Imperfect.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Je ne vendais pas, etc.,** | ***I was not selling,* etc.**[3] |

**4. Future.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Je ne vendrai pas,** | ***I shall* or *will not sell.*** |
| **Tu ne vendras pas, etc.,** | ***Thou wilt* or *shalt not sell,* etc.** |

**CONDITIONAL MOOD.—Present.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Je ne vendrais pas, etc.,** | ***I would* or *should not sell,* etc.** |
| **Tu ne vendrais pas, etc.,** | ***Thou wouldst* or *shouldst not sell,* etc.** |

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—Present.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Que je ne vende pas, etc.,** | ***That I (may) not sell,* etc.** |

## VENDRE.—Interrogatively-Negatively.

**INDICATIVE.—1. Present.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Est-ce que je ne vends pas?** | | ***Do I not sell?***[4] |
| **Ne vends-tu pas?** | | ***Dost thou not sell?*** |
| **Ne vend-il pas?** | **van-tēl** | ***Does He " "*** |
| **Ne vendons-nous pas?** | | ***Do we " "*** |
| **Ne vendez-vous pas?** | | ***Do you " "*** |
| **Ne vendent-ils pas?** | **vand-tēl** | ***Do they " "*** |

**2. Past Indefinite.**

**N' ai-je pas vendu? etc.,**[5]

**3. Imperfect.**

**Ne vendais-je pas? etc.**[6]

**4. Future.**

**Ne vendrai-je pas? etc.**[7]

**5. CONDITIONAL.—Present.**

**Ne vendrais-je pas? etc.**[8]

---

[1] Or, *I am not selling*, etc.— [2] Or, *I did not sell*, etc.
[3] Or, *I didn't use to sell*, etc.— [4] Or, *Am I not selling?* etc.
[5] *Did I not sell?* or *Have I not sold?* etc.— [6] *Was I not selling?* or *Didn't I use to sell?* etc.— [7] *Shall I not sell?* etc.— [8] *Would I not sell?* etc.

## GENERAL FORM OF A SENTENCE IN FRENCH.

Apart from the position of the pronoun-objects [*me, te, le, la, lui, nous, vous, les, leurs,* meaning: *me* (or *to me*), *thee* (or *to thee*), *him* (or *it*), *her* (or *it*), etc.], the *general* order of an affirmative sentence is the same in French as in English. Thus:

| SUBJECT. | VERB. | OBJECT. | ADVERB.[1] |
|---|---|---|---|
| *My watch* | *goes* | | *right.* |
| Ma montre | va | | bien. |
| *Mr. X* | *will see* | *your father* | *to-morrow.* |
| M. X | verra | votre père | demain. Etc. |

If this is kept in mind, it will *greatly* simplify construction when the pronoun-objects are reached.

However, the French have no auxiliary such as *do,* nor any *progressive* form such as *I am coming,* and, in order to retain the general uniformity of construction mentioned above, the English sentences in which these occur have to be reduced to their simplest form. Thus:

*I do not understand = I understand not,* Je *ne* comprends pas.
*He is not coming = He comes not,* Il *ne* vient pas.
*He was not reading = He read not,* Il ne lisait (lē-zĕh) pas.

Again, the auxiliary *did* is turned into *have* (or *be*) in French:

*I did not understand you = I have not understood you,*
Je *ne* vous ai pas compris (kon-prē').
*Did you go to Paris? = Have* (lit.: *Are*) *you gone to Paris?*
Êtes-vous allé à Paris?

Notice, however, that in *negative* phrases an extra word, *ne,* is placed *before* the verb. This, as already stated, was formerly the real negation, but has become practically a mere adjunct; a *warning,* so to speak, that something negative (*not,* or *nothing,* or *never,* or *nobody,* or *nowhere,* etc.), is going to be said. But the *real* negations (*pas, personne,* etc.), are (*usually*) placed *after* the verb (*if the verb is in a simple tense*). Thus:

*I do not see your friend = I see* ***not*** *your friend,*
Je *ne* vois ***pas*** votre ami.

---

[1] For difference in position of adverbs, see page 525.

*He does not see anybody* = *He sees* ***nobody.***
Il *ne* voit ***personne.***

Notice that the French can not say *not anything, not anybody, not anywhere, not ever,* etc.; but must say *nothing* (rien), *nobody* (personne), *nowhere* (nulle part), *never* (jamais), etc.

*If the verb is in a compound tense,* these negations (except *personne* and *nulle part*) are placed *between the auxiliary* and *past participle:*

*He has never seen me* = Il *ne* m'a ***jamais*** vu.
*She said nothing to us* = Elle *ne* nous a ***rien*** dit.— *But:*
*I did n't see anybody* = Je *n'*ai vu ***personne.***
*She did not go anywhere* = Elle *n'*a été ***nulle part.***

## FORMS OF QUESTION

1. WHEN THE SUBJECT IS A PRONOUN.—With *to have* (**avoir**) and *to be* (**être**), both languages use the simplest form of question, placing the pronoun-subject (*je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils* or *elles*), *after* the verb. Thus:

*I have* becomes, *Have I?*—***J'ai*** becomes,[4] ***ai-je?***
*You are* becomes, *Are you?*—***Vous êtes*** becomes, ***êtes-vous?***

With other verbs, however, the English use *do* and *did* in asking questions. The French having no such auxiliaries, still use the simple form of question instead of *do,* and change *did* into *have* (or *be*). Thus:

*Do you write much?* French: *Write you much?*
Écrivez-vous beaucoup?
*Did he speak long?* French: *Has he written long?*
A-t-il écrit longtemps?
*Did they go to Paris?* Fr.: *Are they gone,* etc.
*Sont*-ils allés à Paris?

2. WHEN THE SUBJECT IS A NOUN,—it *precedes* the verb, and its corresponding pronoun (*il, elle, ils* or *elles*) is placed *after* the verb or auxiliary. Thus:

*Is your father here?* Fr.: *Your father is he here?*
Votre père est-***il*** ici?
*Where do your friends live?* Fr.: *Where your friends live they?*
Où vos amis demeurent-***ils?***[1]
*When did Mr. X come?* Fr.: *When Mr. X is he come?*
Quand M. X est-***il*** venu?

N. B. — With **où** we can also use the simple form of question: *Où demeurent vos amis* (lit: *Where live your friends?*). With **que** the simple form only can be used. Ex.: *What does your father do?*:— Que fait votre père? or, Qu'est-ce que votre père fait?

**Note 1. — *Questions with* est-ce que.**

The French, however, sometimes use another form of question somewhat similar to the English use of *do* and *did*. This is with **est-ce que** (ĕs kŭ; lit.: *Is it that?*). Ex.:

*Do you understand?* = Est-ce que vous comprenez?
*Did you understand?* = Est-ce que vous avez compris?

This form generally expresses more energy, or a degree of surprise. — *With the first pers. sing. of the indicative present of most verbs, it is nearly always used, so as to avoid such sounds as parlé-je? vends-je?* etc.

**Note 2. — *Questions with* qui, qui est-ce qui,** etc.

Who? = **Qui?** or **Qui est-ce qui?** (kē ĕs kē)?
Whom? = **Qui?** or **Qui est-ce que?** Ex.:

*Who speaks?* = Qui parle? *or* Qui est-ce *qui* parle?
*Whom do I see?* = Qui vois-je? *or* Qui est-ce *que* je vois?

What? (*as a subject*) = **Qu'est-ce qui** (kĕs kē)?
What? (*as an object*) = **Que?** *or* **Qu'est-ce que** (kĕs kŭ)?
Ex.: Qu'est-ce qui vous fait mal? *What hurts you?*
Que dites-vous; *or* Qu'est-ce que v. dites? *What do you say?*

**NEGATIVE FORMS OF QUESTIONS**

differ from the above only in the introduction of some negation: (**pas** (*not*), **point** (*absolutely not*),[1] **nul** or **aucun** (*none*), **jamais, personne, rien, que** (*only*), **guère** (*scarcely*), **ni** ..... **ni** (*neither* ..... *nor*), or **nulle part**). For *ne*, see bottom of p. 494. — Ex.:

*Are you not going there?* = Go you ***not*** there?
*N'*y allez-vous ***pas?***
*Did you not go there?* = There *are* you ***not*** gone?
*N'*y êtes-vous ***pas*** allé?
*He likes neither fat nor lean* = He likes ***neither*** fat ***nor*** lean.
Il *n'*aime ***ni*** le gras (grä), ***ni*** le maigre.
*Why did Mr. Adams never make that journey?* —
Pourquoi M. Adams n'a-t-il ***jamais*** fait ce voyage? — etc., etc.

**Note.** — For **personne** and **rien** *as subjects*, see page 404.

**THE PAST INDEFINITE, PRETERIT, AND IMPERFECT.**

I. The simple English past (*I saw, he went*, etc.) may be rendered in French by one of the three tenses above.

II. But the ***Past Indefinite*** and ***Preterit*** represent a past action as ***single*** or ***momentary***.

Practically, the ***Past Indefinite***[1] alone of these two, is used in *conversation:*

*I saw him yesterday* = Je l'***ai vu*** hier; —

While the ***Preterit***[2] fills in *narration*, the same office as the ***Past Indefinite*** in *conversation:*

Cæsar saw him and said . . . . , César le ***vit,*** et ***dit*** . . . . ,

III. Now, the ***Imperfect*** is used *either* in conversation or narration, to express:

(1) A past action *which was already going on*, when the one expressed by either the Past Indefinite or Preterit takes place. Ex.:

*When I came in,*[3] *he was writing* =
Quand je suis entré,[3] il ***écrivait;***[4]
or, Quand j'entrai (*preterit; narrative style*) il ***écrivait.***
*I saw her yesterday. She was walking about* =
Je l'ai vue hier. Elle se ***promènait.***

(2) A *continued* action:

*While I spoke, he wrote* = Tandis que je parlais,[4] il ***écrivait.***[4]
*Where were you, yesterday?* = Où ***étiez***-vous, hier?

(3) A *repeated* or *habitual* action:

1. *Every time I spoke, he interrupted me* =
Chaque fois que je ***parlais,*** il ***m'interrompait.***

2. *Last summer, I took a walk every morning* =
L'été passé, je ***faisais*** une promenade tous les matins.
*I used to read a good deal, then* = Je ***lisais*** beaucoup, alors.

---

[1] Or, *conversational tense.* — [2] Or, *historical tense.*

[3] Lit.: When I *am* (*i. e.*, *have*) come-in; *past indefinite.*

[4] *He wrote, I spoke* [imperfect termination: (**ais, ait,** etc., etc.)]. As seen here, the learner can often mechanically ascertain when the imperfect is to be used. If the verb can be transposed into the English progressive forms (as: *I spoke*, here, = *I was speaking; he wrote*, here, = *he was writing*), use the imperfect.

## USE OF THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

The subjunctive is put in the *present*, if the verb in the principal clause is in the present or future tense:

*I want him to come,* Je veux qu'il ***vienne.***
*I'll forbid his coming,* Je défendrai qu'il ***vienne.***
*I fear he has come,* Je crains qu'il ne ***soit*** venu.[1]

But the subjunctive is put in the *imperfect*, if the verb in the principal clause is in a past tense or the conditional. Ex.:

*I feared he was gone,* Je *craignais* qu'il ne ***fût*** parti.[2]
*I would fear he might die,* Je *craindrais* qu'il ne ***mourût.***

NOTE.—If some *condition*, however, is expressed or understood, the *imperfect* of the subjunctive is always used, even if the first verb is not in a past tense. Ex.:

*I do not think he would have given that order, if he had known it* = Je ne crois pas qu'il ***eût*** donné cet‿ordre, s'il l'avait su.

## AGREEMENT OF VERBS WITH THEIR SUBJECT.

The ***verb*** agrees in ***person*** and ***number*** with its subject. Thus:

*Mon frère* ***part.*** — *Mes frères* ***partent.***

When there are *several* subjects, the verb is in the plural, unless the subjects are synonymous. Ex.:

Mon frère et lui ***viendront.***
Mon frère et moi,[3] nous ***viendrons.*** But:
Son courage, son‿intrépidité nous ***surprend.***

When the subject is a collective noun, the verb is in the singular or the plural according to whether the noun expresses *the totality of individuals* or their separate personality. Thus:

*The army was routed* = L'armée ***fut*** mise‿en fuite. *But:*
*A great many soldiers were killed* = Un grand nombre de soldats ***furent*** tués.

---

[1] Note that if the subjunctive is in a compound tense, we have then the *present subjunctive of the auxiliary*, with the past participle.

[2] Note that if the subjunctive is in a compound tense, we have then the *imperfect subjunctive of the auxiliary*, with the past participle.

[3] When one of the subjects is of the 1st (or 2d) person, a *reduplicating* pronoun (**nous**, or **vous**), representing both, is *often* used before the verb.

## THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

The ***Past Participle,*** if conjugated with **être,** agrees in gender and number with the ***subject.*** Thus:

Mon frère est parti; *But:* Mes frères sont parti**s**;
Ma sœur est parti**e**; Mes sœurs sont parti**es**.

The ***Past Participle,*** if conjugated with **avoir,** agrees with the ***direct* object,** when that object precedes the verb. Thus:

J'ai acheté une **maison.** — The direct object **maison** *follows* **acheté;** hence, no agreement (no *e*). — *But:*

Voilà la **maison** que j'ai achet*ée*. The *direct*-object (***maison***) *precedes,* hence ***acheté*** is made feminine, to agree with it.

NOTE 1. — The application of the two rules above, if reasoned out, will solve every case of past participle, and stand in much better stead to the pupil than the many mechanical and incomprehensible rules usually given. For instance, in the following difficult case:

*Did you hear the birds sing?* Ans.: *Yes, I heard them sing.*
Oui, je *les* ai entendu**s** chanter.

*What* did we hear? Ans.: *Them* (*the birds*) singing. Hence, *them* (***les***) is the direct object, and as it precedes **entendu,** the latter agrees with it, and becomes **entendus.**

*Have you heard those songs?* Ans.: *Yes, I heard them.*
Oui, je les ai entendu chanter. (Lit.: *I them heard sing.*)
*What* did we hear?—— *them* (the songs) *sing?* Of course, not But we heard 'sing' (*i. e.*, the-singing-of) them (*the songs*). *Sing, i. e.,* ***chanter*** [and *not them* (***les***)], is therefore direct object of heard (*ai entendu*). Hence ***entendu*** does not vary.

NOTE 2. — The Past Participles of impersonal verbs are invariable:

Quelle chaleur il a ***fait!*** *How hot it has been!* (*not* ***faite***).

NOTE 3. — With **en** there is no agreement, as, although it may appear to be a *direct*, it is really an *indirect* object:

*I found strawberries, and ate some* (***en;*** lit.: *of*-them).
J'ai trouvé des fraises et j'en ai mangé (*not* mang*ées*).

For the **Past Participle of Reflexive Verbs,** see p. 512.

**The Present Participle.** — The present participle ends in **ant.** As a verb, it is invariable. If used as an adjective, it agrees with the noun it qualifies. Thus:

An obliging man = Un homme obligeant.
Obliging women = Des femmes obligeant**es**.

## PECULIAR VERBS IN ER.

### 1. Verbs having an e *mute* before the "er."

The **e** *mute* preceding the termination of verbs in **er,** such as **mener, peser (pŭ-zā′)** *to weigh*, etc., is changed into **è** (pron.: **ĕh**), whenever, in the course of the conjugation, it comes before another **e** *mute.*[6] Thus:

**Mener,** to take (*anybody anywhere*).

| Ind. Pres. | Imperf. | Past Indef. | Preterit. |
|---|---|---|---|
| Je mè-ne (mĕn') | Je me-nais [3] | J'ai me-né | Je me-nai [4] |
| Tu mè-nes [7] " | Tu me-nais | Tu as me-né | Tu me-nas |
| Il mè-ne " | Il me-nait | Il a me-né | Il me-na |
| N. me-nons [1] | N. me-nions | N. avons me-né | N. me-nâmes [7] |
| V. me-nez [2] | V. me-niez | V. avez me-né | V. me-nâtes [7] |
| Ils mè-nent [7] (mĕn') | Ils me-naient [7] | Ils ont me-né | Ils me-nèrent [7] |
| **Future.** | **Conditional.** | **Subj. Present.** | **Subj. Imperf.** |
| Je mè-ne-rai [5] | Je mè-ne-rais | Que je mè-ne | Q. je me-nasse |
| Tu mè-ne-ras | Tu mè-ne-rais | Que tu mè-nes | Q. tu me-nasses,[7] etc. |
| Il mè-ne-ra' | Il mè-ne-rait | Qu'il mè-ne | **Imperative.** |
| N. mè-ne-rons | N. mè-ne-rions | Que n. me-nions | Mè-ne |
| V. mè-ne-rez | V. mè-ne-riez | Que v. me-niez | Me-nons |
| Ils mè-ne-ront | Ils mè-ne-raient [7] | Qu'ils mè-nent [7] | Me-nez |

The division of syllables is marked so as to show how this **e**, followed by ***er in the infinitive***, becomes accented and pronounced **ĕh,** whenever *in any other tense* it comes to be followed by a syllable *ending* in an unaccented ***e.***

### 2. Verbs having an é before the er.

The **é** (pron.: **ā**) preceding the infinitive termination of verbs in **er,** like **considérer, régler, espérer,** is likewise changed into **è** (**ĕh**), before an *e* mute.[8] Thus:

---

[1] **Mŭ-non′.** — [2] **Mŭ-nā′.** — [3] **Mŭ-nĕh′,** etc. — [4] **Mŭ-nā′,** etc.

[5] **Mĕn-rā′,** etc. — [6] Note that a mute **e** is an **e** unaccented and at the same time found *at the end* of a syllable. Thus, in *jeter* (*to throw*), the first *e* is *called* mute (though pronounced **ŭ**), because it has no accent and ends the syllable (*je*), while the *e* in *ter* is *vocal* (pronounced **ā**), because, although unaccented, it does *not* end a syllable. For the division of words into syllables, see Pronunciation.

[7] *Es* and *ent* at end of verbs, are silent. — *Exceptions to rule in note* 6.

[8] Verbs in **éer,** like **créer,** however, do not chango **é** into **è.** **Je crée,** *not* **je crèe.**

Je considè-re, tu considè-res, il considè-re, n. considé-rons, v. considé-rez, ils considè-rent.[1]

Je considé-rais, etc. Je considè-re-rai,[1] etc. Je considè-re-rais.[1]

Q. je considè-re, q. n. considé-rions, qu'ils considè-rent.

**3. Verbs in *eler* and *eter*.**

Verbs in ***eter*** and ***eler***, like **appeler, épeler, jeter,** etc., do not change **e** into **è,** but double the **t** and **l** instead, the result (the broadening of **e** into **ĕh**) being the same. Thus:

J'appe*l*-le,[2] tu appe*l*-les,[2] il appe*l*-le,[2] n. appe-lons,[3] v. appe-lez, ils appe*l*-lent.[2]

J'appe-lais,[4] etc. J'appe*l*-le-rai,[5] etc. J'appe*l*-le-rais, etc.

Q. j'appe*l*-le,[2] q. n. appe-lions,[6] qu'ils appe*l*-lent.[2]

**4. Verbs ending in ger or cer.**

1. Verbs in **ger,** like **manger, changer, nager** (*to swim*), introduce an *e* mute before terminations beginning with **a** or **o,** so as to preserve the soft (**zh**) sound of **g** (see p. xix). Thus:

N. mang*e*ons, *we eat.* Je mang*e*ais, *I was eating;* Tu mang*e*ais, *thou wast eating,* etc. Je mang*e*ai, *I ate.* Q. je mang*e*asse.

2. Verbs in **cer,** like **menacer, placer,** etc., take a cedilla before **a** or **o,** so as to preserve the soft sound of **c.** Thus:

N. mena*ç*ons, *we threaten;* Je mena*ç*ai, *I threatened;* etc.

**5. Verbs in yer.**

Verbs in **yer,** like **employer, appuyer,** change **y** into **i** before an **e** *mute.* Thus:

J'emplo*i*e, n. employons, v. employez, ils emplo*i*ent.

J'employais, etc. J'emplo*i*erai, etc. J'emplo*i*erais, etc.

N. B.—Verbs in *a*yer and *e*yer, like **payer, grasseyer** (*to lisp*), may retain the **y,** or change it into **i.** Thus:

Je pa*y*e; *or,* je pa*i*e; etc. The Academy favors the first.†

---

[1] Many grammarians retain the **é** in the future and conditional

[2] **Â-pĕl'.**— [3] **Â-plon'.**— [4] **Â-plĕh'.**— [5] **Â-pĕl-rā'.**

[6] **Â-pŭ-lē-ōn'.**— * **Acheter, geler,** and **peler** (*to peel*), however, do not double **t** or **l,** but change **e** into **è.** J'achète, il gèle, ils pèlent.

† Verbs in **yer** or **ier,** as **envoyer, prier (prē-yā'),** naturally keep the **y** or **i** of the root, even before terminations beginning with **i.** Thus: N. envoy-ions (*we used to send*), v. pri-iez (*you were praying*).

## LIST OF REGULAR VERBS ENDING IN ER.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Accepter (de),**[1] | *To accept.* | **Gagner,**[4] | *To win; to earn.* |
| **Ajouter,**[4] | *To add.* | **Glisser,**[5] | *To slide.* |
| **Allumer,** | *To light.*[2] | **Gronder,** | *To scold.* |
| **Amener (à),**[4] | *To bring.* | **Jeter,** | *To throw.* |
| **Appeler (à),** | *To call.* | **Jouer,** | *To play.* |
| **Avaler,** | *To swallow.* | **Manier,**[5] | *To handle.* |
| **Avouer,** | *To acknowledge.* | **Manquer (de),** | *To fail to.* |
| **Bâiller,**[4] | *To gape.* | **Manquer de,** | *To lack (anything).* |
| **Balancer,** | *To swing.* | **Montrer (à),** | *To show.* |
| **Blesser,** | *To wound.* | **Nager,**[5] | *To swim.* |
| **Cacher,**[4] | *To hide.* | **Passer,** | *To call; to pass.* |
| **Casser,**[4] | *To break.* | **Peser,**[5] | *To weigh.* |
| **Causer,**[4] | *To chat.* | **Plier,**[5] | *To fold.* |
| **Chatouiller,**[4] | *To tickle.* | **Plisser,**[5] | *To pleat.* |
| **Chercher; —— (à),** | *To look for; To try.* | **Prêter,**[5] | *To lend.* |
| **Chiffonner,** | *To ruffle.* | **Oser,**[5] | *To dare.* |
| **Commander (de),** | *To order.* | **Pousser (à),** | *To push.* |
| **Compter,** | *To count.*[1] | **Quitter,**[5] | *To leave.* |
| **Cracher,**[4] | *To spit.* | **Réclamer,** | *To claim.* |
| **Demander (de),** | *To ask.* | **Récompenser,** | *To reward.* |
| **Dépenser,** | *To spend.* | **Refuser (de),** | *To refuse.* |
| **Dessiner,*** | *To draw.* | **Regarder,** | *To look at.* |
| **Éclairer,** | *To light.*[3] | **Regarder à,** | *To look at.*‡ |
| **Écouter,** | *To listen.* | **Renoncer (à),** | *To give up.* |
| **Écraser,**[4] | *To crush.* | **Répliquer,** | *To reply.* |
| **Effrayer,**[4] | *To frighten.* | **Ressembler,** | *To look like.* |
| **Embrasser,**[4] | *To kiss.* | **Retourner,** | *To return.* |
| **Emmener,**[4] | *To take (with one).*† | **Sécher,** | *To dry.* |
| **Emporter,** | *To take (with one).*†† | **Siffler,** | *To whistle.* |
| **Emprunter,**[4] | *To borrow.* | **Souffler,** | *To blow.* |
| **Enseigner (à),**[4] | *To teach.* | **Soupçonner (de),**[5] | *To suspect.* |
| **Épeler,** | *To spell.* | **Soupirer,** | *To sigh.* |
| **Épousseter,** | *To dust.* | **Tousser,** | *To cough.* |
| **Espérer,** | *To hope.* | **Traverser,** | *To cross.* |
| **Éviter (de),**[4] | *To avoid.* | **Trouver (à),** | *To find.* |
| **Frapper,** | *To strike.* | **Verser,** | *To pour out.* |
| **Frotter,** | *To rub.* | **Viser,** | *To aim.* |
| **Fumer,** | *To smoke.* | **Voler,** | *To steal; to fly.* |

---

[1] Prepositions which these verbs govern *before another verb.*

[2] To light a candle, etc. — [3] To light a room, etc.

[4] **Å-zhōō-tā′, åm-nā′, bä-yā′, kå-shā′, kä-sā′, kō-zā′, shå-tōō-yā′, krå-shā′, dēh-sē-nā′, ā-kōō-tā′, ā-krä-zā′, an-brå-sā′, an-m′-nā′, an-prun-tā′, an-sĕh-ñā′, ā-vē-tā′, gä-ñā′.**

[5] **Må-nē-ā′, nå-zhā′, plē-yā′, plē-sā′, pŭ-zā′, ō-zā′, kē-tā′, rā-plē-kā′, sōōp-sŏ-nā′, vē-zā′, vŏ-lā′, vĕr-sā′.** — * *I. e.*, to design.

† *Said of persons or animals.* — †† *Said of things.* — ‡ *I. e.*, to consult.

## LIST OF REGULAR VERBS ENDING IN IR.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Accomplir,** | *To accomplish.* | **Fleurir,**[2] | *To bloom.* |
| **Affranchir,** | *To free.* | **Fournir,** | *To furnish.* |
| **Agir,** | *To act.* | **Garnir,** | *To furnish; to trim.* |
| **Agrandir,** | *To enlarge.* | **Gémir,** | *To moan.* |
| **Applaudir,** | *To applaud.* | **Grandir,** | *To grow.* |
| **Assortir,** | *To sort.* | **Haïr,**[3] | *To hate.* |
| **Avertir,** | *To warn.* | **Noircir,** | *To blacken.* |
| **Bâtir,** | *To build.* | **Nourrir,** | *To feed.* |
| **Bénir,**[1] | *To bless.* | **Pâlir,** | *To grow pale.* |
| **Blanchir,** | *To whiten.* | **Périr,** | *To perish.* |
| **Choisir (de),** | *To select.* | **Punir,** | *To punish.* |
| **Élargir,** | *To widen.* | **Réfléchir,** | *To reflect.* |
| **Établir,** | *To establish.* | **Réussir (à),**[4] | *To succeed (in).*[1] |

## LIST OF MOST VERBS ENDING IN RE.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Attendre,** | *To wait.* | **Pendre,** | *To hang.* |
| **Correspondre,** | *To correspond.* | **Perdre,** | *To lose.* |
| **Descendre,** | *To go down.* | **Prétendre,** | *To pretend.* |
| **Défendre (de),** | *To forbid.* | **Répandre,** | *To spread.* |
| **Entendre,** | *To hear.* | **Répondre,** | *To answer.* |
| **Étendre,** | *To extend.* | **Rendre,** | *To give back.* |
| **Fendre,** | *To split.* | **Suspendre,** | *To hang up.* |
| **Fondre,** | *To melt.* | **Tendre,** | *To stretch.* |
| **Mordre,** | *To bite.* | **Tondre,** | *To shear.* |

## LIST OF REFLEXIVE VERBS.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **S'affliger de,**[5] | *To sorrow over.* | **Se marier,** | *To marry.* |
| **S'appliquer à,** | *To apply one's self to.* | **Se méfier de,** | *To distrust.* |
| **S'arrêter,** | *To stop.* | **Se mourir,** | *To be dying; to faint.* |
| **S'attendre à,** | *To expect.* | **Se plaire,** | *To like it (anywhere).* |
| **S'en aller,** | *To go away.* | **Se plaire à,** | *To like (to do, etc).* |
| **Se cacher,** | *To hide.* | **Se piquer,** | *To stick one's self.* |
| **Se conduire,** | *To behave.* | **Se piquer de,** | *To take pride in.* |
| **Se comporter,** | *To behave.* | **Se reposer,**[6] | *To rest.* |
| **Se coucher,** | *To go to bed.* | **Se rappeler,** | *To remember.* |
| **S'ennuyer,**[6] | *To find it tedious.* | **Se souvenir de,** | *To remember.* |
| **Se faire à,** | *To get used to.* | **Se vanter,** | *To boast.* |
| **Se fier à,**[6] | *To trust to.* | **Se vautrer,** | *To wallow.* |

---

[1] **Bénir** has two past participles: **Béni, e,** *blessed;* **bénit, e,** *holy;* as, **de l'eau bénite.** — [2] **Fleurir,** *to bloom,* has two imperfects and present part.: *Regular,* Il fleurissait, etc., *it bloomed,* etc.; fleurissant, *blooming. Irregular:* Je florissais, *I prospered;* florissant, *prospering.*

[3] **Haïr** loses the tréma in the singular of the indicative present and imperative: **Je hais (ĕh), tu hais, il hait (ĕh);** instead of, **je haïs (å-ē′)**, etc.; but, **nous haïssons (å-ē-son′),** etc. *Im.:* **Hais,** *hate* (*thou*).

[4] **Rā-ü-sēr′.** — [5] **Så-flē-zhā′, san-nü-ē-yā′, sŭ fē-ā å, sŭr-pō-zā′.**

## FULL CONJUGATION OF THE TWO AUXILIARIES.

### Avoir, *To have;* Être, *to be.*

### I.—MODE INFINITIF.

**Infinitif Présent:** Avoir, *to have;* Être, *to be.*
**Participe Présent:** Ayant, *having;* Étant, *being.*

### II.—MODE INDICATIF.

#### 1. Présent.

| *I have*, etc. | *I am*, etc. |
|---|---|
| J'ai | Je suis |
| Tu as | Tu es |
| Il (*or* elle) a[1] | Il (*or* elle) est |
| Nous avons | Nous sommes |
| Vous avez | Vous êtes |
| Ils (*or* elles) ont[1] | Ils (*or* elles) sont |

#### 2. Imparfait.

| *I had*, or *used to have*, etc. | *I was*, or *used to be*, etc. |
|---|---|
| J' av ais | J' ét ais |
| Tu av ais | Tu ét ais |
| Il av ait | Il ét ait |
| N. av ions | Nous ét ions |
| V. av iez | Vous ét iez |
| Ils av ai*ent* * | Ils ét ai*ent* * |

#### 3. Prétérit (*Historical Tense*).

| *I had*, etc. | *I was*, etc. |
|---|---|
| J' eu s | Je fu s |
| Tu eu s | Tu fu s |
| Il eu t | Il fu t |
| N. eû mes | Nous fû mes |
| V. eû tes | Vous fû tes |
| Ils eu r*ent* * | Ils fu r*ent* * |

#### 4. Futur (fü-tür′).

| *I shall* or *will have;* | *I shall*, or *will be;* |
|---|---|
| J' au rai | Je se rai |
| Tu au ras | Tu se ras |
| Il au ra | Il se ra |
| N. au rons | N. se rons |
| V. au rez | V. se rez |
| Ils au ront | Ils se ront |

### III.—MODE CONDITIONNEL.

#### 1. Présent.

| *I could, should*, or *would have*, etc. | *I could, should*, or *would be*, etc. |
|---|---|
| J' au rais | Je se rais |
| Tu au rais | Tu se rais |
| Il au rait | Il se rait |
| N. au rions | N. se rions |
| V. au riez | V. se riez |
| Ils au rai*ent* * | Ils se rai*ent* * |

### IV.—MODE IMPÉRATIF.

| | |
|---|---|
| Aie, ĕh'[2] | Sois, sŏ-â[2] |
| Qu'il ait[3] | Qu'il soit[5] |
| Ayons, ĕh-yo*n*′[3] | Soyons, sŏ-â-yo*n*′ |
| Ayez, ĕh-yā′[3] | Soyez, sŏ-â-yā′[4] |
| Qu'ils ai*ent*, ĕh' * | Qu'ils soi*ent*, sŏ-â' * |

### V.—MODE SUBJONCTIF.

#### 1. Présent.

| *That I* (*may*) *have*, etc. | *That I* (*may*) *be*, etc. |
|---|---|
| Que j'aie | Que je sois |
| Que tu aies | Que tu sois |
| Qu'il ait | Qu'il soit |
| Q. nous ayons | Q. nous soyons |
| Q. vous ayez | Q. vous soyez |
| Qu'ils ai*ent* * | Qu'ils soi*ent* * |

#### 2. Imparfait.

| *That I* (*might*) *have;* | *That I* (*might*) *be;* |
|---|---|
| Que j' eu sse[6] | Que je fu sse[7] |
| Que tu eu sses[6] | Que tu fu sses[7] |
| Qu'il eû t[6] | Qu' il fû t[5] |
| Q. nous eu ssions | Q. nous fu ssions |
| Q. vous eu ssiez | Q. vous fu ssiez |
| Qu'ils eu ss*ent* * | Qu'ils fu ss*ent* * |

---

[1] **Elle** and **elles** to be supplied in all subsequent tenses and verbs.

[2] Have (*thou*); Be (*thou*); familiar form.—[3] *Let him have, let us have, have* (*ye*), *let them have.*—[4] *Let him be, let us be, be* (*ye*), *let them be.*

[6] **Üs', üs', ü′, ü-sē-on′, ü-sē-ā′, ŭs'.**—[7] **Füs', füs', fü′, . . . . füs'.**

* **Ent,** 3d pers. plur., is silent. *But, if before a vowel,* **t** *is carried over.*

## TEMPS COMPOSÉS.

### I.—MODE INFINITIF.

**Infinitif Passé:** Avoir eu, *to have had;* Avoir été, *to have been.*
**Part.:** Eu, *had,* Ayant eu, *having had;* Été, *been;* Ayant été.

### II.—MODE INDICATIF.

**5. Passé Indéfini.**

| *I had,* or *have had,* etc. | *I was,* or *have been,* etc. |
|---|---|
| J'ai eu[7] | J'ai été[8] |
| Tu as eu | Tu as été |
| Il a eu | Il a été |
| N. avons eu | N. avons été |
| V. avez eu | V. avez été |
| Ils ont eu[9] | Ils ont été[9] |

**6. Plus-que-parfait.**

| *I had had,* etc. | *I had been,* etc. |
|---|---|
| J'avais eu[10] | J'avais été |
| Tu avais eu | Tu avais été |
| Il avait eu | Il avait été |
| N. avions eu | N. avions été |
| V. aviez eu | V. aviez été |
| Ils avai*ent* eu* | Ils avai*ent* été* |

**7. Passé Antérieur.**[10]

| *I had had,* etc. | *I had been,* etc. |
|---|---|
| J'eus eu[11] | J'eus été |
| Tu eus eu | Tu eus été |
| Il eut eu | Il eut été |
| N. eûmes eu | N. eûmes été |
| V. eûtes eu | V. eûtes été |
| Ils eur*ent* eu* | Ils eur*ent* été* |

**8. Futur Antérieur.**

| *I shall have had;* etc. | *I shall have been;* etc. |
|---|---|
| J'aurai eu | J'aurai été |
| Tu auras eu | Tu auras été |
| Il aura eu | Il aura été |
| N. aurons eu | N. aurons été |
| V. aurez eu | V. aurez été |
| Ils auront eu | Ils auront été |

### III.—MODE CONDITIONNEL.

**2. Passé.**

| *I would* or *should have had,* etc. | *I would* or *should have been,* etc. |
|---|---|
| J' aurais eu | J'aurais été |
| Tu aurais eu | Tu aurais été |
| Il aurait eu | Il aurait été |
| N. aurions eu | N. aurions été |
| V. auriez eu | V. auriez été |
| Ils aurai*ent* eu* | Ils aurai*ent* été* |

### IV.—MODE IMPÉRATIF.

Pratiquement parlant, il n'y a pas de temps composé.

### V.—MODE SUBJONCTIF.

**3. Passé.**

| *That I (may) have had,* etc. | *That I (may) have been,* etc. |
|---|---|
| Que j' aie eu | Que j' aie été |
| Que tu aies eu | Que tu aies été |
| Qu'il ait eu | Qu'il ait été |
| Q. n. ayons eu | Q. n. ayons été |
| Q. v. ayez eu | Q. v. ayez été |
| Qu'ils ai*ent* eu* | Qu'ils ai*ent* été* |

**4. Plus-que-parfait.**

| *That I (might) have had,* etc. | *That I (might) have been,* etc. |
|---|---|
| Que j' eusse eu[11] | Que j' eusse été[11] |
| Que tu eusses eu[12] | Que tu eusses été |
| Qu'il eût eu | Qu'il eût été |
| Q. n. eussions eu[12] | Q. n. eussions été |
| Q. v. eussiez eu | Q. v. eussiez été |
| Qu'ils euss*ent* eu[12] | Qu'ils euss*ent* été* |

---

[7] See p. 499. — [8] **Été** is *invariable.* — [9] This is the *conversational form* of the past; that is to say, the past form most frequently recurring in conversation. — [10] Rarely used. — [11] This is also used (without **que**) as a '2d form' of the conditional. **J'eusse eu,** etc., *I would have had,* etc.; **J'eusse été,** etc., *I would have been,* etc. — [12] **Üs zü', ü-sē-on zü', üs tü'.**

## FULL CONJUGATION OF THE THREE MODEL VERBS.

**Parler, *to speak;* Finir, *to finish;* Vendre, *to sell.***

### I.—MODE INFINITIF.

**Présent :** Parl er, Fin ir, Vend re.

**Passé :** Avoir parlé, Avoir fini, Avoir vendu.

**Part. Présent :** Parl ant, Fin *iss* ant, Vend ant.

**Part. Passé :** Parl é, Fin i, Vend u. Ayant parlé, fini, vendu.

### II.—MODE INDICATIF (mô-din-dē-kâ-tēf′).

**1. Présent** (prā-zan′).

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *I speak*, or *am speaking*, etc. | *I finish*, or *am finishing*, etc. | *I sell*, or *am selling*, |
| Je parl e | Je fin *i* s | Je vend s |
| Tu parl es | Tu fin *i* s | Tu vend s |
| Il parl e | Il fin *i* t | Il vend |
| N. parl ons | N. fin *iss* ons | N. vend ons |
| V. parl ez | V. fin *iss* ez | V. vend ez |
| Ils parl ent | Ils fin *iss* ent | Ils vend ent |

**2. Imparfait** (in-pâr-fĕh′).

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *I spoke*,[1] *was speaking*, or *used to speak*, etc. | *I finished*,[2] *used to finish*, or *was finishing*, etc. | *I sold*,[3] *used to sell*, or *was selling*, etc. |
| Je parl ais | Je fin *iss* ais | Je vend ais |
| Tu parl ais | Tu fin *iss* ais | Tu vend ais |
| Il parl ait | Il fin *iss* ait | Il vend ait |
| N. parl ions | N. fin *iss* ions | N. vend ions |
| V. parl iez | V. fin *iss* iez | V. vend iez |
| Ils parl aient | Ils fin *iss* aient | Ils vend aient |

**3. Prétérit** (prā-tā-rēt′).

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *I spoke*,[4] etc. | *I finished*,[4] etc. | *I sold*,[4] etc. |
| Je parl *a* i | Je fin *i* s | Je vend *i* s |
| Tu parl *a* s | Tu fin *i* s | Tu vend *i* s |
| Il parl *a* | Il fin *i* t | Il vend *i* t |
| N. parl *â* mes | N. fin *î* mes | N. vend *î* mes |
| V. parl *â* tes | V. fin *î* tes | V. vend *î* tes |
| Ils parl *è* rent | Ils fin *i* rent | Ils vend *i* rent |

**4. Futur** (fü-tür′).

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *I shall* or *will speak*, etc. | *I shall* or *will finish*, etc. | *I shall* or *will sell*, etc. |
| Je parl *e* rai | Je fin *i* rai | Je vend rai |
| Tu parl *e* ras | Tu fin *i* ras | Tu vend ras |
| Il parl *e* ra | Il fin *i* ra | Il vend ra |
| N. parl *e* rons | N. fin *i* rons | N. vend rons |
| V. parl *e* rez | V. fin *i* rez | V. vend rez |
| Ils parl *e* ront | Ils fin *i* ront | Ils vend ront |

[1] Or, *I spoke*, when meaning, *I was speaking*, or *I used to speak.*

[2] Or, *I finished*, when meaning, *I was finishing*, or *I used to finish.*

[3] Or, *I sold*, when meaning, *I was selling*, or *I used to sell.*

[4] Historical or narrative form of *I spoke*, etc., *I finished*, etc., *I sold*, etc.

### III—MODE CONDITIONNEL (kon-dē-sē-ō-nĕl′).

#### 1. Présent.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *I should* or *would speak;* | *I should* or *would finish;* | *I should* or *would sell;* |
| Je parl *e* rais | Je fin *i* rais | Je vend rais |
| Tu parl *e* rais | Tu fin *i* rais | Tu vend rais |
| Il parl *e* rait | Il fin *i* rait | Il vend rait |
| N. parl *e* rions | N. fin *i* rions | N. vend rions |
| V. parl *e* riez | V. fin *i* riez | V. vend riez |
| Ils parl *e* raient | Ils fin *i* raient | Ils vend raient |

### IV.—MODE IMPÉRATIF.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Parl e, *Speak (thou);* | Fin *i* s, *Finish (thou);* | Vend s, *Sell (thou);* |
| Qu'il parl e[2] | Qu' il fin *iss* e[2] | Qu' il vend e[2] |
| Parl ons, *Let us speak;* | Fin *iss* ons, *Let us finish;* | Vend ons, *Let us sell;* |
| Parl ez, *Speak (ye);* | Fin *iss* ez, *Finish (ye);* | Vend ez, *Sell (ye);* |
| Qu'ils parl ent[3] | Qu'ils fin *iss* ent[3] | Qu'ils vend ent[3] |

### V.—MODE SUBJONCTIF (süb-zhonk-tēf′).

#### 1. Présent.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *That I (may) speak;* etc. | *That I (may) finish;* etc. | *That I (may) sell;* etc. |
| Que je parl e | Que je fin *iss* e | Que je vend e |
| Que tu parl es | Que tu fin *iss* es | Que tu vend es |
| Qu' il parl e | Qu' il fin *iss* e | Qu' il vend e |
| Qu. n. parl ions | Qu. n. fin *iss* ions | Qu. n. vend ions |
| Qu. v. parl iez | Qu. v. fin *iss* iez | Qu. v. vend iez |
| Qu' ils parl ent | Qu' ils fin *iss* ent. | Qu' ils vend ent |

#### 2. Imparfait.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *That I (might) speak;* etc. | *That I (might) finish;* etc. | *That I (might) sell;* etc |
| Que je parl *a* sse | Que je fin *i* sse | Que je vend *i* sse |
| Que tu parl *a* sses | Que tu fin *i* sses | Que tu vend *i* sses |
| Qu' il parl *â* t | Qu' il fin *î* t | Qu' il vend *î* t |
| Qu. n. parl *a* ssions | Qu. n. fin *i* ssions | Qu. n. vend *i* ssions |
| Qu. v. parl *a* ssiez | Qu. v. fin *i* ssiez | Qu. v. vend *i* ssiez |
| Qu' ils parl *a* ssent | Qu' ils fin *i* ssent | Qu' ils vend *i* ssent |

## TEMPS COMPOSÉS (Tan kon-pō-zā′).

### MODE INDICATIF.

#### 5. Passé Indéfini (*Conversational Tense*).

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *I spoke,*[1] or *have spoken;* | *I finished,*[1] or *h. finished;* | *I sold,*[1] or *have sold;* |
| J' ai parlé * | J' ai fini * | J' ai vendu * |
| Tu as parlé | Tu as fini | Tu as vendu |
| Il a parlé | Il a fini | Il a vendu |
| N. avons parlé | N. avons fini | N. avons vendu |
| V. avez parlé | V. avez fini | V. avez vendu |
| Ils ont parlé | Ils ont fini | Ils ont vendu |

---

1 'Conversational form' of *I spoke*, etc. See p. 497.

2 *Let him speak, finish, sell.* — 3 *Let them speak, finish, sell.*

* For variations of past part. see p. 499.

**6. Plus-que-parfait** (plüs-kŭ-păr-fĕh′).

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *I had spoken*, etc.[1] | *I had finished*, etc.[1] | *I had sold*, etc.[1] |
| J' avais parlé[1] | J' avais fini[1] | J' avais vendu[1] |
| Tu avais parlé | Tu avais fini | Tu avais vendu |
| Il avait parlé | Il avait fini | Il avait vendu |
| N. avions parlé | N. avions fini | N. avions vendu |
| V. aviez parlé | V. aviez fini | V. aviez vendu |
| Ils avaient parlé | Ils avaient fini | Ils avaient vendu |

**7. Passé Antérieur.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *I had spoken*, etc.[2] | *I had finished*, etc.[2] | *I had sold*, etc.[2] |
| J' eus parlé[2] | J' eus fini[2] | J' eus vendu[2] |
| Tu eus parlé | Tu eus fini | Tu eus vendu |
| Il eut parlé | Il eut fini | Il eut vendu |
| N. eûmes parlé | N. eûmes fini | N. eûmes vendu |
| V. eûtes parlé | V. eûtes fini | V. eûtes vendu |
| Ils eurent parlé | Ils eurent fini | Ils eurent vendu |

**8. Futur Antérieur.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *I sh.* or *will have spoken;* | *I sh.* or *w. have finished;* | *I shall* or *will have sold;* |
| J' aurai parlé | J' aurai fini | J' aurai vendu |
| Tu auras parlé | Tu auras fini | Tu auras vendu |
| Il aura parlé | Il aura fini | Il aura vendu |
| N. aurons parlé | N. aurons fini | N. aurons vendu |
| V. aurez parlé | V. aurez fini | V. aurez vendu |
| Ils auront parlé | Ils auront fini | Ils auront vendu |

## MODE CONDITIONNEL.

**2. Passé.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *I should, could,* or *would have spoken*, etc. | *I should, could,* or *would have finished*, etc. | *I should, could,* or *would have sold*, etc. |
| J' aurais parlé | J' aurais fini | J' aurais vendu |
| Tu aurais parlé | Tu aurais fini | Tu aurais vendu |
| Il aurait parlé | Il aurait fini | Il aurait vendu |
| N. aurions parlé | N. aurions fini | N. aurions vendu |
| V. auriez parlé | V. auriez fini | V. auriez vendu |
| Ils auraient parlé | Ils auraient fini | Ils auraient vendu |

## MODE SUBJONCTIF.

**3. Subjonctif Passé.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *That I (may) have spoken;* | *That I (may) have finished;* | *That I (may) have sold;* |
| Que j'aie parlé | Que j' aie fini | Que j'aie vendu |
| Que tu aies parlé | Que tu aies fini | Que tu aies vendu |
| Qu'il ait parlé | Qu'il ait fini | Qu'il ait vendu |
| Q. n. ayons parlé | Q. n. ayons fini | Q. n. ayons vendu |
| Q. v. ayez parlé | Q. v. ayez fini | Q. v. ayez vendu |
| Qu'ils aient parlé | Qu'ils aient fini | Qu'ils aient vendu |

---

[1] Most frequent form. — [2] Very rare.

[3] **Impératif:** Aie parlé, fini, vendu etc. Practically, not used.

[4] Also used (without **que**) for the '2d form' of the conditional. *Rare.*

**4. Plus-que-parfait.**

| *That I (might) have spoken;* | | *Th. I (might) h. finished;* | | *That I (might) have sold;* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Que j' eusse | parlé* | Que j' eusse | fini* | Que j' eusse | vendu* |
| Que tu eusses | parlé | Que tu eusses | fini | Que tu eusses | vendu |
| Qu'il eût | parlé | Qu'il eût | fini | Qu'il eût | vendu |
| Q. n. eussions | parlé | Q. n. eussions | fini | Q. n. eussions | vendu |
| Q. v. eussiez | parlé | Q. v. eussiez | fini | Q. v. eussiez | vendu |
| Qu'ils eussent | parlé* | Qu'ils eussent | fini* | Qu'ils eussent | vendu* |

**CONJUGATE:**

After the model verb **Parler:** ***Aimer, porter, estimer, préférer*** (see p. 500).

After the model verb **Finir:** ***Accomplir, bâtir, réussir.***

After the model verb **Vendre:** ***Attendre, rendre, fondre.***

**TABLE OF COMMON VERB ENDINGS.**

From the above paradigms, it will be seen that ***for all regular verbs,*** whether ending in **er, ir,** or **re,** there is but ***one single set of terminations,*** for any one tense. Thus:

| *Indicative Present.* | *Imperfect Indic.* | *Preterit.* | *Future.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| — | ais | — | rai |
| — | ais | s | ras |
| — | ait | — | ra |
| ons | ions | mes | rons |
| ez | iez | tes | rez |
| ent | aient | rent | ront |

| *Conditional.* | *Imperative.* | *Subj. Present.* | *Imperfect Subj.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| rais | — | e | sse |
| rais | — | es | sses |
| rait | — | e | t |
| rions | ons | ions | ssions |
| riez | ez | iez | ssiez |
| raient | ent | ent | ssent |

*Observe* also that these endings are likewise the endings of ***all irregular verbs*** (with rare exceptions in the case of the *indicative present* and *imperat.*). This, if properly taken in, will be seen to simplify *a hundred-fold* the question of verb terminations.

Notice, however,—(1) That all regular verbs in **er** introduce an *e* between the stem and the termination of the *Future* and *Conditional:* Je parl *e* rai, je frapp *e* rai, je travaill *e* rais, etc.

(2) That all regular verbs in **ir** introduce *i* between the stem and termination of the *Indicative Present, Preterit,* and *Future.*

(3) That all regular verbs in **ir** introduce *iss* between the stem and termination of the *Indicative Present, Imperfect,* and *Present Subjunctive.*

***All irregular verbs*** in **ir** omit these inserted letters.

## VERBES RÉFLÉCHIS.—MODÈLE: Se Dépêcher.

Reflexive verbs are those in which the action is *reflected* upon the subject, as: To flatter *one's self*, I wash *myself*, etc. Many verbs, however, are reflexive in French, which are not so in English. For instance, ***Se* dépêcher** (lit.: *To hasten one's self*), Eng.: *To hasten*:

### SE DÉPÊCHER, *to make haste.**

**Indicatif Présent.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Je* | ***me*** | dépêche,[1] | |
| *Tu* | ***te*** | dépêches, | |
| *Il* | ***se*** | dépêche, | *I am hurry-* |
| *Nous* | ***nous*** | dépêchons, | *ing*, etc.[2] |
| *Vous* | ***vous*** | dépêchez, | |
| *Ils* | ***se*** | dépêch*ent*,[2] | |

**Imparfait.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Je* | ***me*** | dépêchais, | |
| *Tu* | ***te*** | dépêchais, | |
| *Il* | ***se*** | dépêchait, | *I was hurry-* |
| *Nous* | ***nous*** | dépêchions, | *ing*, etc. |
| *Vous* | ***vous*** | dépêchiez, | |
| *Ils* | ***se*** | dépêchai*ent*, | |

**Prétérit.**

*Je **me*** dépêchai, *I hastened*, etc.

**Futur.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Je* | ne ***me*** | dépêcherai | pas, | |
| *Tu* | ne ***te*** | dépêcheras | pas, | *I shall* |
| *Il* | ne ***se*** | dépêchera | pas, | *not* |
| *Nous* | ne ***nous*** | dépêcherons | pas, | *hurry*, |
| *Vous* | ne ***vous*** | dépêcherez | pas, | etc. |
| *Ils* | ne ***se*** | dépêcheront | pas, | |

**Conditionnel Présent.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ***Me*** | dépêcherais-*je?* | |
| ***Te*** | dépêcherais-*tu?* | *Would I* |
| ***Se*** | dépêcherait-*il?* | *hurry?* |
| ***Nous*** | dépêcherions-*nous?* | etc. |
| ***Vous*** | dépêcheriez-*vous?* | |
| ***Se*** | dépêcheraient-*ils?*[3] | |

**Impératif.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Affirm. | Dépêche-***toi***, | *Hurry (thou).* |
| | Dépêchons-***nous***, | *Let us hurry*, etc. |
| | Dépêchez-***vous***, | *Hurry (ye).* |
| Neg. | Ne ***te*** dépêche pas, | *Do not* |
| | Ne ***nous*** dépêchons pas, | *hurry*, |
| | Ne ***vous*** dépêchez pas, | etc. |

**Subjonctif Présent.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Que *je* | ***me*** | dépêche, | |
| Que *tu* | ***te*** | dépêches, | |
| Qu' *il* | ***se*** | dépêche, | *That I (may)* |
| Que *nous* | ***nous*** | dépêchions, | *hurry*, etc. |
| Que *vous* | ***vous*** | dépêchiez, | |
| Qu' *ils* | ***se*** | dépêch*ent*, | |

**Imparfait.**

Q. *je **me*** dépêchasse, *That I (might)*, etc.

### Temps Composés.

**Passé Indéfini.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Je* | ***me*** | suis | dépêché, | *I hurried*, |
| *Tu* | ***t'*** | es | dépêché, | *have* |
| *Il* | ***s'*** | est | dépêché, | *hurried*, |
| *Nous* | ***nous*** | sommes | dépêchés, | or *did* |
| *Vous* | ***vous*** | êtes | dépêchés, | *hurry*, |
| *Ils* | ***se*** | sont | dépêchés, | etc. |

**Passé Indéf.** (Interr. form).

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ***Me*** | suis-*je* | dépêché? | |
| ***T'*** | es-*tu* | dépêché? | *Did I* |
| ***S'*** | est-*il* | dépêché? | *hurry?* |
| ***Nous*** | sommes-*nous* | dépêchés? | etc. |
| ***Vous*** | êtes-*vous* | dépêchés? | |
| ***Se*** | sont-*ils* | dépêchés? | |

---

[1] Lit.: *I hasten myself*, etc.— [2] *Do I hasten* = Est-ce que *je **me*** dépêche? ***Te*** dépêches-*tu?* ***Se*** dépêche-t-*il?* etc. *I do not hasten*, etc. = *Je* ne ***me*** dépêche pas; *Tu* ne ***te*** dépêches pas, etc. *Do I not hasten?* etc. = Est-ce que *je* ne ***me*** dépêche pas? Ne ***te*** dépêches-*tu* pas? etc.

[3] *Would I not hurry?* etc. = Ne ***me*** dépêcherais-*je* pas? Ne ***te*** dépêcherais-*tu* pas? etc.— * Se dépêchant, me dépêchant, etc., *making haste.*

| **Negative form.** | **Negative-interrogative.** |
|---|---|
| *Je* ne ***me*** suis pas dépêché, | Ne ***me*** suis-*je* pas dépêché? |
| *Tu* ne ***t'***es pas dépêché, etc. | Ne ***t'***es-*tu* pas dépêché? etc. |

Conjugate the following three tenses in the same manner:

**1. Plus-que-parfait.**

*Je* ***m'***étais dépêché, *I had hurried*, etc. ***M'***étais-*je* dépêché? etc.
*Je* ne ***m'***étais pas dépêché, *I had not*, etc. Ne ***m'***étais-*je* pas dépêché? etc.

| **2. Futur.** | **3. Conditionnel.** |
|---|---|
| *Je* ***me*** serai dépêché, etc. | *Je* ***me*** serais dépêché, etc. |

**Subjonctif (Passé et Plus-que-parfait).**

Que *je* ***me*** sois dépêché, *That I (may) have hurried.* Que *je* ***me*** fusse dépêché.

NOTE. — The reflexive pronouns (**me,** *myself* or *to myself;* **te,** *thyself*, or *to thyself;* **se,** *himself, herself, one's self;* also, *to himself*, etc.; **nous,** *ourselves*, or *to ourselves;* **vous,** *yourself*, or *to yourself;* **se,** *themselves*, or *to themselves*) are really pronoun-*objects*, and as such *always* placed *immediately* before the verb (except with the imperative-*affirmative;* which see above). But the *pronoun-subjects* (**je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles**) change their place in interrogative forms and come after the verb (see Conditional, above, and the Past Indefinite, p. 510).

NOTE also that in the negative forms of these verbs, **ne** comes in its usual place, *just before* the pron.-*objects* (that is, *just* before **me, te,** etc.).

**Agreement of Past Participle of Reflexive Verbs.** — Although conjugated with **être,** the past participle of these verbs follow the 2d rule (see p. 99), that is, they agree with the *direct-object*, if that object precedes the verb.

This will appear rational, if we remember that **être** with these verbs has really the force of **avoir.** Ex.:

*Elle* **s'**est promené**e,** *She took a walk* (lit.: She *herself* has promenaded).
*Ils* ***se*** sont dépêché**s,** *They hurried* (lit.: They *themselves* hurried).
*Elles* ***se*** sont dépêché**es,** *They hurried* (lit.: They *themselves* hurried).

Notice, that if the past part. of reflexive verbs appears often to agree with the *subject*, it is only when the subject and direct-object actually refer to the same person or thing. Ex.:

*Elle* **s'**est coupé**e,** *She has cut herself* (lit.: She *herself* has cut). *But:*
*Elle* **s'**est coupé la main, *She cut her hand* (lit.: She *to-herself* has cut the hand).

**Coupé** is made feminine in the first, because agreeing with the direct-object *herself* (**s'**). It remains invariable in the second, because the direct-object, **la main,** does *not* precede it.

**Reciprocal Use of Reflexive Verbs.** — Sometimes, the reflexive pronouns **se, nous, vous,** have the meaning of *each other, one another:* Ils s'aiment, *They like each other;* Ils se font mal, *They hurt one another.*

## PASSIVE VERBS.

The only passive forms in French are those made up of the past participle of any active verb (aimer; flatter; estimer; haïr; etc.), and the various tenses of the verb **être.** Thus:

### ÊTRE AIMÉ, *to be loved.*

**Indic. Présent.**

*I am loved*, etc.
**Je suis aimé** [1]
**Tu es aimé**
**Il est aimé**
**N. sommes aimés** [1]
**V. êtes aimés** *
**Ils sont aimés**

**Imparfait.**

*I was loved*, etc.
**J' étais aimé**
**Tu étais aimé** [1]
**Il était aimé**
**N. étions aimés** [1]
**V. étiez aimés** *
**Ils étaient aimés**

**Prétérit.**

*I was loved*, etc.
**Je fus aimé** [4]
**Tu fus aimé, etc.**

**Futur.**

*I shall be loved*, etc.
**Je serai aimé** [1]
**Tu seras aimé, etc.**

**Conditionnel.**

*I would be loved*, etc.
**Je serais aimé** [1]
**Tu serais aimé**
**Il serait aimé**
**N. serions aimés** [1]
**V. seriez aimés** *
**Ils seraient aimés**

**Impératif.**

*Be thou loved?* etc.
**Sois aimé** [1]
**Soyons aimés** [1]
**Soyez aimés** [1] *

**Subjonc. Présent.**

*That I (may) be loved*, etc.
**Que je sois aimé** [1]
**Que tu sois aimé**
**Qu' il soit aimé**
**Que n. soyons aimés** [1]
**Que v. soyez aimés** *
**Que ils soient aimés**

**Imparfait du Subj.**

*That I (might) be loved*, etc.
**Que je fusse aimé, etc.**

### Temps Composés.

**Infinitif.**

*To have been loved.*
**Avoir été aimé** [1]

**Participe.**

*Having been loved.*
**Ayant été aimé** [1]

**Passé Indéfini.**

*I was* or *have been loved.*
**J'ai été aimé** [1]

**Plus-que-parfait.**

*I had been loved*, etc.
**J'avais été aimé, etc.** [1]

**Passé Antérieur.**

*I had been loved*, etc.
**J'eus été aimé, etc.** [1]

**Futur Antérieur.**

*I shall have been loved.*
**J'aurai été aimé, etc.** [1]

**Conditionnel Passé.**

*I would have been loved*, etc.
**J'aurais été aimé, etc.** [1]

**Subjonctif Passé.**

*That I (may) h. been loved.*
**Q. j'aie été aimé, etc.** [1]

**Plus-que-parfait.**

*I (might) have been loved.*
**Q. j'eusse été aimé, etc.** [1]

**Complement of Passive Verbs.**—Passive verbs (generally) take **de** before their complement, if they express a *sentiment* or *passion.* They take **par,** if expressing an action of the *body* or *mind.* Ex.: **Cet homme est estimé *de* tout le monde.** But: **Carthage fut détruite *par* les Romains; Ce livre a été écrit par cet auteur.**

**Use of the Active and Passive Verbs contrasted.**—The French omit the use of the passive voice wherever the active form (with **on** or **ils**) can as well be used. Ex.:

*It is said we will have war* = ***On* dit que nous aurons la guerre.**
*The eclipse can be seen* = ***On* pourra voir l'éclipse.**

---

[1] See p. 499.— * If **vous** refers to *one* person, the past p. takes no **s.**

## DISTINCTION IN THE USE OF AVOIR AND ÊTRE.

The auxiliary **avoir** is used with all ***active verbs,*** and nearly all ***neuter verbs.*** (See below.)

The auxiliary **être** is used with all ***passive verbs*** (see p. 512), with all ***reflexive verbs,*** and with the following

### Twelve Neuter Verbs:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. **Aller,** | *to go.* | 5. **Retourner,** | *to go back.*[2] | 9. **Arriver,** | *to arrive.* |
| 2. **Rester,** | *to stay.* | 6. **Partir,**[3] | *to start.* | 10. **Monter,**[5] | *to go up.* |
| 3. **Venir,** | *to come.* | 7. **Entrer,**[4] | *to come in.* | 11. **Descendre,**[5] | *to come down.* |
| 4. **Revenir,**[1] | *to come back.* | 8. **Sortir,** | *to go out.* | 12. **Tomber,**[5] | *to fall.** |

Thus: *I went* or *I have gone* = Je suis allé (I *am* gone).
I would *have* stayed = Je serais resté (I would-*be* stayed).

### MODELS OF CONJUGATION.

| 1. Passé Indéfini. | 3. Futur. | 5. Subjonctif Passé. |
|---|---|---|
| *I went* or *have gone*, etc. | *I shall* or *will have gone.* | *That I (may) have stayed.* |
| **Je suis allé †** | **Je serai parti †** | **Q. je sois resté †** |
| **Tu es allé** | **Tu seras parti** | **Q. tu sois resté** |
| **Il est allé** | **Il sera parti** | **Qu' il soit resté** |
| **N. sommes allés ‡** | **N. serons partis ‡** | **Q. n. soyons restés ‡** |
| **V. êtes allés §** | **V. serez partis §** | **Q. v. soyez restés §** |
| **Ils sont allés** | **Ils seront partis** | **Qu' ils soient restés** |

| 2. Plus-que-parfait. | 4. Conditionnel. | 6. Plus-que-parfait. |
|---|---|---|
| *I had gone*, etc. | *I would have come*, etc. | *That I (might) h. arrived.* |
| **J' étais allé †** | **Je serais venu †** | **Q. je fusse arrivé †** |
| **Tu étais allé** | **Tu serais venu** | **Q. tu fusses arrivé** |
| **Il était allé** | **Il serait venu** | **Qu' il fût arrivé** |
| **N. étions allés ‡** | **N. serions venus ‡** | **Q. n. fussions arrivés ‡** |
| **V. étiez allés §** | **V. seriez venus §** | **Q. v. fussiez arrivés §** |
| **Ils étaient allés** | **Ils seraient venus** | **Qu' ils fussent arrivés** |

---

[1] Also the other compounds of **venir: Devenir,** *to become;* **Parvenir,** *to succeed.* — [2] **Revenir** = *to return,* in the sense of: To *come* back. **Retourner** = *to return,* in the sense of: To *go* back.

[3] Also, *to leave, to go away.* — [4] Also, **rentrer,** *to come in again.*

[5] **Monter, descendre,** and **tomber** *sometimes* take **avoir,** when used in a more active sense.

* Also **naître,** *to be born,* or **mourir,** *to die.* — **Je suis né** = I *was* born; **Il est né,** He *was* born. — **Il est mort (mor); Elle est morte (mor'-t')** = *He died; She died.* Also, *He is dead; She is dead.*

† Or **allée, partie, venue, restée, arrivée.** See page 499.

‡ Or, **allées, parties, venues,** etc. — § See note *, page 512.

## CONJUGAISON DES

| Infinitif. | Indic. Prés. | Imparfait. | Prétérit. | Passé Indéf. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *To go.* | *I go* or *am going.* | *I was going.*[1] | *I went.*[7] | *I went.*[8] |
| ——— | je vais (vĕh) | j'allais[1] | j'allai | je suis allé[4] |
| **aller** | tu vas (vâ) | tu allais | tu allas (â-lâ′) | tu es allé |
| allant | il va " | il allait | il alla (â-lâ′) | il est allé |
| allé | nous allons | nous allions | nous allâmes | n. sommes allés[4] |
| être allé[4] | vous allez | vous alliez | vous allâtes | v. êtes allés * |
| étant allé | Ils vont (von′) | ils allaient | ils allèrent | ils sont allés |
| *To go away.* | *I am going away.* | *I was going away.*[2] | *I went away.*[7] | *I went away.*[8] |
| ——— | je m'en vais | je m'en allais[9] | je m'en allai | je m'en suis allé |
| **s'en aller** | tu t'en vas | tu t'en allais | tu t'en allas | tu t'en es allé |
| s'en allant, | il s'en va | il s'en allait | il s'en alla | il s'en est allé |
| m'en allant, etc. | n. n. en allons[9] | n. n. en allions | n. n. en allâmes | n. n. en sommes allés * |
| s'en être allé | v. v. en allez | v. v. en alliez | v. v. en allâtes | v. v. en êtes " |
| s'en étant allé | ils s'en vont[9] | ils s'en allaient | ils s'en allèrent | ils s'en sont " |
| *To send.* | *I send.* | *I used to send.* | *I sent.*[7] | *I sent.*[8] |
| ——— | j'envoie | j'envoyais | j'envoyai | j'ai envoyé[4] |
| **envoyer** | tu envoies | tu envoyais | tu envoyas | tu as envoyé |
| envoyant | il envoie | il envoyait | il envoya | il a envoyé |
| envoyé | n. envoyons | n. envoyions | n. envoyâmes | n. avons envoyé[4] |
| avoir envoyé | v. envoyez | v. envoyiez | v. envoyâtes | v. avez envoyé |
| ayant envoyé | ils envoient | ils envoyaient | ils envoyèrent | ils ont envoyé |
| *To sleep.* | *I sleep.* | *I was sleeping.* | *I slept.*[7] | *I slept.*[8] |
| ——— | je dors | je dormais[3] | je dormis | j'ai dormi |
| **dormir** | tu dors | tu dormais | tu dormis | tu as dormi |
| dormant | il dort | il dormait | il dormit | il a dormi |
| dormi | n. dormons | n. dormions | n. dormîmes | n. avons dormi |
| avoir dormi | v. dormez | v. dormiez | v. dormîtes | v. avez dormi |
| ayant dormi | ils dorment | ils dormaient | ils dormirent | ils ont dormi |
| *To open.* | *I open.* | *I was opening.* | *I opened.*[7] | *I opened.*[8] |
| ——— | j'ouvre | j'ouvrais[3] | j' ouvris | j'ai ouvert[4] |
| **ouvrir** | tu ouvres | tu ouvrais | tu ouvris | tu as ouvert |
| ouvrant | il ouvre | il ouvrait | il ouvrit | il a ouvert |
| ouv*ert*[10] | n. ouvrons | n. ouvrions | n. ouvrîmes | n. avons ouvert[4] |
| avoir ouvert[5] | v. ouvrez | v. ouvriez | v. ouvrîtes | v. avez ouvert |
| ayant ouvert | ils ouvrent | ils ouvraient | ils ouvrirent | ils ont ouvert |
| *To start; to go.* | *I 'am going';* | *I was going away.* | *I started.*[7] | *I went away.*[8] |
| ——— | je pars (pâr) | je partais[3] | je partis | je suis[6] parti[4] |
| **partir** | tu pars " | tu partais | tu partis | tu es parti |
| partant | il part " | il partait | il partit | il est parti |
| parti | n. partons | n. partions | n. partîmes | n. sommes partis[4] |
| être parti[6] | v. partez | v. partiez | v. partîtes | v. êtes partis * |
| étant parti[6] | ils partent | ils partaient | ils partirent | ils sont[6] partis |

[1] Or, *I used to go.* — [2] Or, *I used to go away;* or, *I went away.*

[3] Or, *I used to sleep;* or, *to open;* or, *to start.* — [4] See page 499.

[5] Observe that the past participle of all verbs in **rir** (as **souffrir, couvrir, offrir,** etc.) end in **ert.** Ex.: *I covered,* j'ai couv**ert**; *I suffered,* j'ai souff**ert.**

[6] See page 513. — [7] *Historical* or *narrative form.* — [8] *Conversational form.*

[9] **Nōō nōō zan-nâ-lon′; ēl san von′; zhŭ man nâ-lĕh′.**

[10] **ŌŌ-vĕr′.** — * If **vous** refers to one person only, the past part. takes no **s**.

## VERBES MODÈLES IRRÉGULIERS.

| **Futur.** | **Conditionnel.** | **Impératif.** | **Subj. Prés.** | **Imparfait.** |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *I will go.* | *I would go.* | *Go (thou), etc.* | *That I (may) go.* | *That I (might) go.* |
| **j'irai** | **j'irais** | — | **que j'aille** [11] | **que j'allasse** [12] |
| **tu iras** | **tu irais** | **va** | **que tu ailles** | **que tu allasses** |
| **il ira** | **il irait** | **qu'il aille** | **qu'il aille** | **qu'il allât** |
| **nous irons** | **nous irions** | **allons** | **q. nous allions** [11] | **q. n. allassions** |
| **vous irez** | **vous iriez** | **allez** | **q. vous alliez** | **q. v. allassiez** |
| **ils iront** | **ils iraient** | **qu'ils aillent** | **qu'ils aillent** [11] | **qu'ils allassent** [12] |
| *I will go away.* | *I would go away.* | *Go (thou) away.* | *That I (may) —.* | *That I (might) —.* |
| **je m'en irai** | **je m'en irais** | — | **q. je m'en aille** [15] | **q. je m'en allasse** |
| **tu t'en iras** | **tu t'en irais** | **va-t'en** [14] | **q. tu t'en ailles** | **q. tu t'en allasses** |
| **il s'en ira** | **il s'en irait** | **qu'il s'en aille** | **qu'il s'en aille** | **qu'il s'en allât** |
| **n. n. en irons** [13] | **n. n. en irions** | **allons-nous en** | **q. n. n. en allions** | **q. n. n. en allassions** |
| **v. v. en irez** | **v. v. en iriez** | **allez-vous en** | **q. v. v. en alliez** | **q. v. v. en allassiez** |
| **ils s'en iront** | **ils s'en iraient** | **q.'ils s'en aillent** | **qu'ils s'en aillent** [15] | **qu'ils s'en allassent** |
| *I will send.* | *I would send.* | *Send (thou), etc.* | *That I (may) —.* | *That I (might) —.* |
| **j'enverrai** [16] | **j'enverrais** | — | **que j'envoie** | **que j'envoyasse** [17] |
| **tu enverras** | **tu enverrais** | **envoie** | **que tu envoies** | **que tu envoyasses** |
| **il enverra** | **il enverrait** | **qu'il envoie** | **qu'il envoie** | **qu'il envoyât** |
| **n. enverrons** | **n. enverrions** | **envoyons** | **q. n. envoyions** | **q. n. envoyassions** |
| **v. enverrez** | **v. enverriez** | **envoyez** | **q. v. envoyiez** | **q. v. envoyassiez** |
| **ils enverront** | **ils enverraient** | **qu'ils envoient** | **qu'ils envoient** | **qu'ils envoyassent** |
| *I will sleep.* | *I would sleep.* | *Sleep (thou).* | *That I (may) —.* | *That I (might) —.** |
| **je dormirai** | **je dormirais** | — | **que je dorme** | **que je dormisse** |
| **tu dormiras** | **tu dormirais** | **dors** | **que tu dormes** | **que tu dormisses** |
| **il dormira** | **il dormirait** | **qu'il dorme** | **qu'il dorme** | **qu'il dormît** |
| **n. dormirons** | **n. dormirions** | **dormons** | **q. n. dormions** | **q. n. dormissions** |
| **v. dormirez** | **v. dormiriez** | **dormez** | **q. v. dormiez** | **q. v. dormissiez** |
| **ils dormiront** | **ils dormiraient** | **qu'ils dorment** | **qu'ils dorment** | **qu'ils dormissent** |
| *I will open.* | *I would open.* | *Open (thou).* | *That I (may) —.* | *That I (might) —.* |
| **j'ouvrirai** | **j'ouvrirais** | — | **que j'ouvre** | **que j'ouvrisse** |
| **tu ouvriras** | **tu ouvrirais** | **ouvre** | **que tu ouvres** | **que tu ouvrisses** |
| **il ouvrira** | **il ouvrirait** | **qu'il ouvre** | **qu'il ouvre** | **qu'il ouvrît** |
| **n. ouvrirons** | **n. ouvririons** | **ouvrons** | **q. n. ouvrions** | **que n. ouvrissions** |
| **v. ouvrirez** | **v. ouvririez** | **ouvrez** | **q. v. ouvriez** | **que v. ouvrissiez** |
| **ils ouvriront** | **ils ouvriraient** | **qu'ils ouvrent** | **qu'ils ouvrent** | **qu'ils ouvrissent** |
| *I'll start or go.* | *I would start.* | *Go; Start, etc.* | *T. I (may) start.* | *That I (might) —.** |
| **je partirai** | **je partirais** | — | **que je parte** | **que je partisse** |
| **tu partiras** | **tu partirais** | **pars** | **que tu partes** | **que tu partisses** |
| **il partira** | **il partirait** | **qu'il parte** | **qu'il parte** | **qu'il partît** |
| **n. partirons** | **n. partirions** | **partons** | **q. n. partions** | **q. n. partissions** |
| **v. partirez** | **v. partiriez** | **partez** | **q. v. partiez** | **q. v. partissiez** |
| **ils partiront** | **ils partiraient** | **qu'ils partent** | **qu'ils partent** | **qu'ils partissent** |

11 **Zhâ'-y'; â-lĕ-on'; zâ'-y'.** — 12 **Zhâ-lâs'; â-lâs'.** — 13 **Noo noo-zan-nē-ron'.**

14 *Negative:* Ne t'en va pas; ne nous en allons pas; ne vous en allez pas.

15 **Man-nâ'-y'. . . . . San-nâ'-y'.** — 16 **Zhan-vĕh-rā'.** — 17 **Zhan-vô-â-yâs'.**

* Conjugate like **Dormir** and **Partir: Sortir, Sentir** (and their compounds). **Mentir,** *to lie;* **Servir,** *to serve;* **Se servir,** *to make use of, to use.* **Ex.:** Je sors, je sens, je mens, je me sers; n. sortons, n. sentons, n. mentons, etc.

| Infinitif. | Indic. Prés. | Imparfait. | Prétérit. | Passé Indéf. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *To come*, etc. | *I am coming.* | *I was coming.* | *I came.* | *I came.* |
| ——— | je viens (vĕ-in′) | je venais | je vins (vin′) | je suis venu |
| **venir** * | tu viens " | tu venais | tu vins " | tu es venu |
| venant (vŭ-nan′) | il vient " | il venait | il vint " | il est venu |
| venu | n. venons | n. venions | n. vînmes † | n. sommes } venus |
| être venu | v. venez | v. veniez | v. vîntes (vin′-t′) | v. êtes } venus |
| étant venu | ils viennent | ils venaient | ils vinrent † | ils sont } venus |
| *To receive*, etc. | *I receive.* | *I used to receive.* | *I received.* | *I (have) received.* |
| ——— | je reçois (rŭ-sŏ-å′) | je recevais | je reçus | j'ai reçu |
| **recevoir** ‡ | tu reçois " | tu recevais | tu reçus | tu as reçu |
| recevant | il reçoit " | il recevait | il reçut | il a reçu |
| reçu (rŭ-sü′) | n. recevons | n. recevions | n. reçûmes | n. avons reçu |
| avoir reçu | v. recevez | v. receviez | v. reçûtes | v. avez reçu |
| ayant reçu | ils reçoivent | ils recevaient | ils reçurent | ils ont reçu |
| *To owe*, etc. | *I owe*, or *have to*. | *I owed*, or *had to*. | *I had to*, etc. | *I (have) had to*, etc. |
| ——— | je dois | je devais | je dus | j'ai dû |
| **devoir** | tu dois | tu devais | tu dus | tu as dû |
| devant | il doit | il devait | il dut | il a dû |
| dû (dü) | n. devons | n. devions | n. dûmes | n. avons dû |
| avoir dû | v. devez | v. deviez | v. dûtes | v. avez dû |
| ayant dû | ils doivent | ils devaient | ils durent | ils ont dû |
| *To be able*, etc. | *I can.* | *I could.* | *I was able.* | *I was able.* |
| ——— | je peux, *or* puis | je pouvais | je pus | j'ai pu |
| **pouvoir** | tu peux (pû) | tu pouvais | tu pus | tu as pu |
| pouvant | il peut " | il pouvait | il put | il a pu |
| pu (*been able*) | n. pouvons | n. pouvions | n. pûmes | n. avons pu |
| avoir pu | v. pouvez | v. pouviez | v. pûtes | v. avez pu |
| ayant pu | ils peuvent (pŭv') | ils pouvaient | ils purent | ils ont pu |
| *To know*, etc. | *I know.* | *I knew; used to —.* | *I knew.* | *I (have) known.* |
| ——— | je sais | je savais | je sus | j'ai su |
| **savoir** | tu sais | tu savais | tu sus | tu as su |
| sachant | il sait | il savait | il sut | il a su |
| su | n. savons | n. savions | n. sûmes | n. avons su |
| avoir su | v. savez | v. saviez | v. sûtes | v. avez su |
| ayant su | ils savent | ils savaient | ils surent | ils ont su |
| *To see*, etc. | *I see.* | *I saw; used to see.* | *I saw.* | *I (have) seen.* |
| ——— | je vois | je voyais | je vis | j'ai vu |
| **voir** | tu vois | tu voyais | tu vis | tu as vu |
| voyant | il voit | il voyait | il vit | il a vu |
| vu | n. voyons | n. voyions | n. vîmes | n. avons vu |
| avoir vu | v. voyez | v. voyiez | v. vîtes | v. avez vu |
| ayant vu | ils voient | ils voyaient | ils virent | ils ont vu |
| *To wish; want.* | *I want, I wish.* | *I wanted.* | *I wished.* | *I (have) wished.* |
| ——— | je veux (vû) | je voulais | je voulus | j'ai voulu |
| **vouloir** | tu veux " | tu voulais | tu voulus | tu as voulu |
| voulant | il veut " | il voulait | il voulut | il a voulu |
| voulu | n. voulons | n. voulions | n. voulûmes | n. avons voulu |
| avoir voulu | v. voulez | v. vouliez | v. voulûtes | v. avez voulu |
| ayant voulu | ils veulent (vŭl') | ils voulaient | ils voulurent | ils ont voulu |

* Like **venir: Devenir,** *to become;* and oth. comp'ds. — † **Vin′-m'; vin′-r'.**
‡ Like **recevoir (rŭ-sŭ-vŏ-år′): Apercevoir,** *to perceive;* **Concevoir,** etc.

| Futur. | Conditionnel. | Impératif. | Subj. Prés. | Imparfait. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *I'll come.* | *I would come.* | *Come (thou)*, etc. | *That I (may)* —. | *That I (might)* —. |
| je viendrai † | je viendrais | — | que je vienne † | que je vinsse † |
| tu viendras | tu viendrais | viens | que tu viennes † | que tu vinsses † |
| il viendra | il viendrait | qu'il vienne | qu'il vienne | qu'il vînt (vin) |
| n. viendrons | n. viendrions | venons | que n. venions † | q. n. vinssions |
| v. viendrez | v. viendriez | venez | que v. veniez | q. v. vinssiez |
| ils viendront | ils viendraient | qu'ils viennent | qu'ils viennent † | qu'ils vinssent † |
| *I'll receive.* | *I would receive.* | *Receive (thou).* | *That I (may)* —. | *That I (might)* —. |
| je recevrai | je recevrais | — | q. je reçoive | q. je reçusse |
| tu recevras | tu recevrais | reçois | q. tu reçoives | q. tu reçusses |
| il recevra | il recevrait | qu'il reçoive | qu'il reçoive | qu'il reçût |
| n. recevrons | n. recevrions | recevons | q. n. recevions | q. n. reçussions |
| v. recevrez | v. recevriez | recevez | q. v. receviez | q. v. reçussiez |
| ils recevront | ils recevraient | qu'ils reçoivent | qu'ils reçoivent | qu'ils reçussent |
| *I'll owe* or *h. to.* | *I w'd owe; I ought.* | *Owe (thou)*, etc. | *T. I (may) h. to.* | *T. I (might) h. to.* |
| je devrai | je devrais | — | q. je doive | q. je dusse |
| tu devras | tu devrait | dois | q. tu doives | q. tu dusses |
| il devra | il devrait | qu'il doive | qu'il doive | qu'il dût (dü) |
| n. devrons | n. devrions | devons | q. n. devions | q. n. dussions |
| v. devrez | v. devriez | devez | q. v. deviez | q. v. dussiez |
| ils devront | ils devraient | qu'ils doivent | qu'ils doivent | qu'ils dussent |
| *I'll be able.* | *I would be able.* | | *That I (may)* —. | *That I (might)* —. |
| je pourrai | je pourrais | — | que je puisse | que je pusse |
| tu pourras | tu pourrais | *Il n'y* | que tu puisses | que tu pusses |
| il pourra | il pourrait | *a* | qu'il puisse | qu'il pût (pü) |
| n. pourrons | n. pourrions | *pas* | q. n. puissions | q. n. pussions |
| v. pourrez | v. pourriez | *d'impératif.* | q. v. puissiez | q. v. pussiez |
| ils pourront | ils pourraient | | qu'ils puissent | qu'ils pussent |
| *I'll know.* | *I would know.* | *Know (thou)*, etc. | *That I (may)* —. | *That I (might)* —. |
| je saurai | je saurais | — | que je sache | que je susse |
| tu sauras | tu saurais | sache (sá'-sh') | que tu saches | que tu susses |
| il saura | il saurait | qu'il sache " | qu'il sache | qu'il sût |
| n. saurons | n. saurions | sachons " | q. n. sachions | que n. sussions |
| v. saurez | v. sauriez | sachez | q. v. sachiez | que v. sussiez |
| ils sauront | ils sauraient | qu'ils sachent | qu'ils sachent | qu'ils sussent |
| *I'll see.* | *I could see.* | *See (thou)*, etc. | *That I (may)* —. | *That I (might)* —. |
| je verrai | je verrais | — | q. je voie | q. je visse |
| tu verras | tu verrais | vois | q. tu voies | q. tu visses |
| il verra | il verrait | qu'il voie | qu'il voie | qu'il vît |
| n. verrons | n. verrions | voyons | q. n. voyions | q. n. vissions |
| v. verrez | v. verriez | voyez | q. v. voyiez | q. v. vissiez |
| ils verront | ils verraient | qu'ils voient | qu'ils voient | qu'ils vissent |
| *I'll want.* | *I would (like).* | *Be (th.) willing.* | *T. I (may) want.* | *That I (might)* —. |
| je voudrai | je voudrais | veux (vû), *or* | q. je veuille (vŭy' | q. je voulusse |
| tu voudras | tu voudrais | veuille (vŭ'-y') | q. tu veuilles yŭ') | q. tu voulusse |
| il voudra | il voudrait | voulons, *or* | qu'il veuille " | qu'il voulût |
| n. voudrons | n. voudrions | veuillons | q. n. voulions | q. n. voulussions |
| v. voudrez | v. voudriez | voulez, *or* | q. v. vouliez | q. v. voulussiez |
| ils voudront | ils voudraient | veuillez (vŭ-yā') | qu'ils veuillent | qu'ils voulussent |

* Like **Venir: Tenir,** *to hold* (and its comp'ds). However, the comp. tenses of **tenir,** etc., are conj. with **avoir.** — † **Vē-in-drā'; vē-ĕn'; vin'-s'.**

| Infinitif. | Indic. Prés. | Imparfait. | Prétérit. | Passé Indéf. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *To drink*, etc. | *I drink.* | *I was drinking.* | *I drank.* | *I (have) drunk.* |
| —— | je bois (bó-á′) | je buvais | je bus (bü) | j'ai bu |
| **boire** | tu bois " | tu buvais | tu bus " | tu as bu |
| buvant | il boit " | il buvait | il but " | il a bu |
| bu | n. buvons | n. buvions | n. bûmes (büm') | n. avons bu |
| avoir bu | v. buvez | v. buviez | v. bûtes (büt') | v. avez bu |
| ayant bu | ils boivent (bó-áv') | ils buvaient | ils burent (bür') | ils ont bu |
| *To know*, etc. | *I know.* | *I used to know.* | *I knew.* | *I have known.* |
| —— | je connais | je connaissais | je connus | j'ai connu |
| **connaître** | tu connais | tu connaissais | tu connus | tu as connu |
| connaissant | il connaît | il connaissait | il connut | il a connu |
| connu | n. connaissons | n. connaissions | n. connûmes | n. avons connu |
| avoir connu | v. connaissez | v. connaissiez | v. connûtes | v. avez connu |
| ayant connu | ils connaissent | ils connaissaient | ils connurent | ils ont connu |
| *To fear*, etc. | *I fear.* | *I feared, used to—.* | *I feared.* | *I (have) feared.* |
| —— | je crains (krin) | je craignais[1] | je craignis[1] | j'ai craint |
| **craindre**[1] | tu crains " | tu craignais | tu craignis | tu as craint |
| craignant[1] | il craint " | il craignait | il craignit | il a craint |
| craint (krin) | n. craignons[1] | n. craignions | n. craignîmes | n. avons craint |
| avoir craint | v. craignez | v. craigniez | v. craignîtes | v. avez craint |
| ayant craint * | ils craignent[1] | ils craignaient | ils craignirent | ils ont craint |
| *To believe*, etc. | *I believe.* | *I believed.* | *I believed.* | *I (have) believed.* |
| —— | je crois (kró-á′) | je croyais (kró-á- | je crus | j'ai cru |
| **croire** (kró-ár') | tu crois | tu croyais yĕh) | tu crus | tu as cru |
| croyant (kró-á- | il croit | il croyait " | il crut | il a cru |
| cru [yan′) | n. croyons (kró-á- | n. croyions | n. crûmes | n. avons cru |
| avoir cru | v. croyez [yon′) | v. croyiez | v. crûtes | v. avez cru |
| ayant cru | ils croient | ils croyaient | ils crurent | ils ont cru |
| *To say; to tell.* | *I say.* | *I was saying.* | *I said.* | *I said*, or *told.* |
| —— | je dis (dē) | je disais (dē-zĕh′) | je dis | j'ai dit |
| **dire** | tu dis " | tu disais " | tu dis | tu as dit |
| disant (dē-zan′) | il dit " | il disait " | il dit | il a dit |
| dit (dē) | n. disons (dē-zon′) | n. disions dē-zē-on′ | n. dîmes | n. avons dit |
| avoir dit | v. dites (dēt') | v. disiez (dē-zē-ā′) | v. dîtes | v. avez dit |
| ayant dit | ils disent (dēz') | ils disaient | ils dirent | ils ont dit |
| *To write*, etc. | *I am writing.* | *I was writing.* | *I wrote.* | *I (have) written.* |
| —— | j'écris | j'écrivais | j'écrivis | j'ai écrit |
| **écrire** | tu écris | tu écrivais | tu écrivis | tu as écrit |
| écrivant | il écrit | il écrivait | il écrivit | il a écrit |
| écrit (ā-krē′) | n. écrivons | n. écrivions | n. écrivîmes | n. avons écrit |
| avoir écrit | v. écrivez | v. écriviez | v. écrivîtes | v. avez écrit |
| ayant écrit | ils écrivent | ils écrivaient | ils écrivirent | ils ont écrit |
| *To do*, etc. | *I do; I make.* | *I was making.* | *I did.* | *I have done.* |
| —— | je fais | je faisais (fŭ-zĕh′) | je fis | j'ai fait |
| **faire** | tu fais | tu faisais " | tu fis | tu as fait |
| faisant (fŭ-zan′) | il fait | il faisait " | il fit | il a fait |
| fait | n. faisons (fŭ-zon′) | n. faisions | n. fîmes (fēm') | n. avons fait |
| avoir fait | v. faites (fĕh′-t') | v. faisiez (fŭ-zē-ā′) | v. fîtes (fēt') | v. avez fait |
| ayant fait | ils font | ils faisaient | ils firent (fēr') | ils ont fait |

[1] **Krin′-dr', krĕh-ñan′, krĕh-ñon′, krĕh′-ñ', krĕh-ñĕh′, krĕh-ñē′.**

* Conjugate like **Craindre**, all verbs ending in **aindre** or **eindre**.

| **Futur.** | **Conditionnel.** | **Impératif.** | **Subj. Prés.** | **Imparfait.** |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *I'll drink.* | *I would drink.* | *Drink (thou).* | *Th. I (may) drink.* | *T. I (might) drink.* |
| je boirai | je boirais | — | que je boive | que je busse |
| tu boiras | tu boirais | bois | que tu boives | que tu busses |
| il boira | il boirait | qu'il boive | qu'il boive | qu'il bût |
| n. boirons | n. boirions | buvons | q. n. buvions | q. n. bussions |
| v. boirez | v. boiriez | buvez | q. v. buviez | q. v. bussiez |
| ils boiront | ils boiraient | qu'ils boivent | qu'ils boivent | qu'ils bussent |
| *I'll know.* | *I would know.* | *Know (thou) etc.* | *Th. I (may) know.* | *T. I (might) know.** |
| je connaîtrai | je connaîtrais | — | q. je connaisse | q. je connusse |
| tu connaîtras | tu connaîtrais | connais | q. tu connaisses | q. tu connusses |
| il connaîtra | il connaîtrait | qu'ils connaisse | qu'il connaisse | qu'il connût |
| n. connaîtrons | n. connaîtrions | connaissons | q. n. connaissions | q. n. connussions |
| v. connaîtrez | v. connaîtriez | connaissez | q. v. connaissiez | q. v. connussiez |
| ils connaîtront | ils connaîtraient | q. ils connaissent | qu'ils connaissent | qu'ils connussent |
| *I'll fear.* | *I would fear.* | *Fear (thou), etc.* | *That I (may) fear.* | *T. I (might) fear.* |
| je craindrai [1] | je craindrais | — | q. je craigne [3] | q. je craignisse |
| tu craindras | tu craindrais | crains (kr*in*) | q. tu craignes [3] | q. tu craignisses |
| il craindra | il craindrait | qu'il craigne [3] | qu'il craigne [3] | qu'il craignît |
| n. craindrons | n. craindrions [2] | craignons (krĕh | q. n. craignions [3] | q. n. craignissions |
| v. craindrez | v. craindriez | craignez ñon′) | q. v. craigniez | q. v. craignissiez |
| ils craindront | ils craindraient [2] | qu'ils craignent | qu'ils craignent [3] | qu'ils craignissent |
| *I'll believe.* | *I would believe.* | *Believe (thou).* | *T. I (may) believe.* | *T. I (mi.) believe.* |
| je croirai | je croirais | — | q. je croie | que je crusse |
| tu croiras | tu croirais | crois | q. tu croies | que tu crusses |
| il croira | il croirait | qu il'croie | qu'il croie | qu'il crût |
| n. croirons | n. croirions | croyons (krô-â- | q. n. croyions | q. n. crussions |
| v. croirez | v. croiriez | croyez yon′) | q. v. croyiez | q. v. crussiez |
| ils croiront | ils croiraient | qu'ils croient | qu'ils croient | qu'ils crussent |
| *I'll tell.* | *I would tell.* | *Tell (thou), etc.* | *That I (may) tell.* | *T. I (might) tell.* |
| je dirai | je dirais | — | q. je dise (dēz') | q. je disse |
| tu diras | tu dirais | dis (dē) | q. tu dises " | q. tu disses |
| il dira | il dirait | qu'il dise | qu'il dise " | qu'il dît |
| n. dirons | n. dirions | disons (dē-zon′) | q. n. disions | que n. dissions |
| v. direz | v. diriez | dites (dēt) | q. v. disiez | que v. dissiez |
| ils diront | ils diraient | qu'ils disent | qu'ils disent (dēz') | qu'ils dissent |
| *I'll write.* | *I would write.* | *Write (thou).* | *That I (may) —.* | *That I might —.* |
| j'écrirai | j'écrirais | — | q. j'écrive | q. j'écrivisse |
| tu écriras | tu écrirais | écris | q. tu écrives | q. tu écrivisses |
| il écrira | il écrirait | qu'il écrive | qu'il écrive | qu'il écrivît |
| n. écrirons | nous écririons | écrivons | q. n. écrivions | q. n. écrivissions |
| v. écrirez | vous écririez | écrivez | q. v. écriviez | q. v. écrivissiez |
| ils écriront | ils écriraient | qu'ils écrivent | qu'ils écrivent | qu'ils écrivissent |
| *I'll make.* | *I would make.* | *Make (thou).* | *That I (may) —.* | *That I might —.* |
| je ferai | je ferais | — | q. je fasse (fâs') | q. je fisse |
| tu feras | tu ferais | fais (fĕh) | q. tu fasses " | q. tu fisses |
| il fera | il ferait | qu'il fasse | qu'il fasse " | qu'il fît |
| n. ferons | n. ferions | faisons (fŭ-zon′) | q. n. fassions | q. n. fissions |
| v. ferez | v. feriez | faites (fĕt') | q. v. fassiez | q. v. fissiez |
| ils feront | ils feraient | qu'ils fassent | qu'ils fassent (fâs') | qu'ils fissent |

[1] **Krin-drā′.**—[2] **Krin-drē-yon′, krin-drĕh′.**—[3] **Krĕh′-ñ′; krĕñ-yon′.**

* Conjugate like **Connaître,** all verbs in **aître: Paraître,** *to appear*, etc.

| Infinitif. | Indic. Prés. | Imparfait. | Prétérit. | Passé Indéf. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *To put; to put on.* | *I put (on).** | *I used to put on.* | *I put.* | *I (have) put (on).* |
| —— | je mets [1] | je mettais | je mis | j' ai mis [6] |
| **mettre** | tu mets | tu mettais | tu mis | tu as mis |
| mettant | il met [1] | il mettait | il mit | il a mis |
| mis (mē) | n. mettons | n. mettions | n. mîmes [2] | n. avons mis |
| avoir mis | v. mettez | v. mettiez | v. mîtes [2] | v. avez mis |
| ayant mis [7] | ils mettent [1] | ils mettaient | ils mirent [2] | ils ont mis |
| *To please.* | *I please.* | *I used to please.* | *I pleased.* | *I (have) pleased.* |
| —— | je plais [3] | je plaisais | je plus | j' ai plu |
| **plaire** | tu plais | tu plaisais | tu plus | tu as plu |
| plaisant(plĕh-*zan*′) | il plaît [3] | il plaisait | il plut | il a plu |
| plu | n. plaisons [3] | n. plaisions | n. plûmes | n. avons plu |
| avoir plu | v. plaisez | v. plaisiez | v. plûtes | v. avez plu |
| ayant plu | ils plaisent [3] | ils plaisaient | ils plurent | ils ont plu |
| *To take.* | *I take.** | *I used to take.* | *I took.* | *I took.* |
| —— | je prends [4] | je prenais | je pris | j' ai pris [6] |
| **prendre** | tu prends | tu prenais | tu pris | tu as pris |
| prenant (prŭ-nan′) | il prend | il prenait | il prit | il a pris |
| pris (prē) | n. prenons [4] | n. prenions | n. prîmes | n. avons pris |
| avoir pris | v. prenez | v. preniez | v. prîtes | v. avez pris |
| ayant pris | ils prennent [4] | ils prenaient | ils prirent | ils ont pris |
| *To laugh.* | *I laugh.** | *I was laughing.*† | *I laughed.* | *I (have) laughed.* |
| —— | je ris | je riais | je ris | j' ai ri |
| **rire** | tu ris | tu riais | tu ris | tu as ri |
| riant (rē-an′) | il rit | il riait | il rit | il a ri |
| ri | n. rions [5] | n. riions | n. rîmes | n. avons ri |
| avoir ri | v. riez [5] | v. riiez | v. rîtes | v. avez ri |
| ayant ri ‡ | ils rient [5] | ils riaient | ils rirent | ils ont ri |
| *To follow.* | *I follow.** | *I was following.*† | *I followed.* | *I (have) followed.* |
| —— | je suis | je suivais | je suivis | j' ai suivi [6] |
| **suivre** | tu suis | tu suivais | tu suivis | tu as suivi |
| suivant | il suit | il suivait | il suivit | il a suivi |
| suivi | n. suivons | n. suivions | n. suivîmes | n. avons suivi |
| avoir suivi | v. suivez | v. suiviez | v. suivîtes | v. avez suivi |
| ayant suivi § | ils suivent | ils suivaient | ils suivirent | ils ont suivi |
| *To live.* | *I live.** | *I was living.*† | *I lived.* | *I (have) lived.* |
| —— | je vis | je vivais | je vécus (vā-kü′) | j' ai vécu |
| **vivre** | tu vis | tu vivais | tu vécus | tu as vécu |
| vivant | il vit | il vivait | il vécut | il a vécu |
| vécu (vā-kü′) | n. vivons | n. vivions | n. vécûmes †† | n. avons vécu |
| avoir vécu | v. vivez | v. viviez | v. vécûtes | v. avez vécu |
| ayant vécu ‖ | ils vivent | ils vivaient | ils vécurent | ils ont vécu |

[1] **Mĕh, mĕh′-t'.** — [2] **Mēm', mēt', mēr'.** — [3] **Plĕh, plĕh-zon′, plĕz'.**

[4] **Pran, prŭ-non′, prĕn'.** — [5] **Rē-on′, rē-ā′, rē'.** — [6] See page 499.

[7] Conjugate like **Mettre**: **Promettre,** *to promise;* **Remettre,** *to hand to, to put off;* **Se mettre,** *to place one's self.* — * Or, *am making* or *doing, putting on, taking.* — † Or, *I used to laugh,* or *to follow,* or *to live.* — ‡ Conjugate like **rire**: **Sourire,** *to smile.* — § Conjugate like **Suivre**: **Poursuivre,** *to pursue,* and **S'ensuivre,** *to ensue.* — ‖ Conjugate like **Vivre**: **Survivre,** *to survive;* **Revivre,** *to revive.* — †† **Nōō vā-küm'.**

| Futur. | Conditionnel. | Impératif. | Subj. Prés. | Imparfait. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *I'll put (on).* | *I would put (on).* | *Put (on), etc.* | *That I (may) —.* | *T. I (might) —.* |
| je mettrai | je mettrais | — | q. je mette | q. je misse |
| tu mettras | tu mettrais | mets | q. tu mettes | q. tu misses |
| il mettra | il mettrait | qu'il mette | qu'il mette | qu'il mît |
| n. mettrons | n. mettrions | mettons | q. n. mettions | q. n. missions |
| v. mettrez | v. mettriez | mettez | q. v. mettiez | q. v. missiez |
| ils mettront | ils mettraient | qu'ils mettent | qu' ils mettent | qu'ils missent |
| *I'll please.* | *I would please.* | *Please, etc.* | *That I (may) —.* | *T. I (might) —.*† |
| je plairai | je plairais | — | q. je plaise [7] | q. je plusse |
| tu plairas | tu plairais | plais | q. tu plaises [7] | q. tu plusses |
| il plaira | il plairait | qu'il plaise [7] | qu'il plaise | qu'il plût |
| n. plairons | n. plairions | plaisons | q. n. plaisions | q. n. plussions |
| v. plairez | v. plairiez | plaisez | q. v. plaisiez | q. v. plussiez |
| ils plairont | ils plairaient | qu'ils plaisent [7] | qu'ils plaisent [7] | qu'ils plussent |
| *I'll take.* | *I would take.* | *Take (thou), etc.* | *That I (may) —.* | *T. I (might) —.* § |
| je prendrai [8] | je prendrais | — | q. je prenne [9] | q. je prisse |
| tu prendras | tu prendrais | prends | q. tu prennes | q. tu prisses |
| il prendra | il prendrait | qu'il prenne [9] | qu'il prenne | qu'il prît |
| n. prendrons. | n. prendrions | prenons | q. n. prenions [9] | q. n. prissions |
| v. prendrez | v. prendriez | prenez | q. v. preniez | q. v. prissiez |
| ils prendront | ils prendraient | qu'ils prennent [9] | qu'ils prennent [9] | qu'ils prissent |
| *I'll laugh.* | *I would laugh.* | *Laugh (thou).* | *That I (may) —.* | *T. I (might) —.* * |
| je rirai | je rirais | — | q. je rie | q. je risse |
| tu riras | tu rirais | ris | q. tu ries | q. tu risses |
| il rira | il rirait | qu'il rie | qu'il rie | qu'il rît |
| n. rirons | n. ririons | rions | q. n. riions | q. n. rissions |
| v. rirez | v. ririez | riez | q. v. riiez | q. v. rissiez |
| ils riront | ils riraient | qu'ils rient | qu'ils rient | qu'ils rissent |
| *I'll follow.* | *I would follow.* | *Follow (thou).* | *That I (may) —.* | *T. I (might) —.* |
| je suivrai | je suivrais | — | q. je suive | q. je suivisse |
| tu suivras | tu suivrais | suis | q. tu suives | q. tu suivisses |
| il suivra | il suivrait | qu'il suive | qu'il suive | qu'il suivît |
| n. suivrons | n. suivrions | suivons | q. n. suivions | q. n. suivissions |
| v. suivrez | v. suivriez | suivez | q. v. suiviez | q. v. suivissiez |
| ils suivront | ils suivraient | qu'ils suivent | qu'ils suivent | qu'ils suivissent |
| *I'll live.* | *I would live.* | *Live (thou).* | *That I (may) —.* | *T. I (might) —.* |
| je vivrai | je vivrais | — | q. je vive | q. je vécusse ‡ |
| tu vivras | tu vivrais | vis | q. tu vives | q. tu vécusses |
| il vivra | il vivrait | qu'il vive | qu'il vive | qu'il vécût |
| n. vivrons | n. vivrions | vivons | q. n. vivions | q. n. vécussions |
| v. vivrez | v. vivriez | vivez | q. v. viviez | q. v. vécussiez |
| ils vivront | ils vivraient | qu'ils vivent | qu'ils vivent | qu'ils vécussent ‡ |

[7] **Plĕz'.** — [8] **Pran-drā'.** — [9] **Prĕn'; prŭ-nē-on'; prĕn'.**

* Conjugate like **Rire: Sourire,** *to smile;* **Se rire (de),** *to laugh at.*

† Conjug. like **plaire: Déplaire,** *to displease;* **Se plaire,** *to like it* (*anywhere,* or *at anything*). — Thus: **Je me Plais (à Paris),** *I like it* (*in Paris*)*;* **Tu te plais; Il se plaît (à la campagne),** *He likes it* (*in the country*)*;* **Nous nous plaisons (ici),** *We like it* (*here*).

‡ **Vā-küs'.** — § Conjug. like **prendre: Apprendre,** *to learn;* **Comprendre,** *to understand;* and other compounds

## REMAINDER OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

1. **Acquérir,** *to acquire.* —J'acquiers,[1] tu acquiers, il acquiert, n. acquérons,[1] v. acquérez, ils acquièrent.[1] —J'acquérais. —J'acquis. —J'ai acquis. —J'acquerrai. —J'acquerrais. — Acquiers, acquérons, acquérez. — Que j'acquière, que tu acquières, qu'il acquière, que n. acquérions, que v. acquériez, qu'ils acquièrent. — Acquérant. —Acquis (f. acquise).[1] (1) Zhá-kē-ĕr, á-kā-ron', ĕl zà-kē-ĕr', á-kē', á-kēz'. Conjugate like **Acquérir :** Quérir, *to fetch* (little used); Conquérir, *to conquer.*

2. **Assaillir,** *to assail.* —J'assaille, tu assailles, il assaille, n. assaillons, v. assaillez, ils assaillent. —J'assaillais. —J'assaillis. — J'ai assailli. —J'assaillirai. — J'assaillirais. —Q. j'assaille, q. tu assailles, qu'il assaille, q. n. assaillions, q. v. assailliez, qu'ils assaillent. —Q. j'assaillisse. —Assaillant. —Assailli.

3. **Bouillir,** *to boil.* —Je bous, tu bous, il bout, n. bouillons, v. bouillez, ils bouillent. —Je bouillais, nous bouillions. —Je bouillis. —Je bouillirai. —Je bouillirais. —Bous, bouillons, bouillez. —Q. je bouille, q. tu bouilles, qu'il bouille, q. n. bouillions, q. v. bouilliez ; qu'ils bouillent. —Que je bouillisse. —Bouillant ; bouilli.

4. **Courir,** *to run.* —Je cours, tu cours, il court, n. courons, v. courez, ils courent. —Je courais. —Je courus. —Je courrai. —Je courrais. —Cours, courons, courez. —Que je coure, q. tu coures, qu'il coure, q. n. courions, q. v. couriez, qu'ils courent. —Que je courusse. —Courant. —Couru.

5. **Cueillir,** *to cull, to pluck.* —Je cueille,[1] tu cueilles, il cueille, n. cueillons, v. cueillez, ils cueillent.[1] —Je cueillais. —Je cueillis. —Je cueillerai. —Je cueillerais. —Cueille, cueillons, cueillez. —Q. je cueille. —Q. je cueillisse. —Cueillant, cueilli. (1) Kŭ'-yŭ. Like **Cueillir :** Accueillir, Recueillir.

6. **Mourir,** *to die.* —Je meurs,[1] tu meurs,[1] il meurt,[1] n. mourons, v. mourez, ils meurent.[1] —Je mourais. —Je mourus. —Je mourrai.[2] —Je mourrais. —Meurs, mourons, mourez. —Q. je meure,[3] q. tu meures,[3] qu'il meure,[3] q. n. mourions, q. v. mouriez, qu'ils meurent. —Q. je mourusse. —Mourant, mort (morte).

(1) Mŭr ; (2) mōōr-rā'; (3) mŭr. Like **Mourir :** Se mourir, *to be dying, to faint.*

7. **Vêtir,** *to clothe.* —Je vêts. —Je vêtais. —Je vêtis. —J'ai vêtu. —Je vêtirai. —Je vêtirais. —Vêts, vêtons, vêtez. —Q. je vête. —Q. je vêtisse. —Vêtant. —Vêtu.

8. **S'asseoir,** *to sit down.* —Je m'assieds tu t'assieds, il s'assied,[1] nous nous asseyons,[1] vous vous asseyez, ils s'asseient.[1] —Je m'asseyais,[2] n. n. asseyions. —Je m'assis. —Je m'assiérai (*or,* je m'asseierai). —Je m'assiérais (*or,* je m'asseierais). —Assieds-toi, asseyons-nous, asseyez-vous. —Q. je m'asseye, que n. n. asseyions, qu'ils s'asseient. —Q. je m'assisse. —S'asseyant. —Assis, assise (á-sēz').

(1) **Má-sē-ā', á-sĕh-yon', sá-sĕh'-yŭ ;** (2) **má-sĕh-yĕh'.** Also, Je m'asseois, tu t'asseois, il s'asseoit. *Comp. :* Se rasseoir, *to sit down again.*

9. **Mouvoir,** *to move.* —Je meus, tu meus, il meut, n. mouvons, v. mouvez, ils meuvent. —Je mouvais. —Je mus. —Je mouvrai. —Je mouvrais. —Meus, mouvons, mouvez. —Que je meuve, que tu meuves, qu'il meuve, q. n. mouvions. q. v. mouviez, qu'ils meuvent. —Mouvant. —Mû, mue.

10. **Valoir,** *to be worth.* —Je vaux,[1] tu vaux,[1] il vaut,[1] n. valons, v. valez, ils valent. —Je valais. —Je valus. —J'ai valu. —Je vaudrai. —Je vaudrais. —Vaux, valons, valez. —Que je vaille,[2] que tu vailles,[2] qu'il vaille,[2] q. n. valions,[3] q. v. valiez, qu'ils vaillent.[2] —Valant. —Valu, value. (1) Vō ; (2) vá-yŭ'; (3) vá-lē-on'.

11. **Conduire,** *to conduct, to take.* —Je conduis, n. conduisons,[1] v. conduisez, ils conduisent.[1] —Je conduisais. —Je conduisis. —Je conduirai. —Je conduirais. — Conduis, conduisons, conduisez. —Q. je conduise,[1] q. n. conduisions. —Q. je conduisisse. —Conduisant. —Conduit. (1) Kon-dü-ē-zon', kon-dü-ēz'.

Conjugate like **Conduire:** Traduire, *to translate;* réduire, *to reduce* (and all verbs in **duire**). Also: Construire, *to construct;* Instruire, *to instruct;* Nuire, *to injure;* Cuire, *to cook;* and Luire, *to shine.*

**12. Conclure,** *to conclude.* — **Je conclus, tu conclus, il conclut, n. concluons,**[1] **v. concluez, ils concluent. — Je concluais. — Je conclus. — J'ai conclu. — Je conclurai. — Je conclurais. — Conclus, concluons, concluez. — Que je conclue. — Que je conclusse. — Concluant. — Conclu.** (1) **Kon-klü-on'.**

**13. Coudre,** *to sew.* — **Je couds,**[1] **tu couds,**[1] **il coud,**[1] **n. cousons, v. cousez,**[1] **ils cousent.**[2] **— Je cousais.**[3] **— Je cousis.**[3] **— Je coudrai. — Je coudrais. — Couds, cousons, cousez. — Q. je couse. — Que je cousisse. — Cousant. — Cousu.** (1) **Kōō, kōō-zon'.** (2) **Kōōz'**; (3) **Kōō-zĕh', kōō-zĕ'.** — **Recoudre,** *to sew again.*

**14. Lire,** *to read.* — **Je lis, tu lis, il lit, n. lisons,**[1] **v. lisez,**[1] **ils lisent.**[2] **— Je lisais. — Je lus. — J'ai lu. — Je lirai. — Je lirais. — Que je lise.**[2] **— Que je lusse. — Lisant.**[3] **— Lu.** (1) **Lē-zon', lē-zā'.** (2) **Lēz'.** (3) **Lē-zan'.**

Like **Lire**: Relire, *to read over again;* and Élire, *to elect.* Also: **Suffire;** only, **suffire has suffi** (past part.), **je suffis,** etc. (preterit); and **q. je suffisse,** etc. (imp. subj.).

**15. Moudre,** *to grind.* — **Je mouds, tu mouds, il moud, nous moulons, vous moulez, ils moulent. — Je moulais. — Je moulus. — Je moudrai. — Je moudrais. — Mouds, moulons, moulez. — Q. je moule. — Q. je moulusse. — Moulant. — Moulu.**

**16. — Naître,** *to be born.* — **Je nais, tu nais, il naît, nous naissons, vous naissez. ils naissent. — Je naissais. — Je naquis. — Je suis né.**[1] **— Je naîtrai. — Je naîtrais, — Que je naisse. — Naissant. — Né.** (1) *I was born.*

**17. Résoudre,** *to resolve.* — **Je résous,**[1] **tu résous, il résout, n. résolvons, v. résolvez, ils résolvent. — Je résolvais. — Je résolus. — J'ai résolu. — Je résoudrai. — Je résoudrais. — Résous, résolvons, résolvez. — Q. je résolve, — Q. je résolusse. — Résolvant. — Résolu.** (1) **Rā-zōō'.** **Like Résoudre: Absoudre, Dissoudre.**

**18. Vaincre,**[1] *to vanquish.* — **Je vaincs,**[2] **tu vaincs,**[2] **il vainc,**[2] **nous vainquons, vous vainquez, ils vainquent.**[3] **— Je vainquais. — Je vainquis. — J'ai vaincu. — Je vaincrai. — Je vaincrais. — Vaincs, vainquons, vainquez. — Que je vainque.**[3] **— Vainquant. — Vaincu.** (1) **Vin'-kr'**; (2) **vin**; (3) **vin'-k'.**

**Slightly Irregular Verbs.** — 1. For **Bénir,** *to bless;* **Fleurir,** *to bloom;* and **Haïr (â-ēr'),** *to hate;* see p. 503.

2. **Rompre, (ron'-pr'),** *to break,* is regular except in **Il rompt (ron).**

3. **Pourvoir** and **Prévoir** are conjugated like **voir.** Exceptions: Future and conditional: Je pourv*oi*rai, je prév*oi*rai, je pourv*oi*rais, je prév*oi*rais; and Preterit of **Pourvoir**: Je pourv*us.*

4. **Croître,** *to grow,* is conjugated like **Connaître,** but takes a circumflex accent in the following: **Je croîs, tu croîs, il croît;** and (*preterit*), **Je crûs,** etc.

**The following defective verbs are** *very rarely used,* **and for the most part have only two or three tenses and persons. 1. Férir,** *to strike.* **— 2. Gésir,** *to lie;* **ci-gît (sē-zhē'),** *here lies.* **— 3. Ouïr,** *to hear.* **— 4. Quérir,** *to fetch.* **— 5. Saillir,** *to project.* **— 6 Choir,** *to fall.* **— 7. Déchoir,** *to fall* **(from honor or position). — 8. Échoir,** *to fall due,* **échu, échéant. — 9. Ravoir,** *to have* **(or** *get***)** *again.* **— 10. Seoir,** *to sit;* **sis (situated). — 11. Seoir,** *to become, to suit;* **il sied, ils siéent, seyant. — 12. Braire,** *to bray.* **— 13. Clore,** *to close;* **clos (closed). — 14. Éclore,** *to hatch, to open* **(***as flowers***). — 15. Frire,** *to fry.*

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

**Impersonal** or **unipersonal verbs** have only *one* person, the third singular, of each tense. However, regular verbs, such as **arriver,** etc., may be used impersonally,

### 1. Falloir, *To be necessary.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Il faut.** *It is necessary.* Also, *I, thou, he, she, we, you, they must.* | **Il fallait** (*habitual*). *It was necessary.* Also, *I, thou,* etc., *was obliged;* or, *I, thou,* etc., *had to.* | **Il fallut** (*historical*). *It was necessary.* Also, *I,* etc., *was obliged;* or, *I,* etc., *had to,* or *needed.* | **Il a fallu** (*convers.*). *It was necessary.* Also, *I,* etc., *have had to.* |
| **Il faudra.** *It will be necessary.* Also, *I, thou,* etc., *will be obliged to,* or *have to,* or *need.* | **Il faudrait.** *It would be necessary.* Also, *I, thou,* etc., *would* or *sh'd be obliged to,* or *have to,* or *need.* | **Qu'il faille.** *That it (may) be necessary.* Also, *that I (may) be obliged to,* or *have to,* or *need.* | **Qu'il fallût.** *That it (might) be necessary.* Also, *that I (might) be obliged to,* or *have to,* or *need.* |

### 2. Y avoir, *There to be.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Il y a.** *There is,* or *there are.* | **Il y avait** (*habitual*). *There was,* or *there were.* Also, *there used to be.* | **Il y eut** (*historical*). *There was,* or *there were.* | **Il y a eu** (*convers.*). *There has been,* or *there have been.* |
| **Il y aura.** *There shall* or *will be.* | **Il y aurait.** *There should* or *would be.* | **Qu'il y ait.** *That there (may) be.* | **Qu'il y eût.** *That there (might) be.* |

### 3. S'agir de (så-zhēr dŭ), *To be in question.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Il s'agit** *de.* *The question is about —.* | **Il s'agissait** *de.* *The matter was about —.* | **Il s'agit** *de.* *The question was to —.* | **Il s'est agi** *de.* *The question was about —.* |
| **Il s'agira** *de.* *The question will be to —.* | **Il s'agirait** *de.* *The question would be to —.* | **Qu'il s'agisse** *de.* *That the matter (may) be about —.* | **Qu'il s'agît** *de.* *That the matter (might) be about —.* |

### 4. Pleuvoir, *To rain.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Il pleut.** *It is raining.* | **Il pleuvait.** *It was raining.* | **Il plut.** *It rained.* | **Il a plu.** *It (has) rained.* |
| **Il pleuvra.** *It will rain.* | **Il pleuvrait.** *It would rain.* | **Qu'il pleuve.** *That it may rain.* | **Qu'il plût.** *That it might rain.* |

### 5. Tonner, *To thunder.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Il tonne.** *It is thundering.* | **Il tonnait.** *It was thundering.* | **Il tonna.** *It thundered.* | **Il a tonné.** *It (has) thundered.* |
| **Il tonnera.** *It will thunder.* | **Il tonnerait.** *It would thunder.* | **Qu'il tonne.** *That it (may) —.* | **Qu'il tonnât.*** *That it (might)—.* |

* Conjugate like **Tonner:** Arriver, *to happen* (see p. 513); Dégeler, *to thaw;* Bruiner, *to drizzle;* Grêler, *to hail;* Éclairer, *to lighten;* Neiger, *to snow* (see page 501): Geler, *to freeze* (see page 500); Importer, *to matter.*

## VI.—THE ADVERB.

**List of Adverbs not already given.**—Alentour, *around;* autrement, *otherwise;* désormais (*or* dorénavant), *henceforth;* jadis, *formerly;* pis, *worse;* point, *not* (*at all*); toutefois, *however.*

### Adverbial Expressions.

À jamais, *forever.*
À la fois, (*all*) *at once.*
À peu près, *about.*
À tort et à travers, *at random.*
À l'envers, *wrong side out.*
À bride abattue, *at full speed.*
À vue d'œil, *visibly.*
À contre-cœur, *against one's will.*
À gros flocons, *in large flakes.*
À perte de vue, *way out of sight.*
Bon gré mal gré, *whether you will or no.*
D'accord! *agreed!*
D'ordinaire, *usually.*
De part et d'autre, *on both sides.*
De même, *likewise.*
De long en large, *back'd and f'rd.*
En un clin d'œil, *in a twinkling.*
En arrière, *backward.*
Par derrière, *behind.*

NOTE.—Many adjectives are also transformed into adverbs by adding the termination **ment.** Thus: **joli,** *pretty;* **joliment,** *prettily.* **Heureux,** *happy;* **heureusement,** *fortunately.*—A few adjectives, are also used as adverbs. Ex.: *He sings out of tune*=Il chante ***faux.***

**The Position of Adverbs.**—The **usual place** of adverbs is:

(1) **Immediately after the verb,** if the verb has only one part (*i. e.* is in a *simple* tense). Ex.:

Vous prononcez ***très bien.***—Il joue ***mal.*** (*He plays badly.*)

(2) **But, between the two parts of the verb** (*auxiliary and past participle*), if the verb is in a *compound* tense. Ex.:

*You have pronounced badly*=Vous avez ***mal*** prononcé.
*He danced a great deal*=Il a ***beaucoup*** dansé. But:

**Hier, aujourd'hui, demain, ici, là,** and adverbial expressions (*see above*), are, however, placed after both parts of the verb. Ex.: Il est venu ***hier;***—Le cheval courait ***à bride abattue.***

NOTE.—**Hier, aujourd'hui,** and **demain** are sometimes placed at the beginning of the sentence, for the sake of emphasis.

**Adverbs of quantity** (like **beaucoup, peu, plus, moins, assez**) require **de** (*without the article*) before a noun. Ex.: *Much bread,* beaucoup ***de*** pain. See page 59.

**Adverbs of Comparison.**—**Comparison** is expressed by means of the following ad.: plus, moins, aussi (*as*), pas si (*not as*):
Elle est ***plus*** jolie.—Il est ***moins*** âgé *que* moi.
Elle est ***aussi*** jolie *que* vous.—Vous n'êtes pas ***si*** jeune *que* lui.

Notice that *as* after all these is rendered by ***que.***

**The superlative** is expressed by means of ***le plus*** and ***le moins.*** Ex.: ***Le plus*** beau. — ***Le moins*** difficile.

NOTE the irregular comparisons:

Mal, *badly;* Pis, *worse;* Le pis, *the worst.*
Peu, *little;* Moins, *less;* Le moins, *the least.*

NOTE that *The more* . . . . . *the more,* and *The less* . . . . . *the less* are rendered by *Plus* . . . . . *plus,* and *Moins* . . . . . *moins* (*no article*). Ex.: *The more* I work, *the more* I like to work = ***Plus*** je travaille, ***plus*** j'aime à travailler. *The less* I walk, *the less* I want to walk = ***Moins*** je marche, ***moins*** je veux marcher.

## VII. — THE PREPOSITION.

Any prep. in French (excepting **en**) governs the infinitive.

**List of Prepositions not already given.** — Hormis, *except;* malgré, *in spite of;* outre, *besides;* sauf, *save;* suivant, *according to;* touchant, *concerning;* vis à vis, *opposite;* vu, *seeing.*

### Prepositional Expressions.

| | |
|---|---|
| À cause de, *on account of.* | Au moyen de, *by means of.* |
| À force de, *by dint of.* | Au niveau de, *on a level with.* |
| À l'égard de, *with regard to.* | Au risque de, *at the risk of.* |
| À l'insu de, *unbeknown to.* | En dépit de, *in spite of.* |
| À raison de, *at the rate of.* | Faute de, *for want of.* |
| Au-dessus de, *above.* | Le long de, *along.* |
| Au-dessous de, *below.* | Y compris, *including.* |
| Au lieu de, *instead of.* | Non compris, *not including.* |

**Use of Prepositions between Verbs.** — A verb followed immediately by another in the infinitive generally governs the use of **à** or **de** before it (see pages 332, 429, 312). About fifty verbs, however, do not require any preposition before another verb. Of these, the most frequently used are:

| | |
|---|---|
| Aimer mieux, *to prefer.* | Falloir, *to be necessary.* |
| Aller, *to go.* | Oser, *to dare.* |
| Compter, *to intend.* | Pouvoir, *to be able to.* |
| Désirer, *to wish.* | Savoir, *to know.* |
| Envoyer, *to send.* | Venir, *to come.* |
| Espérer, *to hope.* | Voir, *to see.* |
| Faire, *to make.* | Vouloir, *to wish.* |

**Use of Prepositions between nouns.** — Prepositions are used to express *use, purpose, attribute*, or *limitation*. Thus:

1. **Use.** — *A tea-spoon* = Une cuiller à café.
2. **Purpose.** — *A dining-room* = Une salle à manger.
3. **Attribute.** — *A three-story house* = Une maison à trois étages.
4. **Limitation.** — *A return ticket* = Un billet ***d'***aller et retour.

**Use of Prepositions after Adjectives.** — I. **Adjectives** of ***feeling*** generally require **de** after them.

Ex.: Je suis content ***de*** vous voir. — Je suis fâché ***de*** partir.

II. **Adjectives** of ***means*** or ***adaptability*** (*or the opposite*) generally take **à.** Ex.:

Cela est utile ***à*** savoir. — Cela est bon ***à*** manger (see p. 450).

NOTE 1. — Prepositions are to be repeated before every noun, verb, or pronoun of a series, *unless these are synonymous*. Ex.:

*I wrote to Peter and Paul* = J'ai écrit ***à*** Pierre et ***à*** Paul.

*He has less merit than money* = Il a moins ***de*** mérite que ***d'***argent.

NOTE II. — **En** (*in*) expresses something indefinite, **dans** something definite. **En** is rarely followed by any article or adjective, **dans** nearly always. Ex.: Elle est ***en*** ville = She is *in town*. Il est ***dans*** la ville = He is *in the city*.

With reference to *time*, **dans** denotes *when* anything will *occur*, and **en** indicates *how long* it will *last*. Ex.:

Il fera ce voyage ***en*** trois jours. — Il reviendra ***dans*** trois jours.

NOTE the following idioms: Vivre ***en*** roi, To live *like a* king. Habillé ***en*** femme, Dressed *as a* woman. ***D'après*** cet auteur, *According to* that author.

**De** is used before an adjective (*unaccompanied by its noun*) or a past participle, when these follow a number or an expression of quantity (as *quelque chose, rien, quelqu'un, quoi, que*). Ex.: Il y a *quelqu'un* ***de*** malade à la maison. Il y a eu *trois* personnes ***de*** noyées (*drowned*).

## VIII. — THE CONJUNCTION.

The **simple conjunctions** have already been given.

### Conjunctive Phrases governing the Subjunctive.

Afin que, *that*.
À moins que, *unless*.
Avant que, *before*.
En cas que, *in case, if*.
De peur que, *lest*.
De crainte que, *for fear that*.
Non que, *not that*.
Plût à Dieu que, *would to God that*.
Dieu veuille que, *God grant that*.
Pour que, *in order that*.
Pourvu que, *provided that*.
Quoique, *although*.

De manière que, *so that*.
En attendant que, *till, until*.
Jusqu'à ce que, *till, until*.
Bien que, *although*.
Sans que, *without*.
Sinon que, *unless*.
Soit que ... ou que, *whether ... or*.
Supposons que, *let us suppose that*.

Nearly all others, such as: Puisque, *since*, etc., govern the indicative.

## IX. — THE INTERJECTION.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Ah! ä, *Ah!* | Bah! bä, *Bah!* | Ciel! *Gracious!* | Hé! ā, *Hello!* |
| Aïe! ā'-y', *Outch!* | Bon! *Good!* | Courage! *Courage*. | Hélas! ā-läs', *Alas!* |
| Alerte! *Quick! Mind!* | Bravo! *Bravo!* | Fi! fē, *Fie!* | Gare! gär', *look out!* |
| Allons! *Come (now)*. | Chut! shüt, *Silence!* | Halte! āl'-t', *Halt!* | Silence! *Silence!* |

## APPENDIX.

**Plural of Compound Nouns.** — If made up of two *nouns*, both are plural. Ex.: Un chou-fleur; des choux-fleurs. [*Exceptions:* des appuis-*main;* des couvre-*pied* (*coverlets*)]. If, however, the two nouns are united by a preposition, only the first varies. Ex.: Un chef-d'œuvre; des chefs-d'œuvre. — A **verb, adverb,** or **preposition,** entering into a compound noun, is invariable. Ex.: Un essuie-mains; un cure-dents; des cure-dents; des avant-coureurs.

**Special cases of Subjunctive.** — The subj. is used independently of any other verb (at least, *apparently*), in exclamations: ***Puisse***-t-il être heureux! *may he be happy!* ***Plût*** au Ciel! *Would to God!*

**An adjective** qualifying several *synonymous* nouns, agrees only with the last: Il a montré **une réserve, une retenue *digne*** d'éloge.

**An adjective** following two nouns, the second of which is a complement of the first, agrees with whatever noun it really qualifies.

A basket of fruit well filled = Une ***corbeille*** de fruits bien pleine.

A basket of very ripe fruit = Une corbeille de fruits bien murs.

**Tout,** meaning *quite*, is an adverb, *but varies* before a feminine noun *beginning with a consonant* (or *aspirate h*). Ex.: Elle est ***tout*** interdite; *but:* Elle est toute stupéfaite. — **Nu** (*naked*), and **demi** are invariable if united to a noun by a hyphen. Thus: ***Nu***-pieds, *barefooted; **Nu***-tête, *bareheaded;* une ***demi***-heure. *But:* Les pieds nus; La tête nue; une heure et demie. **Feu,** *late*, if not *immediately* before its noun, is invariable. Ex.: The late queen = La feue reine; or, ***Feu*** la reine.

**Quelque,** followed immediately by a verb, is written in two words, and **quel** agrees with the subject: ***Quel*** que soit son talent. — ***Quelle*** que soit sa ***modestie.*** — ***Quelles*** que soient ses ***qualités.***

In answer to such questions as, *Are you Mrs. Adams? Are you ill?* etc., the English may answer simply, *I am.* The French say, *I am it;* and *it* (or *so*) is expressed by **le, la,** or **les,** if a *noun* is in question; but always by **le,** if an adjective. Thus: Êtes-vous la ***mère*** de cet enfant = Je ***la*** suis. But: — Êtes-vous ***malade*** = Je ***le*** suis.

# INDEX OF SUBJECTS.

# GRAMMATICAL INDEX.

